This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

https://books.google.com




Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Abigail Foxcroft.

RELATIONS,

OF THE MOST FAMOVS KINGDOMS AND COMMON-WEALES THOROVGH THE WORLD.

Discoursing of their Scituations, Manners, Customes, Strengthes and Pollicies.

Translated into English and enlarged, with an Addition of the estates of Venice, Saxony, Geneua, Hungary, and the East-Indies, in any Language neuer before imprinted.

LONDON,
Printed for *Iohn Iaggard*, dwelling in Fleetstreet, *at the Hand and Starre, betweene the two Temple gates,*
1611.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

To the Right Honourable Edward *Earl of Worceſter, Lord of Chepſtol, Ragland, and Gower, Knight of the moſt Noble order of the Garter, Maiſter of the Horſe, and one of the Kings moſt honorable priuy Counſell.*

RIGHT HONORABLE,

HAuing with an vnskilful hand, taught this Booke to ſpeake Engliſh, I thought that I ſhould be like an euil Plaier marring the laſt Act of the Tragedy, or a careleſſe Pilot, drowning the ſhip in the Hauen, if I ventred it to the diuers cenſures of men, before it were entruſted to patronage of ſome ſuch Authority, as might reſtraine and binde the ouerflowings of other mens more hard opinion. For although the worthineſſe of the ſubiect might worke in me an ouerweening hope of his kind entertainment, yet I cannot ſatisfie my ſelfe, vnleſſe it paſſe vnder the tutele and protection of ſome one, whoſe fauour may (like the verticall Sun) abate all ſhadowes, eyther of Enuy or diſgrace, which are in this ſtill worſe and worſe age of the world, ready to diſcountenance the fruits of any mans labor. Wherfore, conſidering with my ſelfe, where to beſtow it, I was emboldned by the inducement of diuers reaſons, to preſume on your Lordſhippe, aſcertaining my ſelfe, that the Honorable vertues which haue wound you into the liking of all men, haue ſetled ſo good an impreſſion, as is

Digitized by Google

forceable enough to make that seeme commendable which is graced by your Honors name only. And for this respect, among infinite others here for speciall reasons silenced, in hope of fauorable acceptance, I most humbly present it to your Honor, challinging to my selfe nothing but the imperfections in the harsh composure & conueyance of the stile, retaining yet (as I trust) the former strength and substance. If your L. vouchsafe to receiue it, it may be that (although in the perusall it cannot informe your honor any thing which you were ignorant of) yet it may confirme that, which otherwise your Honor doubted, or make it clearer by delivering the circumstances in more particular termes. Onely thus much (vnder leaue of a better iudgement) I dare say, that there is no Booke extant touching the same argument, which can equalize it, eyther for soundnesse in iudicially censuring, Truth, in sincerely translating, or compendiousnesse, in bringing such variety of matter to so small a volume. And heere although I could according to the vsuall forme of Epistles, indeuor a draught of your most Honourable praises, yet knowing that it is but tediousnesse, where vertue is loued for the onely inward contentment, I put a Period vnto these lines, and most humbly craving pardon, take leaue.

Your Honors deuoted

in all humble seruiceableneſſe,

Rob. Ihonſon.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. I.

Of Obseruation.



Eing to relate of the *Customes, Manners*, and *Potencies of Nations and great Princes*; my scope shal neither bee, to trouble your readings with such Authours as are to be accounted very ancient (for of these Themes they were very ignorant by reason of indiscouery;) Neythet will I wholy refer you to Historyes, because their Caueats are infinite; whereof some are growen out of vse, some temporarie, some opposite, and others mutable, either of themselues, or by the pleasure of Princes; whereof no profitable vse can be expected: Neither will I bee of their opinions, who building all vpon influences and constellations, will haue the faculties of soule and body to be gouerned by starres & climats. But my meaning is, to lay downe some few obseruations, arising from the immutable prouidence of Nature, which remaineth immutable, immortall, and is neuer changed, vnlesse by accident, violence, or tyrant-time; and yet in the reuolution of an age or two, returneth againe to its prime-operation. From thence I will discend, to discourse of the reasons which giue occasions to one Prince to excell another; And lastly, I will lay you downe some instructions for trauaile. The residue shall speake for it selfe, & be left to construction.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. 2.

Of the diuision of Temperature.

FIrst therefore according to best *Authority*, let vs firmely beleeue, that the Creator of all things, hath not bestowed vpon any particular Region, like and semblable blessings, but that (as experience may warrant vs) to some one Country he hath giuen this his good fauour, to another that: partly in regard of scituation; partly by operation of his Ministers, as stars, windes, heat, cold, water, aire, dyet &c. And therefore without offence, by the testimony of good Authors, wee may bee bold to coniecture, the people and Nations inhabiting diuers portions of this vaste vniuerse, to bee indowed with diuers strange & opposite dispositions: As the Inhabitants bounding vpon the *North*, to bee biggest boned, and strongest set: The Nations of the *South*, to be weake, yet more ingenious.

Nowe, how farre these Influences of *North* and *South* stretch in operation, where the *East* and *West* put periods to their potencies; or what in generall truth is to be affirmed of their diuers manners and qualities, is hard to say: and the harder, for that no man hitherto hath presumed to vndertake the taske amidst these obscurities. For if all credit should bee giuen to *Hippocrates* whose authority was euer held *Delphion*, he will tell you, *That the people of the North are slender, dwarfish, leane and swarfie:* and *Aristotle* in his questions will affirme, that the people of the *North* and *South* are a-like barbarous.

But we, to giue some better satisfaction vnto the curious of this age (vnder correction) will presume to diuide the celestiall Orb into foure quarters; the *South*, by the line of the *Æquator*; the *North*, by the Eleuation of the Pole; the *East*, by the Islands of the *Molucca*; and the *West*, by the *Hisperides*.

And, because all the *Auncients*, except *Posidonius* & *Auicine*, limmited the possibility of habitation, to consist wholy between the Tropiques and the polar Cirkels; affirming, that beyond, there was no health, no place peopled, &c. Let this erronious imagination foreuermore be silenced, by the authority

Digitized by Google

rity of all our modern Nauigators, who haue discribed the wholsomest & best peopled Countries, to ly vnder the Æquator: & the regions scituated vnder the Tropiques, to be tormẽted with insufferable heate. Which assertion agreeth also with reason, for that, as euery man knoweth, the Sunne is carried heighest in the Æquator, and therefore by reason of the remote circumference of his circle, passeth with a swifter motion, then it doth in the Tropiques.

Wherefore, to explaine, or rather to amend, the ouersights of the Ancients, we will sub-diuide the portions lying from the Æquator to the Pole, consisting of 90. degrees, into three equall parts, allotting 30. to heate; 30. to cold; and thirty to temperature. Wherein any man may lead a most happy and plentifull life, except in some particular places, such, as are rocky, drowned with waters, couered with sand, or vnhealthfull through contagion of aire.

These thirty portions or degrees (to help imagination) we will also reduce into two, allowing fifteene on this side the Æquator to be temperate, and fifteene beyond the Tropique to be somewhat more inclined to heate. In the Temperate dimension, we shal finde the first fifteene (by the scite and influence of heauen) to bee very moderate and tolerable; and the other fifteene, beginning at the fortith fiue degree, to the sixtith, to be somewhat colder: yea, of the thirty parts of the coldest dimension, 15. to be habitable; but beyond, no Townes, no housing, no meanes afforded to defend the carcasse.

CHAP. 3.

Of the scituation of Nations.

NOw to the South-wards, wee will limit the hithermost *Spaniards*, the *Siculi*, the *Peloponesians*, the *Cretensians*, the *Syrians*, the *Arabians*, the *Persians*, the *Susians*, the *Gedrosij*, the *Indians*, the *Ægiptians*, the *Cirenians*, the *Africans*, the *Numidians*, the *Libians*, the *Moores*, and the people of *Florida* in *Armerica*, to be scituated: but with this caueat, that those who lye to the West-wards in the same latitude, liue in a more

colder

Digitized by Google

colder temperature.

The people of the North, I meane to bee those, which liue vnder the fortieth degree to the sixtieth: and those of more temperature, who extend to the seauentieth. Vnder the first are scituated, *Brittany*, *Ireland*, *Denmarke*, part of *Gotland*, *Netherland*, and those Countries which from the Riuer of *Mase*, stretch to the outmost borders of *Scithia* and *Tartaria*, contayning a good portion of *Europe*, and the greater *Asia*.

The Inhabitants of the middle Region, as beeing subiect neyther to extreame heat, nor to extreame colde, I place betweene both extreames, and yet able to endure both, with indifferent content. I also terme that the middle Region, which lyeth betweene the Tropique and the Pole; and not that, which lyeth betweene the Tropique and the Line, because the extremity of heat is not so forceably felt vnder the Line (as aforesaid) as vnder the Tropiques. So that, that cannot bee accounted the temperate climate, which extendeth from the thirtieth degree to the fortieth, but that, which beginneth at the fortieth, and endeth at the fiftieth: and the nearer East, the more temperate. Vnder which tract lie the further *Spain*, *Fraunce*, *Italy*, the higher *Germany*, (as far as the *Mase*) both *Hungaries*, *Illiria*, both *Misiaes*, *Dacia*, *Moldania*, *Macedon*, *Thrace*, and the better part of *Asia* the lesse, *Armenia*, *Parthia*, *Sogdiana*, and a great part of *Asia* the great. And the nearer the East, the more temperate, although they somewhat incline to the South-ward, as *Lidia*, *Cilicia*, *Asia*, *Madia*, &c.

CHAP. 4.

Of the Constitutions, Complexions and Natures, of the Northerne man.

GEnerally both in the North, in the South, as also in the Middle, you shall obserue great difference both of fashion and qualitie, occasioned no question through the intermingled resort from both *Extremes*. But in the *Extremes* you shall see no such apparant diuersity. For the assured token of a *Scithian* countenance is, his reddish eie, like those of the Owle, which

Digitized by Google

which alſo doe dazle at the ſight of the light. Such eyes (ſayth *Plutarch*) haue the *Cimbrians*, and ſuch at this day the *Danes*. The *Germanes* and the *Brittiſh* haue them not ſo fiery, but rather grey, intermixed with a bright blackneſſe, moſt reſembling the colour of water. And this bright-ſhining colour (ſayth *Ariſtotle*) argueth heate; but blacke (the colour of the Southerne people) betokeneth want thereof. The Grey eye (and ſuch is theirs who inhabite betweene both) is ſharpeſt of ſight, ſeldome troubled with dimneſſe; and according to *Ariſtotle*, denoteth good qualities: the Red, cruelty and auſterity, as *Pliny* and *Plutarch* obſerued of *Silla*, *Cato*, and *Auguſtus*.

The bloud alſo of the *Scithian* is full of ſmall ſtrings, ſuch as are diſcernable in the gore of bulles and boares, and betokeneth ſtrength and courage: The people of the South haue their bloud thin and fluent, like to that of the Hare and Hart, and denoteth feare. Whereupon it may be coniectured, that thoſe Nations which are ſpread from the fortith degree to the ſeauentie fiue Northwarde, are hot within: but the people of the South, what they borrow from the Sun, that they want in themſelues; for in Winter, their inward heate ſtriketh into the center of their bodies; in Summer, it ſpreadeth it ſelfe into the out-moſt parts thereof. The reaſon, why in froſty weather our mindes and ioynts are couragious and ſtrong; in heat, idle and lazie, and ſo our appetites and digeſtion more vehement in Winter, then in Sommer (eſpecially if the Northerne winds be ſtirring.) The Southerne windes effect the contrary in all liuing creatures (ſayth *Ariſtotle*) as may dayly be obſerued amongſt the *Engliſh*, the *Germans*, and the *French*, traueling into *Italy* and *Spaine*: where, if they liue not ſparingly, they fall into ſurfets; witneſſe *Phillip* Duke of *Auſtria*, liuing in *Spaine* after his *German* gutmandizing faſhion.

Againe, the *Spaniards*, who in their own countries liue moſt niggardly, in our parts of the Worlde, proue better trencher-men, then the Natiues. And this experiment falleth not out true in men onely, but alſo in beaſtes, (which as Heardſ-men affirme) being driuen towardes the South, fall away and looſe fleſh; but if they feede towards the North, they proſper and

Digitized by Google

waxe fat. Which I the rather beleeue, for that *Leo Afer* wryteth, that throughout all *Africk*, you shall almost see no herds of Cattle, nor Horse, few flocks of Sheepe, and scarce any milk at all. On the other side, the goodly droues of the *English*, the *Germans*, and the *Scithians*, are celebrated of all Writers; not because their Pastures are better or sweeter then those of the South (by the censure of *Pliny*) but for the nature and temperature of the Heauens, and the ayre.

And as the Northerne-man by nature is hot and moyst, (the Elements of fæcundity) so there is no question, but that of al people, they are, and haue bin, the most populous. For from the *Goths*, the *Scithians*, the *Germans*, and the *Scandians*, not onely vast deserts and goodly cities haue beene founded and inhabited, but from their loynes also, haue Colonies beene deriued throughout all *Europe*. Well therefore might *Methodius*, and *P. Diocanus* resemble their armies to swarmes of Bees. And most true it is, that *Iornandes* and *Olaus* terme the North, the Store-house of Mankind; because from thence, the *Goths*, the *Gepidæ*, the *Huns*, the *Cimbrians*, the *Lombards*, the *Alani*, the *Burgundians*, the *Normans*, the *Picts*, the *Heruli*, the *Swenians*, the *Slani*, the *Swizzers*, and the *Russians*, haue not denied to fetch their pedigrees.

Which maketh me to muse, vpon what reasons *Hippocrates* could build, to say that the Northerne Nations were vnapt for generation, *causa frigiditatis*; whereas the coniectures of heat and moysture argued in their hot and feruent breathings, proceeding from the stomacke, and more apparant in winter then in Sommer, are not so effectually verified in any people, as in the Inhabitauntes of the North. The true motiues, I say, of promptnesse to generation, and not of sensuall concupisence, as *Aristotle* also would haue vs to imagine: A vice more proper to the Sotherne man; performance to the Northern man.

Which indifferent limitation was without doubt allotted to either climate by the handy-worke of God; that those who were of sufficiencie for generation, should not greatly bee addicted to pleasures; and the residue which wanted of that measure of heat and moysture, should delight in wantonnesse, to raise their appetites; without the which, they would neither pro-

Digitized by Google

propagate their iſſue, nor by inter-mariages maintain humane ſocietie.

And that this inward heate alſo maketh the people of the North more couragious, taller, and ſtronger, then the Nations of the South; is apparantly diſcernable, not in our parts onely (by the operatiõ of nature) but alſo in the people dwelling beyond the Tropique of *Capricorne*; where the more they decline from the *Æquator*, the more they ſpread in ſtature and talneſſe. For the land of the *Pentagones* (of ſome termed Giants) is ſcituated vnder the ſame latitude, that *Germany* is.

Which aſſertions holding true, it is no wonder that this ſtrong and couragious people the *Scithians*, haue from the beginning cruelly inuaded the South, erecting therein many goodly Trophies: whereas from the South, hath ſcarce euer beene attempted a iourney worth ſpeaking of, to the indammagement of the North.

The *Aſſirians* vanquiſhed the *Caldeans*; the *Medes* the *Aſſirians*: the *Greekes* the *Perſians*: the *Parthians* the *Greekes*: the *Romanes* the *Carthaginians*: the *Goths* the *Romanes*: the *Turkes* the *Arabians*: the *Tartars* the *Turkes*: and beyond *Danubius* the *Romanes* were euer vnwilling to attempt. Indeede *Traian* erected an admirable bridge of Stone ouer that Riuer (for it had twenty arches, the ruines whereof (by report) are to bee ſeene at this day.) But, after that the ſame *Traian* perceiued, that thoſe Nations were neither eaſily beaten, nor being beaten, would, or could away with ſubiection, he commaunded the bridge to bee broken. Semblably, the *Engliſh* haue giuen the *French* and *Spaniſh* many famous ouerthrowes; eſpecially the *French* in *Fraunce* it ſelfe, euen to the hazzard of their State, and yet neuer could either of both the Nations, at any time fet ſure footing in *England*.

Theſe inrodes of the aforeſaid barbarous Nations I would not reiterate, but that in them (to mine vnderſtanding) the grieuous threats of *Ezechiel*, *Ieremy*, *Eſay*, and the reſt of the Prophets; *That from the North ſhould ariſe warres, footemen, horſemen, and the ruine of kingdomes*: haue bin in, and by them accompliſhed; and moſt properly ought to be referred to that fore-deuided partition, which ſtreatcheth from the fiue and

Digitized by Google

for-

fortieth degree, to the fiftieth and fiue, where *Biarmia* is scituated. For those which dwell beyond, (being either none, or very few) are dried vppe (to vse *Hypocrates* his terme) with as vehement cold, as the people liuing vnder the Tropiques are with heat: Not by reason of their inward heat (as *Aristotle* in his *Meteors* dreamed) but by the rigour of the cold, piercing their bodies, and wasting their Humours; vnto which Humours, the Northerne people are generally subiect. A manifest signe whereof, is their immoderate drinking, which in the *Saxons*, and the Inhabitants of the *Baltique* Sea, could neuer yet bee moderated, by time, nor states. And that these Humours cause the body to spread, let the Monsters of the sea resolue our doubtes, who growe to that immensiue vastnesse aboue al other liuing creatures, *propter humiditatis copiam.*

But (as I take it) this ouermuch moysture in the Northerne people, turneth them often into many grieuous inconueniences. For if you obserue any of those Nations to trauell towards the South, or to make wars in hotte countries, you shall finde them to faint and perish thorough immoderate sweating; as *Plutarch*, in the life of *Marius*, obserued in the Rheumatick bodies of the *Cimbrians*. And as experience manifesteth in the Horse, who beeing by nature hot and moyst, liueth barely in *Æthiopia*, and liketh well in *Scithia*: whereas on the contrary, the Asse, being cold and dry, is lusty and of good seruice in *Afrique*, in *Europe* poore and base; in *Scithia* not to be found.

CHAP. 5.

Of the People of the South.

THe people of the South, as concerning the constitutions of their bodies, are said to be cold, dry, thick-skind, thin and short-hayrd, weake, browne, small-timbred, black-eyed, and shril-voyced: the Northerne Men contrary, and the middle people indifferently perticipating of both. The Spanish women term the Germans, *molles pisces*, that is, spongie fishes, for their continual drinking; and in *Italy* and *Prouince*, the inhabitants doe much wonder at the *English*, the *French*, and the *Flem-*

Digitized by Google

Flemmings, for their nightly complaintes of the bitings of the Gnats and Cimeces (a kind of wormes breeding in their beds and bed-ſteades,) whereas they themſelues doe little regard them.

But as the bodies of the Northerne people are indewed with ſtrength and courage; ſo the weake conſtitutions of the Sotherne Nations, are ſupplyed by the extraordinary guifts of the mind: terme them what you pleaſe, either wit, or ſubtletie.

Of cruelty alſo they haue euer beene taxed; Read *Leo Afer*, his Hiſtory of *Afrike*, and the *Carthaginian* diſſentions: or if antiquity pleaſe you not, then turne your eyes to the late butcheries of *Muleaſſes* and his Childeren, and diligently waigh, if euer your eares hard of more helliſh furies, then thoſe which theſe Princes haue put in execution, either vppon their vaſſals, or againſt their owne lineage. Which if you vntertake, then ſhall you ſee miſerable *Muleaſſes* depriued of his kingdome, with his eyes burnt out, his face diſſigured, and in lamentable diſtreſſe (by the cruelty of his brother) proſtrating his complaints at the feete of *Charles* the Emperour.

For to ſpeake vprightly, from theſe Nations more then from any other, haue tortures of more exquiſite deuiſe taken their originals: as exoculations, tearing of members, fleaings, gaſhings with ſwordes, ſore fires, and impalements on ſtakes. All which, the *Italians*, the *French*, the *Spaniſh*, the *Greekes*, and the people of *Aſia*, haue euer abhoired, and neuer admitted, but vppon occaſions of horrible treaſons, and that vnwillingly too, as borowed from their neighbors.

And that no man ſhould coniecture, as doth *Polibius*, that euill education ſhould produce this diſpoſition of crueltie, I would aduiſe him to looke into the nature of the *Sotherne Americans*, who alſo bath their Childeren in the gore of theyr ſlaughtered enemies, then drinke their bloud, and laſtly banquet with the quartred carkaſſes of their enemies. But if peraduenture any man will obiect the like cruelty in the Northerne man, I would wiſh him to put this difference: that the man of the North is tranſported into fury by the heate of courage, and purſueth his reuenge in open combat; where being prouoked, & the paſſion aſwaged, he is eaſily pacified: where-

Digitized by Google

as the Sothern man, is not easily prouoked: nor once in passion, is easily to be reconciled: and in actions of war, he wholy setteth his hopes on policies and stratagems, tormenting with great indignity and cruelty, his slaine or vanquished enemies, and that in cold bloud. A disposition base and brutish, arising partly (I deny not) from that instinct of fury, which euill education, and their inueterate desire of reuenge, do ingender in nature, but more properly increased by the vnequall distribution of humours, and these humours by the inequality of the elements. By the influence of celestiall prouidence, these elements are proportioned, and by these elements, humaine bodies are transported, and bloud infused in the body, life in the bloud, the soule in life, and vnderstanding in the soule: which although it bee free from passion, yet by proximity it cannot but participate of neighbour-imperfection: the reason, wherfore the peoples dwelling on either side our Middest, are more prone to vice and soule behauiour.

For as melancholly can no more be wanting to blood, then lees to wine: no otherwise can these passions which arise from melancholly, bee extracted from the body.

Now, the Southerne people hauing the greatest portion of their other humours drawn out by the heat of the Sun, the melancholike (wherewith they most abound) remain, & as dregs settle at the base of all their actions, being the more exasperated by their froward and peruerse dispositions. That men of these constitutions, are vtterly implacable, *Aiax* and *M. Coriolanus* may serue for presidents; the former of whome, for that hee could not haue his will on his enemy, in a madding moode fell vpon droues of Cattle: the other, would in no wise be reconciled to his Countrey, before he saw the Cities thereof on a flaming fire, in daunger of irrecouerable destruction.

CHAP. 6.

Of the people of the Middle Region.

OF this diuision are those, who at this day, vnderstanding the reciprocal bounds of Gouernment and subiection, and in-

Digitized by Google

ured

ured to ciuill and sociable conditions, are sufficiently enabled to frustrate the policies of the South, and to oppose against the furies of the North. Out of this mold, would *Vitruuius* haue a commaunder to be chosen: and howe iudiciously, let others say; wee will onely maintaine by Historicall experience, that the *Gothes*, *Hunnes*, *Heruli*, and *Vandals*, wasted *Asia*, *Africk*, and *Europe*, and yet for want of good Counsell, could neuer maintaine their conquests; whereas far weaker forces, assisted by wisedome and politique gouernement, haue not onely brought barbarous Nations to ciuility, but likewise perpetuated most florishing Empires.

In approbation whereof, the Poets faigned *Pallas* to be armed, and *Achilles* to be by her protected. It is recorded also of *Cato Censorius*, that he was a valiant Captaine, a sage Senator, an vpright Iudge, and a great Scholler. Of *Cæsar*, that he was a Politician, an Historian, an Orator, and a Warriour. Of *Agamemnon*, that hee was a good Gouernour, and a tall Souldiour. And therefore no wonder, if the *Scithians* hauing learning, and the Southerne Nations abhorring Armes, could neuer make good their conquered acquisitions. The *Romanes* imbraced both, to their great good fortunes, and according to *Platoes* Rule, intermingled Musicke (as the saying is) with martiall exercises. From the *Gracians* they deemed it no discredit to borrow Lawes and Letters; from the *Carthaginians* and *Sicilians*, the Art-Marine: the Military they had in perfection by continuance and assiduity. Before these times, Scithian-like they stroke down-right blowes; afterwards, they learned of the *Spaniards* (sayth *Polibius*) to thrust with the point.

Thus much by way of reading and obseruation for Inclination and Industry; for mine owne part, I cannot but attribute these qualities of Strength in the Scithian, Wit in the Sothern man, and Indifferencie in the Middle-man, to the Diuine prouidence; who in his præscience adiudged it best, vpon cruell & barbarous men, as vpon Buls and brute beasts, not to bestow these good guifts of the Minde: neyther vpon subtle and varous people, courage and strength of body; least both should abuse both, to the destruction of each other. For as *Aristotle* sayeth, *There is nothing more dangerous then armed furie.*

Where-

Digitized by Google

Wherefore, ſithence all Nations haue their faults, aſwell as their vertues, let vs neither reproach the laudable ſobriety of the Sotherne man, nor taxe the free drinking of the Northerne man; faculties (without controuerſie) peculiar to either people: But rather, according to reaſon, let vs weigh with our ſelues, that the Southerne man for want of naturall diſgeſtion, if hee ſhould gurmandize, would fall into Surfets, Apoplexies, &c. And the Northerne man, if he would, cannot conſtraine abſtinence, by reaſon of his inward thirſt, proceeding of heat. And this ſhould haue bin the conſideration of all Authours, before they had proceeded to raſh condemnation.

So againe, if the *Greeke*, the *Ægiptian*, the *Arabian*, or the *Caldean*, be to be taxed of Superſtition, Sorcery, Cowardize, Treachery or Laſciuiouſneſſe; yet let them not be ſo reiected, but that we vouchſafe in them, to imitate what hath bin commendable, what excellent. For from theſe Nations in trueth, haue Letters, Arts, Learning, Diſcipline, Philoſophy, Religion, and the rules of humaine ſociety, bin deriued, ouer the face of the habitable earth.

Neither let vs detract from the induſtries of the Northern Nations, neither take exceptions againſt the frailties of thoſe whom God hath allotted to poſſeſſe the middle Regions. For albeit (as I ſaide at firſt) that no ouer-weening credite bee to be giuen to Starres and planets, yet ſo far let vs leane to the learned, as experience may ſeeme to verifie what they haue obſerued.

To the Sothern people, they place *Saturne* as Lord and gouernour: To the Middle, *Iupiter*: To the Northerne, *Mars*. And theſe in generall. But becauſe of perticulars, they put *Venus* in coniunction with *Saturne*: *Mercury* with *Iupiter*, and *Luna* with *Mars*. The Sunne as Moderator, they haue confined as indifferent.

The *Chaldeans* ſay, that the influence of *Saturne* operateth in apprehenſion: the influence of *Iupiter*, in action: and the influence of *Mars* in execution. The *Hebrewes* terme *Saturn* quiet, peaceable, contemplatiue; *Iupiter*, iuſt, wiſe, &c. And *Mars* ſtrong and full of courage. *Saturne* (they ſay) is cold, *Mars* hotte, and *Iupiter* moderate.

But

Digitized by Google

But that this people haue also their faultes and are subiect to choler, I must not gain-say, but aduise you to consider, that when this passion hapneth to ouer-rule reason, it burneth the bloud, and incenseth the mind to quarreling and reuenge, but in a far fairer measure (as I said before) then melancholy doth in the nature of a Southerne man; according to *Cicero: Passion may ouer beare a Wiseman; Madnes cannot.*

Now, that the people of the South, haue been giuen to the studies of contemplation (a profession befitting their melancholique humours) let their excellent writers, and Inuentors of many noble Sciences; as the *History of Nature*, the Mathematiques *Religion*, and the *operation of the Planets*, plead their properties.

The Northern people, being lesse giuen to contemplation, by reason of their plenty of bloud and humours, distempering their minds and hindering its faculties, haue without teaching found out such Arts as fall within the compasse of vnderstanding and apprehension; as Mechanicall workmanships, Ordinance, casting of Mettals, Printing, and Minerals.

Being also the darlings of *Mars*, they haue alwaies and that with incredible eagernesse of courage, imbraced the Art Military, loued Armes, leuelled Mountaines, and turned streames; giuing themselues wholy to Hunting, to Tillage, to Grasing, and to those Arts which are managed by labour. Insomuch that a man may well affirme, that their wittes consist in their hands. The reason why the Astrologers (if you please to beleeue them) affirme, *That those who haue Mars Lord in their Natiuities, become either Souldiers or Trades men.*

But the people of the *Middle Region*, are neither borne so apt to the studying of Arcane Sciences, as are the Southern-men; nor so eagerly giuen to Mechanicall labours, as are the Northern men: but in management of ciuil affairs, they proue most eminent. Let any man confer time and History, and hee shall finde, that by this people the rudiments of ciuill behauiour, of Lawes, good Customes, Statization, Marchandizing, Oratory, and Dialect, haue beene bettered, if not inuented. And no maruaile: for *Iupiter* and *Mercury* are saide to bee the Schoole-Maisters of Sciences, and they that are borne vnder

either

Digitized by Google

eyther, are exceeding apt thereto of their proper inclinations. Witnesse *Asia*, *Gracia*, *Assiria*, *Italy*, *Fraunce*, and the higher *Germany* (which lieth betweene the Pole and the Æquator from the 40. degree to the 50.) From hence the greatest Empires, the best Iudges, the wisest Lawyers, the eloquentest Orators, the skilfullest Merchants, and finally, the most exquisit Historians and acters of Comedies, that euer were, haue proceeded. In *Africa* haue none such been found; In *Scithia*, fewer, no not one, *Anacharsis* excepted.

Thus hath God and Nature decreed, that the *Scithian* (or Northern-man) should carry the reputation of *Strength*; the Sothern-man, the praise of *Contemplation*: And the people inhabiting betweene both, the attributes of wisedome. And yet in al places (according to their Scituations) shal you find, some more strong, some more contemplatiue, and some more wise. *Sed à particulari non est filogizart.*

Of the East and West, what can more be said, when in truth in places paralell, the Sun neither riseth nor falleth. For when it approcheth the South, which is about noonetide, then is it said to fall by the East people, and to rise, by the Sothern.

CHAP. 7.

Of the World, and the greatest Princes therein.

IT now remaineth, that I vndertake the secõd branch of Obseruatiõ; which is, to relate vnto our Traueller of the greatest Princes and Potentates, which at this day sway the world.

First therefore, let him vnderstand, that one Prince obtaineth reputation ouer another, eyther by largnesse of *Territory* and *casuall aduantage*; or from *multitudes of Men*, and their *valour*; and that consisting in the quality of their weapons, and their vse; from *Riches*; the *Oportunity* of *Scituation*; or from *Occasions*.

The enlarging of *Dominion*, is the vniting and establishing of diuers Territories vnder one Soueraign gouernment, whervnto is necessarily required such numbers of men, as may exceed the fatall dangers and doubtfull chances, incident to casualties.

Digitized by Google

ſualties. For ſmall numbers are ſoone conſumed by Plague, or oppreſſed by a more mighty enemy; ouerthrowne in one battell, or conſumed by a long war: to which inconueniences great numbers and populous Nations are not ſo ſubiect. By the aduantage heereof, the *Barbarians*, the *Egyptians*, the *Aſſirians*, and the *Perſians*, haue for the moſt part brought their attempts to happy ends. The *Romaines* (if in reſpect of their Honor) they did not ordinarily vſe huge Armies, yet they alwaies preuailed, by reaſon of their populous territories, or their indefatigable continuance; beeing thereby able the ſecond and third time to re-inforce their Legions, & finally with freſh ſupplies to ouercome their enemies, being weakned with ouercomming. Now to multiply and maintaine theſe numbers, as they haue at ſometimes receiued into their territories their very enemies, ſo at other times haue they ſent forth Colonies of their owne people. By meanes whereof, and other ſuch like policies, they grew to ſuch multitudes, that in the eight yeare of the raigne of the Emperour *Claudius*, the people were numbred to be ſixe millions, being a number at this preſent, not to be found within the bounds of al *Italy*: whereby they became conquerors of the parts of the world then diſcouered. Conqueſt (ſay I) vndertaken by them, as much in regard of *their numbers*, as of *their valour*.

True *Valour*, conſiſteth, partly in iudicious apprehenſion, (whereby both conuenient opportunities are diſcerned & entertained, and all difficulties diſcouered and preuented:) and partly, in the forward reſolution of the minde: by coniunction of which two Vertues, great enterprizes are vndertaken with good ſucceſſe; dangers almoſt ineuitable made light, & waighty attempts, brought to happy concluſions. Of theſe two I do not know which to preferre as moſt neceſſary, and of greateſt importance; but moſt certain it is, that the one without the other, little auaileth, to the atchieuing of any matter worthy enterpriſe. For wiſedome without courage, may rather be termed ſubtilty, then iudicious carriage: and courage without diſcretion, is rather furious raſhneſſe, then true valour; neyther let any man ſuppoſe, that from wilineſſe without force, nor force without iudgement, can proceed any proiect of worthy conſi-

Digitized by Google

deration. For all disseignes which haue in them greatnes, haue also in them difficulty and hardnesse, and to maister vneasie actions, it is necessary both to vse iudgement in fore-seeing of daungers, and courage to ouercome them, once vnder-taken. These two ioyned in one man, or in one Nation, are apt meanes to raise their fortunes aboue their neighbors. As we see amongst birds, the Eagle; among beasts, the Lyon; among Fishes, the Dolphin; (in whom do appeare some shadowes of wit & courage) are esteemed, as it were, Princes aboue their Fellow-creatures.

But if any man affirme, that true Iudgement cannot be seuered from true valour, yet giue me leaue to affirme, that ordinarily the one doth appeare more discernable aboue the other in diuers subiects. For we may note in *Phillip* King of the *Macedons*, and in *Amilcar* the *Carthaginian*, great foresight & wisedome, and in *Alexander* and *Hanibal* (their sonnes) more courage and valour; In *Fabritius*, iudicious warinesse; in *Marcellus*, couragious forwardnesse: both which were alike feareful and disastrous to the valiant *Haniball*.

Yet I say not, but som actions are better dealt in, by the one, then by the other. For generally, to conquer & win, courage is more auayleable then wit; but to establish and keepe that which is gotten, discretion is more to bee desired, then it; as may well be discerned in the *Spaniards*, who haue surer setled themselues in that which they haue gained by theyr waryneſse and indgement, then did the French by their furie and hazard.

But if any man should vrge me to speake my opinion, whether courage or wisedome be more necessarily to be required; I wold giue my consent with courage. My reason is, that wisdome is giuen but to few, and that must be gotten by trauell, by long time and study; whereas courage naturally is by diuers meanes, and vpon sodain casualties imparted & dispersed in the minds of many: which many hauing to deale with few, will casually find oportunity to vanquish and ouercome. As wee reade of the *Gothes*, the *Vandals*, the *Tartarians*, and the *Turks*, who with courage only haue atchieued great cõquests, and haue broght to passe such enterprises, as a man wold haue thought

Digitized by Google

thought vnpoſſible: The reaſon whereof is, that their ſodaine and ſpeedy mouings, and their vnexſpected boldnes, hath confounded the Counſels, and amazed the iudgements of the wiſeſt Commanders. Beſides, in ſodaine hurly-burlies of war it is commonly ſeene, that courage openeth more gaps and affoordeth more reliefe, then pollicy; for that in ſuch caſes, reaſon is iealous, ſuſpicious and fearefull, and men ſtand as it were amazed at the greatnes of the preſent daunger: whereas courage doth oft-times gather ſtrength in extreame diſpaire. *Vna ſalus victis nullam ſperare ſalutem.*

Yea, it is commonly ſeen, that thoſe people which are more commended for their wit and pollicy, then for their courage and valour, haue giuen place to thoſe which are more eſteemd for their reſolution, then for their skilfulneſſe; as the *Greekes* and the *Macedons* doe at this day to the *Turks*; the *Gaules* of old, to the *French*; the *Egyptians* to the *Perſians*; the *Sarazens* to the *Chaldeans*; and other Nations to the *Perſians*, and *Parthians*. Yea it is the receiued opinion, that the *French* did range *Italy* at their pleaſure vnder *Charles* the eight, and gaue them the Law, becauſe in thoſe times the *Italian* Princes did wholy giue themſelues to the ſtudy of good Letters.

Whereupon I dare boldly affirme, that thoſe States which do conſiſt of a people, whereof one part is inclined to witte and pollicy, and another part to fiercenes, do for the moſt part liue in little quiet: of which quality are thoſe Countries, whereof one part is playne and fruitfull, and the other mountainous and barren; becauſe the Inhabitaunts of the plaine Countrey by reaſon of the commodities thereof, and the eaſineſſe of Commerce and Traffique, and by th'experience thereof enſuing, are vſually circumſpect and witty; whereas on the contrary, the Inhabitants of Mountaines, by reaſon of the ſharpneſſe of the place which doeth harden them, and by the bluntneſſe of theyr manners, which doeth accompany them, they become of greater courage and ſtubborner reſolutions. Such is *Spain*, where the *Biskaines*, the *Aragons* and other people inhabiting the Mountaines and remote places of the kingdome are of ſuch condition, that by reaſon of theyr many Priuiledges, they liue vnder a King, but as if they were at libertie and in a free

Digitized by Google

State; whereas the *Castilians* and *Andoluzians*, whose Country is more plaine and fruitfull, apply themselues willingly to the pleasure and command of the same Kings and Soueraign. Neither can there be alledged a truer reason of the troubles of the kingdom of *Naples*, then the different qualities of the Country; as some mountaine, some plaine, some fruitfull, some rocky; of which it doth altogither consist, and whereupon doth proceed the difference of mindes and manners in the Inhabitants; As some rude, some sauadge, some curteous, and some ciuill; whereby they continually disagreeing among themselues, haue oftentimes falne togither by the eares, one betaking himselfe to the protection of one Prince, and the other, to the tuition of another. By contrary reason, *Lumbardy* (because it doth consist of pleasant champion) is more quiet and at peace, then *Thuscan*, which is deuided into mountaines and vallies. Also, in a Citty where the Cittizens are of equall courage and wit, peace and quiet is hardly maintained: which doth appeare by *Florence* and *Genua*, Citties repleniſhed with men, excellent for their pollicy and greatnes of mind, and therefore little concord to be foūd amongst them. On the contrary, the Countries which are plain and of an vniforme scite, are, by reason of the conformity of their manners, easily reduced and kept vnder one gouernment, without any difficulty: as *Polonia*, *Littuanio*, *Hungary*, *Egipt*, *Fraunce* and *Bohemia*.

Moreouer, there is a certain fiercenes, or rather fury, which commeth neere to valor: for that excesse of boldnes (wherwith the *Gaules*, and afterward the *Frenchmen*) haue atchieued notable exploits, is in some sorte commendable. But withall, it is worthy of obseruation, that such like acquisitions are of continuance. For in an assault, irresolution is much auailable, but in preseruing & defending, it hurteth more than profiteth. Wherupon it was well said, Moderation to bee the Mother of continuance to States and Kingdomes. The *Swissers* shewed themselues notable herein, especially in the wars of *Nauar*; insomuch as *Iames Triuulz* reporteth, that their battell seemed rather to consist of Giants, than of ordinary Soldiors. Neither hath any Nation euer dealt more at aduenture, or hath vsed more boldnes and blind fury, then the *Portugals*, whose Voyages beyond the

Digitized by Google

the Cape of *Good-Hope*, and the Straights of *Sinca Pura*; their conqueſts of *Ormus*, of *Goa*, of *Malacca*, and the *Moluccos*; the defence of *Cochin*, of *Din*, of *Chaul*, and of *Goa*, are more true and commendable, then in reaſon likely to haue proſpered.

The qualities of weapons, and the order of diſcipline, are important inſtruments of this valor. The *Macedons* atchieued great conqueſtes by reaſon of their pikes, and by martialing their ſquadrons. The *Romans*, by the meanes of their piles or darts. The *Parthians*, with their Steele-bowes, the *Engliſh*, with their Long-bowes, and the *Spaniards*, in the new world, with Horſe and Harcubuze.

Treaſure is an aduantage of great importance: foraſmuch as ther is nothing more neceſſary in wars, or of more vſe in peace. By meanes hereof, the *Florentines* became Lords of a great part of *Thuſcan*: they bought many Cittes. They freed themſelues from the incurſions of diuers enimies; they mantained the wars many years againſt the *Piſans*, & againſt the proweſſe of thoſe peoples, and the power of thoſe Princes, which did aid them; and at the laſt, brought that war to good end. By meanes hereof, the *Venetians* made themſelues Lords of *Lumbardy*, and endured the forces of the King of *Hungary*, the *Archduke* of *Auſtria*, and of diuers other Princes. Whereby it appeareth, that mony worketh two notable effects, to the augmentation and continuance of the greatnes of kingdomes & eſtates. The one, to prouide and gather force, and thoſe being gotten, to vphold and maintain, with ſupplies of Soldiers, victuals, munition and armes. The other, that it doth offer vs opportunity, if not to weaken and vanquiſh the enimy, hauing gotten the aduantage; yet at leaſt, it doth enable vs to endure & withſtand him; that by drawing out the war in length, we may make him weary of continuance, & giues vs benefit of time. By this temporizing, the *Venetians* being ouerthrown in all places by the league of *Cambray*, in the end became Conquerors. So that, as to him that hath a populous Army, and findes himſelfe mighty and ſtrong, it is moſt conuenient to haſten the encounter, and to fight without deferring or prolonging of time; for delay (the ouerthrowe of many actions) can affoorde him no other, but loſſe, ſickeneſſe, infection, ſcaroity, famine, mutinies, and diſ-

ſolution

Digitized by Google

ſolution of forces : So for him, that is better furniſhed with money then with men, it is moſt aduantagious, to prolong the war, and to ſtand vppon the defenſiue; for in the end, his money may giue him victory.

The aduantage of ſcite is of much importance, for the defending or enlarging of dominion, and doth chiefly conſiſt in this : that it be conuenient for the making of an aſſault, and vneaſie to be again aſſaulted. For a Countrey being as it were naturally fortified, hath eaſie meanes to make conqueſtes and get victory, to the enlargement of their owne dominions, and to the ouerthrow of anotheis. Of this qualitie are the ſcituations of *Spain* and *Araby*, for both theſe are (as it were) *peny-Inſulaes*, hauing their greateſt parts incompaſſed with the ſea, whereby they may aſſaile the Countries neare adioyning, and cannot without great difficulty be aſſaulted againe. The one hath dangerous ſhores without harbors, and is inuironed with mountains (hauing few and ſecret paſſages) the other, is incloſed with ſands and deſerts; of the ſame quality is *Italy*: And among the Ilands, is *England*. But this aduantage of ſcituation is not ſufficient of it ſelfe to effect any notable exploit: beſides, ther is required plety of victuals, ſtore of munition, armes, horſes and diuers other neceſſaries, without which, ther is no hope to accompliſh any famous expedition. Moreouer, ſuch a diſpoſition and quality of the country is neceſſarily to be required, that the aforeſaid habiliments may eaſily be broght togither, and remoued to places, whether occaſion ſhal command. And although thoſe which poſſeſſe the mountaines and higher places, may with aduantage come down vpon the plaine and low countries, and by reaſon of the craggednes and hard paſſages of their country, can hardly be aſſalted again, yet haue not ſuch people done any thing which may worthily commend them.

For the mountaines be ordinarily long and narrow, or at the leaſt, much broken & diuided amongſt themſelues (which muſt needs hinder the ſpeedy drawing togither and vniting of their forces & neceſſaries) ſo again, are they vnprouided of victuals, and of all other things requiſite for the wars, and therfore are altogether vnable to continue long in action. And therefore their wars are rather after the manner of robbers and theeues,

then

Digitized by Google

then of true souldiery: It may also bee added, that the mountain-men cannot liue any long time without entercourse and trafficke with the men of the plaine Countrey. And therefore if vpon any attempt, they do not preuaile at the first brunt; their best course will be, to capitulate with their enemies, and to returne home againe although with losse; as did the *Heluetij* at the ouerthrow of *Mount S. Claud.*

So we may see, that the *Englishmen* which inhabit a plaine and plentifull soyle, haue alwayes preuailed against the *Scots* and *Welshmen*, who presuming vpon the strength of their own Countrey, haue diuers times molested them. For the playne Countrey by reason of the fruitfulnesse, doth minister al things requisite for war, and to defray charges; conueniency to ioyn forces, and being gotten together, able long time to maine-tain them: Whereas on the contrary, the Mountaines, by reason of their barrennesse, affoord no prouision for a long iourney, nor are any way able to beare the charge of any notable enterprise.

Whereupon it doth proceed, that small Islands hauing the foresaid qualities of Scituation, haue neuer attained any great Soueraignty; because the aduantages of the Land are far greter than those of the Sea. Moreouer, their commaund cannot be great, vnlesse it be enlarged by meanes of the firme Land; for Islands hold the same proportion with the Continent, that the part doeth with the whole. Besides, they be for the most part long and narrowe, as *Candia, Cyprus, Spagniola, Cuba, S. Laurence,* and *Sumatra,* and therefore cannot readily bring their forces together. Neither will I sticke to say, that Islands although they may with aduantage come foorth and assaile others, are notwithstanding, as it were Citties without walles, laid open to the spoile of all Inuadors. As it happened to *Cicile* being assaild by the *Athinians* and the *Lacedemonians*, and afterwards by the *Carthaginians* and the *Romans*. But the Prouinces of the firme Land, being for the most part of a proportion more round or square, haue their forces continually near together, and to be speedily vnited; and therefore more ready and apt for opposition.

Yet to small purpose are all these aforesaid aduauntages, if

Digitized by Google

opportunity giue not ayde thereunto. This opportunity, is a meeting and concurring of diuers cadences, which at one instant doe make a matter very easie, and at another time, beeing ouerslipped, it will be impossible, or at least very hard, to bring to like facilitie. Wherefore amongst many and diuers, I will here note the most principall. The first groweth by the basenes and negligence of the Neighbour-Princes, arising either by reason of a naturall defect and dulnesse, or of too long a peace. So *Cæsar* possest himselfe of *Italy* and of the Common-wealth, being ready and in Armes, the State being disarmed and not looking for any such matter. So the *Barbarians* subdued the Empire of *Rome*: The *Arabians* the Empire of the East, of *Egipt*, and of *Spaine*. *Charles* the eight King of *France* and *Italy*: The *Portugalles*, *India*. The *Castilians*, the new world; and *Soliman*, the Kingdome of *Hungary*.

Petty Seigniories.

The diuision of the neighbouring States, either into Common-wealthes, or into petty Seigniories, and those of small power, gaue courage to the *Romaines* to make themselues Lords of *Italy*, and made an easie passage for the *Venetians* into *Lumbardy*. This also made the attempt of *Thuscan* light vnto the *Florentines*, and no lesse that of *Barbary* to the *Castilians*; and to the *Portugals*, that of *Morocco*: which they wold haue found very hard, if either the one, or the other, had expected them with armed forces.

The variance and iarring of the adioyning Princes did open the way to the *Turkes* to enter so farre into *Christendome*, and with little trouble to inuest himselfe of many kingdomes therein. So *Amorath* the third, presuming vpon the ciuill discordes of the Princes of the bloud Royall of *Persia*, made that attempt with great aduantage. Neither doth the whole mischiefe arise out of these intestine iarres onely, but in all factions one part will be sure to intreat the aide of some forraigne Prince against the other: then which, no man can haue a better occasion, because then hee commeth armed into the owners house at his own request. So the *Romaines* set foot in *Cicil*, being cald in by the *Mamertines*: In *Greece* by the *Athenians*: In *Numidia* by the Sonnes of *Micipsa*: In *Prouince* by the *Marsilians*: In *France* by the *Hedui*, and so from time to time, by

Digitized by Google

by diuers others. So *Amorath* the firſt King of *Turks* got hold in *Europe*, being requeſted in aid by the Emperour of the Eaſt, being then in war with the Princes of *Greece*. So *Soliman*, in *Hungary*, being intreated by Queene *Iſabell*, and afterwardes by King *Iohn*. So the *Aragons*, in the kingdome of *Naples*, being drawne thither by Queene *Ione* the ſecond: and ſo *Henry* the ſecond King of *France*, made himſelfe Lord of three great Cities of the Empire.

CHAP. 8.

Of Trauell.

LAſtly, ſithence *Plato*, one of the Day-ſtarres of that knowledge, which then but dawning, hath ſince, ſhone out in clearer brightneſſe; thought nothing fitter, for the bettering of our vnderſtanding, then Trauell: aſwell by hauing a conference with the wiſer ſort in all ſorts of learning, as by the Eie-ſight of thoſe things, which otherwiſe a man cannot attain vnto but by Tradition. A Sandy foundation either in matter of Science, or Conſcience. Let mee alſo in this place bee bold to informe you, that all purpoſe to Trauell, if it be not, *ad voluptatem ſolum, ſed ad vtilitatem*, argueth an induſtrious and generous minde. Baſe and vulgar ſpirits houer ſtill about home: Thoſe are more Noble and Diuine, that imitate the Heauens, and ioy in motion.

He therefore that intends to Trauel out of his owne Countrey, muſt likewiſe reſolue to Trauell out of his Countrey faſhion, and indeede out of himſelfe: that is, out of his former intemperate feeding, diſordinate drinking, thrift-leſſe gaming, fruit-leſſe time-ſpending, violent exerciſing, and irregular miſgouerning whatſoeuer. Hee muſt determine, that the end of his Trauell, is his ripening in knowledge; and the end of his knowledge, is the ſeruice of his Countrey, which of right, challengeth the better part of vs.

This is done, by Preſeruation of himſelfe from the Hazards of Trauell, and Obſeruation of what hee heares and ſees in his Trauelling. The Hazards, are two: of the Minde, and of the Body: Of Hazard.

Digitized by Google

Body: that, by the infection of Errors, this by the corruption of Manners. For who so drinketh of the poysonous cup of the one, or tasteth the sower liquor of the other, looseth the true relliſh of Religion and Vertue, bringeth home a leprous Soule, and a tainted body, retayning nothing but the ſhame of eyther, or repentance of both: whereof in my Trauell I haue ſeene ſome examples, and by them made vſe, to preuent both miſchiefes, which I will briefly ſhewe: And firſt of the better part.

Of Mind. Concerning the Trauellers Religion, I teach not what it ſhould bee, (being out of my Element) nor enquire what it is, (being out of my Commiſſion;) onely my hopes are, he be of the Religion here eſtabliſhed: and my aduiſe is, he be therein well ſetled; and that howſoeuer his imagination ſhall be carried in the voluble Sphere of diuers mens diſcourſes; yet hys inmoſt thoughts (like lines in a Circle) ſhall alwayes concenter in this immooueable poynt: *Not to alter his firſt Faith*: For I know, that, as all innouation is dangerous in a State; ſo is this change in the little Common-wealth of a Man. And it is to be feared, that hee which is of one Religion in his youth, and of another in his man-hood, will in his age be of neither.

Wherefore, if my Traueller will keepe this Bird ſafe in hys boſome, hee muſt neyther be inquiſitiue after other mens Religions, nor prompt to diſcouer his owne. For I holde him vnwiſe, who in a ſtrange Countrey, will eyther ſhew his mind, or his money.

Of Religion. And as I would not haue him to change, ſo would I wiſh him, to beware how hee heare any thing repugnant thereto: for as I haue tyed his tongue, ſo muſt I ſtop his eares, leaſt they be open to the ſmooth incantations of an inſinuating Seducer, or the ſubtle arguments of a ſophiſtical aduerſary. To this effect, I muſt preciſely forbid him the fellowſhip or company of one ſort of people in generall; thoſe are the Ieſuites, vnderminders and inueiglers of green wits, ſeducers of men in matter of Faith, and ſubuerters of men in matter of State; making of both a bad Chriſtian, and a woorſe Subiect. Theſe men I would haue my Traueller neuer heare, except in the Pulpit; for being eloquent, they ſpeake excellent language; and being

Digitized by Google

ing wiſe, and (therefore beſt knowing howe to ſpeake to beſt purpoſe) they ſeldome, or neuer handle matter of controuerſie.

As for other orders of Religion, Fryers or Monkes, or whaſoeuer, let him vſe them for his bettering, eyther in matter of language, or other knowledge. They are good companions, they are not ſo daungerous; they talke more of theyr cheere, then of their Church; of their feaſtes, then their Faith; of good wine, then good works; of Courtiſans, then Chriſtianity. The reaſon is, becauſe fewe of them are learned, many careleſſe in their profeſſion, almoſt all, diſſolute in their conuerſation.

I haue excepted againſt the Perſons: I will now proteſt againſt the places. Theſe are, *Rome*, *Rhemes*, and *Doway*, but theſe two laſt, being out of all ordinary road of Trauell; I ſay, he that goes that way, goes doubly out of his way, and ſhall neither haue this diſcourſe for his direction, nor mee for hys Companion. Let me only ſay of *Rome*, becauſe it is the Seminary and Nurſery of Engliſh Fugitiues, and yet a place, moſt woorthy to be ſeene, *vel antiquitatis cauſa, vel nouitatis*) that it is ſuſpected of all, knowne to many, and proued by ſome, to be dangerous that way. Of Perſons & Places.

Thus much of the perſons and places haue I noted, hee that ſhal meet with others of like condition and danger, let him ſee and ſhun. It remaineth I ſpeake of bettering the minde, by the knowledge and vnderſtanding of Tongues: for as for learning the liberal Sciences, he hath much better means at home, their manner of teaching, and orders of Vniuerſities, being far inferior to ours.

For the attayning therefore of Language, it is conuenient, that hee make choice of the beſt places: Theſe are, *Orleans* for the French; *Florence* for the Italian; and *Lipſick* for the Dutch Tongues: for in theſe places is the beſt Language ſpoken. And as wee obſerue a difference of ſpeech in our Countrey; of the North, from the South; and the Weſt, from both: or as we haue learned of the Greekes, that they had fiue ſeuerall kinds of *Dialects*: ſo differ they infinitely in *Germany*, but that of *Miſnia* is the beſt, where *Lipſicke* ſtandes. More in *Fraunce*, Of Language.

Digitized by Google

where the *Picard* ſpeakes one, the *Norman* another, the *Britton* his, the *Gaſcoigne* his, the *Prouencall* and *Sauoyard* theirs, the *Inlanders* theirs: but of all theſe, the *Orleanois* is the beſt. As alſo in *Italy*, the *Romaine* hath one kinde of phraſe and pronounciation; the *Neapolitan*, another; the *Venetian* a third; the *Bergamaſco*, a woorſe; but the beſt of all, is the *Tuſcan*, where *Florence* ſtandes: yet I preſcribe not theſe places ſo preciſely, as that hee may not liue in others, and learne the Language as well: for in *Tuſcany*, *Siena*, and *Prato*, are ſome places, where the ſpeech is as good, as that of *Florence*, and more retired, and of leſſe charge: therefore fitter for ſome, whoſe proportion for expence is but ſmall. So haue ye in *Germany*, *Hydleburge* as good as *Lipſick*. And in *France*, *Blois* as good as *Orleans*.

Of Reading. Hauing made choice of the place, his next care muſt bee to make choice of a good Reader, whereof he ſhall finde in Trauell great ſcarſity. Let his good acquaintance, or good Fortune, bring him to the beſt.

For were it, that there were good Readers, it were here needleſſe to ſet downe a courſe of learning: for he might better haue a direction from them. But for the cauſe alleadged, I will preſume to aduiſe him, that the moſt compendious way of attayning the tongue (whether *French*, or *Italian*) is by Booke; I meane for the knowledge. For, as for the ſpeaking, he ſhall neuer attayne it, but by continuall practiſe and conuerſation: hee ſhall therefore firſt learne his Nounes and Verbs by heart, and ſpecially the Articles, and their vſes, with the two words, *Sum* and *Habeo*: for in theſe, conſiſt the greateſt obſeruation of that part of ſpeech. Let not your Reader, read any Booke of Poetry at the firſt, but ſome other kind of Stile; and I think meeteſt, ſome modern Comedy.

Let his Lecture conſiſt, more in queſtions and anſweres, eyther of the one or the other, then in the Readers continued ſpeech; for this is for the moſt part idle and fruitleſſe: by the other, many errors and miſtakings, either in pronounciation or ſence are reformed.

After three moneths, hee ſhall quit his Lectures, and vſe his Maiſter, onely to walke with, and diſcourſe, firſt the one, and

Digitized by Google

and then the other: for thus ſhall hee obſerue the right vſe of the phraſe in his Reader, heare his owne faults reprooued, and grow ready and prompt in his owne deliuery: which with the right ſtraine of the accent, are the two hardeſt thinges in language.

Priuately he may for his pleaſure read Poetry, eſpecially, if at his returne, he meane to Court it: but for his profite, if hee be a man of meanes, and likely hereafter to beare charge in his Countrey: or if a man of indeuours, and willing to prefer himſelfe by ſeruice, I wiſh him, to Hiſtory: If one that wold make a fortune by the wars, I commend him (beſide Hiſtorie) to the Mathematiques, diſcourſes of war, and Bookes of fortification.

To this Reading, hee muſt adde a continuall talking, and exerciſing of his ſpeech with all ſorts of people, with boldnes, and much aſſurance in himſelfe: for I haue often obſerued in others, that nothing hath more preiudiced their profiting, then their owne diffidence and diſtruſt. To this I would haue hym adde an often writing, either of matter of tranſlation, or of his owne inuention, where againe is requiſite the Readers eye, to cenſure and correct: for who ſo cannot write the language he ſpeakes, I count he hath but halfe the language.

Theſe then are the two onely meanes of obtaining a language, of ſpeaking and writing: but the firſt is the chiefeſt, and therefore I muſt aduertiſe the Traueller of one thing, which in other Countries, is a greate hinderer thereof: namely, the often haunting, and frequenting of our owne Countrey-men, whereof, he muſt haue a ſpeciall care, neyther to diſtaſte them by a too much retiredneſſe, nor to hinder himſelfe by too much familiarity.

It is thought alſo, that one language is a hinderance to the pronunciation (if not learning) of another: which if it bee in any, is in the pronouncing, not the learning: and in the *Italian* to the *French*, not contrary. To this effect therefore, I would wiſh the Traueller, firſt, to ſpend his time in *Fraunce*, which language will much help to the vnderſtanding, and nothing hinder the ſpeaking of the *Italian*, eſpecially in vs; who of all other Nations pronounce this language beſt, next themſelues,

Digitized by Google

ſelues by their owne confeſſion.

There is alſo another reaſon, why I woulde haue him ſee *Italy* laſt, becauſe we beſt remember the laſt impreſſions; and I would rather he ſhould come home *Italinate*, then *Frenchified*: I ſpeake of both in the better ſence: for the *French* is ſtirring, bold, reſpectleſſe, inconſtant, ſuddaine: The *Italian*, ſtayed, demure, reſpectiue, graue, aduiſed. I would haue the Traueller therefore (becauſe I ſpeake now of bettering his minde by conuerſation) obſerue with iudgement, what he ſeeth in theſe Nations of *Italy*, *Fraunce*, and *Germany*, (for further I guide him not) and out of their better partes, leauing the woorſe to themſelues, gather ſo much to his owne vſe, as may make him a complete Gentleman. For example, he ſhall obſerue, that the *French* hath valour: but he hath withall, *Vanitatem & Leuitatem*. The *Italian* hath a diſcreete faſhion of carriage; but, with this he hath *Proteruiam & libidinem*: The *Dutch* hath an honeſt and reall manner of dealing, but *non ſine commeſſatione et ebrietate*. Let him now of theſe three, learne their three vertues, ſo ſhall he come home a Valiant, Wiſe, and Honeſt man. This is a better purchaſe then the *Italian* huffe of the ſhoulder, or the *Dutch* puffe with the pot, or the *French* Apiſhnes, which many Trauellers bring home.

Of the Body. It now followeth, that I ſpeake of the Body, which is preſerued in good ſtate, by dyet and exerciſe: For his diet, I neyther preſcribe what, nor how much to eate, I preſume him able before he ſet out, to keepe his noſe from his ſleeue, feede himſelfe, and be his own caruer: Onely, I muſt aduiſe him to beware of their Wines, which agree not with ſome natures, and are hurtfull to all, in thoſe hotter Countries, except ſparingly taken, or well qualified with water. As for his viandes, I feare not his ſurfetting; his prouiſion is neuer ſo great, but ye may let him looſe to his allowance. For I would not haue him liue at his owne prouiſion, (eſpecially in *Fraunce*) it will hinder his profiting, and onely further him, with ſome few kitchen and market phraſes. Let him be ſtil in penſion with others, ſo they be ſuch, whoſe language he learneth. His care ſhall be the leſſe, his profite the greater, and his expence nothing the more. I ſhall not neede to tell him before, what his diet ſhall bee, hys

appe-

Digitized by Google

appetite will make it better then it is: for he ſhall bee ſtill kept ſharpe: onely of the difference of dyets, hee ſhall obſerue thus much; that, that of *Germany* is full, or rather, fulſome; that of *France*, allowable; that of *Italy*, tollerable; With the *Dutch*, he ſhall haue much meat, ill dreſſed; with the *French*, leſſe, but well handled; with the *Italian*, neyther the one, nor the other.

As for his Exerciſes, there is danger but of one in *Fraunce*, and that is Tennis play: this is daungerous (if vſed with too much violence) for the body: and (if followed with too much diligence) for the purſe, a maine poynt of the Trauellers care. There is another exerciſe to be learned in *France*, becauſe there are better Teachers: and the French faſhion is in moſt requeſt with vs, and that is Dauncing. This I meane to my Traueller that is young, and meanes to followe the Court; otherwiſe, I hold it needleſſe; and in ſome, ridiculous. Of Exerciſes

Theſe former therefore are two exerciſes, which I permit, but with their limitation. There remaynes two other, to which I perſwade: thoſe tollerable, theſe commendable; thoſe of grace and complement, theſe of vſe and neceſſity, to him that wil returne ably quallified for his Countries ſeruice in war, and hys owne defence in priuate quarrell. Theſe are Riding, and Fencing. His beſt place for the firſt (excepting *Naples*) is in *Florence*: and for the ſecond (excepting *Rome*) is in *Padua*.

I muſt now aduiſe him, of ſuch thinges as are without himſelfe, but within the compaſſe of his own care: Thoſe are, Mony, Bookes, Apparrell. Of out ward Neceſſaries.

Money, the ſinewes of war, and ſoule of Trauell, as at home, ſo abroad, is the man. They ſay hee ſhould haue two bagges, the one of Crownes, the other of Patience: but howſoeuer this laſt be empty, I could wiſh that other were ſtill full: whereout hee muſt proportion his yearely expence, not exceeding the limmits of his propounded allowance. If hee Trauell without a Seruant, fourteſcore pounds ſterling is a competent proportion, except he learne to ride: if hee maintaine both theſe charges, he can bee allowed no leſſe then one hundered and fiftie pounds: and to allow aboue two hundered, were ſuperfluous,

Digitized by Google

and to his hurt. And thus ratably, according to the number he keepeth.

Of Money. The ordinary rate of his expence, is this: ten gold Crownes a moneth his owne dyet, eight for his man (at the most) twoe crownes a moneth his Fencing, as much for Dauncing, and no leſſe for his Reading, and fifteene crownes monthly for his Riding: but this exerciſe he ſhall diſcontinue all the heat of the yeare. The remainder of his 150. pound, I allow him for Apparrell, Bookes, Trauelling, Charges, Tennis-play, and other extraordinary expences.

Let him haue foure billes of exchange with him, for the whole yeare, with Letters of aduiſe, to be paid him quarterly, by equall portions: ſo ſhall he not want his money at the day, nor be driuen to thoſe ſhifts, which I haue ſeene diuers put to, by long expecting Letters out of *England*, which either their friends forgetfulneſſe, or the Carriers negligence, or the miſcarying of their letters, by intercepting or other accident, hath cauſed.

If hee carry ouer money with him (as by our Lawe he cannot carry much) let it be in double Piſtolets, or French crowns of waight: by theſe he is ſure to ſuſtaine loſſe in no place: and in *Italy* to gaine aboue twelue pence in the pound.

Of Bookes. Concerning his Bookes, let them be few or none, to carry from place to place: or if any, that they bee not ſuch as are prohibited by the Inquiſition: leaſt, when his Male is ſearched (as it is at euery Cities gate in *Italy*) they bring him to trouble: whatſoeuer they bee, they will put him to charge, for he payeth Tole for them at euery ſuch Towne. I would onely haue him to carry the papers of his owne obſeruation; eſpecially, a Iornale, wherein from day to day, hee ſhall ſet downe, the dyuers Prouinces he paſſeth, with their commodities; the Towns, with their manner of buildings; the names, and benefite of the Riuers; the diſtance of places; the condition of the ſoyle, manners of the people, and what elſe his eye meeteth by the way remarqueable.

When he commeth to the place of hys reſidence, let him furniſh himſelfe, with the beſt Bookes of that profeſſion, to which he addicteth his ſtudy, or other he ſhall finde, not to be got

Digitized by Google

got here in *England*, and at his departure, send them home by his Merchants meanes.

I must aduise aswell for his Apparrell, as for his Bookes: that vpon his iourney, he be not ouer charged with ouermuch luggage; euen a light burthen farre carried, is heauy: beside, somewhat is likewise to be paid for these, at the entry of euery Citty gate. Let him also take heed, that the apparrel he weares, be in fashion in the place where he resideth: for it is no lesse ridiculous to weare cloathes of our fashion among them, then at our return to vse still their fashiō among vs. A notorious affectation of many Trauellers. I conclude therfore this first branch of Preseruation, with like aduise as it begun: that when hee comes out of those forraigne Countries, hee likewise come out of theyr humours and habites, and come home to hymselfe, fashioned to such carriage in his Apparrell, gesture, and conuersation, as in his owne Countrey is most plausible, and best approued. Of Apparrell.

The second Booke.

Of Europe.

IT now remayneth, that I leaue you (as I said before) to your owne constructions; And therefore I will beginne to tell you, how according to our best and latest Cosmographers, this great Globe, (for partes and parcels whereof, so great and vniuersal quarrels haue from the beginning beene entertayned amongst Princes, Peoples, and Nations) hath bin diuided into seauen parts: The first three whereof, viz: *Europe*, *Africa*, and *Asia*, were well knowne to the ancients. The fourth, is *America Septentrionalis*, containing the Prouinces of *Estotilant*, *Terra Labratoris*, *Terra de Baccaleos*, *Noua Francia*, *Norimbega*, *Florida*, *Noua Hispania*, and others. The fifth is, *America Meridionalis*, which is a *peni-Insula*, and diſioyned from the

Digitized by Google

former by a small *Isthmus* of Land, contayning the Regions of *Brasil*, *Tisnada*, *Caribana*, *Paguana*, and *Peruuia*. The sixt, is termed *Terra Anstralis*, wherein lyeth *Psitacorum regio*, *Terra del fengo*, *Beach*, *Lucach*, and *Maletur*, scituate betweene *Iaua maior*, and *Iaua minor*. The last, beeing vnder the Northerne pole, is the least of the residue, all almost vnknowne, and deuided into foure Ilands, lying in a manner vnder the very Pole.

Of all these seauen parts, because *Europe* is farre lesse then any of the rest, and yet exceedeth them all in Nobleness, Magnificence, multitude of people, in might, puissance and renowne, we will first begin with the description thereof. It is bounded on the North, with the North Ocean Sea; on the South, with the *Mediterranean*, on the East with the floud *Tanais*, and on the West with the west Ocean. It containeth more then foure and twenty Christian kingdomes at this day, as far excelling the residue of the Prouinces in Religion, Arts, Valour, and Ciuility, as in elder age it did surpasse them in Prowesse and Reputation. The principall Prouinces, are *Spayne*, *Fraunce*, *Belgia*, *Germany*, *Italy*, *Slauonia*, *Greece*, *Hungary*, *Poland*, *Lituania*, *Moscouia*, and that toward the North, called *Scandia*; wherein are *Denmarke*, *Norwey*, *Swethland*, *Iutland*, *&c*. The Islands are *Brytaine*, (contayning the kingdomes of *England* and *Scotland*) *Ireland*, *Island*, and *Engroueland*, in the North Ocean. In the *Mediterranean*, are *Sicill*, *Candy*, *Corsica*, *Sardinia*, *Maiorca*, *Minorca*, *Nigropont*, *Malta*, *Corfu*, *Stalamine*, *Mitilin*, *Sciro*, with many other in the *Archipelago*. The Ayre hereof is passing good, wholesome, temperate, and the soyle exceeding fertile. Therein are many goodly Cities, famous Mart-Townes, and learned Vniuersities. The people thereof haue in all ages excelled al other Religions, in corage, Arts, sharpnes of Wit, and all other guifts of nature. In times past, it commaunded *Asia* and *Africke*, by the Armes of the *Greekes* and *Romaines*; and at this day, it is of great force by the power of the *Turks* and *Muscouites*, and of no lesse reputation by the Nauigations of the *Spaniards* and *Portugals*: so as it seemeth, that Nature hath giuen vnto this people a preeedency to rule and gouerne forraigne Prouinces, as men far surpassing all other Nations, in wisedome, courage, and industry.

Ire-

Digitized by Google

Ireland.

THis Prouince, by the *Engliſh*, *Spaniſh*, and *French*, is termed *Irland*, or *Ireland*: by the Brittiſh, *Yuerdhon*, by the Inhabitants *Eryn*. According to the Cæleſtiall Globe, it is ſcituated betweene the Articke Circle, and the Tropique of *Cancer*, but neerer the Articke, containing in Latitude, foure degrees and an halfe, and ſcituated according to the computation of our late Writers, betweene the twenty and the 25. Paralels. In the South parts, their longeſt day is of ſixteene houres, with three fourths: In the Northern, of almoſt eighteen. According to the Terreſtrial, it ſtands betweene the greater *Brittany*, and *Spain*: on the Eaſt, diſioynd from England with a tempeſtuous Sea, termed *Hibernicum*, not aboue one dayes ſayling: vppon the Weſt, beateth the vaſt Ocean: vpon the North, where the *Deucalidon* Ocean diſgorgeth, it hath Iſland diſioyned no further then a Ship in one day may ſaile ouer. Vpon the South, it beholdeth *Spain*, diſtant three dayes ſayling, and the *Vergiuian* Sea: From South to North it repreſenteth an Oual forme, and by halfe is leſſe then *Brittany*. Amongſt many Writers, *Camden*, whome a man may beſt rely vpon, reporteth that it containeth 400. miles in length, and in bredth, 200.

Since it came vnder the ſubiection of the Kings of England, it hath beene gouerned by Deputies, authorized vnder them, with Commiſſion large, ample, and royall. So that through al Chriſtendome againe, no other Viceroy commeth ſo neere vnto the Maieſty of a King, eyther in abſoluteneſſe of authority, trayne, furniture, or prouiſion.

The Ayre hereof is moſt wholeſome, the ſcituation milde, the weather temperate, but not altogether good to ripen fruit. For neyther in Sommer ſeaſon, the heate is ſo parching that it drieth the Inhabitant to ſeeke the ſhade, neyther the cold in Winter ſo rigorous, but that he may wel liue from the fire ſide: By the influence of the Aire, al parts of the yeare are tollerably warme. It bringeth forth no venomous creature, neyther nouriſheth

Digitized by Google

riſheth any brought from other places. The quality of the ſoile and conſtellatiō of the Heauens is moyſt with the moſt; wherupon it commeth to paſſe, that both inhabitants and ſtrangers, are troubled with the flixe and Rheumes, and holpen or preuented with drinking Aqua vitæ. The Land is of diuers Natures, in ſome place rough and mountainous, in others, boggy and wateriſh; ſhaddowed with huge woodes, and expoſed to the windes, with intermixture of many great Lakes. Yea in the ridge of their higheſt hilles (mountaines indeed I cannot terme them) you ſhall find pooles and mariſhes. It hath goodly Hauens, and delectable plaines, but neyther comparable to the woodes for largenes, nor greenneſſe. It is generally fertil, except *Vlſter*, (which in ſome parts is fertil, in otherſome barren,) and *Conaught*, which through idlenes, hath beene leſſe manured then any other Country, is fuller of hils and bogges, and for the greateſt portion, woody. The hilles ſwarme with Cattle and Sheepe, from whence they reape plenty of butter, cheeſe, and milke. The wheate thereof is ſmall and ſhort, and thoſe vines which they cheriſh, ſerue rather for ſhade then profit. For in thoſe Countries, the Sun entring into *Virgo*, cauſeth cold gales to blow, and in Autumne, the after-noones heat is ſo faynt and ſhort, that it cannot ripen the cluſters of the vine. It bringeth forth a race of excelent Horſe, fit for iourneyes, in regard of their ambling paces, but not commendable for indurance. It breedeth the iniurious Woolfe and the Foxe, all other creatures tame and gentle, neceſſary for lyſe, but of leſſer growth, except the Grey-hound. Almoſt all the woodes are repleniſhed with Deere, (and thoſe ſo fatte, that they can ſcant runne for fayntneſſe) with Bores, Hares, in great aboundance, Goates, Fallow-Deare, Hedge-Hogges, and Moales, are ſeldome ſeen, but Mice infinite. It aboundeth alſo with Falcons, Merlins, Eagles, Cranes, and in the Northernly partes with Swannes. Storks are very rarely heard of thorough the whole Iland, but ſuch as are there found, are blacke. Pyes and Nightingales, are altogether wanting. By reaſon of the Sea, theyr famous Riuers, and ſpacious Lakes, is ſerued with moſt excellent Fiſh, and that peculiar to thys Iland onely. For to let paſſe many other, in *Vlſter*, the *Ban*; being a moſt fayre and

cleare

Digitized by Google

cleare water, and arising out of the Lake of *Eaugh*, is the most plentifullest Riuer for Salmon, that is to be found throughout all Europe. For plenty and variety, the like is to bee reported of *Sineus*, and *Erno*, a Lake by *Camdens* report, thirty myles long, and fifteene broad: Report sayth, that this was once a delicate plot of ground, and well inhabited, but for the bestiall abuse of the people, it was sodainely swallowed in the waters. And to proue thys true, men say that in fayre seasons, the Turrets and tops of houses, are in the bottom to be descerned.

The people are of two sorts, the wilde Irish, and the English Irish: the English Irish, are subiect and gouerned by lawes, and are curteous and ciuill; and vnto these the English, as the more tractable and richer people, doe resort, partly for lucre of Merchandize, and partly to repayre their decayed estates in theyr owne Country; by whose conuerse, the Irish doe learne theyr customes and language. But the wilde *Irish*, who for the greatest parte inhabite *Conaught*, are cruel and vnciuill, and those who haue least bringing vp, are most inhumaine, louing sloth, and giuen to Idlenesse: Yea, so addicted thereunto, that they account theyr greatest riches to be, to want imployment, to goe a roging, and in troopes to beg theyr liuing. They are very superstitious, and among them you shall find many Witches, who haue a charme for euery Malady. They delight in Musicke, and especially in the Harpe, whose brazen strings stricken with theyr long nayles, they cause to yeeld harmonious cadencies.

Theyr Mylitary discipline, consisteth of Horse-men, and Foote-men: some vsing most sharpe Glaues, others of a more light arming, Darts and Skeanes. In stead of Trumpets, they follow the Bag-pipe.

The Iland became subiect to the Crowne of *England*, about the yeare of our Lord 1175. *Henry* the second then raigning. At what time *Roderic*, King of *Conaught*, intituling himselfe King of *Ireland*, inforced the residue of those petty Roytelets, to craue assistance of the King of *England*, vnder whose protection, they voluntarily yeelded theyr obeysance. From which tyme the Kings of *England*, vntill the dayes of *Henry* the eight, were intituled, Lords of *Ireland*, and sithence Kings.

Digitized by Google

It hath fifty Bishoprickes, whereof *Armach* is a Primacie, and *Metropolitan* of the whole Iland. *Cassils* is another Archbishopricke, authorized by Pope *Eugenius*, and hath vnder it, nine suffragan Bishops: *Dublin* is another, and *Toam* another.

The whole Iland is diuided into foure Prouinces, (viz:) *Leynster*, which East-warde respecteth *England*. *Mounster*, which lyeth towards *Fraunce* South-ward. *Conaught*, exposed to the West. And *Vlster*, scituated in the Northerly part of the Iland. Some adde a fyfth, placed in the middest; and terme it *Meath*.

And verily, sithence that now of late the King of Piety and Pollicy, hath wiped away all distrust of former neglect, by his continuall industry, to plant Religion and Arts, to re-people the wasted Prouinces, and to extirpate the innated idlenes of the woorst-bred *Irish*; there is no question (vnder God) to be made, but that this beautifull Iland, beeing so neere a neighbor, so fruitfull in soyle, so rich in pasture (more then credible) beset with so many Woods, inriched with so many Minerals, watered with so many Riuers, inuironed with so many Hauens, lying fit and commodious for Nauigation into most wealthy Countries; will in time proue profitable to the Church, aduantagious to the Prince, pleasing to the Inhabitants, and comparable to any the best and ciuilest kingdomes of the Christian Common-weale.

Great Brittaine.

The Scituation of England.

The diuision of England.

THe whole Iland of *Brittaine* once diuided (but now reunited) vnder the name of the kingdome of Great *Brittaine*: is an Iland scituated in the mayne Ocean, ouer against *Fraunce*, and diuided into foure great Prouinces. The first whereof, the *English men* doe inhabite; the second, the *Scots*; the third, the *Welsh-men*, and the last, the *Cornish men*. Euery one of these doe differ from other, eyther in Language, in Manners, or in Customes.

England, so termed of the *English men* (the Inhabitants ther-

Digitized by Google

of)

of) is by much the greater and goodlier portion, and diuided into nine and twenty Prouinces; which they terme Shires. Of the which, ten, that is to say; *Kent*, *Sussex*, *Surrey*, *Southampton*, *Barkeshire*, *Wiltshire*, *Dorsetshire*, *Sommersetshire*, *Deuonshire*, and *Cornwall*, doe make the prime-part of the Kingdome, and inclining towardes the South, haue theyr existence betweene the Thames, and the Sea. Next, as far as the Trent, which runneth through the middest of *England*; are sixteen other Shires proportioned; wherof the first sixe, as *Essex*, *Middlesex*, *Hertfordshire*, *Suffolke*, *Norfolke*, and *Cambridgeshire*, lye towardes the East; and the other ten, as *Bedfordshire*, *Huntingdonshire*, *Buckinghamshire*, *Oxfordshire* (excepted, that a part of this Shire is extended on the South side of Thames) *Northamptonshire*, *Rutlandshire*, *Leycestershire*, *Nottinghamshire*, *Warwickeshire*, and *Lincolneshire*, lye more to the Inland. After these, are other sixe, (viz:) *Glocestershire*, *Herefordshire*, *Worcestershire*, *Shropshire*, *Staffordshire*, and *Cheshire*, which border vppon *Wales*, and are bounded towards the West. About the hearte of the Kingdome, lye *Darbishire*, *Yorkeshire*, *Lancashire*, and *Cumberland*: And vpon the left hand, inclyning towardes the West, *Westmerland*. Vpon the contrary side, lye *Durham*, and *Northumberland*; Prouinces opposed to the North, and sometime appertayning to the Crowne of *Scotland*.

These Shires, are deuided into seauenteene Bishoprikes, by the *Græcians* termed *Dioceses*, and by the *Englishmen* thus proportioned. *Canterbury*, with that of *Rochester*, retayneth the County of *Kent* onely: *London*, hath *Essex*, *Middlesex*, and part of *Hertfordshire*. *Chicester*, hath *Sussex*. *Winchester*, hath *Southampton*, *Surrey*, and the Wight. *Salisbury*, hath *Dorcetshire*, *Barkeshire*, and *Wiltshire*. *Exceter*, hath *Deuon*, and *Cornwall*. *Bath* and *Welles* are as one, & precedeth *Sommersetshire*. *Worcester*, sitteth in *Glocestershire*, *Worcestershire*, and part of *Warwickeshire*. *Hereford*, hath part of *Shropshire*, and *Herefordshire*. *Couentry* and *Litchfield*, being conioyned, hath *Cheshire*, *Staffordshire*, *Derbishire*, and the remaynders of *Warwickeshire*. *Shropshire*, and *Lancashire*, adioyning vnto the Riuer of *Repil*. *Lincolne*, being the greatest of all, hath vnder it eight Shires, and those scituated betweene the Thames and Humber; and Bishopricks.

Digitized by Google

thoſe are *Lincolneſhire*, *Leyceſterſhire* *Rutlandſhire*, *Huntingdonſhire*, *Bedfordſhire*, *Buckinghamſhire*, *Oxfordſhire*, and the remainder of *Hertfordſhire*. *Ely*, hath *Cambridgſhire*, and the Ile of *Ely* it ſelfe. *Norwich*, hath *Suffolke* and *Norfolke*.

And this is the Prouince of the Arch-biſhop of *Canterbury*, being Primate of *England* and *Wales*; which hath alſo foure Biſhoprickes, as you ſhall heare anon.

The Dioceſſe of *Yorke*, contayneth *Nottinghamſhire*, *Yorkſhire*, and part of *Lancaſhire*. *Durham* gouerneth the Biſhopricke, and *Northumberland*; *Carlile* doeth the like, in *Cumberland* and *Weſtmerland*.

And this is the other Prouince, appertayning vnto the Iuriſdiction of the Arch-biſhop of *Yorke*; who is alſo a Primate of *England*; as he was alſo for a long time, ouer the Realme of *Scotland*.

Theſe Biſhopricks, take theyr denominations, from the Cities, wherin the Byſhops haue theyr Seas; the chiefe whereof is *London*, and was once the Seat of an Arch-biſhoppe. As concerning the tranſlation whereof vnto *Canterbury*, a Citty of *Kent*, we will talke in place conuenient: for *London* is ſcituated in *Middleſex*, vppon the North ſide of the Riuer of Thames.

Riuers. Thys moſt pleaſant Ryuer, ryſeth a lyttle aboue *Winchelcomb*, and being by the way augmented with ſome other ſmal ſtreames; firſt watereth *Oxford*, and ſo paſſing on in moſt mild manner, ſaluteth *London*, and from thence diſgorgeth it ſelfe into the *Britiſh* Ocean; here beyng checked with a myghty Floud, from the ſayde Sea (which twyce in foure and twenty houres, floweth, and refloweth) to the exceeding great ryches of the people, by the carryage and recarryage of all vendible Commodityes. It ebbeth and floweth into the Land, by more then threeſcore myles ſpace.

Vppon it ſtandeth the Stone Brydge of *London*; without queſtion an admyrable pyece of woorkman-ſhip. For thereuppon are framed, twenty pyles of ſquared Stone; ſixty foote high, and thyrty thycke; diſtant the one from the other, about twenty foote, and all conioyned with Arches. Vppon both ſides, are erected ſuch goodly buildings, that it ſeemeth rather

to

Digitized by Google

to repreſent a fayre Street, then a paſſable Bridge.

This Prime part of *England*, vpon the Eaſt and the South, is bounded with the Ocean: vppon the Weſt, with *Wales*, and *Cornewall*; vppon the North with *Tweed*: the bounder alſo of *England* and *Scotland*.

At thys Riuer of *Tweed* endeth the length thereof: which being accounted to begin at the Shore which lyeth moſt Southernly, is from thence reckoned to contayne about 300. and 20. myles.

On thys ſide the *Humber*, it is accounted the fertileſt: beyound, it is mountaynous. For albeit, to one that beholdeth it a far off, it ſeemes Champain, notwithſtanding, it hath many Hylles, and thoſe for the moſt part deſtitute of wood; as alſo moſt pleaſant vallies, wherein eſpecially the Gentlemen haue theyr manſions: who according to theyr old cuſtomes dwell not in Townes, but approach the Vallies and Riuers, and Inhabite the Villages, as I thinke, the better to auoyde the fury of tempeſtuous winds, whereunto the Iland is naturally ſubiect.

Whereby it commeth to paſſe, that the Yeomen, conuerſing with the Gentry, doe in euery place ſauour of ſome good faſhion, and the Cittyes are the leſſe famouſed.

Humber riſeth a lyttle on thys ſide *Yorke*, and being ſuddainely checked towardes the South, from thence holdeth on hys courſe towards the Eaſt, vntill it hath diſgorged it ſelfe into the Ocean, beeing ſomewhat before augmented with the Riuers of *Dun* and *Trent*. Thys taking hys courſe, not farre from *Stafford*, hauing watered *Darbyſhire*, and *Leyceſterſhire*, *Liechfield* and *Nottingham*, runneth on the right ſide, that on the leſte. So that *Trent* and *Dun*, make an Iland called *Axholme*. From whence beeing vnited, on thys ſide the Kinges Towne, commonly termed *Hull*, famous for concourſe of Merchants, and fit for ſafe and eaſie paſſage from *France*, *Germany*, and *Denmarke*, it falleth into *Humber*.

The Land is exceeding fertyll, and plentyfull in Beſtiall: whereby it commeth to paſſe, that the *Engliſh* people are more addicted vnto Grazing, then vnto Tyllage: ſo that almoſt the thyrd part of the ſoyle is reſerued rather for Cattell,

Digitized by Google

Deere, Conyes, and Goates: (for of theſe ſortes, alſo there is great ſtore in the North.) And in euery Shire, you ſhall ſee, Parkes impaled, and Forreſts repleniſhed with theſe Beaſtes; in the Hunting whereof, the Nobility and Geatry, doe much delight.

For prouiſion of the Inhabitants, neyther is it leſſe ſtored with Corn, and Fiſh, ſo that for plenty, goodneſſe, and ſweetneſſe thereof, it needeth neyther the help of *France*, no, nor of any neighbour-bordering-Country. Among other thinges, the fleſh eſpecially of theyr Swine, Oxen, and Veales, haue the beſt relliſh of any part of Chriſtendom; and of Fiſh, theyr Pike, and Oyſters. It bringeth not foorth Mules nor Aſſes, but of Horſe, infinite proportions.

Wealth. The wealth thereof, conſiſteth in the neuer decaying Mines of Tyn and Lead. There are alſo found, veynes of Copper and Iron, and in *Cornwall* is digged Tynne of ſuch excellent fineneſſe, that it ſeemeth little inferior to Syluer in allay. Here, the Wools are moſt fine and ſoft, by reaſon of the downes, whereof the kingdome is full. On theſe Downes, groweth a ſmall and tender kinde of graſſe, neyther dunged, nor watered with ſpringe or riuer, but in Winter, nouriſhed with the moyſture of the ayre, and in Sommer with the deaw of Heauen; which is ſo gratefull and pleaſing to the Sheepe, that it cauſeth them to bear fleeces of ſingular goodneſſe, and exceeding fineneſſe. The Iland breedeth no Woolues, nor any other rauening Beaſt, and therefore theyr flockes wander night and day, by Hilles, Dales, and Fieldes, as well incloſed, as common, without feare or danger. Moſt delicate Clothes are wouen of this wooll, which from thence are tranſported in great aboundance into *Germany*, *Poland*, *Denmarke*, *Sweueland*, and other Prouinces, where they are in high requeſt. There groweth all ſorts of pulſe, great ſtore of Saffron, and infinite quantity of Beere is tranſported from thence into *Belgia*; as alſo Pelts, Hydes, Tallow, and Sea-coale. The Iland is ſo commodiouſly ſeated for the Sea, that it is neuer without reſort of *Portugall*, *Spanish*, *French*, *Flemmish*, and Eaſterling Merchants. The traffique betweene the *Engliſh* and the *Flemmiſh*, ariſeth to an ineſtimable value: for *Guicciardin* writeth, that before the tumults

Digitized by Google

mults of the Low Countreis, they bartered for twelue Millions of Crownes yearely.

Scotland, another portion of *Brittaine* (whereof in thys place I meane to speak the more copiously, becauſe hereafter ſmall occaſion will be adminiſtred me, to dilate of the Scituation thereof.) in times paſt, began at the Mountayne *Grampius*, and from thence to its vtmoſt border was extended Northward: But in future times, by the extinguiſhment of the *Picts*, it reached alſo vnto *Tweed*, and ſometimes alſo to *Twine*: the chance of warre ſo moderating in theſe counterchanges, as in all other worldly occurrances. Whereupon its longitude from *Tweede*, vnto the vtmoſt limit, is thought to be foure hundred and foureſcore myles. But as thys Prouince is longer then *England*, ſo is it narrower, for that it endeth like vnto a wedge. For the vnſhapeable and rough Monntain *Grampius* (whereof euen *Tacitus* in the lyfe of *Agricola* made mention) runneth through the very heart thereof, euen from the *Germain* ſhore, (that is from the mouth of the Riuer *Dee*) vnto the *Iriſh* Coaſt, and vnto that Lake, which the Inhabitants call *Lomond*, which lyeth between that Country and the ſayd Mountayne. Scotland.

Next vnto *Tweede* (whoſe riſing is out of a ſmal Hil, not far from *Roxburg*) appeareth the Countrey, which is called the *March*, as much as to ſay, as the bateable frontier, between the *Engliſh* and the *Scottes*. This the *Tweed* ſeperateth from *Northumberland*, the remoteſt *Engliſh Shire*, which lyeth vpon the *Germaine* Ocean; whoſe principall Towne is *Barwicke*.

In times paſt, *Cumberland* was the Frontier of *Scotland* Weſtward: which the Riuer *Solue* diſioyneth from *Annandale*. Between theſe two Prouinces, doth the *Cheuiot* appeare. Next vnto the *March*, is *Pictland*, now *Landonia*; which lyeth towardes the Eaſt: It is very Mountaynous, and almoſt ſtored with no ſort of Wood; yet ſtand therein the fayre Townes of *Dounbar*, *Hadington*, *Lethe*, *North-Barwick*, and *Edenburgh*, and thereby the Caſtle of *Maydens*, a moſt ſtrong and defenſible Fortreſſe. By thys Countrey runneth the *Frith*: the which in keeping hys courſe towardes the *Germaine* Ocean, occaſioneth great waters, commonly termed, the *Scottiſh* Sea. In the which, beſides others, is the Iſland *Æmonia*, dedicated to ſaint

Digitized by Google

Columb. Againe, the aforesayd Floud diuideth the adioyning Countrey, (commonly called *Fife*, plentyfull in all things) from *Laùdonia*; wherein are very many Townes, viz: *Donfremillis*, *Cuprum*, but especially the famous Abbey of S. *Andrewes*, renowned for the Vniuersity, and an Arch-bishops Sea; who is Primate of all *Scotland*. On the contrary side towardes the North, is *Nidisdale*, so called of the Riuer which runneth by it, wherein is especially remarqueable, the strong Townes of *Dowglasse*, and *Donfries*.

Vpon the South, lyeth *Galloway*, appropriated rather, for the feeding of Cattell, then for tyllage. Therein standeth *Candida Casa*, and a very auncient Temple, dedicated to Saynt *Ninian*, and adorned with an Episcopall Sea. In thys tract, neere vnto the Town *Victon*, is a Lake of admirable nature; for that in the Winter season, one part thereof is hard frozen, the other not. Then followeth *Carick*, once famous for a Towne so called; from whence peraduenture it tooke the name. Beyond *Carik*, *Elgouia*, (so *Ptholomy* calleth it) towardes the West falleth into the Ocean. Therein is the Lake *Lomound*, exceeding spacious, as a water that incyrcleth many Ilands, and lyeth at the foote of the Mountaine *Grampius*: From whence not aboue eyght myles distant, riseth the Castle of *Dombritton*, where the Riuer *Bodotria* (now *Leuin*) entreth into *Glotta*.

But for a long distaunce, on this side *Grampius*, the Riuer *Taùs*, the faireſt of all *Scotland*, ariseth out of a Lake of the same name: which running by *Athol* and *Calidon*, watereth many places, but especially the Towne of *Perth*; which being now translated, carrieth the name of *Saint Iohns*. Lastly, neere *Deydon* (once *Alect*) it falleth into the *Germane* Sea, and at the mouth thereof occasioneth very huge waters, whereof *Tacitus* maketh mention.

Opposite to *Taùs*, is *Angùis*, wherewith the whole Countrey is wattered and disioyned. To the North-ward, *Athol* is next Neighbour; a Country not vnhappy, neither for waters, nor for goodnesse of soile.

Vpon the other side, *Argatel* sheweth it selfe; which beeing full of Lakes, yeeldeth more plenty of hearbage, then of tillage; and its extreameſt bounds from thence to *Ireland*, are

scarce

Digitized by Google

ſcarce ſixteene miles diſtant: where is the promontory, which is called the *Head-land*.

Between this & *Elgouia*, towards the Weſt, lyeth the Countrey of *Sterling*, ſo tearmed, of a Towne therein of like denomination. Heere to the Weſtwards, began the *Calydonian* Forreſt, which farre and wide did extend it ſelfe into the In-land. This place bringeth foorth white Bulles, creſted like Lyons; which are ſo fierce, that they may not be tamed: but becauſe their fleſh is ſo delicious to mens dainty palats, the report goeth, that the whole race of them is almoſt quite extinguiſhed. There is alſo the Caſtle of *Caledon*, ſeated vpon the mouth of *Taùs*, and called *Doncheldine*. From a ſmall Hill of the ſayde Wood, ariſeth *Glotta*, which in a broade bed walloweth into the *Iriſh* Ocean; for being checkt by the rootes of the Mountain *Grampius*, to the South-wards, it is receiued with ſo violent a reflowing of the Sea, that (as witneſſeth *Tacitus*) the Country beyond, ſeemed vnto the *Romans* to be another Iland. From this Riuer *Glottrale* tooke its name, whereby it runneth, and wherein is the Citty of *Glaſco*, a Noble Vniuerſity.

Againe, towards the Eaſt, the Countrey and the Maritime *Mernia* is ioyned to *Anguiſe*, wherein ſtandeth the Towne of *Fordune*, in an admirable ſtrong ſcituation, and renowmed for the Reliques of Saint *Palladius*, the Scottiſh Apoſtle.

Vppon the ſame border is *Marr*, famous for the Cittie of *Aberdon*, ſeated between the two Riuers of *Don* and *Dea*, and adorned with a Free-Schoole.

Then followeth *Murrey*, which the two faire Riuers of *Neſſe* and *Spea* doe incircle. At the mouth of this is ſcituated the Towne of *Elgis*; beyond the other are vaſt Woods, inhabited with all ſorts of wilde beaſts. Alſo, the Lake, which they call *Spina*, abounding with Swans.

Ros is a large Country, lying more to the Inland, and extendeth it ſelfe into a narrow Angle, on each skirt touching the Ocean, and the more eaſterly it lieth, the better it is inhabited. In it lyeth a bay of the Sea, oftentimes ſo aduantagious to ſeafaring men, that it is commonly tearmed, *The Hauen of health*. The Townes name is *Thana*.

But the point of the Land is very narrow, as beeing ſcarce thirty

Digitized by Google

thirty miles ouer, and ending like a Wedge: yet it is fortified with three Promontories, resembling three Fortresses, to abate the furious strokes of the raging Ocean; and then making two Inlets, incircled with the said Promontories, it affordeth a receptacle, whereinto it receiueth the waues in peaceable manner. At this day the saide Countrey is called *Catnes*, and lyeth vpon the *Deucalidon* Sea. Thus much particularly.

But *Scotland* hath euery where safe Harbours, Creeks, Lakes, Marishes, Riuers, and Fountains repleni shed with Fish: As also Mountaines, and in the toppes thereof large plaines, yeilding abundance of grasing to Cattle, and Woodes wonderfullie abounding with venery. By the aduantages of which places, the *Scots* being heeretofore sustayned, they could neuer bee fully conquered, for that in euery Prouince Woodes, and Marishes, were readie refuges to their safeties, and the foode of wilde Beastes and Fishes, remedies against Famine for theyr bodies.

About *Scotland*, in the *Irish* Ocean, are more then 40. Ilands, by *Pliny* tearmed *Britania*, but by others, *Meranie*, and *Hebrides*. The biggest of these in length, exceede not thirty miles; in breadth, not aboue twelue. Amongst them is *Iona*, famous for the auncient Sepulture of the *Scottish* Kings. All the Inhabitants speake the *Irish* language: a pregnant Argument, that they are discended from the *Irishry*.

Beyond *Scotland* North-wards, lye the *Orchades*; in number (saith *Ptolomy*) thirty, beeing partly seated in the *Deucalidon* Ocean, and partly in the *German*. The chiefe whereof, is called *Pamonia*, and therein is an Episcopal Sea: all being subiect vnto the King of *Great Brittaine*. The Ilanders speake the *Gotish* tongue; a record, that they are descended from the *Germans*. Of stature they are tall, alwaies almost of a sound constitution, both in minde and body: whereby it commeth to passe, that for the greater part rhey are long-liued, although most commonly they liue vpon Fish: for the soile is in a manner alwaies couered with Snow. In many places it will scarce beare graine, but of Trees, almost none.

Beyonde the *Orchades* lyeth *Thule*, at this day *Ila*: from whence but one daies sayle (saith *Pliny*) is the Frozen Sea; and

Digitized by Google

and therein *Island*: whereunto at this day, our Merchants doe make an annuall trading, to Fish themselues, and to buy Fish of others. And for that it is neereſt vnto the Pole, ſom do iudge it to be *Thule*. And this is all that I haue to ſay concerning the ſcituation of *Scotland*; now will I turne my pen to the nature and faſhions of the Inhabitants.

Thoſe who inhabit the Southerne part; as by much, the beſt, ſo are they the better qualified, the ciuilleſt, and ſpeake the Engliſh language. And ſithence that nature hath denyed them plenty of Fewell, their fiering is of a blacke ſtone, which they dig out of the earth. That people who dwell in the Northerne and Mountanous partes, are a very ſauage and vnciuill kinde of men, and are tearmed *Silueſtres*. Theſe after the *Iriſh* faſhion are cloathed with a Mantle, and a Shirt coloured with Saffron, and go bare legged as high as their knees. Their Weapons are a Bow and Arrowes, with a very broade Sword and a Dagger, ſharpe but on one edge. They all ſpeake *Iriſh*, and feed vpon Fiſh, Milk, Cheeſe, and Fleſh; and haue great ſtore of Cattaile.

The Scottiſh differ from the Engliſh, both in Lawes and Cuſtomes; For the one retaineth the Ciuill Law, as almoſt do all other Nations; But the Engliſh (as heereafter I will ſhewe you) haue their peculiar or Municipall Lawes. In other things they doe not much differ. Their Language (as aforeſaide) is one and the ſame, the ſame conſtitution of body, equall courage in battaile, and ſenſiable addiction vnto hunting, euen from their Child-hoods.

Their houſes in the Villages are very ſmall, and couered with Straw or Reede: wherein as well their Cattle as themſelues, in manner of Stables, doe reſide. Their Townes, except that of S. *Iohns*, are inuironed with no wals; ſo that it ſhould ſeem that their corragious minds do repoſe the ſafety of their liues in the onely vertue of their bodies. They are alſo ingenious; which their learning manifeſteth: ſo that vnto what Art ſoeuer they do addict their capacities, they eaſily profit therein. And thoſe alſo who meditate nothing but ſloth, eaſe, and lazineſſe (though by refuſall to take any paines, they liue moſt baſely and beggerly) yet will they not let, to boaſt of their

Digitized by Google

Gentry, and that so presumptuously, as if it were more commendable for a man well discended, to begge, then to betake himselfe to any ingenious profession, for the sustentation of his carkase. But withall they are accounted naturally to be very zealous in Religion.

Wales. *Wales*, is accounted the third portion of the Iland; and in regard of the heart of England, it lyeth vppon the left hand: and in manner of a Bay as a *Peninsula* stretcheth into the Ocean, on all sides incircled with the Sea, saue towards the East, where it is bounded with the *Seuern*, the separatresse of *Wales* and *England*, Although there are many late Writers, who (as aboue-said) make the Citty of *Hereford* the bounder of *Wales* and *England*: and will haue *Wales* to begin at *Chepstow*, where the Riuer *Wy*, beeing vnited with *Lugg*, and passing by *Hereford*, falleth into the Sea. This Riuer (as *Seuerne*) ariseth from an In-land part of *Wales*, from one and the selfe-same Mountaine, but whether from one and the selfe-same Fountaine, I am not able to shew; and it, *Cornelius Tacitus* (as aforesaide) tearmeth *Antona*: For euen thither reacheth a huge Arme of the Sea, which cutting in betweene the Land by the West, watereth *Cornwall* on the right hand, & *Wales* on the left. This Topography we follow, as the Moderne, and therefore say, that *Wales* from *Chepsto* (where it taketh beginning) is extended Northward a little aboue *Shrewsburie*, as farre as *Chester*. Hether it was (as *Memory* recordeth) that the Reliques of those *Brittons*, who ouer-liued the generall slaughter after the losse of their Countrey, in their vtmost extreamities retyred themselues; & there, partly by the strength of the Mountains, and partly by the fastnesse of the Woods and Bogges, wherewith that Prouince is for the most part replenished, they purchased vnto themselues places of safety; which vnto this day they haue made good, and retaine. Thenceforth the English styled the Countrey *Wales*, and the Inhabitantes *Walshmen*; which denomination in the *Germaine* language, signifieth a *Stranger*, an *Alien*, a *Guest*, or a *New-come person*, that is to say; one that speaketh a different language from that of the *German*: for in their vnderstanding, *Wal* signifieth a *Forrainer* or *Stranger*, whether it be *Italian* or *French-man*, if he differ in

language

Digitized by Google

language from the *German*; and *Man*, is as *Homo* in *Latine*. The *Angles* therefore beeing a people of *Germanie*, becomming Lordes of *Brittany*, after their Countrey manner, tearmed thoſe *Brittons* who eſcaped the ruine of their Countrey, *Wallos*, or *Welſh-men*, for that they ſpake a language contrarie to that of their owne; and alſo the *Soile*, wheither they fled to inhabite, *Wallia*; which Name, the Nation as well as the people, retain vnto this day. And ſo the *Brittons* loſt their name together with their Empire.

The ſoyle of the Countrey, eſpecially of that, which adioyneth vnto the Sea, or conſiſteth of *Champian*, is moſt fertile; which both to Man and Beaſt ſupplyeth great ſtore of prouiſion: but contrariwiſe, for the *Maior* part, it is barren, and leſſe fruitfull, and (peraduenture) for that good husbandry is wanting, which is the cauſe that the Husband-men liue hardlie, eate Oaten-bread, and drinke Milke, ſometime mingled with Water. In it are many fine Townes, with fortifyed Caſtles, & foure Biſhopricks; if *Hereford* be accounted in England (as aforeſaid) according to the Moderne deſcription.

The firſt is the Biſhop of *Mon*, ſo called of *Menenia*; at this day Saint *Dauids*: an auncient Citty ſurely, and ſcituated vpon the Sea ſide, which to the Weſt-wardes looketh towards *Ireland*. The ſecond, is that of *Landaff*; the third, of *Bangor*; and the fourth of Saint *Aſaph*. All which are dioceſans to the Archbyſhop of *Canterburie*. The *Welſh* haue alſo a different language from the *Engliſh*, which they (who boaſt to deriue their pedegree from the *Troian* Line) do affirme, to participate partly of the *Troian* Antiquity, and partly of the *Grecian*. Verily, howeuer the caſe ſtandeth, their pronuntiation is not ſo ſweete and fluent, as is the pronuntiation of the Engliſh; for that the *Welſh* in my opinion, do ſpeak more neere the throat: whereas on the contrary, the *Engliſh* truely imitating the *Latines*, doe pronounce their wordes a little betweene the lippes, which to the Auditor yeeldeth a pleaſing ſound. Thus much of *Wales*, the third portion of *Brittony*.

The fourth and laſt part followeth; and that is *Cornewall*. This Prouince taketh its beginning vpon that part of the Iland which looketh towardes *Spaine*, and the ſetting of the Sunne.

Digitized by Google

To the East-ward it ſtretcheth ninety miles, euen a little beyond Saint *Germains*, a fine Village, and ſeated towardes the right hand vpon the Sea-ſhore; where its greateſt breadth is but twenty miles ouer. For this portion of ground vppon the right ſide is incircled with the Ocean; vpon the left, with that inlet of Sea, which (as before wee told you) pierceth into the Land as far as *Chepſtoe*: where taking the ſimilitude of a horn, it runneth along, firſt narrow, and afterwards broader, a little beyond the Towne of Saint *Germains*. Eaſtward it bordereth vpon England; vpon the Weſt, the South, and the North, the maine Ocean incompaſſeth it. The Soyle is very barren, and yeeldeth profit, rather by the toyle of the Husbandman, then its owne good nature. But for Tinne, it is admirable bountifull, in the Mines whereof conſiſteth the better part of the Inhabitants happineſſe.

Howeuer, the Language is greatly different from the Engliſh, but with the *Welſh* it participateth of no ſmall affinitie: for to eyther language it hath the denomination of many thinges common. The onely difference is, that a *Welſhman* hearing a *Corniſhman* ſpeaking, rather vnderſtandeth ſome wordes, then his whole ſpeach: which is a thing woorthy admiration, that in one and the ſame Iland, there ſhould bee ſo different a confuſion of Languages.

Cornewall, pertaineth vnto *Exeter* Dioceſſe, and in times paſt, was thought worthy to bee accounted for a fourth part of the Iland; partly for the diſſimilitude of the language, and partly for that it receiued the firſt Inhabitants (as aforeſaide.) But afterwards the *Normaines*, who conſtituted a new forme of a Common-wealth, aduiſed to diuide *Cornewall* into a County.

Thus haue we thought good to particularize of the diuiſion of *Great-Britaine*, that the body beeing the better delineated by the anatomizing of the members, we may the eaſier apprehend the ſeuerall parts and qualities thereof.

But let vs returne to that part of *Britaine*, which is tearmed *England*, that at laſt we may giue ſatisfaction to our Reader, how it is at this preſent qualified. The ayre is thicke, and therefore more ſubiect to the gathering of Clouds, Raine, and Winds,

Digitized by Google

Windes; but withall, leſſe diſtempered with heat or cold, for the ſame reaſons of craſſitude. The nights are lightſome, and in the Northermoſt partes of the Land, they are ſo ſhort, that the falling and the riſing of the Sunne, is diſcerned but by a ſmall intermiſſion. In Summer the dayes are very long: and the reaſon is, for that the Iland is ſcituated almoſt full North, and the Sunne in the Summer time returning ſlowly, and ſtaying long in the Northerne Climats vnder the Earth, vnto the Eaſt, dooth compaſſe it round about. In like manner, in the Winter it is as farre remooued, when approaching neerer the South, it runneth towards the Eaſt. I my ſelfe haue obſerued, that in the Citty of London (being ſeated in the Southerly part of the Iland) about the Summer Solſtice, the night hath not beene aboue fiue houres long. At all ſeaſons of the yeare the Country is moſt temperate, being ſubiect to no extraordinarie euill influence of the Heauens; ſo that diſeaſes are not verie common; and therefore leſſe vſe of Phiſicke then in other places, yea many times, ſome people there are, who attaine vnto one hundred and ten yeares of age; yea ſome, to one hundred and twenty.

Earth-quakes are here ſildome heard off: and lightnings, almoſt, to ſpeak off, as ſildome. The Soile is very fruitfull & plentifull, and of al neceſſaries, it yeildeth abundance, except of Firtrees, which are peculiar to hotter Regions. Vines are foſtered rather for the aduantage of their ſhaddowes, than for the increaſe of their profits: yet proſper they in all places, and bring forth Grapes; which notwithſtanding hardly wax ripe, vnleſſe an vnvſuall hot Summer do help them. Wheat, Rye, Barley, and Oates are ſowed in their ſeaſons: other graines they commonly vſe not; and of Pulſe, onely Beanes and Peaze. The fruits ſuddenly knot, but ripen ſlowly: the cauſe of eyther is, the ouer-much moyſture, both of the ſoyle and the ayre. The Graine, as alſo the Pulſe, with Straw and Eares, is ſtowed in Barnes, and there preſerued vntill occaſion preſent it to the Flaile. Wine (as aforeſaid) the Land affoordeth not: in ſtead of Wine, Beare is in requeſt; without controuerſie by vſe, a pleaſant & wholeſome Beuerage. Wines are tranſported from *France*, *Spaine*, and *Candy*. The Woods are full of fruit Trees,

Digitized by Google

and moſt plentifull of Maſt. The Riuers are moſt faire, and runne through many Prouinces. I will note a wonder, and moſt true it is; that *Thames*, *Humber*, and many other Riuers in the Land, are not eaſily inforced to ouer-flow by the fall of Land-waters: The reaſon is, for that the ſoyle beeing by nature ſoft and open, drayneth vp much Water. The Downes are in moſt places many, neyther cumbred with Wood, nor ouer-layed with Water, which by reaſon thereof bringeth forth a tender and ſhort graſſe, and yet gratefull and ſufficient for the paſturage of infinite flockes of Sheepe. In them doe theſe moſt white flockes continually wander, and whether it be by the influence of the Heauens, or the goodneſſe of the Land, they yeeld the fineſt & ſofteſt fleeces through the whole World.

And firſt I muſt put you in minde of a Miracle; howe this Beaſt, beſides the dew of Heauen, ordinarily taſteth of no other Water, ſo that the Shepheards of purpoſe doe driue them from all watery places, vppon true obſeruation; That to let them drinke, is to let them be baned. Without doubt, this is the true golden Fleece, wherein the main wealth of the whole Iland conſiſteth. For, for to buy this commodity, immenſiue Treaſure is yearely conueyed into the Lande by Marchants; from whence it is neuer reconueyed, for that it is prohibited vnto all ſortes of perſons what euer by the Lawes of the Kingdome, that no man tranſport Golde or Siluer, &c. Whereby it commeth to paſſe, that no Countrey vnder the Cope of Heauen is richer then England. For, beſides thoſe Maſſes of Coyne, which paſſe this way and that way, through the hands of Tradeſmen, Merchants, and Gentlemen, and the ſacred Vtenſiles, which for their height of price are ſcarce valuable; there is almoſt no perſon of meane condition, but for the vſe of his dayly Table, hee hath eyther a Salt, Cuppes or Spoones of Siluer, and according to his eſtate, either more, or fewer veſſels for diuers ſeruices.

It is no leſſe ſtored with all kinde of beſtiall, except Aſſes, Mules, Camels, and Elephants. It bringeth forth no materiall venomous Creature, or beaſt of prey, ſaue the Foxe, woorthy talking of. For the race of the Wolues is quite extinguiſhed, and

Digitized by Google

and therefore, all ſortes of Cattell ſtray as they liſt, and are in ſafety without any great care-taking for an Heardſ-man: ſo that you ſhall ſee Heardes of Rother Beaſts and Horſes, and flockes of Sheepe, in al places wandring by day and by night, vpon Hils & in Vallies, in Commons, and incloſed grounds, by auncient Cuſtomes layde open after Harueſt, wherein euery Neighbour claymeth community to feede his Cattle. And therefore their trauelling Horſes for the greater part are cut, and ſolded, that in the day time they may feede to their better nouriſhment. The greater part of theſe Beaſtes do not Trot, but Amble; and yet neyther the Trotter nor the Ambler, are of conſtitution ſo healthy, as are the tamer and leſſe wilde ſorts of beaſtes. The like properties are in the Oxe, & therefore many of them are yoaked together, eyther for the vſe of the Plough, or Cart; for, they plough as well with the Oxe, as the Horſe, and both ſerue in the Cart. Of which kind of ſeruice for the cariage of ponderous burthens, there is great vſe in the Common-wealth.

But in truth, the Oxe and the Weather, are Creatures eſpecially ordained for the Table, then whoſe fleſh there is not in any place a more ſauory or delicious ſeruice. Of the two, the Steere is the beſt, eſpecially if it bee ſeaſonably powdered: of which there is no maruaile, for that this choyce is altogether exempted from labour, and fed vp for food. And therefore the dyet of the Engliſh Nation conſiſteth moſt vpon fleſh. Neyther the Oxe, who after many yeares labour, is nowe become old, and fatted for the ſlaughter, doth want his good reliſh, although he be accounted ſomewhat tougher.

The people are tall of ſtature, faire of complexion, for the greater part gray-eyed; and as in pronunciation they aproach the *Italian*, ſo in conſtitution of body and faſhion, they doe well-neere imitate them. They are ciuilly qualified, and take counſaile by leyſure; knowing that profitable proceedings haue none a more daungerous aduerſary, then raſhneſſe. Of their owne diſpoſitions, they are curteous, and in all good offices forwards, eſpecially the Gentry, euen towards ſtrangers. Their acquaintance they inuite to their houſes, and there entertain them kindly, and feaſt them both at noone and at night merrily, Qualities of the Engliſh.

Digitized by Google

merrily, neatly, heartily, and bountifully: and this they terme curteſie, or neighbour-hood. In battayle they are feareleſſe, excellent Archers, and in ſeruice vnindurable of temporizing, and therefore the ſword beeing once drawne, they forthwith ſet at all vppon the hazard of a battell, knowing that all good ſucceſſe attendeth the fortune of the Victor. Fortreſſes they build none, but rather ſuffer thoſe which heretofore haue been built, and are nowe by age growne ruinous, vtterly to periſh; but being once in forraigne parts, they retayne all millitary diſcipline to the vtmoſt. For Bookemen, their maintenance is bountifull, theyr proficiency commendable, and their number numberleſſe. Their attyre differeth not much from the *French*; their Woemen are amiable and beautifull, and attyred in moſt comely faſhion. Their Cities are honourable, their Townes famous, Hamlets frequent, and Villages euery where magnificent.

The ſcituation of England.

In ſtrength of ſcituation, no kingdome excelleth this: for it hath the two properties, which *Ariſtotle* wiſheth to be regarded in the building of a Citty. The one is, that it be difficult to beſiedge: the other, that it be eaſie for conueying in, and tranſporting out, of thinges neceſſary. Theſe two commodities hath *England* by the Sea, which to the Inhabitants is as a deepe trench againſt hoſtile inuaſions, and an eaſie paſſage to take in, and to ſend out all commodities whatſoeuer, beeing ſcituated in the boſome of the maine Ocean, which euen by naturall cauſes fortifieth the Iland, more then any Sea doeth any other kingdome. For on the Weſt lyeth the *Iriſh* Ocean, a Sea ſo turbulent and ſo full of rockes and flates, that it is very dangerous for great Shippes; and on the Eaſt, South, and North, the flowing and ebbing of the brittiſh Ocean, is ſo accidentall, the remouing of the ſands and ſhelues ſo vncertaine, and the riſing and falling of the water betweene twelue and fifteene fathom (a thing wonderfull to be ſpoken off) ſo ordinary euery twelue houres, that without an *Engliſh* Pilot, no ſtranger ſhall be able to bring in a veſſel in ſafety: And hee likewiſe muſt bring his Tyde iuſtly with him, or otherwiſe it is impoſſible to land without perill. The Sea coaſt on euery ſide, is cliffie and inacceſſible, except in ſome certaine places which are ſtrongly fortified;

Digitized by Google

tified; as *Barwicke, Douer, Dartmouth, Plimouth, Famouth, Briſtow, Milford. &c.* So that the whole Iland may bee taken for one impregnable Caſtle.

To this ſtrength of ſcituation, may be ioyned their Sea and Land forces. As touching their Sea forces (beſides the Nauy Royall) the kingdome hath ſo many fayre Hauens, and thoſe ſo frequented with Merchaunts, that two thouſand Ships are reported to trafique there. Be this as it may, it is vndoubtedly true, that vppon neceſſity, they are able to put to Sea, aboue foure hundered Ships. *Edward* the third at the ſiedge of *Cales*, and *Henry* the eight, at the ſiege of *Bullen*, waſted ouer with a thouſand ſayle of all ſorts. Forces.

And euen in our dayes, in the yeare 1588. at what time the King of *Spaine*, in hate of Religion, and vnder pretence of ſome wrongs receiued, intended to haue begun his Weſterne Empire, with the conqueſt of *England*, and there to had imployed his vtmoſt meanes, by preſſing, forcing, and borrowing from ſundry Nations of their ſtrongeſt veſſels. Queene *Elizabeth* by her ſelfe, and the onely aſſiſtaunce of her *Engliſh* Subiects, oppoſed a Nauy of two hundered ſayle: wherewith ſhee did not onely afront and beat the ſayd Kings puiſance in the open Sea, but alſo by the terror of about twenty other Ships, which ſhe layd on the coaſt of *Flanders*, to impeach the iſſuing out of the Duke of *Parma* from *Dunkirk*, and the Hauens therabout: ſhee vtterly diſapoynted all his deſeignes, coupt vp the Duke, and ſent his diſtreſſed *Armada*, with loſſe and confuſion, to ſeeke their deſpayre in the *Iriſh* Ocean. Neither could her iuſt indignation, ſo eaſily diſgeſt this fooliſh and inſolent brauado. But to teach this proud Nation, that ſhe was as able to offend her enemies, as ſhe was moſt carefull to defend her good ſubiects, during the remaynder of her moſt bleſſed daies, ſhe neuer ceaſed from vexing, tyring, and impouerifhing of this ambitious kingdome, without any the leaſt preiudice receiued from, or by this Nation. By Sea.

In theſe times, her Subiects continually vexed the *Terceras*, and the coaſt of *Braſil*, the *Canaries*, *Capo Verd*, and all the coaſts of their enemies. Two of their Captaines ſayled round about the worlde, with no leſſe courage then glory and good

Digitized by Google

fortune.

By Land. Their force at Land is nothing inferiour to that at Sea; for the kingdome is deuided into two and fifty Shires, in one only whereof (commonly called *Yorkeshire*) it is thought seauenty thousand foote-men may be leuied. Euery Shire hath a Lieutenant, who seeth to the election and trayning of Souldiours, when necessity requireth. In chosing of Souldiours, they take the names of all Inhabitants of the Countrey, from aboue sixteene yeares of age, to sixty; and out of these they choose the likeliest and ablest for seruice. The taller and stronger are chosen for footmen, and these diuided into foure kinds. The first are Archers, by whose dexterity they conquered the greatest part of *France*, tooke King *Iohn* captiue, and held *Paris* sixteen yeares in subiection. The Arrowes of the *Parthians*, were neuer more dreadfull to the *Romaines*, then the Bowes of the *English* to *Frenchmen*. The second sort, vsed light staues, well headed with Iron, with which they woulde strike a man from his horse. The other two, vse and experience of latter times hath taught them: the one is the Harquebuse, the other the Pike, a fit weapon for their constitution, by reason of their tall, strong, and manlike stature. For their seruice on Horsebacke, they chose men of small stature, but well set, actiue, and nimble. These Horsemen are of two sortes; some heauy armed, and those for the most part are Gentlemen; other lighter armed, some riding after the manner of the *Albanneses*; some after the fashion of *Italy*, vsing a Scull, a Iack, a Sworde, and long light speares. And although they are able to bring to the field two thousand men at Armes, and infinite troupes of light Horsemen; yet their Horsemen neuer carried like reputation to their Footemen: For *Edward* the third, and *Henry* the fifth (which made so many iourneyes into *Fraunce*) and obtained so many famous victories, to shewe what confidence they reposed in their Infantery, euer left their Horse, and put themselues into the battaile of their footemen: whereas the *French* Kings not daring to invre their Commons to warfare (least leauing theyr Manuall occupations and Trades, they should growe insolent in the warres, to which humour they are greatly addicted) alwayes put themselues and their hopes vppon the fortune of their

Digitized by Google

their Caualry, being all almoſt Gentlemen. But foraſmuch, as the *French* maintaine no good races of Horſe, and to purchaſe them from other places, is a matter of great charge, and good cannot alwayes be gotten for money; for theſe reaſons, and for that Horſemen are nothing ſo ſeruiceable in the field as Footemen, I thinke the *French* haue ſo often beene defeated by the *Engliſh*.

To ſhew what Force the Kings of *England* are able to bring into the fielde, let theſe examples ſtand for many. *Henry* the eyght paſſed to *Bullen*, with an Army diuided into three Battalions: In the Vantgard paſſed twelue thouſand Footemen, and fiue hundered light Horſemen, cloathed in blew Iackets with red guards. The middle ward (wherein the King was, and paſſed laſt ouer) conſiſted of twenty thouſand Footemen, and two thouſand Horſe, cloathed with redde Iackets and yellow guards. In the rereward was the Duke of *Norfolke*, and with him an Army like in number and apparrell to the firſt, ſauing that therein ſerued one thouſand *Iriſhmen*, all naked ſaue their mantels and their thicke gathered ſhirts: Their Armes were three Darts, a Sword, and a Skeane. They drewe after them one hundred great peeces, beſides ſmall: an Army by the cenſure of *Guicciardin*, not more notable by the multitudes of Souldiours, and conſideration of their valour, then moſt glorious by the preſence and maieſty of their King, in whoſe perſon appeared at that inſtant, being in an age diſpoſed and actiue, all thoſe tokens of honour and magnanimity, which ryſing after to their full ripenes & perfection, by degrees of time, ſtudy, and experience, made him the moſt renowned and mighty Prince, that liued in his age, in all this part or circuite of the earth, which wee call Chriſtendome. Their carriages were ſo many, that therewith they intrenched their Campe like a wall. And for the conueiance of their Ordinance, their baggage, and their prouiſion, they tranſported into the Continent, aboue fiue and twenty thouſand Horſe, beſide all other kinde of Cattell.

In the aforeſaid yeare of 1588. after that moſt glorious Queene had prouided fully and ſufficiently to preuent her enemies at Sea, then ceaſed ſhe not to be as carefull at Land, o-

Digitized by Google

uer her owne and her peoples safeties. And therefore to bee ready against any sinister accident, which it might haue pleased the Almighty to haue giuen her at Sea, at land shee tooke order to rayse two Armies, out of certaine limitted Shires, the one to make the body of a Camp at *Tilbury* in *Essex*, the other to haue beene imployed, for the guard of her Maiesties person. The first, pressed foorth from the foresaide Shires, consisted of 1022. Horsemen, & 22000. Footmen: and for the guard of her person, appeared 1912. Horsemen, and 34050. Footemen, accounted by *Pol*, besides those goodly troupes, which the Nobility and Gentry presented vnto her Maiesties viewe, of their meere loue and zeale, to Prince and Country. Vnto what poynts at this day, the *English* assistaunce hath brought the affayres of the lowe Countries, maugre the force and rancor of *Spaine*, let the peace and plenty which at this day that Nation enioyeth, speak, and be thankfull.

To conclude, in *England* the Nobility possesse few Castels or strong places (inuironed with walles and ditches) neither haue they iurisdictiō ouer the people. The dignities of Dukedomes, Marquesses, and Earledomes, are no more but bare titles, which the King bestoweth on whome hee pleaseth, and peraduenture they possesse neuer a penny of reuenue in the place from whence they take their Titles: where on the contrary, the Nobility in *France* possesse some absolute, some mixt gouernment, with the Hereditary Titles of Lordes, Barrons, Earles, Marquesses, Dukes, and Princes. They are Lords, not of Townes onely, but of great and goodly Cities; receiuing homage and fealty of their Tenants; only acknowledging the Soueraignty of the King and Parliaments.

Ilands belonging to the Crowne of Great Brittain.

THe first are the *Sorlings*, & lye against the cape of *Cornwal*. They are now termed *Silly*., and are fewe lesse then 145: couered with grasse, and enclosed with huge and massie rocks. They are fruitfull enough for Corne, but are vsed altogether to the feeding of Conies, Cranes, Swannes, and Sea Fowle. Some of them yeeld Tin, and the fayrest thereof is called *Saint Maries*, being fortified with a Castle and Garrison. The residue of lesse fame, for breuity we wil willingly omit.

In the *Seuerne* sea, lye *Caldey*, and *Londay*: *Londay* is two myle

Digitized by Google

myles long, and as many broad; full of good paſture, and abounding with Conies, and Doues, and thoſe Fowles which *Alexander Necham* termeth *Ganimed* his Birdes. And though it be wholy incircled with the Sea, yet it yeeldeth freſh water from the Mountaines, and openeth but one only paſſage, wher through two men can hardly paſſe afront, the reſidue is incloſed with high and horrible ouerſhuits of Rocks.

Mona is a famous Iland ſeperated from *Wales* by a ſmal fret, the auncient dwelling place of the *Druides*. It is two and twenty myles long, and threeſcore broade. Although that in ancient times, this Iland ſeemed barren and vnpleaſant, yet in theſe dayes, it hath beene ſo well husbanded, and become ſo fertill, that it is ſtiled the *Mother of Wales*. It is ſufficiently ſtored with Cattell, it yeeldeth the Grinde-ſtone, and the Minerall earth, wherof Allom and Vitriall are confected. It once contayned 363. Villages, and is at this day reaſonable populous. The Ilanders are wealthy and valiant, and altogether ſpeake the *Welſh* tongue. Camden and Gyraldus.

Man lyeth iuſt between the Northern partes of *Ireland* & *Brittain*: In length it contayneth little leſſe then thirty Italian myles, in breadth where it is brodeſt, not aboue fifteen, and in ſome places hardly eight. In *Bedeas* time (ſayeth *Camden*) it contayned three hundred families, but now it can ſhew not aboue ſeauenteene pariſh Churches. It yeeldeth plentiful ſtore of Flaxe and Hempe, Tillage and Paſture, Wheate and Barley, but eſpecially of Oates, whereof for the moſt part the inhabitants feed. There is alſo droues of Rother Beaſts to be ſeene, and flockes of Sheepe without number, but generally al ſorts of Cattell are leſſe of growth then in *England*. In ſtead of Wood, they vſe a bituminous Coale, in digging wherof, ſometimes they light vpon Trees buried in the earth. The Inhabitants aboue all things hate theft and begging, being but weak by nature. Thoſe which Inhabite the Southerne parts, ſpeake the *Iriſh* toung, thoſe which dwell towardes the North ſpeake the *Scottiſh*.

THe *Hebrides* are foure and forty in number, and lye vppon the South of *Scotland*; the *Orchades* are thirty, and extend towards the North. The Inhabitaunts of the former ſpeake *Iriſh*:

Digitized by Google

Iriſh: the people of the latter, *Gottiſh*.

Wight is ſeated in the *Brittiſh* Ocean: the Inhabitants (ſayth *Camden*) are warlike, the ſoyle gratefull to the Plough-man, and well repleniſhed with paſtures. It hath in it ſixe and thirty Villages, Hamlets, and Caſtles; In *Bedaes* time 1200. families.

Iarſey, lying ouer againſt *Conſtans*, an ancient Citty of *Normandy*, containeth about thirty miles in circuit, and is inuironed with Rocks and dangerous ſhallowes. It is very fruitfull in fruit and cattell, in plenty of Fiſh, and by reaſon of their many Orchards, abounding with that kind of Wine, which the Engliſh call *Sider*. In ſtead of Wood, which the Iland wanteth, they make their Fewell of Sea-weede dryed in the Sunne, and growing ſo thicke vpon the Rocks, that a farre off, a Sea-man would iudge them to be whole Acres of Copize. With the Aſhes hereof they manure their grounds. It containeth twelue Pariſhes.

Garnſey is twenty miles diſtant from *Iarſey*, ſomewhat leſſe, and nothing ſo fruitfull. It nouriſheth no venomous Creature, as doth the former; It is better fortifyed by nature, and from the tops of the broken Rocks (wherewith it is incircled) do the Lapidaries and Glaſiers fetch that moſt hard ſtone, wherewith they cut their Iewels and Glaſſe. The Hauen likewiſe is more ſecure and ſafe for ſhipping and Merchants, eſpecially at the harbour of S. *Peter*, where by ancient priuiledges of the Kings of *England* (ſaith *Camden*) is continuall truce, be the war neuer ſo open and furious betweene the French and the Engliſh. For in theſe times may the Merchants of either Nation reſort without wrong or danger. They want Wood likewiſe, and therefore eyther vſe the foreſaid weed for fewell, or Sea-coals brought out of England.

France.

FRaunce is ſeated vnder a very temperate and wholeſome Clymate: *There is no Country in the world better ſituate then that of France: for it participateth of the Clymate, both hot and cold.*

Digitized by Google

cold. It is in length, from *Bologne* to *Marſeilles*, two hundered leagues (after the rate of three Engliſh miles a league) and in breadth, from *Mount S. Bernard*, to *S. Iohn de Luze*, as much: for it is holden by ſome Authours to be of figure, quadrate; which notwithſtanding *Bodin* denyeth, auowing it to bee in forme of a Lozenge, with whom *La Noüe* conſenteth, meaſuring it thus; From *Calais* to *Narbone*, North and South, it is two hundred leagues: from *Rochell* to *Lions*, Weſt and Eaſt, it is one hundred and twenty leagues: From *Mets* to *Bayon*, North-Eaſt and South-weſt, it is two hundred leagues; and from *Morley* in *Bretagny* to *Antibe* in *Prouince*, North-weſt and South-eaſt, it is as much. True it is, that many places within this compaſſe are not holden of the King, as *Auignon*, and what elſe the Pope hath. *Toul*, *Verdun*, and *Mets*, are holden of the Empire, and *Cambray*, of the Houſe of *Auſtrich*: in like caſe of Protection, as *Conſtance* in *Swiſſerland*, *Utrich* in the Low-Countries, and *Vienna* in *Auſtria*; and as *Lucca* & *Genoüa* in *Italy*, are protected by the King of *Spaine*, ſo doe *Lorraine* alſo and *Sauoy* holde of the Empire. As contrarilie, there be places out of this circuit, which notwithſtanding hold of this Crowne in right, and owe him fealty and homage; as the *Spaniard* for the Counties of *Flanders* and *Artois*, which hee hath euer ſince the time of *Francis* the firſt, denyed to render.

The diuers Prouinces of the Countrey, are very many: the chiefe are theſe; *Picardy*, *Normandy*, *Ile of Fraunce*, *Beauſſe*, *Bretagne*, *Aniow*, *Maine*, *Poictow*, *Lymoſin*, *Zantonge*, *Champaigne*, *Berry*, *Salogne*, *Auuergne*, *Niuernois*, *Lyonnois*, *Charrolois*, *Bourbonois*, *Dolpheine*, *Prouence*, *Languedocke*, *Tourraine*, and *Burgundy*. Prouinces.

The thing of beſt note in each of theſe, is their ſingular Commodities and fruites, where-with they are bleſſed for the ſuſtenance of the Inhabiter. Inſomuch, that as they ſay of *Lombardy*, that it is the Garden of *Italy*: ſo may we truely ſay of France, that it is the Garden of *Europe*. *Picardy*, *Normandy*, and *Languedocke*, are goodly Countries of Corne, as any in Chriſtendome; All the Inland Countries, are full of Wine, Fruites, and Grain: in ſome, great ſtore of Wood; In others, Commodities

of

Digitized by Google

of Flaxe; In others, of Mines of Salt; In others, of Iron: Insomuch, as one sayth; *All thinges necessarie for Mans life ouerflow there in such abundance, that, in counterchange onely of the Corne, Wine, Salt, and Wood, trasported into forraine Countries, there is yearely brought into Fraunce twelue hundred thousand poundes sterling.* And another no lesse approoued, and as well practised in the State of Fraunce, sayth: *The Springes of Salt, Wine, and Corne, are not to be drawne dry.* In which place, hee complayneth, that the Kinges of *Fraunce* were wont in times past to helpe their neede with Sales of Wood, which are now of late yeares so spoyled, as France shall shortly bee forced to haue their Lard from other Countries, as also Wood to build and burne: a complaint which I haue often heard in England. Other Prouinces haue also their especially Commodities, wherein they excell their Neighbours: as in *Lymosin*, the best Beeues; about *Orleans*, the best Wines; in *Auuergne*, the best Swine; in *Berry*, the best Muttons, where there is such store, as thereof they haue a Prouerbe, when they would taxe a fellow for his notable lying, that tels of a greater number then the truth, they say: *Fye, there bee not so many Sheepe in Berry.* They pertake also in Sea-Commodities: as vpon the Coast of *Picardy*, where the shore is sandy, they haue store of flat Fish: vppon the Coast of *Normandy* and *Guyen*, where it is Rocky, Fish of the Rocke (as the French call them) and vppon the Coast of *Bretaigne*, where it is muddy, store of round Fish, as Lamprey, Conger, Haddocke; so likewise in diuers seasons, diuers other sortes, as Mackerels in the ende of the Spring, and Herrings in the beginning of Autumn, as we haue in England, &c.

And this Country must needs be wel stored with Fish; for besides the benefite of the Sea, the Lakes and Ponds belonging onely to the Clergy, which at the most haue but one third of *France*, are reported to be 135. thousand.

Riuers. The Riuers also of France are so many, as *Boterus* reporteth of the Queene Mother, she should say, heere were more then in all Christendome; but we hold her for no good Cosmographer. True it is, that the Riuers heere are many, and very faire, and so fitly seruing one the other, and all the whole, as it seemeth,

Digitized by Google

meth, nature in the framing of our bodies, did not shew more wonderfull prouidence, in disposing Veines and Arteries thoroughout the body, for their apt conueyance of the bloud and Spirite from the Liuer and Heart, to each part thereof, then she hath shewed in the placing of these Waters, for the transporting of all her Commodities to all her seuerall Prouinces. Of all those, these are the principall; the *Seine*, vppon which standeth the Cittie of *Paris*, *Rouen*, and many other. It hath his head a little aboue *Chatillon* in the North-west of *Lingonois*, & receiueth nine Riuers of name; wherof the *Yonne*, the *Marn*, and the *Oyse* are Nauigable; that is, doe carry Boates with sayle.

The *Soane*, whereupon standeth the Cittie of *Amyens*, *Abbeuile*, and many other. It hath his head aboue Saint *Quentin*, deuideth *Picardie* from *Artois*, and receiueth eight lesser Riuers. The *Loire* hath standing vpon it, the Citties of *Orleans*, *Nantes*, and many other: his head is in *Auuergne*, it parteth the middle of Fraunce, his course is almost two hundered leagues, it receiueth seauenty two Riuers, whereof the cheefe are *Allier*, *Cher*, *Maine*, *Creuse*, *Vienne*, all Nauigable. The *Garond*, vpon which standeth *Bourdeaux*, *Thoulouse*, and other Citties: it hath his head in the *Pyreney* Mountains, it diuideth *Languedocke* from *Gascoine*, it receiueth sixteene Riuers, whereof *Iarne*, *Lot*, *Bayze*, *Derdonne*, and *Lisle* are chiefest.

And lastly, the *Rhosne*, vppon which standeth the Cittie of *Lions*, *Auignon*, and diuers others: It hath his head in the Mountaines: the *Alpes*, deuiding *Dolpheny* from *Lyonnois*, and *Prouince* from *Languedocke*, it receiueth thirteene Riuers, whereof the *Soane*, the *Doue*, *Ledra*, and *Durance*, are the chiefest.

All the other Riuers carry their streames into the Ocean: *Some* at S. *Vallery*, *Seine* at *New-hauen*, *Loyre* beneath *Nantes*, and *Garond* at *Blay*: onely the Riuer of *Rhosne* payeth his trybute to the *Mediterranean*, at *Arles*.

The *Seine*, is counted the richest, the *Rhosne* the swiftest, the *Garond* the greatest, the *Loyre* the sweetest, for the difference which *Boterus* makes of them, where hee omits the *Garond*, and makes the *Soane* a principall Riuer, is generally reiected.

Digitized by Google

Hauens and Ports.

The Ports and Passages into Fraunce, where Custome is paid to the King, were in times past more then they bee now: the names of them at this present, are these: In *Picardy*, *Calais*, *Bologne*, *Saint Vallery*. In *Normandy*, *Diepe*, *Le Haure de Grace*, *Honnefleux*, *Caen*, *Cherbrouge*. In *Bretaigne*, *S. Malo*, *S. Brieu*, *Brest*, *Quimpercorentine*, *Vannes*, *Nants*. In *Poictow*, *Lusson*, *les sables d'Olonne*. In *Rochellois*, *Rochelle*. In *Xantogne*, *Zoubisse*. In *Guyenne*, *Bourdeaux*, *Blay*, *Bayonne*. In *Languedocke*, *Narbonne*, *Agde*, *Beucaire*, *Maugueil*. In *Prouence*, *Arles*, *Marseilles*, *Frans*. In *Lionnois*, *Lions*. In *Burgogne*, *Ausonne*, *Langers*. In *Champagne*, *Chaumont*, *Chalons*, *Troie*. In the Territory *Metzin*, *Metz*, *Toul*, *Verdun*. In all thirty seauen: Of all these, *Lions* is reputed to bee the most aduantagious to the Kinges Finances, as beeing the key for all Silkes, cloathes of Gold and Siluer, and other Merchandize whatsoeuer, which come or goe from *Italy*, *Swisserland*, and all those Southeast Countries into *Fraunce*, which are brought to thys Towne, by the two faire Riuers of *Rhosne* and *Soan*: the one comming from *Sauoy*, the other from *Burgundy*, and here meeting.

For profit, next to *Lions*, are *Bourdeaux*, *Rochell*, *Marseilles*, *Nantes* and *Newhauen*: But for capability of shipping, I haue heard that *Brest* excelleth; and for strength, *Calais*, especially as it is now lately fortified by the *Spaniard*, which was not let long since to be called, *The goodliest Gouernment in the worlde, at least in Christendome*.

There are requsite in all Ports, to make them perfite, these foure things: 1. *Roome to receiue many and great Ships*. 2. *Safe Riding*, 3, *Facility of repelling forraign force*: 4. *Concourse of Merchants*. The most of the *French* Ports haue al foure properties, except onely the last, which in the time of these ciuill broyles, haue discontinued: and except that wee will also graunt, that *Calais* fayles in the first.

Cities.

The Cities in *Fraunce* (if you will count none Cities, but where is a Bishoppes Sea) are onely one hundered and foure. There be so many Archbishops and Bishops in all, as shall in more fit place be shewed: But after the *French* reckoning, calling euery *Ville*, a Citty, which is not eyther a *Burgade*, or a Vil-

Digitized by Google

Village, we ſhall finde that their number is infinite, and indeed vncertaine, as is alſo the number of the Townes in generall. Some ſay, there be one Million and ſeauen hundred thouſand: but they are of all wiſe men reproued. Others ſay, ſixe hundred thouſand; but this is alſo too great to bee true. The *Cabinet* rateth them at one hundered thirty two thouſand of Pariſh Churches, Hamlets, and Villages of all ſortes: *Bodin* ſayth there be twenty ſeauen thouſand and foure hundred, counting onely euery Citty for a Pariſh: which will very neere agree with that of the *Cabinet*; and therefore I embrace it as the trueſt.

By the reckoning before ſet downe, of two hundred leagues ſquare (which *France* almoſt yeeldeth) we muſt compute, that heere is in all forty thouſand leagues in ſquare, and in euery league, fiue thouſand Arpens of ground, which in all amounteth to two hundred millions of Arpens: which ſumme being deuided by the number of the Pariſhes, ſheweth, that one with another, each Village hath one thouſand, fiue hundered, and fifteene Arpens, which meaſure is bigger then our Acre.

We may, if we will, abſtract a third, becauſe *Bodin* wil not admit *Fraunce* to bee ſquare, but as a Lozenge: For in matter of ſuch generality as this, men doe alwayes ſet downe ſuppoſitions, not certainties.

If a man will looke throughout all France, I thinke that (ſome Caſtels excepted) he ſhal not finde any Towne halfe perfectly fortified, according to the rules of Engineers.

The Citty of *Paris*, ſeated in a very fruitfull and pleaſant part of the Ile of *France*, vpon the Riuer of *Sein*, is by the ſame deuided into three parts: that on the North, towards *S. Denis*, is called the *Burge*: that on the South towardes the *Fauxbourges* of *S. Germaines*, is called the *Vniuerſity*, and that in the little Ile, which the Riuer there makes, by deuiding it ſelfe, is called the *Ville*. Paris.

This part no doubt, is the moſt ancient; for ſayth my Authour: *Lutecia is a Citty of the Pariſians, ſeated in an Ile of the Seine*: We may diſtinguiſh it thus: into *Tranſequana*, *Ciſequana*, and *Interamnis*: The parte beyond the *Seine*: That on this ſide the *Seine*, and that in the Ile encompaſt with the Riuer. It

Digitized by Google

is reputed not onely the Capitall Citty of *Fraunce*, but also the greateſt in all *Europe*. It is about the Walles, ſome ten *Engliſh* myles: theſe are not very thicke, the want whereof, is recompenced with the depth of the ditch, and goodnes of the Rampart, which is thicke and defenſible, ſaue on the South ſide, which no doubt, is the weakeſt part of the Towne, on which ſide it is reported, that the Lord *Willoughby* offered the King in foure dayes to enter, as ſuch time as he beſiedged it. Whereunto the King condiſcended, not by the Counſaile of the olde Marſhall *Biron*, who told him; it was no policy to take the Bird naked, when he may haue her feathers and all. On the other ſide, eſpecially towardes the Eaſt, it is very well fortified with Bulwarke and Ditch, fayre and moderne. *The Ramparts of the Gates S. Anthony, S. Michell, and S. Iames, and elſewhere, were made* 1544.

This Baſtile of *Saint Anthony*, was built (ſome ſay) by the *Engliſh*; and indeede it is ſomewhat like thoſe peeces which they haue built elſewhere in *Fraunce*; as namely, that at *Rouen*: howbeit, I read in *Vigner* his Chronicle, that it was builded by a Prouoſt of *Paris*, in the time of *Edward* the third of *England*; at what time our Kings began their firſt claime, and had as yet nothing to doe in this Citty.

So in this Towne, the *Chaſtelet* was built by *Iulian* the Apoſtata: the *Vniuerſity* was founded by *Charlemaigne*, Anno, 800. who alſo erected thoſe of *Bologna* and *Padoa*.

The Church of *Noſtre Dame*, was founded, *Anno Dom.* 1257. If you would know the greatnes of the great Church of our *Lady*, the roofe therof is 17. fathom high, it is 24. fathom broad, 65. fathom long: the two Steeples are 34. fathom high aboue the Church, and all founded vpon pyles.

The Towne-Houſe was finiſhed by *Francis.* 1. *anno* 1533. with this inſcription ouer the Gate, *S. P. E. P.* that is: For his wel-deſeruing; Senate, People and Burghers of *Paris*, *Franciis* the 1. moſt puiſſant King of *Fraunce*, commaunded this houſe to bee built from the foundation, and finiſhed it, and dedicated it to the calling of the Common Counſell, and gouerning the Citty, in the yeare aforeſaid.

This is as you would ſay, the Guild-Hall of the Towne. The *Ho-*

Digitized by Google

Hoſtel Dieu in *Paris*, was augmented and finiſhed in 1535. by *Antoine de Prat*, Chauncelor in this Citty, his pourtraict with *Frauncis.* 1. is vpon the dore as ye enter. This is (as we call it at *London*) the Hoſpitall. The *Palace de Paris* was built by *Philip le Bel*, 1283, purpoſing it ſhoulde haue beene his manſion houſe; but ſince, it hath been diſpoſed into diuers Courts, for the execution of Iuſtice, iuſt like *Weſtminſter Hall*, which likewiſe at firſt, was purpoſed for the Kings Pallace.

Here you haue ſuch a ſhewe of Wares in faſhion, but not in woorth, as ye haue at the *Exchange*. Here is a Chappell of the S. *Eſpirit*, built by S. *Lewes*, 1242. Here are al the ſeauen Chambers of the Court of Parliament (which was firſt inſtituted by *Charles Mariel*, father to King *Pepin*, *anno* 720.) but of them all, the great Chamber of *Paris*, is moſt magnificently beautified and adorned by *Lewes* the twelfth. At the entry, is a Lyon cowchant, with his tayle betweene his legges, to ſignifie, that all perſons howe high ſoeuer, are ſubiect to that Court.

The Chamber alſo of Comptes, built by this *Lewes*, is a very fayre roome; at the entry whereof, are fiue Portreicts with their Mots. The firſt is *Temperance*, with a Dial and Spectacle: Her word, *Mihi ſpreta voluptas*: I deſpiſe pleaſure. Secondly, *Prudence*, with a looking Glaſſe, and a Siue: her word, *Conſilijs rerum ſpeculer*: I pry into the Counſel of thinges. *Iuſtice*, with a ballance and a ſword: her Mot, *Sua cuiq; miniſtro*: I giue to euery man his owne. *Fortitude*, with a Tower in one arme, and a Serpent in the other: her worde, *Me dolor atque metus fugiunt*: Both paine and feare auoyde me. And laſtly, *Lewes* the King, with a Scepter in one hand, and holding *Iuſtice* by the other, and this written for his word:

My happy Scepter in calme peace doth flouriſh,
While I theſe Heauen-bred Siſters foure do nouriſh.

The buildings of this Citty are of ſtone, very fayre, high, and vniforme, throughout the Towne; onely vppon the Port *N. Dame*, our *Ladies Bridge*, which is, as it were, their *Cheapſide*: Their buildings is of Brick-bat, al alike, notwithſtanding the fayreſt Fabricke in the Towne (and worthily) is, the Kings Caſtle or Palace of the *Louure* at the Weſt: It is in forme quadrangulare

Digitized by Google

drangulare, the South and West quarters are new and Prince-like, the other two very antique and prison-like. They were puld downe by *Francis 1.* and begun to be rebuilt, but finished by *Henry* the second, with this inscription. *The most Christian King Henre the 2. began to repaire this time-ruined Edifice.*

Vniuersites. The *Vniuersities*, in times past were woont to bee (by report) aboue thirty thousand of all sortes, but many of these, Children, such as our petty Schooles in the Countries are furnished withall. The streets both in the Citty, Vniuersity, and Suburbs, are very fayre, straight, and long very many of them; the Shops thicke, but nothing so full of Wares, nor so rich, as they of *London*; in comparison whereof, these seeme rather Pedlers then otherwise: But for number, I suppose, there bee three for two of those.

The *Faulxbourges* are round about the Citty, ruined and vtterly desolate, except those of *Saint Germaines*, which was very fayrely builded, and was very neare as great as the fayre Towne of *Cambridge*.

The benefit of this Towne is very great, which it hath by the Riuer; as by which al the commodityes of the Countrey are conueyed: Whereupon *Monsieur d'Argenton* reports of it:

Of al the Townes that euer I saw, it is enuironed with the best and fertilest Countrey.

And he there reports, that for twenty moneths that hee was Prisoner, he saw such an infinite company of Boates passe and repasse, as but that hee was an eye-witnesse, hee would haue thought it incredible: which he also after proues, by the maintenance of the three Armyes, of the three Dukes of *Burgundy*, *Guienne*, and *Bretaigne*, which consisted of an hundered thousand men, against the Citty of *Paris*, wherein they had besiedged *Lewes* the eleuenth, and yet neyther the Camp nor Town had any want of Victuals.

Some say, this Towne was builded in the times of *Amasias*, King of *Iuda*, by some Reliques of the *Troian* warre, and that it was called *Lutece* (*à Luto*) because the soyle in this place is very fatte, which is of such nature, as ye cannot wel get it out, it doth so staine: whereof they haue a By-word; *It stayneth like the durt of Paris*. Other say, it was called *Paris* of (*Parresia*) a Greeke

Digitized by Google

Greeke word, which ſignifieth (ſayth this Authour) *hardineſſe or ferocity*, alleadging this verſe:

Et ſe Parriſios dixerunt nomine Franci,
Quod ſonat audaces, &c.

And the *Franks* called themſelues *Parriſians*, which ſignifieth, *Valiant*. And by this Etymology woulde inferre, that the *French* is a warlike Nation. But hee is much miſtaken in the word; for it ſignifieth only a boldnes or liberty of ſpeech: which whether they better deſerue, or to bee accounted valiant, you ſhall ſee, when I come to ſpeake of the *French mans* humour, and nature in generall. As for the nature of the people of this Towne, their Hiſtories taxe it of infinite mutinies and Seditions, matchable to the two moſt rebellious Townes of *Europe*, *Liege*, and *Gant*; and yet this laſt is prayſed in one thing: *That they neuer harme their Princes perſon*: Whereof the *Baricades*, as alſo the late aſſaſinations of *Henry* the third, and *Henry* the fourth, make *Paris* moſt vnwoorthy. And *du Haillan* ſayeth of them, when they ſtoode faſt to *Lewes* the eleuenth, againſt the three Dukes abouenamed: *That the Parriſians neuer held good ſide, nor neuer ſhewed any honeſty but then onely*. But I can read no ſuch matter in *Commines*; for I wel remember, that euen then diuers of the chiefe of the Towne had practiſed ſecretly with the enemy, and were vpon tearmes of concluding, when by the Kings wiſedome they were preuented.

The Armes of this Citty were giuen them, *Anno* 1190. by *Philip le Bel*, who creating them a Preuoſt and Eſcheuins (like Office as our Mayor and Aldermen:) *Gaue them for Armes, Gules, a Shippe Argent, and a Cheefe ſeeded with Flower de Lys*. Or, ye ſhall heare the *French* bragge, that theyr Citty hath bin beſiedged a hundered times by the enemy, and yet was neuer taken ſince *Cæſars* tyme. The reaſon whereof, one of theyr beſt Writers giues; becauſe (ſayeth hee) it is very weake, and therefore alwaies compoundeth.

I compare *Paris* with *London*, thus: This is the greater, the fairer built, and the better ſcituate: ours is the richer, the more populous, the more ancient: For I holde Antiquity to bee a great honour, as well to great Citties, as to great Families.

Be-

Digitized by Google

Castles. Besides the Cities and Ports of *France* wel fortified, there be also infinite numbers of Castels and Cittudels (which the people call, *the Nests of Tirants*, and the Prince, *Chastivillains*.) Of the Castels, the number is therefore most great, and as vncertaine, by reason that euery Noble mans house of any age, is builte in defensible manner. An example of one, for many hundereds, you may take that of *Roch-fort*, belonging to the *Seigneur de la Tremouuille*, which in the Ciuill warres endured a siedge, and 5000. Cannon shot, and yet was not taken. It is judged by the wisest, that in great kingdomes, such as *France*, no places should be fortified but the frontiers: after the example of Nature, who armeth the heads and heeles of Beasts, but neuer the Bowels nor middle parts as in *England*, where except frontier places, none but his Maiesty haue fortified places.

Charges. You must vnderstand, that here in *Fraunce*, all Inhabitants of Citties, are lyable to the common charges of the fortification of their Citties, reparations of Bridges, Fountaynes, Highwayes, and such like. And becawse the richer sort shoulde not leuy the money, and then keep it to themselues, or employ it as they list; they must giue information to the Chauncelor, of the necessity of the Leuy, & procure Letters Patents for the same, by authority whereof they gather the money, and vse it, yeelding after to the Kings Procureur their account.

And for their Watch and Ward, it goes by course, as in the Citty of *Embden*, and diuers other in those Low Countries. As for Castels, the *Seigneur* or Captaine, may not force Vassal, (*faire le guet*, to watch and ward) except in frontier places, vpon forfaiting of their Estates.

Gouernments. After this generall Suruey of the Countrey it selfe, wee must obserue something of the Gouernment, wherein I will not trouble you, with fetching theyr first Pedegree from beyond the Moone, as many of their Histories labour, nor by disputing the matter, whether it bee true or no, that they came from *Troy*, into the Marishes of *Maotis*; whence, after some small abode, they were chased by the *Romaine* Emperour, into *Bauaria*, and after into *Frankeland* in *Germany*.

It shall suffice, that from hence, this people came into *Fraunce*, wherein all Wryters agree. For after the declination of

Digitized by Google

of the *Romaine* Empire, when the *Oſtrogothes* conquered *Italy*, the *Viſigothes Spaine*; and the *Vandals Affricke*: then did the *Burgondiens*, and *Franconiens* deuide this Countrey betweene them, conquering it vppon the old *Inquilines* (the *Gaules*) who from *Cæſars* time til then, had not taſted the force of a Forrayn power.

The Gouernment was vnder Dukes, till the yeare, 420. when as *Pharamond* cauſed himſelfe to be entituled King. In this race it remained til 751. when *Pepin* ſuppreſſed his M. *Chilpericke*, and vſurped. His lyne laſted till 988. when *Hugh Capet* gaue the checke to the ſucceſſion of *Charlemagnes* line (who was *Pepins* ſon) and inueſted himſelfe with the Diadem. From him it hath lineally deſcended by heyres males to the houſe of *Valois*, and for want of iſſue-male in them, is now come to the houſe of *Burbon*. In this ſpace of time, you muſt obſerue, the three ages of *Fraunce*: her Childe-hood, till *Pepin*: her Man-hood, till *Capet*: her olde age, til now. For in the firſt age, the Kinges were like Children, content to bee taught by others in matters of Religion, (as then ye may note, that *Clouis* receiued the Fayth and was Baptized) as alſo in matter of pollicy, they were content that others ſhoulde beare the whole ſway, and rule them alſo, ſuch were the *Maieurs de Palais*, whereof *Pepin* was one that vſurped.

In their Man-hood they did like men, conquer Kingdomes, relieue diſtreſſed Chriſtians, ouercome *Saracens* and *Infidels*, defend the Church againſt all aſſayles, as ye may perceiue by the Hiſtory of *Charles* the great, and his ſucceſſors.

And laſtly now, in her old age, ſhe grew wiſe, erected Courts for Iuſtice, made Lawes and Ordinances to gouerne her Inhabitants, wherein no Country in *Europe* hath excelled her: for ſo ſayth my Author; There is no Country in the world, where Iuſtice is better eſtabliſhed, then in ours: which is true (but with this addition of a later Writer:) If the Officers thereof were not too too many, and if their places were rightly executed.

To force this Relation, with many notes of things here happning in former ages, were both impertinent, and tedious; only I would wiſh you note, that in 482. the Chriſtian Faith was

Digitized by Google

here receiued, and in the yeare 800. the *Romain* Empire hither translated.

Concerning the Countrey of *France*, the State is a Monarchy, and the Gouernment mixt: for the authority of *Maieurs, Eſcheuins, Conſuls, Iureurs, &c.* is Democraticall: the *Payres*, the *Counſels*, the *Parliaments*, the *Chambers* of *Counts*, the *Generalities*, &c. are Ariſtocratical. The calling of aſſemblies, giuing of Offices, ſending Embaſſages, concluding of Treaties, pardoning of Offences, ennobling of Familyes, legitimation of Baſtards, coyning of Moneys, and diuers other, to the number of 24. are meerely Regal, called of the *French*, *Droicts Royaux*.

And ſure it is, that no Prince in *Europ* is a more perfect Monarch then he: for beſides all theſe Priuiledges named, as we ſay of the Parliament of *Paris*, that it hath the prerogatiue to bee appealed vnto, from all other Courts, which they call (*the laſt appeale*) ſo is it likewiſe true, that the King himſelfe hath the meere and abſolute authority ouer this. For though no Edict or Proclamation, no War or Peace which he makes, bee good, without the Conſent and *Arreſt* as (they call it) of this Court: Yet true it is, that when hee, ſending to them for theyr confirmation and ratifying thereof, if at firſt they refuſe, and ſend Deputies to his Maieſty to enforme him of their reaſons, with humble ſute to reuoke the ſame, hee returnes them vpon payne of his diſpleaſure and depriuation of their Offices, to confirme it. *Sic volo ſic iubeo.*

Lawes. As touching the Lawes, we muſt know, that moſt of them are grounded on the Ciuil Law of the Emperor: but ſo, as this State euer proteſteth againſt them, ſo far as they be good and equall: inſomuch as in former times it was ordayned, that hee which alledged any Lawe of *Iuſtinian*, ſhould looſe his head. Of the Lawes here in force, ſome are fundamentall, as they cal them, and immortall: Such as, nor King, nor aſſembly can abrogate: others are Temporall.

Of the firſt ſort, I will onely remember you of two examples: the Law *Salique*, and that of *Appennages*. As for the firſt, they would needes make the world beleeue, that it is of great antiquity, wherewith they very wrongfully tromped the heires of

Digitized by Google

of *Edward* the third, from the enioying of this Crowne, which to them is rightly descended by the Mother; & whose clayme is still good, were the *English* Sworde well whetted to cut the Labels of this Lawe. Of which *Haillan* himselfe confesseth, that before the time of *Philip le Long*, 1321: That the Law *Salique* was neuer heard tell of before this Kings time, who caused it to bee ratified by all the Nobles of his kingdome, some by fayre promises, and others by force and threates. Whereupon, they haue since this Prouerbe, *The Kingdome of Fraunce cannot fall from the Lance to the Distaffe*..

Touching the *Appennages*, it is also a Law of great consequēt for the Crown: For by this, the Domayne cannot be alienēd; and by the other, the Crowne cannot fall into the handes of strangers. You must note, that this Lawe imports, that the younger Sonnes of the King, cannot haue Partage with the Elder; which till the time of *Charlemaigne* (when this was made) they might; they must onely haue *Appennage sans propriete*. By which Charter of *Appennage* is giuen all profits arising of the said *Apannes*; as Domayne, the Hundreth, Rents, rights of Seigneury, *parties Casuelles*, Lottes, Sales, Homages, rights of Vassalage, Forrests, Ponds Ryuers, Iurisdictions, Patronages of Churches, Prouisions, and Nomination of Chappels, Goods of *Mayn-mort*, Fifts of Lands sold, and all other profits and commodities whatsoeuer, to return to the Crown, for want of heyres Male: But the leuying of Taxes and aydes, the minting of Money, and all other thinges of Regality are reserued.

Concerning the other sorte of Lawes in this Realme, they are infinit, which argueth (*à consequente*) that they be ill kept: for, *gens humana ruit per vetitum nefas*: and (*ab Antecedente*) that the people of this Country haue bin ill enclined: for *euill manners cause good Lawes*.

These *French* Lawes are too full of preambles, Processes, Interims, and Prouisoes, as by all their Ordinances and Edicts appeareth: There is nothing (methinks) colder, then *a Lawe with a Prologue*: Let a Law commaund, and not perswade. Of all these Lawes I will onely name you this one: *That the minority of the King shal be assisted with a Councel, chosen by the States*

Digitized by Google

of Fraunce, wherein the Princes of the blood ought to hold the first place, and Straungers to bee excluded: Which was enacted at *Toures*, by *Charles*. 8. *an*. 1484. I tell you of this, as of the true source and spring of all the late ciuill warres, because the Cadets of *Lorrayne* by insinuation with the young Kings, *Francis* the second, and *Charles* the ninth, vnder the fauour of the Q. Mother, tooke vppon them to manage all publike matters at their own pleasure, and thrust out the first Princes of the bloud of the house of *Burbon*. Whereupon *Nauarre* and *Condy*, the Princes of this Family, assisted by many of the *French* Nobles, embarqued themselues in the action of reforming such an abuse, and displacing the *Guysard* out of this authority, tooke it vpon themselues, to whome it rightly belonged.

Howbeit, out of that which I there saw, which I haue heard of others, and reade in Authors; I will aduenture to relate, concerning the Officers of this Court; for as for other great Offices, as of *Constable*, *Admiral*, *Marshall*, *Grand M.* of the *Eauës* and *Forrests*, *Grand M.* of the *Artillery*, and others, I shal speake of them, when I come to relate of the Kings Forces in generall, to which place these Offices especially appertaine.

Officers of Court.

Great Master. The first Office then of Court, is that of the Great Maister, which in elder times was called Earle of the Pallace, and after changed into the name of *Grand Seneschal*, and now lastly into *Grand Maistre*. It is his Office, to iudge of matters of difference, betweene other Officers of Court. Hee had also the charge to giue the word to the Guard, to keep the keyes of the Kinges priuate lodging, and to determine in disputes among Princes that followed the Court, for their lodgings. In assemblies, hee sitteth right before the King, a stayre lower, as you read in the *Dern. Trobl.* Great Butler or Taster, was in former times, a great Office in the Kings house, they had place in the Courts of Iustice, as Peeres. This Office was long in the house of the *Countes* of *Senlis*: It is nowe vanished, and onely there remaynes that of the *Grand Panetier*. This Office is ancient: he hath besides the Kings house, super-intendence ouer all Bakers in the Citty and Suburbs of *Paris*. They which were wont to be called, Pantlers, Tasters and Caruers, are now called: Genlemen Wayters of the Court.

The

Digitized by Google

The Office of great Chamberlaine, was long in the house of *Tankervile*: he lay at the Kings feet, when the Queene was not there. His Priuiledges are nowe nothing so many as in times past. Those which were then called Chamberlaynes, are now, Gentlemen of the Chamber. The Office of great Esquire, is not very ancient, though now it be very Honourable, and is the same that Mayster of the Horse is in the Court of *England*: for it is taken out of the Constables Office, to whom it properly appertayned. It was first instituted in the time of *Charles 7.* In the Kings entrance into the Citty, he carries the Sword sheathed before him; The Cloath of Estate carried ouer the King, by the Mayor and Sheriffes, belonges to his Fee. No man may be the Kings Spur-maker, *Mareschall*, and such like Officer, but he must haue it of him, as also other inferior Offices belonging to the Stables. He had in times past, the commaund ouer Stages of Post-horses: but now the Controller generall of the saide Posts, hath it. The office of *Maister or Steward of the Kinges House*, hath charge ouer the expence of the Kings house: For a marke of his authority, he carries a Trucheon tipt at both ends with Siluer and Guilt, and marcheth before the Sewer, when the Kinges dinner comes to the Table.

Gentlemen of the Kings Chamber.

Great Esquire or Master of the Horse.

Master or Steward of the Kings House.

No Sergeant can arrest any of the Kinges house without their leaue. They serue quarterly: they were wont to bee but foure, but now I haue heard it credibly said, they be eighty in name, but all of these doe not execute the Office. The *Great Prouost* of *Fraunce*, and of the Kings house, was so called, since *Charles* the ninth: for before, hee was called *Roys des ribauds*, King of the Rascals. His Office is to stickle among the Seruants, Pages, Lacqueis, and *Filles de ioye* (Punkes or pleasant Sinners) which follow the Court, and to punnish all offences in these people.

Great Prouost of Fráce.

I should haue named before these last, as a place more honourable, the Office of *Great Faulconer*, and *great Hunt*, who haue authority ouer all Officers of chase. They of the Kinges Chamber, are eyther Gentlemen of the Chamber, of whom I spake before, or Groomes of the Chamber, which are but base *Groomes* and *Yeomen*.

Great Faulconer, and great Hunt.

Digitized by Google

Gentlemen of the Kinges Guard.

The hundred Gentlemen of his Guard (though there be two hundred of them) they hold and vſe a Weapon, called *Le bec de corbin:* They march two and two before him: they are part *French*, and part *Scots*. The *Scot* carries a white Caſſocke, powdred with Siluer plates, and the Kinges deuiſe vppon it; The *French* weare the Kinges Colours. There is alſo a Guard of *Swiſſe*, attired in party-coloured-Cloath, drawne out with Silke, after their Countrey faſhion: theſe follow the Court alwaies on foot, the other on Horſe.

There belongs to the Court alſo, the *Marſhals of Lodgings*, and *Haruingers:* they haue like Offices as the Haruingers in the Engliſh Court; there be alſo diuers others which are heere needleſſe to be ſpoken of.

His Forces.

It followeth I ſpeake of his Forces, as well Horſe as foote, of which this Countrey is very well furniſhed, and indeede vanteth (and I thinke woorthily) to bee the beſt and greateſt *Genſdarmerie* of any Realme in Chriſtendome: but on the other ſide, their foote haue no reputation; Inſomuch, as at the ſiedge of *Amyens*, wee ſhould heare the Spaniard within the Towne, ſpeake ouer the wals to our Engliſh Souldier, in their Trenches, after we had ſaued the Kings Canon, from which the French were ſhamefully beaten by them within, ſallying out vpon them:

"You are tall Souldiers (ſay they) and we honour you much, "not thinking any foot to come neere vs in reputation, but you, "and therefore, when you of the Engliſh come downe to the "Trenches, we double our Guard, and looke for blowes: but "as for theſe baſe and vnworthy *French*, when they come, wee "make account wee haue nothing to doe that day, but play at "Cardes, or ſleepe vpon our Rampart. Of both theſe Forces of Horſe and Foote of France, you are to note this which followeth.

It is reported of the great Turke, that when he conquereth any Prouince or Countrey, he deuideth the Landes vppon his Horſemen, and to each his portion, with an exemption of paiing, eyther Rent, Taxe, or Tallage whatſoeuer: onely they are bound to ſerue the *Grand-Signore*, with a proportion of Horſe at their owne charge, and in their owne perſon in his warres, except

Digitized by Google

except either age or ſickneſſe hinder, which are the two onely excuſes admitted. Theſe are called his *Timars*: of like Nature were the *Calaſyres* or *Mamalucks* of *Egipt*.

So did the Kings of *Fraunce* in former times, beſtow vpon Gentlemen, diuers Landes and Poſſeſſions, freeing them likewiſe from Taxes and Aydes, vpon condition to haue their perſonal ſeruice in time of need. Theſe Lands were called (*Feifs*:) inſtituted before *Charlemaigne* his time, but till then, they were giuen onely for life (as at this day are thoſe of the *Turkes*:) but ſince, they be hereditary. The word *Feif*, hath his Etymology of (*Foy*) Faith: ſignifying Landes giuen by the King to his Nobility or men of deſert, with *Haulte et baſſe iuſtice*, with an acknowledgement of fealty and homage, and ſeruice of the King in his wars at their owne charge. Some *Feif* was bound to finde a man at Armes: ſome an Archer, ſome the third, and ſome the fourth of a man at Armes, according to the quantity of Land hee held. He that had Land from the value of fiue to ſixe hundred *Liures* Rent (that is from fifty to ſixty pound ſterling,) was bound to finde a man on Horſebacke, furniſhed for a man at Armes: and from three to foure hundred, a good light Horſe-man. Who if it pleaſe the Prince, and vpon occaſion of ſeruice, ſhall quit his Horſe and ſerue on foote, prouided that hee haue with him a vallet Harquebutier. But they that had leſſe then three or foure hundered, had a leſſe proportion of charge. There be foure exceptions where a man is not bound to ſerue in perſon: If he be ſicke, if aged, if he beare ſome Office, if hee keepe ſome Frontier place or other Caſtle of the Kings; for in this caſe he may ſend another.

They are bound, vpon forfeiture of their *Feif*, to ſerue three moneths within the Land, and forty dayes without, not counting the dayes of marching. You muſt obſerue, that as the *Seigneurs* hold their *Feif* of the King in *Haute iuſtice*, ſo other Gentlemen hold of them in *Baſſe iuſtice*, vpon charge to follow theſe *Seigneurs* at all times to the warres. For the *Feif* is the thing, by the acceptation whereof, they that holde it, are bound in oath and fidelity to their Lords: And therefore are called their Vaſſals, of *Weſſos* the old *Gaule* word, which ſignifieth Valiant: for to ſuch were the *Fiefes* giuen. As for *Serfes*, Slaues,

Digitized by Google

Slaues or Villaines, they are Domesticke, and serue vppon baser condition, for Wages and Victuals. There is also the Subiect; that is, the poore paisant that laboureth and tilleth the *Fiefs*, and therefore ye shall heare *Monsieur le* Gentleman speake of *ses terres, ses hommes*, and *ses subiects*: His Lands, his Men, and his Subiects: and yet, himselfe is Vassall to the *Seigneur*, that holds in *haute iustice*. But ye may note, that no word of seruice whatsoeuer in this discourse, doeth preiudice the lyberty naturall of the Vassall. Neither the Subiect, nor the *Serf* are bound to go to the warres, but only the vassall. The Mustering and gathering together of these Forces, is called the *Ban*, and *Arrier-Ban*, of the *Almaine* words, *Here exercitus*, an Army; and *Ban conuocatio*; a calling together. This *Ban* and *Arrier-ban*, consisted anciently of twelue, and sometimes fifteen thousand *Gensdarmes*: But after the corruption thereof, when the *Fiefs* came to bee in the hands of vnable and vnwoorthy men, the Kings of *France* were forced of later times, to erect the *Gensdarmes des Ordonnances*; the Men at Armes of his Ordinances, in *Charles 7.* time. For ye must consider, that there haue beene foure principall causes of the ouerthrowe of this *Ban* and *Arrier-ban*. The first were the guifts to the Clergy, who as is reported, haue the sixt part of these *Fiefs* in their hands, and contribute nothing to the warres: for as one saith, They will loose nothing, pay nothing, contribute nothing toward their guarding, and yet notwithstanding they will bee guarded. The next, was the voyages to the *Holy-Land*: for when one had made a vow to goe thither, to serue against the *Saracens*, and *Infidels*, hee sold his *Fiefe*, to furnish him to that purpose. The third, was the warres with the *English*, wherein by force they lost them. The last cause is, the Sales of them to all sortes of people, without exception; as the Lawyer, the Yeoman, or any other vnable person whatsoeuer that will buy them; which till *Charles* the seauenth they might not do. Ye see then, how necessary it was (this olde institution beeing corrupted and quite decayed) to erect a new; which they called *Les gensdarmes des ordonnances*: because at their first erection, there were diuers Lawes and ordinances made for them to obserue, which who so brake, was seuerely punished. They

were

Digitized by Google

were at first onely 1500. But after, they were increased to a hundred Companies, & giuen to diuers Princes of the bloud and Nobles of France, to conduct and commaund, with an honourable pension. In these Companies should be 6000. for in some there is an hundred, in others but fifty. Howbeit, it is thought, in each companie there wants some, for the benefit of the Officers, and that in truth, there be not aboue foure thousand in all. For the maintenance of this *Gensdarmerie*, there is a tax yearely leuyed vppon the people throughout all France, called the *Taille*.

Concerning both the number of the *Gensdarmes*, and their proportion of allowance, by the *Taille*, it is thus, as *La Noue* iudgeth: The Horsemen in the time of *Henry* the second, exceeded the number of 6000. Lances; but they are now but 4000. and in mine opinion, it were fit to entertaine in time of peace, foure Regiments of Infantery, of sixe hundred men a peece.

As touching the Infantery, *Francis* the first was the first that instituted the Legionaries, which were in all, eight Legions, and euery Legion to containe sixe thousand, according to the rate of the ancient *Romains*. The first Legion was of *Normandy*. The next of *Bretagne*. One in *Picardy*. One in *Burgundie*. In *Champaigne* and *Niuernois* one. In *Dalpheny* and *Prouence* In *Lyonnois* and *Auuergne* one. And one in *Languedocke*. These companies were shortly after cassed: and againe, within eighteene yeares erected; and are now againe of late yeares dissolued, and in their place, the Regiments now intertained, are fiue in number: The Regiment of the *Guard*, The Regiment of *Picardy*, The Regiment of *Champaigne*, the regiment of *Piemont*. And lastly, the Regiment of *Gascoyne*, commonly called the Regiment of *Nauarre*. In each of these is twelue hundred. His Infantery

These are all now in time of peace bestowed in Garison Townes and frontier places, except those of his Guard. *Bodins* opinion is, that foure Legions of 5000. apeece, would suffice to be maintained in this Land: for (saith he) the *Romaine* Empire, which was twenty times as great, had neuer but eleauen Legions in pay: but this is to bee vnderstood of them which were in pay ordinary in *Italy*, besides those Legions which

Digitized by Google

they had in other their Countries, as in England, Spaine, Low Countries, &c. For otherwise wee read of those Emperours, that had thirty one Legions; and *Bodin* himselfe confesseth, that *Augustus* had at one time entertained in pay forty Legions, at eleauen millions charge the yeare. But this Writer, though he be approoued, as as he well deserues; yet I thinke, if he fayled in any of his discourse, it was in matter of Warre, the profession whereof did ill agree with his long Robe; yee shall therefore take the iudgement of a discreeter Souldier of France for your direction, what force the French can make, or intertaine of others, which is this. If our King perceiued that any Neighbour of his meant to inuade his Frontiers, I thinke he might easily compose an Army of sixtie companies of men at Armes, twenty Cornets of light Horse, and fiue companies of Harquebusiers on Horse-backe, amounting all to 10000. Horse. To which he might adde three or foure thousand Reysters, and one hundred Ensignes of French foote, and forty Ensignes of his good confederates, the *Swissers*, and yet maintaine his other Frontiers sufficiently manned.

So that ye may conclude, that four thousand men at Armes, well complete, and with a proportion of light Horse and foot answerable, sheweth the whole Flower, Beauty, and force of France. Howsoeuer the Author of the Cabinet confidently auoweth, that there may easily be mustred and maintained four score and odde thousand Horse of one sort or other; that is, Lance and light Horse. But I feare me, we may say of them, as *Plutarch* saith of the Nobles of *Athens*, hauing vsurped vpon the Democratie of that Citty: *They were indeede but foure hundred, and yet caused themselues to bee stiled, the fiue thousand.* So I feare mee, hee reckoneth after the *Athenian* rate, ten for one.

The Cabinets reason is this: There be in France 15. thousand Gentlemen that are able to beare Armes: for (saith hee) rate this proportion at a Gentleman in each league, by the measure of France (which are forty thousand in square) and it wanteth but a fift. Howbeit, saith he, in some Countries, yee shall haue thirty or forty, within the compasse of one league, besides their Children. Out of these, if the King would, hee might

Digitized by Google

might compose a *Gendarmery* of 8000. men at Armes, and 16000. Archers: which body of 24000. Gentlemen, woulde represent in the field 60000. Horse. Hee might also haue a *canallerie Legiere*, of foure or fiue thousand Gentlemen. Hee might also furnish the *Ban* and *Arierban*, according to the olde fashion, with twelue or fifteene thousand Gentlemen. And yet might he haue besides all this, foure or fiue thousand for the State of his Court, and gouernment of his Prouinces. This is his Computation. But you shall see it proued, when we come to speake of the Nobility of France, that it is exceedingly shortned in number, and decayed in estate, and therefore nothing able to come neere this number. As good a consequent it were to say, that because ye haue two or three millions of men in England, able to fight, that therefore our State can bring so many into the fielde: without considering the prouision of Armes, and all other thinges necessary. But this Cabinet was made by one of the Religion, that was transported out of himselfe, by the heate of his zeale, and hate to the temporall liuings of the Church: Whose proiects and driftes are much like those of the *Supplication of Beggars* (a Booke made in King *Henry* the eights dayes) where he frameth in his fancy an *Vtopia* and felicitie, not to be hoped in France, building Castles in the Ayre, and concluding; that if it woulde please the King to aliene the Church temporall liuings, and vnite them to the Domaine, *nihil est dictus facilius*: (a thing easily sayd, but not easily done) that ouer and besides the forces of fourescore thousand Horse aboue-said, he might also maintaine an Infantery of the French Gentlemen of twelue thousand. Item, another of the popular, of forty eight thousand. And lastly, yet another Infantery legionary of forty eight thousand.

The *Supplication* was aunswered by Sir *Thomas Moore* his Booke, called, The *Pittifull complaint of the puling soules in Purgatory*: How well I know not, but of this I am sure, that if such a number of Horse and Foot should eyther be maintayned vpon the Church-liuing, or vpon the poore people (vpon whom all these charges of the *Gend'armes* lyeth, heere would be many more puling Soules, and pittifull complaintes in Fraunce,

Digitized by Google

then are in Sir *Thomas Moores* Purgatory.

It then remaines, that we hold our selues to the iudgment of *La Noue*, afore set downe, who also confesseth, that in *Charles* the sixt his time, there were in the fielde twenty two thousand Lances, but since the *Gendarmerie* was instituted, were neuer, but once at *Vallenciennes*, aboue tenne thousand. For as for that great number, whereof yee reade in M. *d'Argenton*, that besiedged *Lewes* the eleauenth in *Paris*, they were the Forces of three great Princes, and the better part *Burgognons*.

Officers of warre.

I must now remember you of the Officers for the warre in France: and because warre is made both by Sea and by Land, I must also reckon the Sea Officers: for as for the French kings Forces at Sea, I haue not yet learned that he hath any, & therefore can say nothing thereof.

Constable.

The first and principall, and which commaundeth all in the Kinges absence, euen the Peeres and Princes of the blood whatsoeuer, is the *Constable*: Who, as hath before beene remembred, hath his name of *Comes stabuli*. For in former times the Kinges chiefe Officers were called Counts, with an addition of their Office; as *Comes Palatij*, *Comes Præsidij*, *Comes rerum priuatarum*, *Comes sacrarum largitionum*, *Comes castrorum*, *Comes nauium*, Count of the Pallace, Count of the Guard, &c. And though he hath not now the command of the Kings Horse, yet keepeth he still the name: This Office was erected in *Lewes le Gros* his time. It was bestowed vppon the house of *Memorencie*, in *Francis* the first his time, and remayneth still in the same.

The auncient deuice of the house of *Memorency*, is this, *God ayde the Prime Christian, and ancientest Baron of Fraunce.* He hath the keeping of the Sword Royall. And as the great Esquire hath the Sword in the Scabberd, *Azure seeded with Flowers de Lyce, Or*, added to his Arms, so beareth the *Constable* for an Honour, the naked Sword. The *Mareschals* beare the Battel-axe; and the *Admirals*, the Anchor. The *Constable* and *Mareschals* giue the Oath to the King: He sitteth chiefe Iudge at the Table of Marble, vpon all Persons, Sutes, Actions, and Complaints whatsoeuer touching the warres. When the King ente-

Digitized by Google

entereth a Cittie, in his greateſt pompe, or vppon a deliuerie, hee goeth before with the Sword naked: and when the King ſitteth in Aſſembly of the three States, he is placed at his right hand. He that killeth the *Conſtable*, is guilty of high Treaſon. The *Mareſhals* are named, as ſome ſay, of *Marc. Cheual*, a Horſe, & *Schal.* Maiſter, or *Commander of the Horſe.* Others, of *Marcha*, that is; *March or Frontier*; *Quaſi Prafectus limitũ*, as it were, *Gouernor of the Marches*. Till *Francis* the firſt, there were but two in all Fraunce; after, foure; and now, tenne: for as is ſaid before, when any that held either ſome ſtrong towne or place of importance, came in to the King, hee did alwayes capitulate, to haue ſome one of theſe Offices, beſides ſummes of Money and Gouernments alſo: ſuch was the neceſſities of the times, ſaith *Hailan*. Theſe, vnder the Conſtable haue the commaund ouer all Dukes, Earles, Barons, Captaines, and *Genſdarmes*: but may neither giue battaile, make Proclamation, or Muſter-men, without his Commaundement. They haue vnder them Lieutenants, whom they call *Preuoſts-Marſhals*, who haue the puniſhing of mutinous Souldiers, ſuch as quit their colours, Rogues, and ſuch like. There is the office of Admirall: Looke what the Marſhals are in a Land-Armie, the ſame is the Admiral in a Sea-Armie: and theſe two offices are ſeuerall, becauſe the ſubiect of their imployment is differing and vnlike.

The Marſhall.

Admirall.

This office is the moſt ancient of all France: for *Caſar* ſpeaketh thereof: *The Admirals of Prouence, Bretagne, and Narbon are much commended for their practiſe and skill in Sea-ſeruice.*

I maruaile therefore, why *du Haillan* reporteth, that they were firſt made in *Charlemaignes* dayes, and that one Mayſter *Ritland*, was the firſt that was made. There are now foure Admiralties, *France, Bretagne, Guyenne*, and *Prouence*. This laſt is alwayes annexed to the gouernourſhip of that Countrey: So that of *Guyenne* likewiſe, till the King that now is, came to the Crowne, who before was Gouernor and Admirall of *Guyenne*: but ſince he hath diuided the commands. Yee may obſerue in Hiſtories, that all the while the French voyages were vpon the Leuant Seas, eyther to the *Holy-Land*, *Sicily*, or *Naples*, or whitherſoeuer the French alwaies had their Veſſels and Com-

Digitized by Google

maunders out of *Italy*. *Fraunce borrowed their Admirals from Genoa, Pisa, Venice, and Luca*. These haue the tenth of all wracke, prize, or prisoners, that are taken at Sea.

Before the inuention of Shot, there was an Officer in *France* called, *Great Maister of the Crosse-bowes and Ingines*: which office is now called, the *Great Maister of the Artillery*, who at first also, immediatly after the inuention of Shot, was called *Captaine Generall of the Artillery*.

You haue also *Treasurers for the warres*, which are eyther ordinary, or extraordinary: Those pay the *Gensdarmes*; and these, the Regiments of the Infantery. Treasurers ordinary are so many, as there be places where they Muster: Of extraordinary, there be alwaies foure.

The *Heraults* of France are sixe, *Normandy, Guyenne, Valois, Bretagne, Burgogne*, so called of the Countries (as with vs in England) and *Mont-ioy*, who is the chiefe of the rest. Their ancient Office was, to be present at al Iusts and Tournements, to denounce warre or peace, to summon places, to defie enemy-Princes, to giue Armes to men new ennobled. But now they be onely vsed at Feastes, Coronations, Solemnities, Funerals, and such like; for they are no more vsed in the Treatie and negotiation with forraine Princes. I thinke the reason is, because the Office hath of late yeares beene bestowed vppon vnworthy and in-sufficient persons. It shall heere be needelesse to name all other his Officers of the Warres, which are all one with those of other Countries, as *Collonell, Captaine, Sergeant, Lieutenant, Ensigne, Corporall*, &c. I will onely remember in a word the *French* manner of Mustering, March, Charge, and seruice in generall, and then proceed to the next branch of this relation. We must obserue, that (excepting the *Gens d'armes*, and the Regiments aboue named) when any Souldiers are taken vp for the warres, they are not pressed, as with vs, but the Captain hauing his Commission, gathereth them vp by sound of Drumme, entertaining onely such as will (which may bee some cause of the badnesse and baseneſſe of the *French* foot) for being commonly the Rascall sort, and such as haue no other meanes, there cannot settle in their abiect mindes, that true and honourable resolution, requisite in a Souldier. This Commission

Digitized by Google

miſſion muſt firſt bee ſhewed to the Gouernour, Lieutenant-generall, Bayliffe, or Seneſhall of the Prouince, vppon paine of death. Neyther is it good, except it be ſigned by the King, and one of the Secretaries of Eſtate, and ſealed with the great Seale. The Souldiers leuyed, are at the charge of the Prouince, where they be taken vp, till they depart the ſame. Their March it ſhould ſeeme, is ſomewhat more ſharpe then ours. For I remember I haue heard ſay, that vpon a time the olde *Marſhall Biron* ſhould bid Sir *Roger Williams* bring vp his Companyes faſter, taxing the ſlow March of the Engliſh. *Sir* (ſayth he) *with this March our fore-fathers conquered your Countrey of France, and I meane not to alter it*, A memorable anſwere of an honourable Souldier. For the French Charge, ye ſhall heare the *Spaniards* opinion out of *La Noue*. The French Infantery skirmiſheth brauely afarre off, and the Cauallery giues a furious onſet at the firſt charge: but after the firſt heate, they will take Egges for their Money. And indeede, this is that which all Writers giue them, and which beſt agrees with their Nature: for we may ſay of them, as is ſaide of *Themiſtocles*; *Hee was ſo hot at the on-ſet, that he loſt his winde in the midſt of the carriere.* Or ſay of them, as *Fabius* of *Hannibal*: his valour it is like a fire of Straw, and a flame kindled in matter of ſmall continuance.

Concerning the French diſcipline, *Caſar* himſelfe ſaith, they had it firſt from vs. Tis ſaide, the diſcipline of the *Gaules* was firſt inuented in *Britanny*, and from thence tranſlated into *Gallia*; and now ſuch as deſire to attaine the perfection thereof, commonly trauell thither to learne it. But they haue long ſince degenerared from their old diſcipline of war, and they themſelues confeſſe, that ſince the beginning of the ciuill Warres, where Souldiers, in all diſordered and diſſolute manner, haue beene giuen to pillage and theeuery, that it is very much abaſtardized; whereof *La Noue* complaineth in his diſcourſes. As for the Millitary diſcipline, we muſt confeſſe, that ſhe keeps her bed, ſicke of a very deadly diſeaſe. The Nobleſſe fight alwayes on Horſe-backe, and thinke it a diſhonour to ſerue on foote. But *Com.* ſaith of the Nobility of *Burgundy*, in the wars with *Lewes* the eleauenth, that they all quit their Horſes: for they Diſcipline.

Digitized by Google

they were then moſt honored, that lighted on foot, to the end the people might be the more encouraged, and fight more valiantly: and this they learned of the *Engliſh*. And it is no queſtion, but if ſome of the *French* Nobility would do ſo, it would much confirme their foote, by the example of their valour and abiding, and recouer that reputation, which now their foote haue loſt in the world. Neither doe I thinke this the leaſt reaſon, why our Anceſtors haue wonne ſo many battailes vppon them; namely, for that euer wee haue had men of Noble houſes, to lead and ſerue on foot with our forces. A notable cauſe to confirme and aſſure the vnſteady headineſſe of a multitude.

And for the opinion that the world hath of our foot, ye ſhal obſerue what the ſame Writer elſewhere ſayth. They be good foot, and better then their neighbours, as we may ſay nowe a dayes, of the *Engliſh* and *Swiſſers*.

And in another place, where he openeth of the manner of ſeruice, hee ſayeth: My opinion is, that in battels, Archers are the waight that turnes the balance; and of Archers, the *Engliſh* are the flower: where he likewiſe diſcourſeth, how dangerous a thing it is to abide a battell, except your foote bee much the better: which in my opinió was no little cauſe why the French King fought not with the Cardinall in the yeare 97, before *Amiens*, becauſe the enemies foote were holden in number eighteene thouſand (though I hardly thinke they were ſo many.) A number full as great as the *French*, and the Souldiour far better, they beeing all *French*, except ſome three thouſand *Engliſh* and *Swiſſers*; and theirs, the choyce men of all his Garriſons, and experienced Souldiours in thoſe Lowe Countries. For true it is, that the Kinges *Geneſdarmes* were two for one, and holden alſo much the better men, aſwell becauſe there was in a manner all the Nobility and flower of *Fraunce*, as alſo that they had the aduantage in the manner of weapon; for that the *French* ſerueth with the Piſtoll, and the *Spaniard* ſtill holds him to his Launce. But I make no queſtion, that the conſideration of the ods on foote, was not the chiefe cauſe why there was no battaile that day: for we had a goodly fayre field, and plain ns might be poſſible, as alſo large: a ſingular aduantage for him which is ſtrongeſt in Horſe: So had we the winde and

Sun

Digitized by Google

Sunne in our backes, which are holden no ſmal helpes.

But this was the reaſon: the King thought it no pollicy to play all his Reſt at once, where he might haue loſt more at one Game, then he had got in eight yeares; he had no reaſon, but to make the Card that was now going, a Bridge of Gold (as the Prouerbe is) conſidering, that by this meanes hee ſhould gayne the Towne of *Amiens*, re-aſſure other Citties that then ſtoode wauering, and recouer his reputation in the world, which by the loſſe of that Towne was much diſputed.

His Expence.

It now remayneth I ſpeake of his Expence, which chiefly conſiſteth in theſe two thinges before ſpoken of, namely, his Court and his Forces: wherin it is very hard to relate an exact proportion, conſidering not only the variety and difference of Writers, but alſo the vncertainety of the numbers of Penſionaries, or prouiſioned: And laſtly, the chaunge and alteration of their allowance, not continuing alwayes the ſame. Howbeit, that which is moſt commonly reported, and ſeemeth neareſt the trueth, is this: The maintenance of fiue Regiments of foote, at ſixe Crownes the month, commeth to foure hundred ſixty eight thouſand Crownes the yeare, beſides the penſion of 5. Collonels, at 2000. Crownes a peece; thirty Captaines at one thouſand penſion a man; as many Lieutenants at fiue hundred, and Enſignes at three hundred the peece; which is in all ſeauenty foure thouſand: which added to the firſt ſumme, makes the whole charge of theſe Regiments, yearly to amount to the ſumme of fiue hundered forty two thouſand Crownes. This proportion differeth not much from that of *Bodin*, where he ſaith: The King might maintaine in ordinary, twenty thouſand foot, at the rate of three millions, and fiue hundred thouſand *liures*, which if you reduce to Crownes, and to one number of ſixe thouſand foote, commeth to a leſſe rate then that other, namely, to foure hundered eight thouſand, three hundred thirty three Crownes: but I thinke, that former is nearer the trueth. For the allowance of his *Gens d'armes*, which are reckoning at ſixe thouſand, as is before ſaid (though in trueth there be but foure) for he payeth thus many, I follow the proportion of them that ſay, that 51750. Crownes, is the ordinary allowance for one company of a hundred yearly: for where

Digitized by Google

are ſixe thouſand men at Armes in the field, are eighteen thouſand Horſe in all. After this rate then of the hundered before ſet downe, the whole *Genſd'armery* amounteth to 3105000. Crownes.

For the expence of his Court, you ſhall heare it to be thus rated: The Table of the King, and thoſe of the Gentlemen of the Chamber, at 112000. Crownes: for his petty pleaſures, a thouſand Crownes a day: in all 165000. (But this was a proportion for the laſt King, who was a great giuer.) For the great and little Stable, 190000. For the Conſtable 24000. For the *Gran Maiſtre*, great Maſter, 20000. For the Marſhals of *France*, 18000. apeece, when they were but foure; for now it is a Title onely, without either penſion or commaund, ſaue onely in the foure chiefe. For the Admirall, 15000. for the *Grand Veneur*, great Hunt, 16000. For the Gouernours of his Prouinces in all, 188000. For the Gentlemen of his Chamber, their penſion 1200. Crowns a peece; in all, ſixe hundred thouſand. For the Captaines of his Guards on Horſe, two thouſand a peece. For their Lieutenants, eight hundered. For two thouſand Swiſſe of his Guard, ten Crownes a moneth 24840. For all other domeſticall Officers, one hundred thouſand. For Heraults, ſixe thouſand. For Marſhals of lodgings and Fourriers, 4600. For Preuoſt Marſhalles of Prouinces, a thouſand a peece, in all twenty foure thouſand. For twenty foure hundered Archers, to attend theſe Preuoſts in the execution of theyr Office, ſeauen hundered and twenty thouſand Crownes. For his Ambaſſadours in diuers Countries, two hundered and fifty thouſand. For his Officers of Finances, Treaſurers, Receiuers, Controlers, and ſuch other like Offices through *France*, an infinit and incredible ſumme. As alſo for ſuch numbers of Horſe and Foot, as the Cabinet ſetteth downe, beſides theſe *Genſdarmes* and Regiments, which ye heare prouided for, and in the Kings pay.

But ye muſt obſerue, that of all theſe Court-charges and others here before mentioned (except thoſe of his Forces) yee are not to make any ground as of a trueth: they beeing onely the ſuppoſed charges, ſet downe by the ſaide Authour, who for his errors in other matters, hath alſo loſt his credit in this.

To

Digitized by Google

To speake either particularly of the Court-expences, or generally what they be certaine, I cannot, not hauing heard any thing thereof, but onely that it is supposed, the charge of the Kings house, is fiue hundred Crownes a day.

It now remayneth to speak of his Entrade, or Reuenue: For a Prince cannot haue peace without war, nor war without men, nor men without money, nor money without meanes: nor are there any meanes but these: *Domayne, Conquests, Gifts of his friends, Pension of his Confederates, Trafficke, Impositions vppon Merchandize*, brought in, or carried out; *Impositions vppon his Subiects*. And yet one other, which the Kings of *Fraunce* haue lately inuented, to helpe when all other fayled; which is, *Sales of Offices*, more dangerous and preiudiciall to the State, then any other. His Reuenew

Of these eight meanes, I will giue you particular obseruations, and then conclude, what is generally holden to bee the whole Reuenue of the Crowne of *Fraunce*, by all these meanes.

First, the *Domayne*, is as it were the Dowre which the State brings to the King her Husband, for her tuition, defence, and maintenance: And therefore one sayth: It belongs not to the King, but to the Crowne. The Domain.

There are two sorts of *Domaynes*; first, the Rent which the King holdes in his handes, of the *Feifes* giuen for seruice: Secondly, that which is vnited and incorporate to the Crowne. The rights of the *Domayne* are these: *Rents, Fifts, Payments at alienations, Tributes, Peages, Toll* of whatsoeuer enters or comes out of Citties, Woodes, Forrests, and diuers other.

That is *Domayne*, which belongeth to the Crowne: First, either by *Possession* time out of mind: Or secondly, by *Reunion*, for want of Heyres males, as the *Apennages* when they return: or by *Confusion*, for want of such as can make iust claime, much like our concealed Lands in *England*: Or lastly, by *Confiscation* of offenders inheritances.

Of this last sort we read, that in the time of *Saint Lewes*, there were confisked to the *Domaine*, the Counties of *Dreux, Bray, Fortyonne*, and *Monstreuil, Langne-doncke, Guyenne, Aniow, Mayne, Turraine, Auuergne*: And after in the time of *Philip*,

Digitized by Google

lip, the *Duchy* of *Alençon*, the Counties of *Perche*, *Perigort*, *Poutieu*, *La Marche Angouleſme*, & *Marquiſate* of *Saluzzes*. But *Bodin* ſayth, moſt of this came to the Crowne by force: *La ſiur de la ſerre* ſayth, it came by way of Exchange or purchaſe. But the Authour of the Comentaries, of the eſtate of the Religion, and pollicy of *France*, is of the firſt opinion. Thus great was the *Domayne* in former times, that of it ſelfe, without oppreſſing the people with impoſitions, it was ſufficient to maintaine the State and greatneſſe of the Kings of *Fraunce*, but it is now vtterly waſted. Tis well known, that the *Domaine*, which alone maintained heretofore the beauty and luſtre of the Royall Eſtate, is not now ſuch, as it was in the raignes of King *Lewes* 11. *Charles*, 8. and *Lewes* 12. The continuance of our wars, hath cauſed it to be engaged in many hands, in ſuch ſort, that there is neede of more then fifteene or ſixteene thouſand pound ſterling, to redeem that which is worth aboue fiue millions of pounds. And *Bodin* ſayth, that almoſt al the Counties, Baronies, and Seigneuries of the *Domaine*, are aliened for the ninth or tenth part of that they be woorth. Ye muſt obſerue, that the Landes of the *Domaine* are not alienable, but in two caſes. 1. *For the Apennage of the Kings brother*. 2. *For the warres*. And theſe muſt be confirmed by the Arreſt of the Parliament. For in all other caſes, all Lawyers and Hiſtorians of *Fraunce* agree, that it is inalienable, and many Arreſts haue beene made of late yeares to confirme it. I haue reade, that the *Charta Magna* of England ſayth, the Kings when they are Crowned, take an oath, not to aliene it: ſo doe they heere in *France*. And there is no preſcription of time, to make ſuch ſales or alienations good, but that they may be recouered and repurchaſed, whenſoeuer the Crowne is able.

To this purpoſe *Plutarch* ſayeth well, *Men cannot preſcribe againſt God, nor particulars againſt the Reſpublique*.

Conqueſt. 2 Concerning the ſecond meanes of rayſing Money by Conqueſts, the preſent State of *France* can yeeld no example, it hath beene long but on the ſauing hand.

3 For the third meanes, it is now out of ſeaſon; it was vſed in that good old world, when men wiped their noſe on theyr ſleeue, (as the *French* man ſayes:) for now Princes are ſo farre from

Digitized by Google

from giuing, as they hardly pay that they owe.

4 The fourth meanes also of Pension, which Princes haue vppon some consideration of their Allies, helpeth the French Kinges Coffers nothing at all, for they rather giue then take: As for example, to diuers Cantons of the *Swisses*, to whom at first they payed not aboue one hundred and twenty thousand *liures* yearely: but for these sixty yeares, they neuer pay lesse the yeare, then two Millions. For sayth *Commines*, *Lewes* the eleauenth entered league with the *Swisses*, and they into his Pension: to whom hee yearely gaue forty thousand Flourins, whereof twenty went to the Cittyes, and twenty to particular men, vpon condition to haue a certaine proportion of theyr forces, to serue in his Warres vpon all occasions. An aduantagious alliance for the *Swisse* in my opinion, who by this means enrich themselues, cleare their Countrey of many idle and bad members, and lastly, breede good Souldiers, to serue themselues vpon neede at another mans cost. The *Turke* hath also a Pension of the Emperor of *Germany*, for certaine Landes he holdeth in *Hungary*: which he notwithstanding vanteth to be a Tribute. Many examples might be alleaged of this kind, as of *Phillip* of *Macedonie*, that by pensions got all *Greece* partiall on his side: and the Kinges of *Persia*, by Pension, got euer the Forces of *Asia* diuerted. Pension.

5 The fift, which is of Trafficke, auaileth nothing the French Kings: for they hold it heere a base and sordid kind of profession, for a Gentleman, much more for a King, to trade by Merchandize. And by the Lawes of *England*, *Fraunce*, and *Germany*, he looseth the quality of a Noble man, that dooth Trafficke. Trafficke.

Notwithstanding, these Lawes, and the disparagement that it brings to Nobility, yet so sweete is the sauour of gaine, that many haue vsed this as no small meanes to encrease their Finances. The great Duke of *Tuscaine* present, gaines infinitely this way, and the more by his most vnlawfull and tyrannous Monopolies: for he commonly buyeth vp all the graine of his own Country, at his own price: yea, and that which commeth from other places also, and then sendeth out a *Bando* or Proclamation, that no man shall sell any Corne throughout his

Digitized by Google

State, till his owne be ſolde, forcing alſo all Bakers and other people to buy thereof. This manner of engroſſing *Alphoſus* of *Arragon* alſo vſed, by the teſtimony of *Bodin*. The Kinges of *Portugall* alſo, and the *Seignori* of *Venice*, haue beene great Traders by Merchandize, but it hath beene in an honeſter faſhion, at Sea, and not to the grinding of their poore Subiects. The Nobility alſo of *Italy*, in all Citties (except *Naples*) hold it no diſhonor to Trafficke in groſſe.

6 The ſixt meanes of raiſing Money vppon all Wares and Merchandize, that come in and go out of the Countrey, is the moſt auncient and beſt agreeing with reaſon, and vſed by all Princes in the World. The particulars compriſed vnder this branch, are theſe: *Cuſtomts inward, and outward.* By theſe the Prince is to haue Impoſt, *Fiue in the hundred*: ſo much iuſt had the *Romaines*, as *Cicero* witneſſeth in his Prætorſhip of *Sicilia*. The Turke takes *Ten in the hundred of the Stranger, and fiue of the Subiect*: the *French* quite contrary. You muſt obſerue, that that which heere I call the *Domaine forraine*, is generally called, the *Aides*; firſt, graunted by the Eſtates to *Charles* Duke of *Normandy*, when *Iohn* his Father was Priſoner in *England*: which was the payment of twelu *Deniers*, vpon all Merchandizes and Wares which ſhould be ſold in this Kingdome, except vpon Wine, Corne, Salt, and all manner of drinke: but ſince, it hath beene made perpetuall, and augmented by the impoſition vppon Wine ſold euery where, and in *Normandy* by retaile.

This is like the ſlauiſh Gabell vppon all manner of foode, which the Princes take of their Subiects through *Italy*, or the Aſſize vppon Breade and Beere which the States haue in the Low-Countries: a grieuance, whereof wee ſmart not in England, as alſo we are free from many other burthens, which the people of this Countrey are forced to beare,

Touching the Gabell of Salt (which is alſo compriſed vnder this head.) Some ſay it was firſt erected by *Phillippe le Long*: Others by *Phillip de Valois*, 1328. True it is, that the ordinance of *Francis* the firſt, 1541. ſets downe an Impoſt of 24. *Liures* vpon euery *Muy*: And in the year 1543. an ordinance was made, for Gabell to bee taken vppon all Sea-fiſh ſalted.

And

Digitized by Google

And in 1544. it was ordained, that all Salt ſhould be ſold and diſtributed into the *Magazines*, or Store-houſes of euery ſeuerall generalitie. The benefite of this one Commoditity, hath beene very commodious to the Crowne, till the yeare eightie one, when the King was forced for want of Money, to let it out to others: whereby he loſt, as is in my Authour prooued, eight hundred thirty ſixe thouſand Crownes yearely. Heere is alſo a kind of Tax, called the *Equiuallent*, that is; an impoſition laid vpon ſome perſons and places (but not generally) to haue liberty to buy and ſell Salt, and to be exempt from the *Magazines*.

The Impoſt of Wine is layde vppon all, without exception or exemption whatſoeuer, it is the twentith part to the King: beſides all other rights, as of Billots entring into Cities, paſſages by Land Riuer, and ſuch like: Beſides, a latter impoſition of fiue *Sols* vpon euery *Muy*, leuied by *Charles* the ninth 1561.

Concerning the (*Traicte foraine*) it is of like Nature with the *Aides*, ſaue that it is leuyable vpon more particular ſortes of Merchandize: Beſides, the Aides is an Impoſt vpon things ſpent in the Land; and the *Traicte foraine*, is of ſuch Commodities as are tranſported out: As of Wheate, Rye, Barley, Oates, Wine, Vineger, Veriuyce, Cider, Beeues, Muttons, Veales, Lambes, Swine, Horſes, Lard, Bacon, Tallow, Oyle, Cheeſe, Fiſh of all ſorts, Drougs of al ſorts, Mettals of al ſorts, Silkes and Cloths of all ſorts, Leather of all ſorts; and finally, all other Marchandize, as Fruites, Parchment, Paper, Glaſſe, Wood, Ropes, &c.

7 The ſeauenth ground or foundation of Finances, is the *Impoſition* vpon the Subiect: that is, not vppon the Wares or Commodities, but vpon the perſons themſelues, according to their ability; and it is much like the leuying of the Taxe and Subſidy in England, where euery one payeth rateably to the Lands and goods he poſſeſſeth. And therefore *Haillan* iudgeth well, to ſay, they be neyther perſonall, nor reall, but mixt: Aſſeſſed in the place of their dwelling, according to all the goods of the partie aſſeſſed, in what part ſoeuer they lye or abide.

Theſe

Digitized by Google

Theſe *Tailles* were firſt raiſed by Saint *Lewes* (but by way of extraordinary Subſidy.) *Charles* the ſeauenth made them ordinary for the maintenance of his *Gendarmerie*. And whereas at firſt they were neuer leuyed but by conſent of the three States, and to endure but while the war laſted, he made thē perpetuall. Therefore ſayth one; That which was at firſt yeelded of fauor, is ſince exacted as patrimoniall & Hereditary to our Kings. Yet is it to bee obſerued, that theſe *Tailles* are onely lyable vppon the *Flat païs*, All Cities are exempt; As alſo all Officers of the Kinges Houſe; All Counſellours, Lawyers, and Officers of Courtes of Parliament; All the Nobility, the *Genſdarmes*, the Officers of war, the Graduates of Vniuerſities, &c.

The *Taillon* is another Impoſition, raiſed by *Henry* the ſecond, Anno 1549. which was to amend the VVages of the *Genſdarmes*, who by reaſon of the ſmalneſſe of their pay, lay vpon the poore Villages, & eat them vp; for the eaſe whereof, this impoſition was deuiſed, which alſo lyeth vpon the poore Countrey-man: whereby at firſt hee was ſomewhat eaſed, but now all is peruerted; the poore is ſtill oppreſſed, and yet hee paieth ſtill both *Taille* and *Taillon*.

Laſtly, there is the *Sold*, or pay of 50000. foot, which were erected by *Lewes* the eleauenth into eight Legions; ſixe thouſand to a Legion, which with their Officers, come to about this number. To maintaine theſe Legions, there was a taxe leuyed vpon all ſorts of perſons priuiledged in the *taille*, but only the Nobles.

There are alſo the *Decymes* (Tenths) leuied vpon the Church. For the leuying of the *taille*, *taillon*, and wages of 50000. foot, you muſt note, that the King ſendes his Letters Patentes by Commiſſioners, to the Treaſurers of each Generality. Theſe according to the ſumme, rate each Election (this is, as yee would ſay, euery hundred in a Shire, or Bailywike) and then ſend to theſe Elections, to haue the ſaide ſumme gathered in their ſeuerall Townes, and Hamlets, according as they bee rated.

So doe they to the *Maieures*, *Conſuls*, *Eſchewins*, and cheefe Officers of euery Cittie, that are lyable to any of theſe payments; who rating euery man according to his ability, giue

theſe

Digitized by Google

these Rols to certain Collectors to gather it vp: these are boũd to bring it quarterly to the Receiuers. These carry it to the Receiuers generall, in the same *species* that they receiued it: and from them to haue an Acquittance, after the Accountes haue beene perused by the Controler generall.

And these are all the meanes, by which Princes raise their Finances, whereof yee see some, nothing to pertaine to the French King, but to others; and some to him onely, not to others.

8 There yet remaineth one other meanes (though extraordinary) to a Prince, to get Money, which the necessities of the times, and the want of other meanes, haue forced the French Kings of late yeares to vse. This is the vent or sales of Offices, a very daungerous and hurtfull Merchandize, both for the Prince and Subiect. This Lesson (saith *Bodin*) the *French* Kings first learned of the Popes, with whom it is still as familiar, as old, to sell Bishoprickes, Liuings, and Ecclesiasticall promotions. A course, saith one, *of great and dangerous consequence, but cloaked with necessity*. It is indeede thrice dangerous, because sales of Offices, cause sales of Iustice: for what these Purchasers pay in grosse, they must needes get in retaile, forgetting what was said to *Sophocles*, the Gouernour of *Athens*: *A Gouernor must not only haue his hands cleane, but his eyes also.* They cannot say as *Pericles* did on his death-bed; *He had neuer made any Athenian weare mourning Robe*. For these, by selling Iustice, and robbing the poore of their right, giue the Fatherlesse and oppressed Widdow, iust cause to complaine, and of wearing that mourning Robe, whereof *Plutarch* speaketh. Sale of Offices

It is a strange thing to consider, and incredible to beleeue, what infinite masses of Mony haue bin made here in *France* by these sales, where there is not that Collector, Controller, Treasurer, Sergeant, or Subalterne Officer whatsoeuer, but he hath bought it of the Prince, and at no small rate: for I haue heard it credibly reported, and yee shall reade also in late Writers, that these Offices are bought in Fraunce at a deerer rate then our Landes in England of twenty yeares purchase. Ye must obserue, they haue them for tearme of life, and after, to returne to the King who is again to sell them. A man in his sicke-

 nesse,

Digitized by Google

neſſe, or in danger of death, or vppon any neede whatſoeuer, may ſell this his Office, or reſigne it to his Sonne or Friende whatſoeuer: which ſale is good, if the party liue fortie dayes after the ſale or reſignation is confirmed, otherwiſe not.

Now wee are to conſider, what Entrade or Reuennewe, the French King yearely maketh by any or all of the meanes aboue-ſaid.

Riches. The Eſtate of the Finances, Domaine, and all in *Charls* the ſixt time, Anno 1449. was but 1400000. *Liures*. *Henry* the ſecond, *Raiſed vpon his people by way of ordinary Reuennew, fifteene hundred thouſand pound ſterling a year*: whereof ſome part hath ſince beene aliened for the debtes of the Crowne, which notwithſtanding, the King raiſeth as much now.

But we may obſerue, that this ſumme is of late yeares grown much greater, (by two thirdes) as is generally beleeued: For whereas in thoſe dayes, ſome three or foureſcore yeares ſince, the ordinary ſumme was fifteene Millions of *Francs* or *Liures*, it is now ſo many of Crownes. And *Monſieur Rinault*, Treaſurer to the Duke of *Mayenne*, ſhamed not (ſome twentie yeares ſince) to ſay, that his Maiſter had improued the Realme of France, to a better rent then any Prince had doone beforetimes. For, ſaith hee; *Whereas it was worth but two Millions of pounds, it is now worth fiue millions ſterling*.

And another ſaith, that onely by the ſales of Offices, in 20. yeares ſpace, *The King hath raiſed one hundred thirty and nine Millions*, which is after the rate of ſeauen Millions the yeare. So that it is probably to be inferred, that the Reuennewes are at leaſt fifteene Millions of Crownes; wherein all late Writers agree: Neither muſt we think, that men are miſtaken, by counting Crownes for *Liures* (conſidering that *Bodin* and *La Noüe*, and moſt elder Writers ſpeake only of *Liures*, not of crowns.) For the manner of Accompt in Fraunce, is, by eſpeciall ordinance commanded to be made by Crownes, and that of *Liures* to ceaſe: So that, whenſoeuer ye read in the Stories of France, of any ſumme, of thouſands, Millions, or ſuch like, without naming eyther *Francs* or Crownes: you are to reſpect the times when it was written: for if it was aboue thirty yeares paſt, they meane *Liures* or *Francs*: If of later yeares then thirty, it is alwaies

Digitized by Google

waies to be vnderstood they speake of Crownes: this rule will not faile you.

Having sufficiently spoken of these, it remaineth I keepe the same course I haue done hitherto: that is, after the *Relation of the Court*, to reckon vppe the Officers of Court, and after the discourse of *his Forces*, to speake of his *Officers of Warre*. So heere likewise, after mention made of his *Finances* and Reuennewes, to remember his *Financers and Officers*, vsed for the Collection, keeping and disposing of the same. Of which Officers, we may say as the Philosopher sayes of Wiues; that they be *Necessarie euils*. And as he saith of them; *The lesse of euils is the best*: so say we of these, *The fewer, the better*. But when we read, that the old *Romains* had of these but one in a Prouince, you shall obserue heere in some Prouince, not so few, as one thousand. Officers of his Finances.

The cheefe of these, is *Treasurer of the Exchequer*, instituted in *Francis* the first his time, in place of the Receiuer general. There is also another Treasurer of the *Casualties*. The third sort, are the Treasurers *generaux des Finances*, whom also they cal Treasurers of France. For, as for the Treasurers ordinary and extraordinary of the Wars, wee haue already spoke of them in the Relation of his Forces, and of the Treasurer of *his petty pleasures*, when we spoke of his Court.) The number of these Treasurers generall, as also of all other Officers of Finances, ye may partly conceiue by the number of Generalities which are in France, and the seuerall Offices of each one of these.

Of these Generalities, are twenty and one in all *France, Paris, Rouen, Caen, Nants, Tours, Burges, Poictiers, Agen, Tholouse, Montpellier, Aix, Grenoble, Lion, Ryon, Dyon, Chalons, Amyens, Orleans, Soissons, Lymoges, Maulin*. Generalties.

In each of these Generalities, are diuers Elections; that is, diuers places for the Receipt of the Finances: As in that of *Orleans*, are eleauen Elections; in the rest, some more, and some lesse, to the number of 170. in all. Elections.

In euery Generalitie are ten Treasurers; three Receiuers generall of the *Finances*; three Receiuers generall of the *Taillon*; one Receiuer generall of the *Dismes*; two Receiuers generall of the *Woods*: And for euery Receiuer, so many *Controlers generall*; Receiuers. Controlers.

Digitized by Google

nerall: two Treasurers generall extraordinary, of the *Warre*, for the payment of Garrisons and Souldiers in time of Warre.

Besides all these general Officers, there are also in each particular Election, three Receiuers of the *Taille*, three of the *Aides*, two of the *Taillon*, and as many Controlers, besides all other inferiour Officers. If then there bee thus many in one Election onely, yee may iudge the infinite number in all France, vpon which they lye, as thicke as the Grashoppers in *Ægypt*.

I must heere also remember the Chamber of Accounts, the chiefe Court of the Finances: wherein are four Presidents, 12. Maisters, eighteene Auditors, foure Correctors, one Procuror generall, one Aduocate, one Greffier, six Huissiers or Sergeants, and other inferiour Officers, to the number (as *Bodin* saith) of two hundred, besides Seruants; and it is likely, the number is not lessened since his time.

In conclusion, the Officers here, and of other places, are so exceeding many, as a President of this Court shewed the Estates of Fraunce, in the assembly at *Blois*, that of the *Escu* (six shillinges) which was paide by the Subiect, there came but a *Teston* (one shilling sixe pence) to the Kings Coffers.

The Court of *Aides* also is as full of Offices, as that other. These Finances (saith one) *haue beene so shuffled, altered, changed, and reduced into so obscure an Art, that very few eyther doe, or can vnderstand it, except they haue beene brought vp in their Cabale that haue obscured it*. No maruell therefore, though there be much differēce among men about the certaintie thereof, either for the truth of the summe, or number of the officers.

The Coynes of France, are either of Gold, Siluer, or Brasse. In those of Gold I must bee better instructed my selfe, for I know none but the Crowne (which is of three or foure sorts, whereof that of the Sun is the best) & the halfe Crown. Those of Siluer are, the *Liures* or *Franc*, which is two shillings sterling: The *quart d'escu*, which is one shilling sixe pence. The *Teston*, which is halfe a *sous* lesse: The peece often *sous*, which is one shilling sterling: the halfe *quard escu*, the halfe *Teston*, and the peece of fiue *sous*, that is sixe pence sterling. Those of Brasse, is the price of sixe Blankes, which is three pence: that of

Digitized by Google

of three blankes, three halfe pence. The *ſous* of twelue *deniers*: the *liard* of foure *deniers*, the *double*, of two: and laſtly, the *denier* it ſelfe, whereof tenne make one penny ſterling. This baſer and ſmaller kind of Money, hath not beene vſed in France, but ſince the beginning of the ciuill warres. The *Teſton* is the beſt Siluer.

It remaineth I ſpeake of the *Adminiſtration and Execution of Iuſtice*, and of thoſe places and perſons where and by whom it is done: I will therefore begin with their Aſſemblies, as the higheſt and greateſt Court of all, which well reſembleth the *Parliament* of *England*, the *Dyet* of the *Empire*, or the *Counſell* of the *Amphytrions* in *Greece*.

There are three eſpeciall cauſes of calling theſe Aſſemblies. The firſt, when the ſucceſſion of the Crown was doubtfull & in controuerſie, or when it was to take order for the Regencie, during the Kinges Captiuity or Minority, or when they had not the right vſe of their wits. Hereof ye haue examples, An. 1327. Saint *Lewes* an Infant: and *Charles* the ſixt, An. Dom. 1380. a Lunaticke: and 1484. *Iohn* a priſoner. For all which occaſions, Aſſemblies were called, to determine who ſhould haue the Regency of the Realme in the meane while.

The ſecond cauſe is, when there is queſtion of reforming the kingdome, correcting the abuſes of Officers and Magiſtrates, or appeaſing troubles and ſeditions.

The third cauſe is, The want and neceſſity of the King or kingdome, in which caſe the Eſtates are exhorted to giue Subſidies, ſubuentions, aydes, and gratuities. For in former times, the Kinges contenting themſelues with their Domaine, and impoſt of ſuch wares as came in, or went out of the Land, (the two moſt ancient, and moſt iuſt groundes of Finances) were not accuſtomed to leuy and impoſe vppon their Subiectes any taxe whatſoeuer, without the conſent of the three States, thus aſſembled.

The next Soueraigne Court (for ſo the French call it) is the Court of Parliament; *The true Temple of French Iuſtice: Seat of the King and his Peeres: And as* Haillan *calles it, the Buttreſſe of Equity*. This Court very much reſembleth the Star-Chamber of England, the *Areopage* of *Athens*, the Senate of *Rome*, the

Digitized by Google

Consiglio de dieci of *Venice*.

There are no lawes (saith *Haillan*) by which this Court is directed: it iudgeth, *according to equity and Conscience*, & mitigateth the rigour of the Law.

Of these Courts of Parliament, ye haue eight in Fraunce. That of *Paris*, the most ancient and highest in pre-æminence, which at first was ambulatory (as they call it) and euer followed the Kinges Court whithersoeuer it went: but since *Phillip le Bel*, it hath beene sedentary in this Citty. That of *Grenoble* was erected, Anno 1453. That of *Tholouse*, Anno 1302, That of *Bourdeaux*, Anno 1443. That of *Dyon*, in the yeare 1476. That of *Rouen*, in the yeare 1501. That of *Aix*, the same year. And lastly, that of *Bretaigne*, in the yeare 1553. Anciently, all Arch-Bishops and Bishops, might sit and giue voyces in this Parliament of *Paris*: but in Anno 1463, it was decreed, that none but the Bishoppe of *Paris*, and Abbot of Saint *Denis*, might sit there, except he be of the Bloud; for all these are priuiledged.

The Presidents and Councellors of the Court of Parliament of *Paris*, may not depart the Towne, without leaue of the Court, by the ordinance of *Lewes* the twelft, in the yeare 1499. *The Senators ought alwaies to bee present, because thinges are carried with more maiesty, when that Court is full.*

To this Parliament, they appeale from all other subalterne Courtes throughout the Realme, as they doe in *Venice* to the *Consiglio grande*. Neither can the King conclude any warre, or peace, without the aduice and consent heereof: or at least (as *Haillan* saith) hee demaundeth it for fashion sake, sometimes when the matters are already concluded.

The Parliament of *Paris* consists of seauen Chambers: the *Grande chambre*, and fiue others of Enquestes; and the *Tournelles*, which is the Chamber for the criminall causes, as the other fixe bee for the ciuill. It is called the *Tournelles*, because the Iudges of the other Chambers sit there by turnes, euery three months: the reason whereof *Bodin* giues, that it might not alter the naturall inclination of the Iudges, & make them more cruell, by being alwaies exercised in matter of condemnations, and executions. There bee of this Court, of Presidents,

Digitized by Google

dents, Councellors, Cheualliers of honor, Procureurs, Aduocates, Clearkes, Sergeants, and other Officers of all sorts, not so few as two hundred.

Besides this Court, there are also other Courtes for the administration of Iustice, in this Citty, as the *Chatellet* of *Paris*, with a Lieuteuant ciuill, and another criminall; and the *Hostel de Paris*, with a Preuost, and other inferior Officers; which is, as yee would say, the Guilde-Hall of the Cittie. So haue yee throughout the Realme certaine places, (as all Citties in generall) where there be *Chatellets* (like our places of Assize) and in them a Lieutenant, ciuill and criminal, to iudge and determine all causes, reall, and personall; and heere many Lawyers and Procurers (as our Councellors at Law, and Atturnies) who plead before these Lieutenants, and Preuostes, and certaine Councellors, which are the Iudges in these Courtes, whereof the number is incredible in France. Insomuch as yee may well say of them, as is said of *Sienna, There bee more Readers, then Auditors: so heere be more Pleaders, then Clyants.* This *Chiquanerie* (Petti-fogging) and multiplicity of Pleaders, came first from the Popes Court, when his Seate was at *Auignon* (as my Authour saith) who in the same place, calles these Aduocates, *The Mice of the Pallace.*

The processes and sutes in these Courts throughout France, are innumerable, wherein we come nothing neere them; and yet there is no want of these in England: For I haue heard of 340. *Nisiprius* between parties tryed at one Assize in Norfolk. As many I thinke, as in halfe England besides. But these are onely twice in the yeare, that causes are tryed at Assizes in our Country, whereas heere they are tried euery day in the yeare, that is not festiuall. So that it is not much vnlikely, that heere are as many Processes in seauen yeares, as haue bin in England since the Conqueſt.

There are besides these Courtes of *Chatellets* in Citties, the Courtes also of Bayliwickes and Sheriffalties, who, as *Haillan* saith, keepe Courts in each Prouince, and iudge in all matters ciuill and criminall.

Heere is also the Priuy Councell, or Councell of affaires: of the Counsellors (among which are his foure Secretaries) hee calleth

Digitized by Google

calleth certaine euery morning at his rising, to whom he communicates apart, his principall and most importing affaires, where are read all Letters which come from other Princes, and such like publique businesse, and after a conclusion what is to be doone, the dispatch thereof is committed to the Secretaries.

The other, is the Great Councell, or Councell of Estate: which at first was, as it were, a member of the Parliament, and consisted of the Princes of the Bloud and Nobility, hauing onely to deale in the matters of the policy generall of France, or of warres; or of the enacting and publishing of Edicts. But the faction of *Orleans* & *Burgundy*, caused it to be changed to a choyce number of Counsellors, prouisioned of 1000. crowns Pensiõ apeece yearly. Of this Councel, the Councellor is cheef, for neyther the K. himselfe, nor any Prince of the Blood comes there. This is the Court, of which the French man saith, euery time it is holden, it costs the King a thousand crownes a day. And now, (saith *Haillan*) he cannot keepe them so cheape, so infinite is the number of them growne. Where hee also complaines, that this *Conseil d'Estat*, which was wont onely to determine publike affaires, as the establishment of Iustice, the Reglment of Finances, and redressing of common grieuances, is now so charged with priuate contentions, as the glorie thereof is much diminished.

The Chancellor, anciently serued as a Secretary, and so were called in the old Chartes of France, where hee is likewise called the *Grand Referendaire*. The Secretary doth signe, and the Chancellor doth seale.

The Secretary is next in Office, who at first were cald Clerks. They are either of the Finances (which haue their place among the Officers of the Finances, before remembred) or of *Affairs*, which we here speake of. Of these are foure, which are called principall.

Gouernours and Lieutenants generall of Citties and Prouinces, are as it were, Vice-royes and Regents of those places committed to them: and indeede the persons sustaining these charges, are much more Noble then those of the Secretaries, as beeing for the most part conferred vppon the Princes of the Blood

Digitized by Google

Blood and Peeres of France.

The Gouernors of Cities, were in old time called *Dukes*, & they of Prouinces, *Counts*. They were at first onely in frontier Prouinces, but now since the troubles of Fraunce, they haue had the commaund ouer Cities and Countries, euen in the midst and bowels of the Land: So that now, saith *Haillan*, France is become a Frontier to it selfe on euery side.

There are but few Cities, whereof aunciently there were Gouernours, as *Rochell*, *Calais*, *Paronne*, *Bologne*, *Mondidier*, *Narbonne*, *Bayonne*, and two or three others: Others, that had keeping of some small Castle or Fort, was onely called the Keeper, or Captaine at most. But now, saith *Haillan*, *lib.* 4. euery Paltry fellow that hath the keeping of a *Pigeon-house*, must forsooth be called *My Lord the Gouernor*; and my Mistris his Wife, *My Lady the Gouerneſſe*.

The Gouernour of *Daulpheny* hath greatest Priuiledges: for he giueth all Offices in his Prouince; in other places they can giue none, excepte they haue it by expresse words in their Patent. The Gouernour may not be absent aboue sixe months in a yeare; but the Lieutenant must neuer be absent, without leaue of the Prince, except the Gouernour be present.

There is yet an Office, wherof I must remember you, which is one of the chiefest in *Fraunce*, either for honour or profite, called *grand Maistre des Eaues & Forrests*. All matters concerning the Kings Chases, Forests, Woods and Waters whatsoeuer, are determined by him, by the *grand M. Enquesteur*, and by the *Reformateur*, at the Table of Marble: vnder him are infinite sortes of Officers, and diuers others: *As the particular Maisters of each Forrest, their Lieutenants, Ouerseers of the sale of Woods, and the other Officers here specified.*

But I will not load this short Relation, with reckoning vp all the diuers and infinite sorts of Officers, wherewith *Fraunce* her selfe seemeth to be ouerloaden, as partly ye haue heard already: and ye shall read in *Bodin*, howe hee complaynes, not onely of the multiplicity of Offices in generall; but also, that euen the Counsel of Estate is surcharged with number: where you may l kewise obserue, how hee approues the Priuy Counsell of *England* erected some foure hundered and odde yeares

Digitized by Google

since, where are neuer, sayth hee, aboue twenty, *by whose sage direction, the Land hath long flourished in Armes and Lawes*. And for the execution of Lawes, and administration of Iustice, ye may remember what hath been said before, that the Lawes are good and iust, but not iustly executed. Where *Haillan* comparing the times, saith: *Then great ones were punnished*, but since, *onely petty Fellowes, and the great ones goe Scot-free.*

Th'ensnaring Lawes let Crowes go free,
While simple Doues entangled bee.

HAuing thus related of the *Topography* & *Pollicy* of *France*, it remayneth I speake somewhat of the *Oeconomy*; that is, of the people of *Fraunce*, compriſed vnder the three Eſtates, of the *Clergy*, the *Nobility*, and *Comminality*: of the ſeuerall humour, profeſſion, and faſhion of each of them, which is the third and laſt branch of this Relation.

The Cleargy. The Church *Gallicane*, is holden the beſt priuiledged of all thoſe of Chriſtendome, that haue not yet quit their ſubiection to the *Pope*. It hath alwayes proteſted againſt the Inquiſition; It is more free from payments to the *Pope*, then the Church of *Spaine*, as alſo to the King: For here in *Fraunce* they onely pay the *Diſme*: but in *Spaine*, the King hath his *Tertias*, *Subſidio*, *Pila*, and *Eſcuſado*: in all, a moyety of the Church liuing. Indeed it is reported of this Catholike King, that he hath founded many Abbies and Religious houſes: but what ſayeth his Subiect? *Hee ſteales the Sheepe, and giues the Trattors for Gods ſake.*

In this Church of *Fraunce* are twelue Archbiſhoppricks, one hundered and foure Biſhopprickes, fiue hundered and forty Archpriories, one thouſand foure hundered and fifty Abbies, twelue thouſand three hundred and twenty Priories, fiue hundred ſixty ſeauen Nunneries, one hundred and thirty thouſand Pariſh Prieſts, ſeauen hundered conuents of Fryers, and two hundered fifty nine Commendams of the order of the Knights of *Malta*. There are, ſayth the *Cabinet du Roy*, three millions of people, that liue vpon the Church of *France*: where he particularly ſetteth downe in each Dioceſſe, the number of al ſorts of Religious people, as alſo the number of their Whores, Bawds,

Digitized by Google

Bawds, Baſtards, and ſeruants of al ſorts: And why not? (ſaith hee) as well as the *Magitians* vndertake in their Inuentory of the Diobolique Monarchy, to ſet downe the names and ſurnames of 76. Princes, and ſeauen millions, foure hundered and fiue thouſand, nine hundred, twenty and ſixe Diuels.

The Church hath, for al this rabble to liue vppon, theſe two things: Firſt, her Temporall Reuenues, and ſecondly, her ſpirituall, which they call the *baiſe-mani*. Of her Temporal Reuenues, diuers men iudge diuerſly. The temporall liuings of the Church.

The *Cabinet*, who in all his computations makes of a Mouſe, an Elephant; ſayth, that they are fourſcore millions of crowns the yeare, beſides the *baiſe-mani*, which is as much more, and beſides an infinite prouiſion, which they reſerue, and is payde them ouer and except their Rents, by their Farmers and Tenants; as of Wheate, foure millions, fiue hundered thouſand quarters: of Rye, two millions, three hundred thouſand quarters: of Oates, nine hundred thouſand: of Barley, eight hundred thouſand: of Peaſe and Beanes, eight hundered ſixty thouſand: Capons, one hundred ſixty thouſand: Hennes, fiue hundred ſixty thouſand: Partridge, 50000. Beeues, 12000. Muttons, one million two hundred thouſand: wine, one million two hundred thouſand *cuues*: Egges, ſeauen millions: Butter, 230000. *quintaux*: Cheeſe, fiue hundred thouſand: Hogges, one hundred thirty ſixe thouſand: Pigges, three hundred forty thouſand: Tallow, ſixty thouſand *quintaux*: Hey, ſixe hundred thouſand loades: Strawe, eight hundred thouſand: Wood, two millions: with an infinite proportion of other neceſſaries, imaginary onely, and incredible. And yet he there auoweth all thinges, with as great confidence, as if himſelfe had had the true abſtract from all the Books of Accounts in each Monaſtery and Benefice in this Land. For how is it poſſible, the Church ſhoulde haue two hundered millions of Crownes yeerely rent, when as by the computation, heere are but iuſt ſo many Arpens of Land in all *France*: which to rate one with another, at a Crowne an Arpen, comes to this account, which hee allowes the Cleargy, and then is there nothing left for the other two States, of the Nobility and people.

Digitized by Google

But in as much as the better halfe of their Reuennew is by the *Baise-mani*, there remaineth the better halfe of the Land to the other two States: which notwithstanding is a proportion small enough.

Neere vnto this reckoning, commeth that which we reade in *Bodin*, of *Alemant*, a president of accounts in *Paris*, whose iudgment must carry good authority in this case, as a thing belonging to his profession, & wherein he was best experienced: "The Church Reuennewes in Land, are reckoned orderly, at "twelue millions and three hundred thousand *liures*: but I dare "iustifie (saith hee) that of twelue partes of the Reuennewes of "France, the Church possesse seauen.

This opinion *Bodin* seemes to allow: But it is rather thought to bee true, that the *Comment de l'estat* saith, who of the two hundred millions of Arpens, allowes the Church forty seauen millions, which by particulars of their Vineyards, Meddowes, Arable-Pastures, and Heathes, with their Woods, is there set downe: which here to follow in particular, were too tedyous.

Besides this Temporall, they haue their *Baise-mani* (as is saide) that consisteth in Churchings, Christnings, Marriages, Burials, Holy-Bread, Indulgences, Vowes, Pilgrimages, Feastes, Processions, Prayers for Cattle, for seasonable Weather, for Children, against all manner of diseases, and infinite such purposes; for which the superstitious people will haue a Masse said, which they pay the Priest for, particularly: ouer & besides all this, there is scarce that Arpen in all France, vppon which there is not some *Dirige*, or *de profundis*; some *libera me Domine*, or some reckoning or other, liable.

Concerning them of the reformed Religion, whom here in contempt they call *Huguenots*; ye may note, that the number is not small, considering, that after the conference of *Poissie*, aboue forty yeares since, heere were found 2150. Churches of them, whereof not one hath escaped without some murthers or massacres: and wee may imagine, that since that time, this number is much encreased.

But as for Religion, it hath onely beene the Cloake and shadowe of their ambitious pretences, without the which, they could neuer haue insinuated themselues so farre into the harts of

Digitized by Google

of the people, who are alwaies the *gros de la bataille:* The main Battell: and without whom, the Nobility may well quarrell, but they cannot fight.

And therefore ye ſhall reade in ſome of the ſame Religion reformed, *That there were Hugnenots, as well of Eſtate, as of Religion.*

Theſe haue now free permiſſion to profeſſe, and places allotted for exerciſe, with all liberty of Conſcience poſſible, ſaue that in the chiefe Citties of France they haue no Churches allowed, neither can be buryed in Chriſtian buriall (as they call it) if any of them dye among the Catholiques, with whome notwithſtanding they nowe liue peaceably, throughout the Countrey. But me thinkes, they haue heere ſmall reaſon to let them liue together in a houſe, and not ſuffer them to lie together in a Church-yard.

And as for warring any longer for Religion, the Frenchman vtterly diſclaimes it; he is at laſt growne wiſe, marry, he hath bought it ſomewhat deare; *The Italian is wiſe before hand: the Almayne, in the doing; and the French, after the thing is doone,* ſaith of their owne Writers. *Ictus piſcator ſapit.*

Concerning the Nobility of France (ſayth *La Noüe:*) They are exceeding valorous and courteous; and there is no State in Chriſtendome, where they are in ſo great number. His Nobleſſe.

It hath beene argued before in this Relation, that there bee at leaſt fifty thouſand, able to bear Armes, but that is thought with the moſt. *Monſieur du Fay*, thinkes them about thirtie thouſand: in which number, ye muſt conclude all degrees of Gentlemen, from the higheſt to the loweſt that beare Armes: for ſo the French call their *Noleſſe*, whereas wee in England make two diſtinct orders of the Nobility and Gentry (as they call it:) *Thoſe are Noble, which can proone a long tract of time, wherein a Fee and Knights ſeruice thereto belonging, hath recided in their family.* And another Writer ſaith, *In Fraunce, Men are eſteemed Noble, by blood and profeſſion of Armes.*

And ſure, if there bee difference in Nobility, as there muſt needes be, becauſe the cauſes bee different; for ſome are ennobled by their valour and Martiall knowledge, and others by their Offices and prudence in the manage of matters of E-

Digitized by Google

ſtate: I ſee no reaſon, but that theſe laſt ſhould bee holden the more Noble Nobility, if I may ſo ſay: alwaies giuing the firſt place to them that are of Noble Houſes by Race.

For of all theſe three ſorts the French Writers ſpeake, when they ſay: *There is a difference of Nobles: The firſt, by Race: The ſecond, by Ennobling: and of Ennobling there are two ſorts: One, by Patent, duely prooued in the Court of Parliament: The other, by meanes of Offices to which they are aduanced.*

And howſoeuer *Turquet* hereof inferreth, that it is *la vertu que fait la Nobleſſe, car il y a de nobles vilains, et de vilains nobles: Vertue that maketh Nobility, for, there are Noble Peaſants, and peaſantly Nobles.* Yet ſure it is, that the degenerating of one from the Vertue of his Anceſtors, cannot preiudice the Nobilitie, nor Eclipſe the glory of his Succeeder, who, as Hyſtories ſhewe, many times excell all the former of theyr houſe.

Peeres of France.

The higheſt degree of Honour in France, is the *Pairrie*, in which order haue beene, ſometimes ſeauen, ſometimes eleauen, neuer aboue ſeauenteene, and moſt commonly twelue. Whereupon they are called the *Twelue Peeres of France*. Theſe haue the precedence before all the reſt of the Nobility, and of theſe, they of the Bloud, although they were lateſt called into the *Pairrie*. Of theſe Peeres, there bee ſixe of the Cleargie: 1. Arch-biſhop and Duke of *Rhemes*. 2. Biſhop and Duke of *Laon*. 3. Biſhop and Duke of *Langres*. 4. Biſhop and Comte of *Beauuais*. 5. Biſhop and Comte of *Noyon*. 6. Biſhop & Comte of *Chaalons*.

Of Temporall. 1. Duke of *Burgundy*. 2. Duke of *Normandy*. 3. Duke of *Guyenne*. 4. Count of *Tholouſe*. 5. Count of *Champaigne*. 6. Count of *Flanders*. Since theſe were firſt inſtituted, many other houſes haue been admitted into the *Pairrie*, by the Kinges of Fraunce, and the olde worne out: As to them of *Burgundie* and *Flanders*, were added the Dukes of *Bretagne*, *Burbon*, *Aniow*, *Berrie*, *Orleans*, the Counts of *Arthois*, *Exreux*, *Alenſon*, *Eſtampes*, all of the Bloud in *Charles* the fiftes time.

Since alſo, in the times of *Charles* the ninth, and *Henry* the third, haue new *Pairries* beene erected, as *Neuers*, *Vandoſme*, *Guiſe*,

Digitized by Google

Guiſe, Monpenſier, Beaumont, Albret, Aumal, Memorency, Vzes, Pentheur, Mercoeur, Ioieuſe, Eſpernon, Rets, Monbaſon, Vantadoure, and others.

Yee muſt obſerue, that the fiue auncienteſt *Pairries* of the temporality, are returned to the Crowne, the ſixt which is of Flanders, dooth recognize it no longer, as now beeing Spaniſh.

Some ſay, theſe *Pairres (quaſi pares inter ſe)* were firſt erected by *Charlemaignt :* others, by *Hugh Capet,* and others (which is holden for the trueſt) by *Lewes le ieune,* 1179. to ayde and aſſiſt the King in his Councell (ſaith *Bodin.*) And therefore this Seſſion of the King with his *Pairres,* was called *The Parliament without addition :* as the Kinges Brothers and Siſters are called *Monſieur,* and *Madame ſans queuë :* Whereas all other Soueraigne Courts are named with an addition, as *Le Parlement de Paris : le Parl. de Rouen, &c.*

Yee may alſo obſerue, that they of the Laity haue the right hand of the King, and the Cleargy the left, in all aſſemblies or ſolemne Seſſions whatſoeuer.

I thinke, this diuiſion of the *Pairrie,* into theſe two ſortes, was deriued from that auncient order of the *Gaules,* of whom *Cæſar* ſpeaketh : *Of the Nobilitie of Gallia, are two ſortes ; the Druides, and Gentlemen :* where he likewiſe diſcourſeth of their diuers Offices.

This Honour of *Paire* of Fraunce, was at firſt giuen for life onely, afterwards for them and their Heires Males ; and laſtly, to the Women alſo, for default of Males : who likewiſe are called to ſit in Councels and Aſſemblies (as are the Queenes of Fraunce) as at the Aſſembly at *Blois*, and at the Arreſt of *Counte de Clermont*, in the time of Saint *Lewes*, where the Counteſſe of Flaunders is named preſent among the other Peeres.

Ye muſt note, that Peeres and Princes of the Blood, be priuiledged from beeing ſubiect to any Writ or Proceſſe, but in caſe of high Treaſon : and then alſo no Proceſſe can bee commenced againſt them, before any other Iudges whatſoeuer, but before the King, ſitting in his Court of Parliament, ſufficiently aſſiſted by the Peeres of France. All other Iudges are incompetent.

But

Digitized by Google

But to leaue the discourse of this highest honor in Fraunce, and to speake of the *Noblesse* in generall, ye shall read in Historie, that at the end of the second Race of Kings, they beganne to take their surnames of their principall *Feifs*: Since when, of latter yeares, some haue contrarily put their surnames vpon their *Feifs*, which hath so confounded the *Noblesse* (saieth *Haillan*) as it is now hard to find out the ancient and true Nobility.

These are they, among whom the Prouerbe is still currant, *A man of War should haue no more learning, but to be able to write his owne name*: And therefore their profession is onely Armes and good Horse-manship, wherein if they haue attained any perfection, they little esteeme other vertues, not caring what the Philosopher saith: One onely Anchor is not sufficient to hold a great Shippe. Not considering that the old Gallants of the Worlde were wont to ioyne the one with the other: and ancient Painters were accustomed to paint the Muses altogether in a troop; to signify, that in a Nobleman they should not be parted.

Heereof it commeth, that the French Noblesse glorying in their Armes, call themselues, *The Arme of their Countrey, the Gardians of Armes, and terrour of their Enemies; but they neuer stile themselues the Professors of vertue.*

This Estate of the Nobility, saith one; of all the three Estates, is smallest in number of men, and poorest in liuing. Which no question must needes bee true, after so long a ciuill Warre: and herewith accordeth hee that wrote the late troubles. The French noblesse is fallen from their ancient wealth, wherewith they were adorned in the times of *Lewes* the twelft, & *Francis* the first. And I durst affirme, that if all they that bear this Tytle, were deuided into ten partes, eight of them are impaired by Sales, Morgages, or other debts.

The same Authour yeeldeth fiue reasons of the pouerty of the Noblesse of France. First, the *Ciuill Warres*. Secondly, *Superfluous expences in apparrell*. Thirdly, *Houshold-stuffe*. Fourthly, *Building*. Fiftly, *Diet and Followers*. And in another place, taxing the extreame prodigality and superfluitie of the French in their apparrell, building, and dyet; hee saith: If the Warres haue

Digitized by Google

haue brought vs foure ounces of pouerty, our owne follies haue gotten vs twelue. I will not heerein be mine own Iudge, (ſaith he) but let vs doe as Players at Tenniſe, be iudged by all the lookers on, and they will confeſſe, that by theſe exceſſiue expences, a great number of the Nobleſſe goe a foote-pace, others trot, and many runne poſt to the downefals of pouerty.

I ſhould in this relation of the French Nobilitie, doe them great wrong, to beleeue and report for truth, what the *Cabinet du Roy*, one of their owne Countrey, ſaith of them; who according to the ſeuerall Prouinces, giueth them ſeuerall Epithites.

The Nobleſſe of *Berry* (ſaith hee) are *Paillards*, Leachers: they of *Tourraine*, are *Voleurs*, Theeues: they of *Guyenne*, Coyners: they of *Tholouſe*, Traytors: they of *Narbonne*, Couetous: they of *Prouince*, Atheiſtes: they of *Lyonnois*, Treacherous: they of *Rhemes*, Superſtitious: they of *Normandy*, inſolent: they of *Picardy*, proud, and ſo forth of the reſt.

But I will doe them more right, and conclude of them, that for priuiledge and nobleneſſe of Race, they may compare with any Nobility of Chriſtendome. For proofe of the firſt; The King hath nothing of his Nobleſſe, but Sword-ſeruice. And for the ſecond, ſaith another; The French Nobleſſe is compoſed of ſo famous houſes, that there are a dozin of them deſcended by right line from Kinges, that haue peaceably poſſeſſed kingdomes.

Hauing breefely ſpoken of the two firſt Eſtates of Fraunce, the Cleargy and Nobilitie: It laſtly remaineth I ſpeake of the People in generall, and namely, of their freeneſſe of ſpeech; manner of Dyet; kindes of building; ſorts of exerciſe; faſhion of apparrel; diuerſity of Language; ſuddainneſſe of apprehending; raſhneſſe in executing; impatience in deliberation, and diuers others natures and humours proper to the Frenchmen; wherein ye ſhall not looke for a Methodicall and large diſcourſe, but a breefe and compendious remembrance of ſuch things, as I haue read and obſerued in this Nation.

It is incredible to beleeue, and odious to heare, how the Frenchman will talke, and impudently vtter what he fooliſhly conceiueth, not onely of all forraine States and Princes of the

Digitized by Google

World, but euen of their owne State and King himselfe; of whom he will not spare to speake whatsoeuer he heareth, and sometimes also more then the truth; which insufferable vice of theirs, I here put in the first place, because I hold it of all others the most disloyall and vnlawfull. Hereof the wisest sort of them much complaine, and wish reformation: but it is a thing so naturall with them, as —— *Expellas furca licet, vsq; recurret.*

He hath besides this liberty of speaking, a property incident to such like natures: namely, an inquisitiue listning and hearkning after newes, which is an olde fashion of theirs, and hath continued with them many hundred yeares. It is vsuall with all the *Gaules*, both to constraine Trauellers (though vnwilling) to stay, and to enquire of each of them, what hee hath heard or vnderstood of euery matter: & with the populare in towns, to flocke about Merchants, and compell them to tell from what parts they come, and what newes they heard there: And led by these rumours and heare-sayes, they determine many times of most waighty affaires, of which determinations they must needs eft-soones repent them.

Concerning the dyet, it is, to keepe no dyet: for they feed at all times, there beeing among them very few, which besides their ordinary of dinner and supper, doe not *Gouster*, as they call it, and make collations, three or four times the day, a thing as vsuall with the Women as Men, whom yee shall see in open streetes before their doores, eate and drinke together. No maruel therefore, though the *Italian* cals them the onely gourmands.

The French fashion is, to larde all meates; whose prouision ordinary is not so plentifull as ours, nor his Table so well furnished: howbeit, in banquets they farre exceede vs; for hee is as *friand* (licourish) as the Trencher-men of *Media*, or *Æsope* the Tragedian, who spent fifteene thousand Crownes at one feast, in the tongues of Birds onely. He liueth not like the *Italian*, with Rootes chiefly and Hearbs: nor like the *Lacedemonian*, That weares his haire shauen close to his skinne, bathes himselfe in cold Water, eates browne bread, and sups blacke broth. Nor like the *Scythian*, who saith; Hunger is my best Cheere; the ground my Bed; Beastes skinnes, my cloathing;

But

Digitized by Google

But rather like *Alcibiades*, of whom *Plutarch* reporteth; That he was ouer-delicate in his dyet, dissolute in loue of wanton Women, excessiue in banquets, and ouer-superfluous and effeminate in apparrell.

As for the poore *Paisant*, he fareth very hardly, and feedeth most vpon bread and fruits, but yet hee may comfort himselfe with this, that though his fare bee nothing so good as the Plough-mans and poore Artificers in England, yet is it much better then that of the *Villano* in *Italy*.

Of the French building, I haue spoken before in the Relation of *Paris*, both that it is lately growne to be more magnificent, then it was in former times, and that many thereby haue much weakned their estate.

You may therefore obserue, that as I there saide, the Cittie of *Paris* was better built then that of London: so are in generall, all the Cities and Villages in Fraunce, fairer then ours in England, comparing the one with the other.

As for the manner of building heere, how beautifull soeuer it be to the eye, the Offices and roomes, me thinkes, are not so well contriued as ours, to the vse. One thing there is, by which they are much beautified; namely, the blewish kinde of Tyle, which heere they haue in great quantity, the which is very hard, and therefore durable; and very thinne and light, and therefore not so burthensome to a house, as is our Tyle in England.

Concerning their Apparrell, if ye well obserue that of the Cittizen, both Men and Women, it is very seemly & decent: that of the *Paisant*, very poore, all whose apparrell for the most part, is of Linnen: As for that of the Noblesse, yee shall heare what *La Noue* saith: *The Noblesse in their expence in apparrell, are excessiue and very rich*. And yet, mee thinkes, nothing so rich and costly as ours; the onely excesse whereof, is the greatest preiudice and hindrance to the Common-wealth. Their apparel

This Authour reproueth two thinges in the French apparrell. First, that euery Gallant forsooth, must haue many suites at once, and change often in the yeare: and therefore (saith he) if in the Court they spy one in a sute of the last yeares making, they scoffingly say: *We know him well enough, he will not hurt vs, hee's*

Digitized by Google

hee's an Apple of the laſt yeare.

The ſecond thing hee diſlikes, is this; that euery two yeare the faſhion changeth. And heereof it commeth, that when ye ſee all other Nations paynted in the propper habit of theyr Country, the French-man is alwaies pictured with a paire of Sheeres in his hand; to ſignify, that hee hath no peculiar habit of his owne, nor contenteth himſelfe long with the habit of any other, but according to his cappricious humour, deuiſeth daily new faſhions.

This variety of faſhions a man may well note in the Fripperies of *Paris*, whereof ſayth *La Noue*, if one would make a purtreict in a Table, it would be the moſt ſportfull thing that may be.

I am now by order to ſpeake of his *Exerciſes*; wherein, mee thinkes the Frenchman is very immoderate, eſpecially in thoſe which are ſomewhat violent; for ye ſhall ſee them play Sets at Tenniſe in the heate of Summer, and height of the day, when others were ſcarce able to ſtir out of doores. This immoderate play, in this vnſeaſonable time, together with their intemperate drinking and feeding, is the onely cauſe, that here ye ſee them generally itchy and ſcabbed; ſome of them in ſo foule a ſort, as they are vnfit for any honeſt Table.

Among all the other exerciſes of France, I prefer none before the *Palle-maille*, both becauſe it is a Gentleman-like ſport, not violent, & yeelds good occaſion and opportunity of diſcourſe, as they walke from the one marke to the other. I maruaile, among many more Apiſh and fooliſh toyes, which we haue brought out of France, that we haue not brought this ſport alſo into England.

Shooting in the Peece.

Concerning their ſhooting with the Croſſe-bow, it is vſed, but not very commonly. Once in a yeare, there is in each City a ſhooting with the Peece at a Popingay of Wood, ſet vpon ſome high Steeple (as alſo they doe in many places of *Germany*.) Hee that hitteth it downe, is called the K. for that yeare, and is free from all tax: beſides, he is allowed twenty crowns towards the making of a Collation for the reſt of the ſhooters. And if it happen, that three yeares together he carry the Prize, hee is free from all taxe and impoſition whatſoeuer, all his life after.

Digitized by Google

This custome, no question, is very laudable, whose end tendeth much to a publike benefit: for by this practise and emulation, he groweth more ready and perfit in the vse of his Peece, and so more able and fit to doe his Countrey seruice. And I suppose, if in times past wee had had like Prizes for the long Bow (the ancient glory of our English seruice) we had not so soone quit the exercise thereof, nor degenerated so farre from ancient custome. So doe I thinke, that in these daies, wherein the Peece is onely prized, if wee had this fashion of Fraunce and Germany, in England, to reward him in euery place that should best deserue therin, that our Country-men would grow more perfit and expert in the vse therof, at whose vnaptnesse & aukwardnesse in their first training, before they come to haue serued some time, I haue often maruailed.

He hath also his sports of Bowling, Carding, Dicing, and other vnlawfull, and vnvsefull games; whereof I will omit to speake, being too common both with them and vs.

As for the exercise of Tennis-play, which I aboue remembered, it is more heere vsed, then in all Christendome besides; whereof may witnesse the infinite number of Tennis-Courts throughout the Land: insomuch as yee cannot finde that little *Burgade*, or Towne in Fraunce, that hath not one or moe of them. Heere are, as you see, threescore in *Orleans*, and I know not how many hundred there bee in *Paris*: but of this I am sure, that if there were in other places the like proportion, yee should haue two Tennis-Courtes, for euery one Church thorough France. Me thinkes it is also strange, how apt they bee heere to play well, that ye would thinke they were borne with Rackets in their hands, euen the Children themselues manage them so well, and some of their women also, as we obserued at *Blois*. Tennis-play.

There is this one great abuse in this exercise, that the Magistrates doe suffer euery poore Cittizen and Artificer to play thereat, who spendeth that on the Holy-day at Tennis which he got the whole weeke, for the keeping of his poore family. A thing more hurtful then our Ale-houses in England, though the one and the other be bad enough. And of this I dare assure you, that of this sort of poore people, there bee more Tennis-

Digitized by Google

Players in France, then Ale-drinkers, or Malt-wormes (as they call them) with vs.

Dancing. Neither would I ſpeake of Dancing, ſaue onely, that I preſume, ye will giue me leaue, for Methods ſake, hauing vndertaken to ſpeake of the French exerciſes, not to omit that of Dauncing, wherein they moſt delight, and is moſt generallie vſed of all others. And I am perſwaded, were it not for this; That they of the Reformed Religion, may not Dance (beeing an exerciſe, againſt which their ſtrait-laced Miniſters much inueigh) that there had long ſince many of the Catholiques turned to their ſide: ſo much are they all in generall addicted hereunto. For ye ſhall not onely ſee the Gentlewomen & them of the better ſort, but euery poore Draggle-taile, euen to the Coblers Daughter, that can daunce with good meaſure and Art, all your *Quarantes*, *Leualties*, *Branſles*, and other Dances whatſoeuer: not ſo much but the Chamber-Maid, and poore Cittizens Wife, dance vſually in the Citty-ſtreetes in a round, like our Countrey Laſſes on their Towne-greene, about the May-pole, making Muſicke of their owne voyces, without any Inſtrument. And rather then faile, the olde Women themſelues, both Gentle and baſe, who haue moe toes then teeth, and thoſe that are left, leaping in their heads, like Iacks in Virginals, will beare their part. This argueth (I will not ſay a lightneſſe and immodeſty in behauior) but a ſtirring ſpirit, and liue-

Muſicke. lineſſe in the French nature: whereof alſo the Muſick & Songs they haue, is no ſmall argument: For there is not almoſt a tune in all France, which is not *Ionicke*, or *Lydian*, of fiue or ſeauen tunes: a note forbidden youth by *Plato*, and *Ariſtotle*, becauſe, ſaith *Bodin*, it hath *Great force and power to ſoften and effeminate mens minds*. The tune *Doricke*, which is more graue Muſicke, and was commaunded for the ſinging of Pſalmes in the Primitiue Church, their inconſtant and ſtirring humor cannot brook by any meanes.

Their Language. It remaineth, I ſpeake of their Language, of whom the *Italian* hath a prouerbe: The French neither pronounce as they write, nor ſing as they pricke, nor thinke as they ſpeake. In which firſt point, they differ from the *Latin*, *Italian*, *Spaniſh*, & *Greeke*, who fully prouounce euery letter in the word: where-

as

Digitized by Google

as the French, to make his ſpeech more ſmooth, and *ceulante*, (as hee tearmes it) leaues out very many of his Conſonants, whereby it nowe is growne almoſt as ſweete a tongue to the eare, as the *Italian* or *Greeke*: which two, by reaſon of the many vowels, are queſtionleſſe the moſt delicate languages of the World.

It now remaineth I ſpeake of the French nature and humour: which by the change of his ſpeech, apparrell, & building, by his credulity to any tale which is told, and by his impatience & haſt in matter of deliberation, whereof I ſhall not omit preſently to ſpeake, ye may iudge to be very idle, wauering, and inconſtant. Saith one, *As the Frenchmens pronunciation is verie faſt, ſo are their wits very wauering.* And ye ſhall read in *Cæſars* Commentaries very often, how he taxeth them of this legerity and ſuddenneſſe: Cæſar *being enformed of theſe matters, and fearing the vnſtableneſſe of the Gaules (as beeing ſudden and wauering in their reſolutions, and generally deſirous of innouation) he thought fit not to truſt them.* And in another place; Cæſar *vnderſtanding, that almoſt all the* Gaules *were naturally hungry of change, and vnconſtantly and ſuddainely ſtirred to Warre, &c.* And againe, *Vt ſunt Gallorum ſubita & repentina conſilia:* As the reſolution of the *Gaules* are ſuddain, and vnlooked for, &c. 1. In deliberation.

To conclude, if ye will rightly know the nature and humor of the ancient *Gaules*, ye muſt read the ſixt of theſe Commentaries, and you ſhall obſerue, how ſtrange it is, that though al other thinges in the World are ſubiect to change, yet the ſame *naturel* of lightneſſe & inconſtancy ſtill remaines in the French. This is aptly ſhewed by *Haillan*, in his deſcription of *Lewes* the eleauenth: *If he had one thing, hee ſtraight caſtes his affection to another, being violent, buſy-headed, and impatient.*

To this accordeth another of their owne Writers; *Such is the condition of France, that if ſhe haue no Warres abroad againſt powerfull Neighbours, ſhee muſt haue broyles at home among her owne Subiects, and her working ſpirits can neuer remaine long quiet.* And therefore *Tacitus* cals them, *Leuiſſima hominum genera:* The moſt fickle kinde of Men; ſuddaine to begin, and more ſuddaine to ende, apter to apprehend the action, then 2. In matter of War.

com-

Digitized by Google

comprehend the cauſe, ready to lay hold, not able to hold faſt: as by the making and reuoking of ſo many Edicts, againſt the *Reformed Religion* in ſo few yeares, by the winning and loſing of *Naples* and *Millaine* in ſo ſhort a time, and by many other their actions appeareth.

For ye muſt obſerue of the French, that he entreth a Countrey like Thunder, and vaniſheth out againe like ſmoake: He reſembleth the Waſp, who after the firſt ſtroke, loſeth her ſting, and can hurt no more.

He ſheweth this his lightneſſe and inconſtancy, not onely in matters of ſeruice and warre, but alſo euen in other his actions and carriages: But in nothing more, then in his familiaritie, with whom a Stranger cannot ſo ſoone bee off his Horſe, but he will bee acquainted; nor ſo ſoone in his Chamber, but the other like an Ape will be on his ſhoulder: and as ſuddainely & without cauſe ye ſhall loſe him alſo. A childiſh humour, to be won with as little as an Apple, and loſt with leſſe then a Nut: Quite contrary to the nature of the *Italian*, of whom ye ſhall in your trauell obſerue, that he is of too ſullen and retired a fashion, and a *loup-garou* (as the French-man cals him) wherein I would wiſh you to obſerue the vertue of the Engliſh-man, (for vertue is a mediocrity betweene two extreames) who is neither ſo childiſhly and Apiſhly familiar, as the French; nor ſo ſcornefully and Cynically ſolitary as the other.

3 Intertaining of friendſhip.

So are we in matter of Duel and priuate quarrel, in a meane, me thinkes, betweene theſe two Nations: for we are neither ſo deuilliſhly mindfull of reuenge, as to tarry ſeauen or tenne yeares for an opportunity vpon our enemy, as doth the *Italian:* nor ſo inconſideratly haſty, as wee muſt needes either fight to day, or be friends to morrow, as doth the French.

4. In managing a quarrel.

Of the French carriage and manage of a quarrell, how childiſh and ridiculous it is, I haue ſeene two or three examples; wherein the parties haue neyther ſhewed iudgement, to know their owne right, nor valor to reuenge their wrong: whereas the Engliſh Gentleman, with mature deliberation, diſputeth how farre his honor is ingaged, by the iniury offered, and iudiciouſly determineth his manner of ſatisfaction, according to the quality of the offence: which done, he preſently embar-

queth

Digitized by Google

queth himselfe into the action, according to the prescription of the old rule, *Post quam consulueris, maturè opus est facto:* wise resolutions should be speedily executed.

I will here remember you of one other instance more, wherein our Countrey-men keepe the golden meane, betweene the two extreames of defect and excesse, and wherein these two Nations of *Italy* and *France* are culpable, and heere worthilie to be taxed.

We may say of the *Italian*, who maketh his house his wiues prison, as *Plutarch* saith of the *Persians*: *They are by nature strangely and cruelly iealous of their Women, not onely of their Wiues, but also of their Slaues and Concubines, whom they guard so straitly, that they are neuer seene abroad, but remaine alwayes locked vp in thier houses:* Whereas the French liberty on the other side is too much: for here a man hath many occasions offered vpon any small entrance, to come acquainted; and vpon euery least acquaintance, to enter, where he may come to her house, accompany her arme in arme in the streetes, Court her in all places, and at all seasons, without imputation. Wherein me thinkes, the French married man doth as *Plutarch* reports of *Pericles, take away the Wals and fences of his Orchardes and Gardens, to the end euery man might freely enter and gather fruite at his pleasure.* 5. In gouerning his wife.

No maruell then, the bridle being left in their owne handes, though sometimes they bee sadled, and their Husbands know not. You may obserue therefore, that in this matter of Wedlocke also, the English vse is better then eyther the *Italian* or *French*.

It is also naturall to the French, to be a great Scoffer; for men of light and vnsteady braines, haue commonly suddaine and sharpe conceits. Heereto also their language well agreeth, as being currant and full of prouerbes; to which purpose I will remember you of two answeres, not long since made by two Frenchmen, wherein you may obserue, how little esteem they hold of the *Romaine* Religion in heart, though they make profession thereof in shew. 6. In aptnesse to scoffe.

The one of these being very sicke, and, as was thought, in danger of death, his ghostly Father comes to him with his *Cor-*

Digitized by Google

pus domini, and tels him, that hearing of the extreamity wherein he was, he had brought him his Sauiour, to comfort him before his departure. The ſicke Gentleman with-drawing the Curtaine, and ſeeing there the fat lubberly Frier with the *Hoſt* in his hand, anſwereth; I know it is our Sauiour, he comes to me as he went to *Ieruſalem*, *C'eſt, vn aſne qui le porte:* Hee is carried by an Aſſe.

The other Gentleman vpon like danger of ſickneſſe, hauing the Fryer come to him to inſtruct him in the Faith, and after, to giue him the *Hoſt*, and the extreame vnction (it was on a Friday) told him that he muſt beleeue, that this *Corpus domini* which hee brought, was the very reall fleſh, blood, and bone, of our Sauiour. Which after the ſicke man had freely confeſſed, the Frier offered it him to receiue for his comfort. Nay, quoth the other: *Youſhall excuſe mee, for I eate no fleſh on Frydaies*. So that ye ſee the French will rather loſe his God, then his good ieſt.

The French humour alſo (ſaith one) *Cannot away with patience and modeſty*. And therefore another ſaith of him, that hee is as ſhamefaſt and modeſt, *As a Page of the Court*. Or as *Hiperbolus*, who, *Plutarch* ſaith, for his boldneſſe and ſaucy impudency, was the onely Subiect in his time for all Satyricks & Commedians to worke vpon.

He is alſo ſuch a one, as *Theophraſtus* calles, *immundus*, vncleanly; *Who being leprous and ſcabby, and wearing long vnpared nailes, thruſts himſelfe into company, and ſaies, thoſe diſeaſes come to him by kind; for both his Father and his Grand-Father were ſubiect vnto them.*

He is *loquax*, Talkatiue, *Who had rather ſeeme more chattring then a Swallow, then hold his peace:* ſo willing is he to make himſelfe ridiculous. With which people (it is ſtrange) ye ſhall talk all day, and yet at night not remember whereof he hath talked; ſuch multiplicity of wordes hee hath, and ſo idle is the matter whereof he treateth.

Hee is alſo *Intempeſtiuus*, vnſeaſonably troubleſome: *Who comming to his friend full of buſineſſe, will giue him counſell, before he haue imparted the matter vnto him*: Of which kinde of people, *Theophraſtus* bids vs beware, where he ſaith: *If you will*

not

Digitized by Google

not be troubled with a fit of an Ague, you muſt runne as faſt as your legs can carry you from ſuch kind of men: for it is very troubleſom liuing with fellowes, that cannot diſtinguiſh the ſeaſons of leyſure and affaires.

He is *Microphilotimos*, that is; Proud of trifles: Who, if he haue ſacrificed an Oxe, vſeth to naile vp the head and hornes at his gate, that all that come to him, may take notice that he hath kild an Oxe. And if he be to pay forty ſhillings, will be ſure to pay it in new-coyned-money. This is he that comes to the Tennis-Court, throwes his Purſſe full of Coyne at the line, which giueth a ſound, as if there were no leſſe then thirty or forty Crownes, when as ſometimes by miſchance, we haue diſcouered that it was nothing, but Paper, and a few Sols, and doubleſſe of Braſſe, that made it ſo ſwell, in all, ſcarce eighteen pence ſterling.

He is *Oſtentator*, A Craker: Who comming to ſuch as haue great Horſes to ſell, makes them beleeue hee will buy ſome: And at great Faires, drawing to their Shops that ſell apparrell, cals to ſee a ſute of an hundred pounds: and when they are agreed of the price, falles out with his Boy, for following him without his Purſſe. Such a one was the Gallant, who in the middeſt of his diſcourſe with many Gentlemen, ſuddainelie turned backe to his Lacky, and ſayth, Fetch me my Cloake, It lyes in my lodging, in ſuch (or ſuch) a place, neere ſuch (or ſuch) a Iewell. The *Lalero* returnes with a *non eſt inuentus*. My Frenth Gallant ſtraight bethinkes himſelfe, that it is in his Pocket: (which hee knew well enough before) preſently hee puls it out, not ſo much to ſhew how the time paſſeth (whereof he takes little care) as the curiouſneſſe of the woorke, and the beauty of the caſe, whereof he is not a little brag and enamoured. To ſpeake thus particularly of all his ſeuerall humors and cuſtomes, would be very prolixe and not much neceſſary: I will onely referre you to the fourth of *Tullies Rhetorickes*, where hee ſpeaketh of a bragging Rhodomonte, and to the firſt Booke of *Horace Satyres*, ſpeaking of an endleſſe & needleſſe Prater, a faſtidious and irkſome companion. Where you ſhall ſee the French *naturel*, very liuely and admirably well deſcribed.

Digitized by Google

I will onely speake of his impatience and precipitation in deliberations of Warre or Peace, and such other affaires of greatest importance, and so end. To this effect *Bodin* sayth of him: The French is of so suddaine and busie disposition, that he quickly yeeldes to that a man demaundes, being soone tyred with messages too and fro, and other delayes peculiar to the *Spaniard*. And in another place; The *Spaniard* had neede of a more ready dispatch then hee hath, and the French of more moderation in his actions and passions. And whereas *Commines* saith of vs, that we be not so crafty in our treaties & agreements, as the French; I thinke, sauing the credite of so great an Author, he might better haue said, so head-strong and precipitate. But where he saith, that he that will treat and determine matters with vs, must haue a little patience; I yeelde vnto him, he hath good reason so to say; for his Countrymen, the French, can endure no delay; they must propound & conclude all in one day.

By this hast of theirs, they lost more, saith *Bodin*, by one Treaty at *Cambrey*, Anno 1559. to the *Spaniard*, then he had before got of the *French* in forty yeares by warre.

Belgia, *Netherland*.

OF all three partes of *Gaule*, that which wee call *Netherland*, or *Paesi Bassi*, for its low scituation towards the Ocean, by the authority of *Cæsar Strabo*, and other approued Authors is accounted the worthiest, not onely for the Nobility & excellency of the Countrey, but likewise for the greatnes and worthinesse of those things that haue been inuented there, and the accidents that there haue happened. For they inuented the Art of Printing, restored Musicke, framed the Chariot, deuised the laying of colours in Oile, the working of colours in Glasse, the making of Tapestry, Saies, Searges, Wosteds, Russets, Frisadoes, and diuers sorts of Linnen-Cloath, with innumerable other small trifles: all sortes of Clocks and Dials, and the Marriners compasse.

It

Digitized by Google

It is diuided into 17. Prouinces, (viz:) the Dukedomes of *Brabrant*, *Limburg*, *Lutzemburg*, and *Guelders*: the Earldomes of *Flanders*, *Artois*, *Henault*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Damure*, and *Zutphen*, the *Marquisat* of the sacred Empire, the *Seignories* of *Frisland*, *Mechlin*, *Utrech*, *Oueriſſell*, and *Groningen*; al Territories rich, plentifull, and exceeding populous. In them are 208. walled Townes, stately and magnificent, besides 3230. Borroughs, hauing priuiledge of walled Townes, and 6300. villages with Parish churches. It hath Mines of Lead, Copresse, & Cole, and Quarries of excellent good stone. The Emperor *Charles* had an intention to erect it into a Kingdome, but the difficulty consisted heerein, that euery of these Prouinces being gouerned by peculiar customes, prerogatiues, and priuiledges, would neuer haue yeelded vnto one royall Lawe common to all, especially those that had the largest priuiledges; for which cause hee gaue ouer his determination. It is seated commodiously for all the Prouinces of Europe, and containeth in circuit about 1000. *Italian* Miles. The Ayre of latter times is become much more wholesome & temperate then in times past, whether it be by reason of the increase of Inhabitants, or industry of the people, who spare no charge to amend whatsoeuer is amisse. The Beeues of *Holland* and *Friesland* are very great, and weigh some of them 1600. pound, of sixteene ounces to the pound: The Ewes in these Prouinces, & some part of *Flandors*, bring forth three and foure Lambes at a time, and the Kine often two Calues at once. It bringeth foorth great quantity of Mather, very perfect woad, but no great store; but of Flaxe and Hemp great aboundance. Whosoeuer shall consider what commodity they raise by their Fishing and Traffique onely, may well say, that no Nation through the whole World may compare with them for riches. For *Guicciardin* writeth, that of their Herring fishing, they make yeerly 441000. pound sterling; their fishing for Cod 150000. pound sterling: and of their fishing for Salmon, more then 200000. Crownes, which is of sterling Money 60000. pound. The continuall riches that groweth in the Countrey of other sortes of Fish taken all the the yeare, is infinite. The value of the principall Merchandize yearely brought in and carried out, is likewise infinite;

Digitized by Google

the foreſaid Author eſteemeth it to be about foureteene Millions, one hundred and thirty Crownes: whereof England only bringeth to the value of fiue Millions, and two hundred and fifty thouſand Crownes. It is a wonder to ſee, how that the Inhabitants of all theſe Prouinces (eſpecially of *Brabrant* and *Flanders*) vnderſtand and ſpeake two or three Languages, and ſome foure or more, according to their entercourſe with ſtrangers, yea in *Antwerp* you ſhall heare the women ſpeak *Dutch*, *French*, *Italian*, *Spaniſh*, and *Engliſh*.

Of their forces at Sea and Land (becauſe they are ſo well knowne to all the Northern Nations) I will begin to giue you inſtances of no higher times, then when they began to vndertake the cauſe of the Goſpell and their Countrey, againſt the fury of the Spaniſh Nation, (viz:) about the yeare of our Lord God 1567. at which time the Duke of *Alua* made preparation in *Spaine* to deſcend into theſe Prouinces. To ſpeake nothing of their late Nauigations to the Ilands and Eaſt-*Indies*. In the very Infancy of this quarrell, after the Prince of *Orange*, perceiued by the death of the *Counts Horne* and *Egmont*, and his owne proſcription, that this people ſought nothing but the oppreſſion of the Countrey, and extirpation of the reformed Religion, he ſtood vpon his Guard, and leuied an Army of 44. Enſignes of *Almaines*, foure thouſand *French* and *Wallons*, and ſeauen thouſand Horſe well armed.

And though it pleaſed God through inexperience at the firſt to ſuffer them to receiue many ouerthrowes, yet by taking of Townes (as the *Briel* by the Lord of *Lumay* 1572.) and diuers other ſtrong places by the *Count* of *Berge*, they haue euer ſithence, euen vnto this day maintained their iuſt quarrell, to the exceſſiue loſſe, both in men and treaſure to this ambitious Nation. In the yeare 1573. they defeated the Nauy of the Duke of *Alua*, vnder the conduct of *Count Boſſu*, and 1574. the *Fluſhingers* inioyed the like victory againſt thoſe whom the great *Commendador* ſent to reuictuall Midleborough at that time ſtraightly belegered by the Prince of *Orange*. Who although hee were thus ſufficiently buſied in the Low-Countries, yet ſhewing how little he eſteemed the forces of the *Spaniſh* King, graunted out of his troops the three thouſand foote, which

Digitized by Google

which *Sebastion de Costa* had demanded in the behalfe of *Sebastian* his Maister for the voyage of *Affricke*.

Anno 1578. they ouerthrew the whole Camp of the Arch-Duke *Matthias* neere *Rimnant* in *Brabrant*, where the glory of that daies victory was next vnder God chiefly attributed to the valor of *Norris*, then Colonell of the English, and Steward Colonell of the Scottish. What victories by the fauour of God, they haue of late daies obtained, and what daungerous siedges they haue most resolutely indured, the belegurings of *Harlem*, *Leiden*, *Antwerpe*, *Sluce*, *Bergen* vpon *Zome*, *Bomel*, *Oastend*, and infinite other places, with the battailes of *Turneholt* & *Newport*, can well witnesse to the whole World.

Whereupon no few considerations are to be obserued: first into what follies and extreamities Princes runne into, by their hard hearts, invring their people to the assiduity of warfarre: secondly, by obseruing the great aduantages, which a small or weake Estate gaineth, by fortifying places and passages. For surely, there is nothing that sooner vndoeth a great Prince, then to bee forced to besiedge a Towne which is excellentlie defeuted; becausse heerein hee consumeth his time, and most commonly looseth his reputation. As did *Amurath* before *Belgrade*: *Soliman* before *Vienna*: *Charles* the fift before *Mets*: *Francis* the first before *Pauy*: *Maximillian* before *Padoa*: The *Catholikes* before *Rochell*: The Protestants before *Saint Iohn de Angelo*: And *Albert* before *Oastend*. This manner of defence grew in vse first in *Italy*, by occasion of the comming of *Charles* to the Conquest of *Naples*, whose manner of warfarre, together with the terror of his Ordinance (neuer before that time practised in *Italy*) gaue the Inhabitants occasion to raise their wits to the vtmost of Resistance. Then followed the famous ouerthrow of the *Venetians* at *Caruaggio*: where in an aduerse battaile, they almost lost all they held vppon the firme Land. By which examples, Princes being instructed in the danger that came by fieldes so foughten, the most part afterward turned all their imaginations of defence from the field to fortresses. And the first that put this in practise to his highest commendation, was *Prosper Colbuna*, who at two seuerall times

Digitized by Google

times moſt honourably defended the Dutchy of *Millaine* againſt the French, onely by ſhutting them from victuall, wearying them with al manner of diſtreſſes, and oppoſing them to the want of all things requiſite for an Army.

Whether the *Netherlands* borrowed this diſcreetneſſe from the *Italians*, or more lately, prouided for their beſt ſafeties, being by long time beaten with the rod of experience, I will not heere diſpute; but ſure I am, that by this manner of diſcipline, they onely of all Chriſtendome haue made beſt vſe thereof; as the people, to whoſe glory, induſtry, patience, and fortitude, and that in a good cauſe, too much honor and commendation can neuer be attributed.

Denmarke.

ALthough it may ſeeme needleſſe to make any mention of *Scandia*, which is that whole *Peninſula* of huge circuit, which is almoſt incompaſſed with the Waues of the Sea, and abutteth Northward and Eaſtward vpon the *German* and *Sarmatian* Coaſts, becauſe it is as it were ſcituated in another World; and with whom there is no great entercourſe of trading, yet for the ſpacious largeneſſe thereof, contayning two Kingdomes (viz:) *Norway* and *Sweueland*, with part of *Denmarke*, it may well deſerue a place amongſt other kingdomes ſpoken of in theſe relations. It is ſcituate in that part of Europe which ſome tearme *Scandia*, others *Scandania*, or *Balthia*; from whence iſſued the *Gothes* and *Vandales*, the very rooters vp of the *Roman* Empire. It is ſubiect both to the *Daniſh* & *Sweuian* Crown. The K. of *Denmark*, beſides the *Cimbrian Cherſoneſſe*, (where *Helſatia Theutomarſia*, the Dukedome of *Sleſia*, *Flenſburge*, *Frieſland*, and *Iuthland*, Regions fruitfull and repleniſhed with ſtore of Cattle, and wilde beaſtes, do lye) retaineth other ſpacious Ilands, the beſt whereof ſtand in the entrance of the Baltike Sea, beeing fifteene in number, all comprehended vnder the name of *Denmarke*. The chiefeſt of them is *Selandunia*, containing threeſcore miles in length, and little leſſe in breadth. It excelleth the reſt, both for the number of Villages,

Digitized by Google

ges, the mildneſſe of the ayre, and becauſe it hath beene and is the ſeate of their Kinges; Hee hath alſo *Gothland* vnder his iuriſdiction, which is placed right ouer againſt *Gothia*. One of his Kinſmen hath the gouernment of *Oſilia*, a pretty Iland in the greater Gulfe of *Liuonia*; and ruleth thoſe fat and plentious Countries, which lie on the Continent of *Liuonia*. *Scania* likewiſe acknowledgeth his Soueraignty; and he holdeth the Kingdome of *Norway*, which from the Confines of *Scania* extendeth and ſtretcheth Northward 1300. miles to the Caſtle of Ward-houſe, vpon which, border the *Lappians*. The Iles adioyning thereto, *Sania*, *Shetland*, and *Faria*, (lying in the main Sea) are in his tenure. In times paſt the people of *Norway* haue beene of great puiſſance: they afflicted *England*, ſcourged *Fraunce*, and therein obtained a Prouince, called to this day *Normandy*. In *Italy* they conquered the Kingdome of *Sicill* and *Apulia*. And in the holy Warre, *Boemond* Leader of the *Normans*, won the principality of *Antioch*. In the North Ocean (beſides that of *Frieſland*, and the Sea-Coaſt of *Iſland* and *Groineland*) he holdeth the Dominions of the foreſaid Ilands of *Shetland* and *Faria*. The *Orchades* acknowledged the kings of *Norwey* for their Lords, although they are now ſubiect to the Brittiſh Crowne. Sithence the Kingdome of *Norwey* became elective, & turmoyled with ciuill wars and inteſtine diſcords, it came to the poſſeſſion of the Daniſh Kings, who, that he may hold it ſurely, intreateth the Inhabitants cruelly, ſpoiling them of their ſubſtance, and to leaue no hope of better fortune to this miſerable people, he holdeth fortified all the Creekes and Hauens of the Sea-coaſt.

The wealth of the kingdome conſiſteth in the aboundance of Cattle and Sea-fiſh, whereof there is ſuch ſtore, that of the Herring-fiſhing onely, a mighty maſſe of Money is yearely gathered; ſo huge is the number of all ſorts of Fiſh, that at ſomtimes of the yeare a ſhip can make but ſlow way in the Sea; & the Marriſhes and Meddowes adioyning thereunto are verie pleaſant and ſauory to the feeding of their Cattle. *Scania* is rich in Corne, and Paſture, and well repleniſhed with people: *Norwey* hath no riches of any moment, except Timber fit for the erecting of houſes and building of ſhippes (from thence Riches.

Digitized by Google

transported into *Holland* and *Flanders*) and Cattle affoording great store of Cheese and Milke. Some profit also ariseth of a kind of Fish dried In the wind, which the *Dutchmen* cal Stockfish. It is taken in January, and laid in the wind and cold, vntill it bee indurate and hardned like Wood, and then carryed into diuers Regions as a kinde of sustenance. The greatest matter of gaine to the King of *Denmarke*, is the narrow Sea or straight, betweene *Cronburg* and *Eltzenburg*, commonlie called the *Sound*, which is a passage so narrowe, that no shipping can passe that way, without the licence and fauour of the Watch-men, keeping Garrison there to receiue the Impostes and Customes of the arriuing Vessels: It is easily gathered to what summe of Money that impost amounteth, by the infinite number of shipping, of *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Fraunce*, *England*, *Scotland*, *Norwey*, and the *Balticke* Sea, that saile in those seas, and of necessitie must passe the Iawes of that narrow straight. The Inhabitants are as greedy of *Rhenish*, *French*, and *Spanish* Wines, the Spices of *Portugall*, and the fruites of *Andoluzia*, as they againe are needy of the Waxe, Honny, Skinnes, and Corne, which are brought thither from *Prussia*, *Liuonia*, *Moscouia*, and the bordring Nations. Touching his powerfull ableneſse in Land-seruice, it was neuer seene that he enterprized any iourney of reputation, but that against the *Theumarsi*, vpon whom King *Valdemar* laid the yoake of subiection: but falling againe into rebellion, after many chances of war, beginning in the yeare 1500. they were vtterly vanquished by *Fredericke* the second, in the yeare of our Lorde 1558. Before these ouerthrowes they discomfited *Iohn*, the son of King *Christian* the first.

Forces at Land.

What this King is able to performe by Sea, may be gathered by the Nauies, which vpon occasions he hath rigged at the intreaty of *Henry*, the second King of France. *Christian* the second, sent a Nauy of a hundred ships into Scotland against the English, and in them tenne thousand Land-Souldiers. But for as much as it is apparant that hee is Lorde of so ample a Sea-coast, and possesseth so many Hauens in *Denmarke*, *Scandia*, *Norwey*, and so many Ilands without the *Balticke* Sea, it is most likely, that hee is able to assemble a great fleete of shippes, if

Money

Digitized by Google

Money were not wanting: which as I take it, cannot but often faile him, considering that in his whole Kingdome there is growing no Merchandize of value (excepting Sea-fish) neyther is there any famous Mart-towne, which is able to draw, or long to maintaine Traffique with other Nations. The greateſt matter is his Cuſtomes of the Sea-Townes, the profit of certaine Mines in *Scandia*, the Horſes and Cattle of the Daniſh *Cherſoneſſe*, the Timber and Fiſh of *Norwey*, and the Ilands.

It hath beene obſerued, that 50000. Oxen hath beene driuen out of theſe Prouinces into *Germany*; for which, tole hath beene payed at *Gutthorp*. He reapeth ſome profite likewiſe of *Ward-houſe*, whether the Engliſh now of late yeares haue ſailed betweene *Norwey* and *Groenlant*; ſome to *Colmogro*, others to *Stockholme*, not farre from Saint *Nicholas*, where they Traffique with the *Ruſſies* for Waxe, for Honny, and for Flax: thyther reſort likewiſe *Hollanders*, *Scots*, and *French-men*. Almoſt in the middle of this Bay is alſo an Iland and Towne called *Wordohuis*, which *Fredericke* the ſecond cauſed to bee very ſtrongly fortified, and heere the Merchants doe pay their Cuſtome.

Norwey.

NOrwey vppon the Eaſt reſpecteth *Denmarke*, on the Weſt, it is bounded with the Ocean: on the South lyeth *Swenia*, vpon the North it is ſeparated from *Lapland*, by high and ſteepe craggy Rockes. The Weſterne and Eaſterne tractes, are rocky and hard to trauell, yet is the Ayre there temperate; inſomuch, that the Sea freezeth not, neyther doe the Snowes long continue.

The Land it ſelfe is not very fruitfull to ſufficiency; for it is poore, and towardes the North, what by reaſon of the rockes and cold, yeeldeth no ſort of Corne. And therefore the Inhabitants (except the better ſort) in ſtead of Bread, eate dryed

Digitized by Google

Fish (viz:) Stocke-Fish, which to their great profit they transport through Europe, and exchange for Corne. The Countrey, (especially the Southerne partes,) transport rich Furres, Tallow, Butter, Tand-Leather, Traine-Oyle, Pitch, Clapboord, all sortes of Timber-workes, and Mastes, Fire-wood, and Timber for building, and that with great ease and little charge.

Their owne buildings are base and poore, and the Inhabitants honest, louers of Strangers, liberall of guift, and most seruiceable. Amongest them are neither Filchers, Theeues, nor Pyrats, though they dwell in a most conuenient scituation for Pyracie. *Birgis* was once their Metropolis, a Hanse-Towne, and for its safe harbour, one of the foure cheefe Mart-townes in Europe, (viz:) *Birgis* in *Norwey*, *London* in *England*, *Nugardia* in *Moscouie*, and *Burgis* in *Flanders*: But it is now decayed.

The colde, Northerly, and finally-frequented Ilandes of *Schetland*, *Friesland*, *Island*, and *Groueland*, with the Nauigations (such as they are) thereunto for Fish, I imagine, euerie Man can conceiue, and therefore forbeare further to write of.

Sweueland.

THE King of *Sweueland* raigneth in part of *Scandy*, being a larger Prouince then *Denmarke*; for it is accounted to be a iourney of fiue and fortie daies from the borders of *Scandia* to *Lapland*; and the Coast of the *Balticke* Sea, is little lesse then foure hundred leagues long, a tract of Land esteemed larger then *France*, and *Italy*. In *Liuonia* he possesseth *Rualia*, the *Narue*, *Danouia*, and other peeces of good estimation; the Ilands *Vlander*, *Alandes*, and other places (not woorthy speaking off) scituated in the *Sweuean* and *Finland* Sea. These Regions (besides *Liuonia*) are diuided into three seueral Kingdomes, (viz:) *Gothland*, *Sweueland*, and *Vandalia*, which againe are subdiuided into eleauen Prouinces, & twelue Counties, amongst which, the *Lappians* are not accounted, because this

Digitized by Google

this people (though inhabiting a larger Countrey then *Sweueland*) cannot be tearmed to liue vnder any certaine dominion, by reaſon of their miſery, pouerty, and wandring from place to place, thorough Woods and Mountaines; but they who haue any manner of certaine aboade, or ſetled habitation, are vnder the Sweuiſh Dominion, and pay rich Skinnes for their tribute.

Of the three Kingdomes whereof we ſpake, *Gotland* bordereth with *Scandia*, and is diuided into Eaſt and Weſt, both bounded vppon the Lake *Weret*: in the middeſt whereof the King (delighting in the pleaſantneſſe of the place) keepeth his Court. Twenty foure Riuers doe runne into this Lake, yet it emptieth it ſelfe but by one mouth. The Inhabitants for the exceſſiue noyſe of Waters, call it in their tongue, *the Deuils Head*. The *Gothia* ſignifyeth a good Countrey, which dooth well agree thereto for the aboundance of ſuſtenance, no Region being comparable vnto it for fertility of Fleſh, Fiſh, and Corne. Gotland.

Next followeth *Sweueland*, which is larger then *Norwey* and *Gotland* both together. In *Sweueland* is *Vpſalia*, their chiefe Citty, and *Stockholme* (the Kings ſeat.) *Stringa*, *Enuecopia*, *Orogundia*, *Arboia*, *Aroſia*.

Then comes *Finneland* ſcituated betweene the *Balticke* and *Finland* Bay, where ſtand *Abo* the chiefe Citty, *Raugina* and *Ango*, both famous Mart-Townes: *Vames*, *Viburge*, and *Caſtelholme*, in the *Alandian* Ilands. The Husbandmen do not inhabite in Townes, but by reaſon of the inplenty of Timber and Woods, the Vallies and other places are ſo well defended from the fury of the Northerne winde, that they liue heere in very good ſort, keeping in their houſes Flockes of Cattle, and all ſortes of Inſtruments, to digge, to builde, or to make any thing neceſſary neceſſary for the life of man; and this is the reaſon that Townes heere are neyther ſo faire nor ſo frequent, as in *Germany* or *England*. Ouer and aboue, the Citties and villages, there are accounted 1433. Pariſhes: in ſome of which, a thouſand people or (as they tearme it) a thouſand Houſholders or fires doe inhabite, but there are few of theſe Pariſhes, in which at the leaſt there are not one hundred families. By Finland.

Digitized by Google

this a man may iudge the number of this people, especially if he consider the fruitfulnesse of their generation; for the Women of *Finland* by a secret operation of their Beere (as some think) become exceeding fruitefull. The men liue heere verie long, cheefly in the most Northerly parts; neyther is it miraculous amongst them, to see a man liue aboue an hundred & 30. or 40. yeares. And in truth, this long liuing is the cause of their propagation: for where men liue shortest liues, there the vertue of generation must needes sooneſt decay: and therefore our Lord God in the beginning of the world, did permit mankind to liue seauen hundred yeares and more, that the world might the sooner be peopled, and the act of generation (which now for the shortnes of our liues is determined within forty years) was then more vigorous at one hundred and vpward, then in this our age at twenty.

Riches. The riches of this Kingdome consisteth in plenty of victuals, which this word *Gothia* (signifying an heauenly Region, as we said before) and *Finneland* (signifying a good Countrey) doe well witnesse. Their prouision is Flesh, Fresh-Fish, Salt-Fish, Fish dried in the smoake and Sun, Corne and Beere: whereof there is so great abundance, that it is a hard thing to see a Begger amongst them, and Trauellers are there freely entertained. It is so rich in Mines of Lead, Copper, Siluer, and some Gold, that no Prouince in Europe may compare therwith. And these Mines are to be found in euery place, if the Countrey-people (bound to carry wood to the Mines, & to other seruile works) did not hide and hinder the discouery thereof as much as in them lieth. Most fine Siluer is found in the Prouince of *Vestros*; and more would bee, were it not for the enuy of the Inhabytants, who though they know not the vse of trying of Mettals, do notwithstanding murmur that any strangers should imploy their labours therein. And this their frowardnes toward strangers, ariseth not of hatred, but vpon a iealousie, that they should be ouer-reached, or otherwise abused: for by nature they are simple and well meaning, not giuen to ambition, nor infected with auarice.

The Kings reuennew consisteth in foure thinges; the tenths of *Ecclesiasticall* Liuings, Mines, Tributes, and Customes. The profits

Digitized by Google

profits of the Church-liuinges, amount to a great ſumme of Money: for in this Kingdome, there were ſeauen Cathedrall Churches: threeſcore Monaſteries of Men and Women, endowed with moſt rich reuennewes. Firſt *Guſtan*, and after, his Son *Eric*, ſeized the greateſt part thereof into their poſſeſſions. Some of the foreſaid Mines, are wrought at the Kings charges; ſome at the charge of priuate perſons, allowing onely the tenth part.

Of three Copper-woorkes I haue knowne the tenth part, (which is the Kings) to amount to the valew of three thouſand Dolars yearely: hereby eſtimation may be made of the Siluer and Lead. But his Taxes do far ſurpaſſe all his other in-comes: for hee leuieth the tenth of Rie, Wheate, Barley, Fiſh, Oxen, Skinnes, and ſuch like. Of the tenth of Oxen, at ſome times he hath gathered eighteen thouſand, and with them maintaineth his Court, his Officers, his Nauy, and his Armies: for in the time of warre, eyther with the *Dane* or *Moſcouite*, he alloweth his Souldiers Victuals, and by this meanes prouideth it at very eaſie rates, as well offending as defending. The marriage of the Kinges Daughters is at the diſpoſition of the people, and they allow them beſides Siluer, Plate, and other guiftes, one hundred thouſand Dolars for a dowry. Of the vplandiſh people and others, which pay not the impoſition of victualles, the King is accuſtomed to exact of euery poll according to his ability, fiue Dolars or more yearely. The Cuſtomes are payde in the Hauen-Townes: the cheefe whereof are *Caimare*, *Lodhuis*, and *Stockholme* (whereat ſometimes three hundred ſhips of burthen are to bee ſeene) *Abo*, *Auge*, *Reualia*, *Parnouia*, and *Narue*. It is thought that the King doth lay vp in his treaſury, ſixe or ſeauen hundred thouſand Dolars, ouer and aboue the expences vpon the fortreſſes of *Reualia* and *Viburgh*. There are maintained in *Sweueland* and *Gothland*, about thirty two Companies, euery troope conſiſting of fiue or ſixe hundred Souldiers, all Harquebuſiers, alwaies ready to march whither occaſion calleth. Becauſe of the thickneſſe of the Woods, the Horſemen ſerue with Petronels, and ſildome vſe Pikes or Lances. Theſe are moſt excellent Foot-men; for euery Souldier is able to make and furniſh himſelfe with any furniture whatſoeuer,

Copper.

Forces at land

Digitized by Google

ſoeuer, euen the making of his owne Flaske and Touch-box; as likewiſe the common people in *Peruina*, and the neighbouring Prouinces, being contented with a little, haue alwaies accuſtomed to make all implements for their houſes and bodies; to build, to Weaue, to play the Tailors, to Sow, to Reape, and to forge tooles fit for their buſineſſe. And as for theſe Trades, which are neither common nor neceſſary, as to paint, to work in Siluer, & ſuch like, there are notwithſtanding found among them very good Worke-men, wanting rather matter then Art to worke vpon. The *Sweuian* Horſe-men are diuided into thirteene companies: *Sweueland* and *Gothland* maintaine eleuen, & *Finland* two; and vpon neceſſity they can raiſe a graater force: for the Dukedome of *Vrmeland* (as report goeth) is able to furniſh better then ten thouſand men with Horſe. In *Marchland* there is ſuch plentifull breede of Horſe, that there they are ſold at a very low rate. Both theſe Prouinces are in *Gothland*. Their Horſe is not bigge bodied as the *Frieſlander*, but exceeding ſtrong, hardy, actiue, able to endure trauell, and fed with a little. I will not omit to ſpeak of two noble vſages of the King of *Sweueland* towards his Souldiers: one is, that if a Souldier bee taken Priſoner, hee is ranſomed at the Kinges charges; the other, that if his Horſe bee ſlaine, the King beſtoweth another vpon him. To his Captaines, and thoſe which ſerue on Horſe-backe, in part of payment of their wages, hee giueth yearely a Garment, which the *Germans* tearmeth *Idolis*, and may be taken for a Caſſocke.

Sea Forces. As touching their Sea affaires, by reaſon of their huge Sea-Coaſt, and infinite Hauens, the kingdome ſwarmeth with Marriners and ſhipping, which the King may arreſt in his Dominions, as other Princes are accuſtomed to doe; he maintaineth commonly fifty ſhips of war, whereof euery one carrieth fortie peeces of ordinance, more or leſſe. King *Guſtan* firſt brought in the vſe of Gallies. In the warre which King *Iohn* waged with the *Danes* (before the peace treated on at *Stetin* was agreed) he put to Sea ſeauenty great ſhippes, beſides other of ſmaller burthen, in which were 22000. fighting men. In the Summer time they war at Sea; in the Winter at land: for then the Riuers are frozen, as likewiſe the ſea neer the ſhore for a great ſpace. Seeing

Digitized by Google

ing I haue ſpoken of Gunnes, I will adde thus much, that the King is thought to haue about eight thouſand great peeces, the moſt part of Braſſe, and that he could caſt many more if he had more ſtore of Tin. In the Caſtle of *Stockholme* onely are numbred foure hundred.

Vpon the Weſt ſide of *Sweueland* is *Denmarke*; on the Eaſt *Moſcouie*, with both which he hath had long warre. The *Sweuians* haue ſuffered muah loſſe by the *Denmarks*: for king *Chriſtian* the ſecond beſiedged *Stockholme*, & forced it, committing all kind of cruelty againſt the Inhabitants, filling the City with bloud and dead carkaſes. The title which the *Dane* pretendeth to the Crown of *Sweueland*, is the cauſe of their enmities. The Hauens, the ſcituation of the Country, and eſpecially *Gothland* (which is a member of *Gothia*, and therefore the *Swenian* claimeth it as his right (affordeth the *Dane* this facility of inuading at his pleaſure. After *Guſtan* recouered the kingdome, he & his Son *Henry* and *Iohn* raigned ſucceſſiuely: and although blood enough hath beene ſhed in the wars betweene *Guſtan* and the *Danes*, yet the Kingdome hath retained her honour: and the Citty of *Lubecke* (the mightieſt State in that Sea) ſomtimes by confederating with the one, ſometime with the other, doth in ſo euen a ballance peiſe the differences of theſe two Nations; as it ſuffereth not the one to practiſe againſt the other, vpon the perrill that may enſue to the offender. In warring with the *Moſcouite*, the *Sweuian* hath moſt aduantage, becauſe *Fin-land* (which bordereth vpon *Ruſſia*) by reaſon of the great Mariſhes, whereof it is full, yeeldeth hard and perrilous paſſage to the Enemy, oftentimes ſwallowing vp whole Armies in thoſe congealed Waters: there bee keepers the Caſtles of *Viburge*, *Narue*, *Reuelia*, and other piles and peeces vppon the borders of the great Duke of *Moſcouia*, excellent well fortified, as bridles to ſtop his violent courſes. In which, hee dooth verie wiſely; for thoſe peeces which lye in the Territories of our Enemies, are to be regarded moſt carefully, becauſe they bring forth two notable effects: firſt, they defend what is ours, and offend what is the Enemies. The further they are diſtant from our borders, the better they ſtand vs in ſtead: for while the enemy is occupied in beſiedging thereof, our owne State ſtan- Borders.

Digitized by Google

deth in quiet, and time affoordeth meanes for rescue, or deliuery thereof at leysure, and that without spoile to our owne people, or losse of our proper reuennewes. They grieue the Enemy with so much the more dammage, by how much the neerer they are scituated vnto him. Of this effect was *Caleis* in the possession of the English, and the places which the *Spaniards* and *Portugals* hold in *Affricke*. But the fortresses built in our owne borders, serue to no other end, then to defend what is already ours, and that to our great disaduantage: for as often as they are inuaded, all things are done at a suddaine, & it cannot be auoyded, but somewhat will fall to the spoyle of the enemy. To end with the King of *Sweueland*, he is so much better able then the *Moscouite* to defend his territories, by how much Sea forces ioyned to Land-forces are able to preuaile against a State furnished with Land forces onely.

Spaine.

Ithence the remembrance of latter times, a larger Emperie hath not befallen any Christian Potentate, then that which the *Spanish* enioy at this day, especially since the vnion of the kingdome of *Portugall* (with the dependancies thereof) vnto this Crowne. For besides the large and faire Prouinces in Europe, the goodlie Regions of *Asia*, and diuers rich territories in *Affricke*, he enioyeth in peace and security, without any riuall or competitor, *the new World*, in circuite more spatious, then either Europe or *Affricke*.

In Europe, he is Sole-Soueraigne of *Spaine*, holding it whole and entire, a thing worthy obseruation; for that by the space of 800. years before our age, it neuer obeied any one Prince, but was dismembred and peece-meale claimed by dyuers Seigniors: He hath very much shaken *Belgia*, and Lordeth it ouer the Kingdome of *Naples*, containing in circuit 1400. miles: and retaineth *Insubria*, otherwise called the Dutchy of *Millaine*, comprehending 300. Miles in circuite. Of the Ilandes, hee holdeth, *Maiorique*, *Minorique*, and *Euisa*: the first

Digitized by Google

first of three hundered miles circuite; the second of 150. the third of eight. *Sicill* is reported to containe 700. *Sardinia* 562.

In *Affrica* he holdeth the great Hauen called *Masalquiuir*, the most secure and safe harbour in the whole *Mediterranean* Sea. He hath also *Oran*, *Mililla*, and the rock commonly called the *Penion* of *Velez*: And without the Straights, he possesseth the *Canary* Ilands, twelue in number, and the least of seauen, containing ninety Miles.

In the right of the House of *Portugall*, he possesseth the famous places of *Septa* and *Tangier*. Of late hee hath conquered *Alarach*, which may rightly bee sur-named the Keies of the Streights; yea, of *Mediterranean* Sea, and *Atlantique* Ocean. Without the Streights, he holdeth the Citty of *Mazaga*, & by the same Title in the vast Ocean, he claimeth the *Terceraz*. *Porto-Santo*, and *Madera*, famous for the Wines which grow therein, and the Lady-like Iland of all the *Antlantique*, containing by estimation 160. Miles in compasse: Then the Ilands of *Cape Verd*, seauen in number. Vnder the æquinoctiall hee holdeth the Iland of Saint *Thomas*, some-what more spatious then *Madera*, but most plentifull in Suger, and from thence rangeth ouer that huge tract of Land, which tendeth from *Cape Aguer*, to *Cape Guardafu*. Lastly, he is Lord of all the Traffique, Merchandize, Negotiation, and Nauigation of the whole Ocean, and of all the Ilands which nature hath scattered in these Seas, especially betweene the *Cape* of Good-hope and the promontory of *Guardafu*.

In *Asia*, in the aforesaid right of the Crowne of *Portugall*, he ruleth the better part of the Western coasts (viz:) *Ormus*, *Diu*, *Goa*, and *Malaca*. *Ormus* for his commodious scituation, is become so rich, that these verses are grown to a common prouerb among the *Arabians*.

As in a Ring, the welset stone appeareth to the eye,
Such to the worlds round-circle, doth rich Ormus-Iland lie.

A great portion of *Arabia Fœlix* belongeth to the principality of *Ormus*, as likewise *Braharem*, the Iland-Queene within that Gulfe, for plenty, circuit, variety of fruits, and the rich fishing of Pearle. In this Sea the *Portugals* possesse *Damain*, *Bazain*, *Tanaan*, and *Goa*; which Citty (to omit *Chial*, *Canora*,

Digitized by Google

Canora, Cochin and *Colan)* is of so great esteeme, that it is thought to yeelde the King as great a reuennew as many Prouinces in Europe doe their Lordes: and finally, the *Portugals* hold all that Sea-coast which lyeth between the Citty *Damian* and *Malepura:* wherein no Prince (except the King of *Calecute*) challengeth one foote of Land. The Iland of *Zeilan*, wherein they possesse a strong Hauen and a Castle, commonly called *Columbo*, may rightly bee called the delight of Nature; They enioy also *Malaca*, which in those places is the bound and limite of their Empire, as also the key of the Traffique, and the Nauigation of the East Ocean, and of all those Ilands, being so many and so spacious, that in circuite of Land they may well be compared to all Europe.

To continue their Trade with the *Chinois*, and the Ilanders of *Tidore*, and for their entercourse to the *Moluccas* and *Banda*, they haue erected certaine strong places in *Amacan*, but resembling rather Factories then Castles.

Certainely, it would amaze a man to thinke, how many puissant Kinges and fierce Nations are bridled and yoaked by the Armes of twelue thousand *Portugues*; (for in so huge a tract of Land and Sea, there are, nor euer were, a great number inhabiting) and those few, not onely to haue discouered, and conquered the *Atlantick*, *Indian*, and the East-Seas, but also euer since to keepe and defend the Soueraignty thereof against all Inuadors. For, to their euerlasting glory; and the praise, profit, and reputation of the whole Christian-common-wealth, it is about one hundred yeares, since they first set footing in those Territories, and to this day haue made good, whatsoeuer in that space they haue formerly conquered. Neither can there any man, to the eclipsing of this their deserued commendation, obiect vnto them the facility of subduing a naked and vnarmed people, (altogether rawe and vnexperienced in the feates of Armes) if he recall to remembrance, how by the vertue of their Armes, they took the kingdom of *Ormus*, from the Vassall and confederate of the King of *Persia:* as also how they drowned and defeated at *Diu*, the Nauy of the *Sultane* of *Ægypt*, fully furnished with *Mammelukes*; a kinde of Souldiery, no lesse famous for their valour and discipline, then the *Pretorian Turkish Ianizars*.

Digitized by Google

Ianizars: As alſo that they made good the ſaide place againſt the leagues of the *Turkes* and *Guzarits*.

In the Red-Sea they haue often foyled the Turkiſh *Armada*. In the yeare 1552. they defeated his whole fleete at *Ormus*. In *Trapoban* they affronted the Kings of *Decan*, *Cambaia*, *Calecute*, and *Achem*; Princes fauoured, and throughly aſſiſted with the forces of the ſaid Emperor: yea, ſuch haue beene expeditions in *Cambaia*, *India*, that whole Ocean, and along the Coaſtes of *Aſia*, that in deſert of glory, and admiration, they are to be cenſured nothing inferior to the victorious praiſes of *Alexander* the great; yea, ſo much the rather to be preferred, becauſe neither in circuit of territory, nor numbers of people they were euer comparable to the *Macedonian*; for with nineteene ſhips they ouerthrew the *Ægiptian* Nauy, far more powerfull in number and furniture. With two thouſand Souldiers they forced *Goa*, and recouered it beeing loſt with 1500. With 800. they won *Malaca*, and not with many more, *Ormus*.

Another member of the Spaniſh Dominions, lyeth in the New-Worlde, wherein becauſe hee hath no corriuall able to make head againſt him; he challengeth as his owne, whatſoeuer eyther by diſcouery or Conqueſt hee attayneth vnto. This New-worlds-dominion is diuided into Continent and Ilands.

In the North Sea are ſo many Ilands, (moſt of them of forty Miles in compaſſe) that their number can hardly bee aſcertained or knowne: and ſome of them are rich and ſpacious, ſufficient to erect a great and ſtately Kingdome. Of theſe, *Boriquen* is three hundred Miles long, and threeſcore broad: *Iamica* is little leſſe. *Cuba* is three hundred long, and 20. broad: *Hiſpaniola* containeth a thouſand and 600. Miles in compaſſe. On the Cõtinent he is abſolute Lord of al that Sea-coaſt which watereth *Florida*, *Noua-Hiſpania*, *Iucatan*, and al that ſpacious Southerly *Peninſule*, to the Cape of *California*, and *Quiuira*. For euen ſo farre haue the diſcoueries and Nauigations of this Nation pierced. The Coaſt of *Noua-Hiſpania* counting his beginning at the Towne of *Santa Helena*, and cutting by *Panama* to *Quiuira*, containeth about 5000. and 200. Miles

Digitized by Google

in length, to which if you pleaſe to adde the vpland Regions, coaſting towards the North, you ſhall find no leſſe then 9000. Miles.

Peru, beginning at *Panama*, contayneth by the *Maritinate* coaſt 12000. and 600. Miles: of which three thouſand lying betweene the Riuer *Maragnon*, and the Riuer of *Plate*, and including *Braſill*, doe acknowledge the Soueraignety of *Portugall*.

In the Continent are many Kingdomes and Signiories, amongſt which, thoſe of *Mexico* and *Peru* (once moſt powerful and wealthy dominions) were counted chiefe, and as it were two imperiall Soueraignties. Theſe Kings liued a long while in great Maieſty, inhabited ſumptuous Pallaces, and maintained a mighty troupe of their vaſſals for the guard of theyr perſons.

On one quarter they inlarged their boundes, and transferred their religion and language to the skirts of *Teguant Pecũ*, two hundred leagues remote from *Mexico:* and on another quarter as farre as *Guatimall* 300. leagues diſtant. In theſe places they made the North and South Seas their boundes; but *Mecoican*, *Tapcalan*, and *Terpeacan*, they could neuer bring vnder their yoake. Their differents with the Citty of *Taſcala*, incouraged the *Spaniards* to inuade their dominions: and being entered, made their victory eaſie, and the end fortunate: this happened in the yeare 1518. This people (deuided into ſeuen Tribes) came into thoſe Regions, from that part of the North, where, of late yeares the *Spaniard* diſcouered a moſt wealthy and populous Prouince, which at this day they call New *Mexico*.

Their chiefeſt delight conſiſted in warlike exerciſes, & thereby their people attained vnto places of honour: *Metezuma* their laſt King, inſtituted certaine bands of Horſe-men, the principall whereof, he tearmed Lyons, Ægles, and Leopards. Theſe he priuiledged to weare Gold and Siluer, and a Silken Caſſocke after the *Arabian* faſhion; to go ſhod, and to occupy gilded and painted veſſell; which thinges were vtterly prohibited to the vulgar people.

In the daies of *Inga* (once King of *Peru*) the eſtate of this Empire

Digitized by Google

pire, was far greater, then of latter times: for in its higheſt fortune, it reached from *Paſto* to *Chile* 1000. leagues in length, and an hundred in bredth, euen from the South Ocean, to the *Andi* in the Eaſt. The mercileſſe fury of the waters, in ſome places ſtanding and Mooriſh; in other, running, gaine-ſaid, and put a period to their further progreſſes. When without any colourable or iuſt Title they inuaded their confining neighbors, they moſt ridiculouſly pretended, that in an Vniuerſal Deluge, man-kinde was preſerued in themſelues onely, and therefore would haue the world beleeue that they only retained true religion, which (as they ſaid) they were bound to ſow & diſperſe in the mind of all men, either by faire meanes, or foule. Their chiefe God *Viracoca*, that is to ſay; the Creator of all thinges; next vnto him they adored the Sun. *Inga Pacacuti*, who inſtructed them in the greateſt part of their ſuperſtitions, when hee had indowed the Temples of the other Gods with Tithes and reuenues, aſſigned none to the Temple of *Viracoca*; alledging, that for as much as he was the maker of all thinges, he needed not any thing.

Amongſt other memorable Ordinances by him inſtituted in the winning of Countries: one was, that the conquered Land ſhould be diuided into three partes: the firſt was dedicated to the Gods, & the maintenance of the charge of their Ceremonies: the ſecond, and greateſt portion was giuen to *Inga*, therewith to maintain his eſtate, the expences of his Court, Parents, Barons, and Garriſons: the third, was diſtributed amongſt the Souldiers: no man could claime property in any thing, to ſay this is mine; but by the fauour and ſufferance of *Inga*, neither might that diſcend by inheritance. The Lands belonging to the people and comminalty, were yearly limited, and ſo much allotted to euery man, as was thought ſufficient for the ſuſtentation of his family: ſome yeares more, ſome years leſſe, without exaction of any rent; in liew whereof, they conditioned to Manure the Lands of *Inga*, & the Gods: the increaſe thereof they ſtored in moſt ample Garners thereunto appointed, from whence, in the times of ſcarſity, it was ſhared amongeſt the people: and the like they did with their Cattle, diuiding them by head: which point of gouernment in my opinion did farre

Digitized by Google

far exceed either the partitions of *Lycurgus*, or the *Agrarian* Lawes of the *Romains*.

Riches. Beſides Merchandize, incredible treaſures of Gold and Siluer are tranſported out of *Noua-Hiſpania* and *Peru*. Of thoſe treaſures, commonly *Peru* yeeldeth two parts, and *Noua Hiſpania* the third; which is more rich in Merchandize then *Mexico*. Amongſt the reſt, it yeeldeth *Cochinella*, a commodity of ineſtimable value, and infinite ſtore of hides. The Ilands affoord plenty of Hides, Cotten, Wooll, Suger, *Canafiſtula*, hard wax, and Pearles.

Peru. Amongſt theſe riches and treaſures of *Peru*, two things are wonderfull; one, that in the Siluer-Mines, which are diſcouered in *Potoſie*, in the yeare 1545. there is, and hath beene found ſo huge a Maſſe of Bullion, that the fift part (which is the kings) in the ſpace of forty yeares, amounted to one hundred and eleuen Millions of *Pezoes*: neyther yet did two third partes pay their Cuſtomary due to his Maieſty. The other is the Quickeſiluer-Mines in *Guacanalcan*, found in the yeare 1567. out of which the King hath receiued 40000. *Pezoes*, all charges defrayed.

Braſile. It is a ſtrange thing to note, that whereas Nature hath interlaced ſo riotouſly her Golden and Siluer Veines in the boſome and Wombe of *Peru*, it hath beſtowed no ſuch bleſſing vpon her neereſt Daughter *Braſile*: but in ſtead thereof hath inriched her with a moſt temperate and wholeſome aire, with many pleaſant Springes and large Riuers, not without ſufficiency of wood: ſhe hath deuided the land into fruitfull plaines and delightſome hils, clothed it with the beauty of continuall greenneſſe, abounding aboue beleefe with Sugar-canes, which the *Portugals* there planted, & now tranſport in infinite numbers, into forraine Regions.

Philipinæ. The *Philipinæ* may well be tearmed the appendances to this New-world; for although in reſpect of their ſcite, by reaſon of their proximity, they may bee thought a part of *Aſia*: yet the diſcouerers thereof, trauelled through New-*Spain*, before they could diſcouer them: of which lands, more then forty are ſubiect to this Soueraignty, and by them haue been reduced to a ciuill kind of life and pollicy.

Hauing

Digitized by Google

Hauing thus generally runne ouer the ſpatious (or rather boundleſſe) members of this Empire, I wil now relate vnto you the true quality and State of this great Prince of Chriſtendom, (the matter beeing ſo much the more hard, by how much the more copious in it ſelfe) and not to weary your patience with long diſcourſe, I will reſtraine my ſelfe to thinges of moſt importance with all poſſible variety. In performance whereof, leauing to tel, how out of this Houſe of *Auſtria*, in the ſpace of three hundred years, ten Emperors haue already ſucceſſiuely ſucceeded one another, from Father to Sonne, as alſo by what caſualties, ſo many Kingdomes and Prouinces haue been vnited vnto this Crowne, and in particular, how the Houſes of *Auſtria* and *Burgundy*, haue in ſuch ſort been conioyned, that had his enterpriſes againſt *England* and *France*, falne out conformable to expectation, without Queſtion he had beene much inabled to haue marcht on with large paces, to the Monarchy of the whole world. His greatneſſe in Europe.

This his Empire is diuided into foure parts, the Kingdomes of *Spaine*, the States of *Italy*, the Dominions of the *Indies*, and the Countries of *Flaunders*. *Spaine* is by the *Spaniards* (for the greater grace) deuided into tenne Kingdomes, though they may bee well reduced vnto three Claſſes, that is to ſay; *Caſtile*, *Aragon*, and *Portugall*: the Ilands of the Ocean, and *Nauar*. *Spaine* it ſelfe hath beene alway acknowledged for ſo wealthy, puyſſant, and ſpacious a Kingdome, that not without good cauſe it may challenge the precedence of all the Prouinces of the Continent: if not for any other conſideration, yet in regard that the *Romaines* and *Carthagenians*, continued ſo long and ſo cruell wars for the poſſeſſion and royaltie thereof. The *Gothes* and *Vandals* (when with the ſtreame of their ouerflowing multitudes) they ſwarmed ouer the greateſt part of the *Romaine* Empire, heere ſat them downe, and made it the place of their inhabitation. *Trebellius Pollio*, tearmed it and *Fraunce* the ioynts and ſinnewes of the *Romain* Empire. *Conſtantine*, when hee deuided the Empire, preferred it before *Italy*: And in the deuiſion, which *England*, *France*, *Spaine*, & *Italy* fell to his lot, hee little eſteeming the laſt, and voluntarily leauing it to his competitor, contented himſelfe with the three formoſt. The

Digitized by Google

States of *Italy* (which are the sinnewes & nurseries of his wars) comprehendeth the Kingdomes of *Naples*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, the Dukedome of *Millaine*, and the three Forts scituate vpon the Sea coast of *Tuscain*, *Orbatello*, *Vrcole*, & *Telemon*. The dominion of *India* is deuided into the East and West *Indies*: in the East he hath but some Ilands far distant from the firme Land, but in the West hee hath diuers Prouinces adioyning vppon the Sea-Coast, not penetrating farre within the Land. And although hee doth daily conquer some of the Neighbouring places, yet they be of no great value nor consequence. From the *Low-Countries* hee reapeth small profit, for hee hath there lost his ancient reuennewes and his reputation also, being exceeding great, being faine to acknowledge the States of *Holland*, *Zeland*, &c. for free, before they would yeeld to capitulate with him.

To intreat first of *Spaine* (because it is the cencer of this spacious Empire) it is conserued by two meanes; that is to say, by Iustice and Religion, keeping this people in obedience more with seuerity and chastisement, then with clemency and mercy. The Prouince it selfe is barren, if we consider each part thereof by it selfe alone, but all being reduced together, it aboundeth with all things necessary; being stored with diuers Minerals. True it is, that it hath few men, and is not populous, both by reason that a great number are drawne from thence to serue in the warres, to re-enforce the Garrisons, and to defend the Fortes abroade, as well amongst the *Indies*, as in many other places of his Dominions: as also, for that many of them do exercise Merchandize and Nauigation, which (although it bring some dammage to the State, because so many leaue the Countrey) yet proueth it very beneficiall and commodious by their enricht returne vnto their owne Houses, and ridding by that meanes the Countrey of the more slothfull sort of Home-liuers. It is defended towards *France* with Confines, strengthned both by Nature and Art: (viz:) by the naturall height of the *Pirenean* Mountaines, which separate the one Countrey from the other. And by the artificiall Forts of *Scialon*, *Parpigniano*, and *Pampalono*. On the other partes, it is incompast with the Ocean and *Mediterranean* Seas, beeing as aforesaide secured from

Digitized by Google

from the power of the *French* Armes, not onelie by reaſon of the craggy ſcituation, where it is Mountainous and hard to paſſe, and by the ſaide Fortes, but alſo through the difficulty that the *French* ſhould there find in iournying, and the incommodity and want of victuals entring into a Countrey ſo ſterill and vnfruitfull. The other part of *Spaine* (confining vpon the Sea) remaineth expoſed vnto the Turkiſh Nauy; from which, it is ſecured by hauing few Ports, & thoſe diligently kept & garded with ſo powerfull forces, as are able to affright any that ſhould aſſault them. But amongſt all the offenſiue Potentates, the Kingdome of England is moſt able to infeſt it more then any other: for in the late warres, it did beyond meaſure trouble the kingdome of Portugall, in pittying the quarrell of *Don Antonio* (a man much fauoured of that Crowne) in ſuch ſort, that the Citty of *Lisbone*, once famous and well inhabited, became poore, and well-nigh diſpeopled. For whereas in times paſt one might number 1000. Veſſels within her Portes, 500. of them were conſumed and taken by the Enemie, which did not much diſpleaſe his Maieſtie: for hee in pollicy was well content to ſee the Portugals ſo impoueriſhed and abaſed, becauſe they liue male-contentedly vnder his obedience and gouernment. At all times his Maieſty is conſtrained to maintain a ſtrong *Armada* in theſe Seas, to ſaue-guard the Nauigation to the *Indies*, and to ſecure the Merchantes comming from thence into theſe Countries; ouer and beſides twenty foure Gallies which he keepeth to to guard the Coaſt, and to defend it from the *Turkiſh* fleete, and the incurſions of Pyrats. The charges heereof, and for maintenance of all the fortifications and defences of *Spaine*, amount yearely to halfe a Million of Gold. The number of Souldiers in all the preſidiary places of *Spaine*, amount to eight thouſand, not reckoning any man of ſort, nor Marriners; for in ſtead of theſe, the Moores & Turkiſh Slaues doe ſerue in the Gallies. This Kingdome doth neuer ſend forth any Horſemen, becauſe there be but few, and yet ſufficient for their owne buſineſſe.

In the next ranke followeth the *Italian* Prouinces; *Naples*, *Millaine*, and *Sicily*: wherein nature hath confined and heaped vppe as it were into her Cloſſet, all thoſe delightfull happineſſes, Italian Prouinces vnder the Spaniard.

Digitized by Google

neſſes, which with her owne handes ſhee hath heere and there ſcattered and diſpierced through the reſidue of the European Prouinces, and whereof we will diſcourſe in their proper places, deſiring our Reader in imagination to referre them to this place of diſcourſe.

The reuenue which his Maieſty doth principally raiſe vpon the Eccleſiaſticall liuings (viz:) the Tithes of the Church, the Bulles of the Croſſe, amongſt the *Indies*, through all *Spaine*, & the kingdome of *Sicily*, do amount to two Millions by yeare: & theſe may be well numbred amongſt his ordinary reuenues, becauſe they be yearely raiſed, and bee the ſureſt and moſt certaine, that this Crowne enioyeth. The *Commendams* of vacant preſentations, remaining ſometime vnprouided for, or not ful, and the preſentation vnto benefices, doth yeeld yearely to his Maieſty a great quantity of Mony. The whole reuenues of the Cleargy are valued at ſix Millions of Gold by yeare, there being 34. Cathedrall Churches all very rich, of which ſome haue 50. Millions, ſome 100. and ſome 200. Millions of Crowns of yearely reuenues: and in particular the Archbiſhop of *Tolledo*, hath more then 300. Millions, remaining ouer and beſides free to his Prelate 200. Neyther dooth his Maieſty care to bring theſe Churches to a greater number or more heades; for then he ſhould with greater difficulty make vſe of the reuenues and riches thereof, when occaſion required. And it is ſaide, that the Cardinall *Birago* gaue to his Maieſtie at diuers times, more then a Million and a halfe of Gold vpon ſome ſimoniacall occaſion.

The ordinary reuenues of *Spain*, do amount to ſix Millions of Gold; whereof much is pawned for the debts of the crown, the reſt is ſpent in charges of the wars, in the gouernment of the Kings houſhold, and in the Gallies, which he maintaineth to ſafeguard the Coaſt of the kingdom. In extraordinary reuenues he raiſeth much more; for in the kingdome of *Caſtile* alone in one year, his Maieſty had nigh eight Millions of gold. And while I was at his Court, his Maieſty ſent a Ieſuite thorough all *Spaine*, who went from Houſe to Houſe, requiring their beneuolence, as an almes for the expences in his warres: by which meanes he raiſed a Million and a halfe of Gold; but

Digitized by Google

with

with much dishonour, saying that it was said, that he did better to demaund this Money for the loue of God, then to take it by force: yet was not the request such, but that it had in it the effect of a Commaund; his Maiesty excusing himselfe, that the Emperour his Father, whilest hee liued, did the selfe-same thing, in his greatest and most vrgent affaires and necessities. There dooth not want also other meanes to raise Money, as the imposition of the Millstone; which as it is supposed, if it once take effect, will ampunt to two Millions of Gold yearely. It hath beene already propounded in the Councell, but is not resolued yet vpon. There be also the Sales of Offices, Eschets, Penalties, and Amerciaments, and other meanes to raise Money.

His Maiesty hath Orders of Knight-hood, (viz:) of Saint *Iames*, of *Alcantera*, of *Callatraua*, of *Montesea*, and of *Christ*. This last order is in *Portugall*, and altogether doe yeelde him yearely 275. Millions of Crownes, which commeth to them in rents paid by the *Iuccari*. The order of the Crosse (amongst these orders) is much desired and greatly sought for, but especially of the great men of *Spaine*, because it yeeldeth both honour and profit, being in number 250. which haue in yearelie Reuenues 15000000. Crownes of Gold. But to some hee giueth the Order, and not the Fee; to others, the Fee, not the order; but to many for their good seruice, both Fee and Order. There is also the order of the *Toison*, of which his Maiestie is chiefe, which is the most honourable, and most sought for of Princes; although it yeeldeth no profite. Of this is made great account, and heerewith onely Princes and personages of quality are honored.

In these kingdomes are found diuers discontented Persons, and ill satified with the gouernment, for that all those *Moores* which there inhabit (being by force made to turne Christians, and by the same force constrained so to continue) are wonderfully displeased. And such, as are called Iewes, or halfe Christians, doe daily increase in number, and multiply in Riches; For they all marry & neuer go to the wars, but continually intend their Traffique and commodity. Besides these, there be all the descendants of them, that haue at any time bin condemned by the

Digitized by Google

the inquisition, which liue in *Spaine* most desperately, because they are thereby held infamous, euen to the third and fourth generation, and dishabled to receiue any dignity, honour, or office. Of these sorts of people, it seemeth by his late proscriptions and late banishment of the Inhabitants of *Valentian* into *Barbary*, that he is most iealous.

Next these, all the *Portugals* may be comprized in this number of Male-contents, by reason of the particular hatred which they haue alwaies borne to the *Castilians*, and for their bad vsage to the *Spaniards*, being alwaies held vnder their cõmand, with minds cruelly affected. The Prouinces of *Arragon* also, for their priuiledges broken and annulled, and for rising in Armes by meanes of *Antonio Perez*, late Secretary to his Maiesty (who then liued in meane estate in the French Court, hauing paid the price of his rashnesse) doe euilly brooke this gouernment, being alwaies in subiection, seeing that their chiefe Cittizens (hauing with losse of their liues, paid the debt of that punnishment due vnto them) haue left a memoriall behinde them of that their fact, the stroke whereof is imprinted in al the rest, which are yet for a long time ready to lay down their liues also. Last of all, be the Nobles of *Spaine*, which in times past, were many in number, and in great estimation with the King, now much abased and brought to the number of thirty sixe onely, being vnimployed by his Maiesty, & receiue small charges from him, and those in places farre remote, and of little or no reputation: some of which do much blame the King therefore, inferring that thereby he maketh the people more insolent, hating the Nobility and their greatnesse, because they would not that they should much increase in power. The State is serued in all affaires, (as well of small as great importance) with common Persons, and of no great estimation, for two respects; one, because therby he is better serued; the other, because he will not make any man too great. For the Spanish nation by Nature is proude, yet base, and such as careth not though they be hated, so they may be feared, vsing a certaine *Decorum* (which they call an obeysance, or to speak more properly, a compliment or ceremonious curtesie (beeing full of flattery, shewing themselues in such publike charges, more se-

uere

Digitized by Google

uere ouer their owne, then ouer other mens. Ordinarily hee is a good Souldier on foote, obedient to his Commaunder, and patient in the distresses and labours of warre: but by night they neuer go vpon any seruice. By it selfe alone this Nation hath done nothing of any reckoning, but accompanied with others, it hath made good assaies of their own valour, alwaies boasting of the taking of the French King, of the victories of *Almania*, of the enterprise of the *Terceres*, and of the happy fight of the *Curzolari*, without once remembring their contrary successes, of *Goletta*, *Algieres*, and *England*.

Of ordinary reuenues from *Italy*, it receiueth foure Millions of Gold, much of that of *Naples* being pawned: the which the kingdome of *Cicily* doth yearely supply, by sending thither ordinarily 400. Crownes, the Counsel of *Spaine* taking order for the rest. These States of the Catholike King in *Italy*, are defended from the forces of bordering Princes, partly by Nature of scite, and partly by the ayde of strong Forts, ordinarily maintaining in these presidiary places of *Italy* 10000. Spanish Foote-men, 1200. men at Armes, 300. light Horse, and thirtie sixe Gallies for guard of the Sea-Coasts: of which there bee sixteene of *Genoa*, twenty fiue of *Naples*, twelue of *Cicily*, and three of *Sauoy*, although now they bee fewer then the limited number. And yet with all this *Armada*, the Coasts be not fully secured, as appeared by the late yeares example in the domages done by the Turkish Nauy in *Puglia* and *Calabria*, amounting as it is reported to the summe of more then a million and a halfe of Gold. He serueth himselfe also, when occasion requireth with the Gallies of *Malta*, with the Popes Gallies, which are eighteen, and sometimes also with those of the great Duke of *Tuscan*.

The minds of these his *Italian* Subiects are exceedingly exasperated through the insolency of their gouernment, the intollerable charges, and the burthen of infinite taxations, which are continually imposed vppon them, finding out daylie one meanes or other to raise new summes of Money. The *Neapolitans* are most doubted for reuolting, by reason of the instability of that people, alwaies desirous of change and nouelties. *Millaine* is also suspected, by reason of the damage which they vnder-

Digitized by Google

vndergoe by lodging of Souldiers at diſcretion, being grown to a cuſtome, with the finall deſolation of diuers families.

The Indies. The *Indies* are diuided into Orientall and Occidentall, the K. being Sole-lord, both of the one and the other. The Orientall not onely are indangered by the Engliſh Nauies (which in time of warre doe continuallie trouble them) but in hazzard alſo, if not to be loſt, yet to be forced to ſhare quiet & peaceable Traffick, both to the Engliſh and *Netherland* Merchants. The King maintaineth there, for cuſtody of thoſe Countries, many ſhips of war, hauing alſo diſtributed 8000. Footmen, for the ordinary ſaue-guard of the Forts.

The Weſt-Indies (exceeding rich and abounding with gold and Siluer) are deuided into two parts: *Peru*, and new-*Spaine*. Theſe Countries are full of Mines, in which is found great ſtore of Gold, keeping therein the *Indians* continually at worke, and liuing very barely, vndergoing the puniſhment of their ignorance and puſilanimity, in ſuffering themſelues to bee eaſily ouercome and ſo baſely ſubiected. The King hath the fifth part of all extracted from the Mines. Theſe *Indies*, in the time of *Charles* the fift, yeelded no more then fiue hundred thouſand Crownes of Gold by yeare, but they now yeeld an exceeding commodity to this King; for in ſome yeares paſt (comprehending the Bulles of the Croſſe, and other confiſcations in thoſe parts) he hath receiued from thence ten Millions of Gold. His highneſſe Miniſters do ſtill make ſome new gain in thoſe parts, and the people ſtill continue their Nauigation thither with more gaine vpon their returne, then one hundred for another. The Merchants carry thither Wines, Wollen-cloth, and other Merchandize of theſe partes, and bring from thence in lieu thereof (ouer and beſides diuers ſorts of Spices) a great quantity of Golde: by extraction of which, the fruitfulneſſe of the Mines is no whit diminiſhed, but it ſeemeth that they doe rather daily more and more encreaſe and multiply; in ſuch ſort, that the Countrey-men in tilling the ground, doe finde great ſtore thereof, together with the clods of earth when they dig it vp; And in my time, there was diſcouered a Mine of Quick-Siluer, which will yeeld exceeding profit, and moſt notable & incredible gaine. True it is, that all theſe profits haue their intereſts,

By one yeare coniecture, is to be made of another.

Digitized by Google

tereſts, but they ariſe not to aboue twenty in the hundred laid out, by reaſon of conuoyes, and ſecurity of the Fleete. For ther is alwaies maintained ſtrong guards in the Iſle of *Iana*, apt by reaſon of the ſcituation, to giue the Empire of all theſe parts to him, that can make himſelfe once Maiſter thereof. The Souldiers which hee ſent into theſe partes, haue for their pay two Crownes a month, in ſuch ſort, that the Land-Souldiers, the Guarders of the Fortes, and the Gallies which he maintayneth for this purpoſe, is a ſpeciall cauſe, that his Maieſtie expendeth in intereſts and charges amongeſt the *Indies*, more by a greater deale then a Million and a halfe of Gold.

I cannot forbeare to tell of one maruailous thing and worthy of conſideration; which is, that although his Maieſty by reaſon of the abundance of treaſure, and many other infinite riches brought from the *Indies*, ſhould ſeeme to be farre richer then other Princes, and his ſtate much more wealthy and abundant then the States of other, yet the world ſeeth, that the great *Turke*, not hauing any Mines of Golde, is in his ſtate a great deale more wealthier, and more mighty, and ſo is *Fraunce*, which hath no ſuch meanes to get Money. Therefore you muſt conſider, that the Crowne of *Spaine* is much hindred, by reaſon of the vncertaine returne of his fleete, ſubiect euery yeare to the danger of Seas, Currents, and the ſurpriſall of the Engliſh, which in warre doe ſtill infeſt them. Notwithſtanding, there eſcapeth ſuch plenty of Gold, and other riches brought from thence, that they account, that from thoſe parts, (as appeareth by a record thereof from time to time kept in the City of *Siuile*) in ſeauenty foure yeares ſpace, there hath come into *Spain* 260. Millions of Gold; a thing incredible to think, much more to tell, and yet moſt true. Of all which ſum, there remaineth now in *Spain* in ready Coyn & Plate (in which this Nation doth much delight) about fifty ſixe Millions; twentie fiue the *Genowaies* haue had for intereſt; ſeauen Millions were ſpent in the *French* warres, and thoſe which he made for the conqueſt of the Kingdome of *Portugall*; eight were beſtowed vpon that glorious and ſtately building of the famous *Eſcuriale*, and the reſt, which is more then 100. Millions, hath beene all ſpent in the warres of *Flaunders*. So that it may bee

Digitized by Google

truely ſaide, that all the enterprizes which this State hath vndertaken haue beene performed with *Indian* Gold: being certainely to bee affirmed without contradiction, that *Phillip* the ſecond, during his raigne alone, ſpent more then all his predeceſſours, beeing in number ſixty two, that haue raigned ſince theſe kingdomes ſhooke off the *Romaine* yoak, ſeeing he alone hath ſpent more then 100. Millions, and notwithſtanding all this here ſpoken of, *Spaine* is very poore and ſmally ſtored with wealth. For although his Nauigation to the *Indies* bee vpheld, yet the Traffique which hee had with England and Flaunders, (which brought him exceeding and moſt ſecure gaines) is all cut off, whence it ſeemes that not without reaſon, the *Spaniards* ſay in diſcourſe of this Golde brought from *India* into *Spaine*, that it worketh the ſame effects vpon them, that a ſhewer of Raine dooth vpon the toppes and couerings of houſes, which falling thereon, dooth all at laſt diſcend below to the ground, leauiug no benefite behinde, to thoſe that firſt receiued it.

Hauing hitherto diſcourſed of the other States of the Catholique King, it remaineth now to ſpeake of *Flanders*, which is the true correlatiue of the *Indies*, ſeeing that all the Gold brought out of *Indian*, hath beene conſumed in the Lowe-Countrey Warres: which Countrey being now diuided and alienated, yeeldeth no profite to this Prince, though in times paſt it affoorded exceeding commodities, & reuenewes to him that had the Dominion thereof; for *Charles* the fift, drewe from thence by extraordinary grieuances and Impoſtes (occaſioned by his manifold wars) more then twenty foure Millions of Gold.

The Countrey, though by Nature it bee not very fruitfull, yet by meanes of Arte, it prooueth to the Inhabitants verie profitable and commodious, exerciſing with all trauaile and induſtry the Trade of Merchandize; by which in former times infinite riches aroſe to their Princes, who alwaies held it deer, and ſought by all meanes to conſerue the Dominion thereof. And ſo *Phillip* the ſecond would faine haue doone, ſuppoſing that thoſe warres would the rather haue drawne to an ende when hee gaue the Princeſſe for wife to the Arch-Duke, with the

Digitized by Google

the assignement of *Flanders* for her dower, beleeuing that the people would quiet themselues vnder the obedience of that Prince, if they might bee suffered to enioy the liberty of theyr consciences; but time hath reuealed what effectes those proiects haue produced.

Hauing hitherto spoken of the Reuennewes and States of this so mighty a Prince, it remaineth now to discourse of the quality of his Councell, and the conditions of his Counsellours, a matter both of great importance, and woorthy of vnderstanding, beeing the very Seate of the soule of gouernment.

The gouernment is absolute and royall: matters of seuerall qualities are handled in seuerall Counsels, and they are seauen in number, besides the Priuy Counsel: That the King may bee the better informed of all affaires, they keepe alwaies neere about his person in seuerall Chambers vnder one roofe. Theyr Names are these; The Counsell of *Spaine*, of the *Indies*, of *Italy*, of the *Low-Countries*, of Warre, of the order of Saint *Iohn*, and of the *Inquisition*. In these the slow and considerate aduisoes of *Fabius*, rather then the rash and heady resolutions of *Marcellus* are receiued. As much as may be, innouations & change of ancient customes are auoyded. In regard whereof, *Innocent* the eight, was wont to affirme, the *Spanish* Nation to be so wary in their actions, that they seldome committed any ouer-sight therein. By this course the King rangeth vnder his obedience, *Castilians*, *Aarragons*, *Biscaines*, *Portugals*, *Italians*, the *New-world*, *Christians*, and *Gentiles*, people vtterlie different in lawes, customes, and natures, as if they were al of one Nation, and his naturall subiects.

And whereas some obiect that this Empire cannot long endure in so flourishing an estate, because the members thereof are so far disioined: to such obiections, let this Maxime be opposed, that spacious Dominions are best preserued against forraine attemps, as those of meane capacity haue the like aduantage against inteſtine diuisions. But in this Empire thus diuided, spaciousnesse and mediocrity are well vnited. The spaciousnesse is apparant in the whole body compounded of seueral members: the mediocrity in the greatest part of the seuerall

Digitized by Google

members: the mediocrity in the greateſt part of the ſeuerall members. For ſeeing that the portions thereof (as *Spaine*, *Peru*, *Mexico*) are ſo great and goodly States of themſelues, they cannot but bee ſtored with all thoſe good thinges, which are requiſite eyther for greatneſſe or mediocrity; that is to ſay, with a puiſſant vnion to reſiſt forraine attempts, and ſufficient inward force to prouide againſt domeſticall diſcontentes. For who knoweth not, that by means of Sea-forces, al theſe members may ſtrengthen one another, and ſtand as it were vnited, euen as *Cæſar Auguſtus* by maintaining one Fleete at *Reuenna*, and another at *Maſſana*, awed the whole *Romaine* Empire, and kept it in aſſured tranquility: as alſo wee haue ſeene, the *Portugals*, by reaſon of their Sea-forces, which they maintained in *Perſia*, *Cambia*, *Decan*, and other places of the *Indies*, not onely to haue giuen the law to thoſe famous Princes, but maugre their enemies to keep it, and peaceably to enioy it at this day.

Theſe his Maieſties Counſellours, ſhew no token of good correſpondency amongſt themſelues, but which is farre worſe, are (if not meerely contrary) yet much oppoſite the one vnto the other; whence oftentimes ariſe deliberations of great preiudice to that gouernment, ſlackneſſe in matters of great importance, and moſt of all in thoſe, which haue moſt need of the ſpeedieſt execution. All matters once reſolued of in Councell, paſſe indifferently, with incredible and ſurpaſſing ſecrecy, as well thoſe of meane, as others of weightieſt conſideration. For, it being the firme mind and intention of his Maieſty, that all things ſhould paſſe with ſilence; and thoſe eſpecially, which moſt concerne him, hee and his Councell doubting to erre in diſcloſing any, though neuer ſo light, ſilence therefore indifferently all, as well great as ſmall, to their greateſt praiſe, and commendation of ſecrecy, which is the true ſcope of all matters of State.

This State layeth claime to the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, as part of that Countrey whereof the Houſe of *Auſtria* remaineth Heire. He doth the like to the Citty of *Tunis* in *Affrica*, to the Iſland of *Corſica* poſſeſſed by the *Genois*, to the baſe and higher *Britany*, as alſo to the Kingdome of *Hieruſalem*, whoſe Title he.

Digitized by Google

he taketh vpon him; and finally (as it is aboue mentioned) pretendeth himselfe the Monarch of the World. But this mightinesse of his, hath many contrarieties in it selfe, which hinder this motion, and cruelly curbe these his dessignements, by reason he sets forward with such dulnesse of speede, whereby the prouision which is prepared for effecting of these future enterprises, comes alwaies too late. For if he be to prouide Souldiers in *Italy*, after they bee pressed, inrolled, and set onwardes, they shall lye waiting three or foure monthes at the Riuer of *Spaine*, before they be embarked for their voyage, their pay stil running on, to the great dammage & preiudice of that crown; so that we may very wel auouch, that what another Prince performeth with two hundered thousand Crownes expence, his Catholike Maiesty can scarce execute so much with the cost of 500. thousand.

Besides, his Money is not so well mannaged as it might bee. For there is no account kept at all of those his so great reuennewes and In-comes of the Crowne, as also of those expences which are daily laide out for the conseruing of so many States, and for the mannagements of so many warres; his officers shewing themselues (for the most part) little circumspect, in those charges and offices that are laid vpon them.

But great and worthy of much consideration, is that opposition and resistance which hee findes in this his gouernment, through the male-contentednesse of his Subiects. *Flanders* he may behold, though not nowe holding her Weapons in her hands, yet wholy disvnited. *Spaine*, he may see swelling with ciuill seditions, and of euill affection towardes him, for those their priuiledges, which haue beene broken and violated by him, and through the many and infinite taxations, which haue lately beene imposed vpon them. And in *Italy* as well the State of *Millaine*, as the Kingdome of *Naples*, are desirous of any other Prince then himselfe, as being willing to be gouerned by any other Nation, then the *Spanish*. Besides, his *Indies* are subiect vnto danger, as well in regard of the insurrections of the Souldiers, which are there in garrison, whereunto they are subiect, as also for that, in times of warre, they are exposed to the inoursions of the *English*, *French*, and *Flemish* Fleetes, which

Digitized by Google

infeſt them full oft, and almoſt in ſuch continuall manner beat vpon their Coaſtes, that it may be truely ſpoken of them, that they are neuer out of feare. But of no leſſe danger is the dammage, which that Crowne may very eaſily receiue, by a ſuddaine and vnexpected loſſe of their Fleete, becauſe on it are grounded all the hopes and deſignes of the ſaid State, that are of any importance. But more pernitious and fuller of trouble then the reſt, would bee the loſſe of the *Indians*, which with eaſe, eyther by forrain fleets may be taken from them, or much molefted and hindered: or if neither of theſe, yet that the *Spaniards* themſelues, ſent thither in Colonies, combining themſelues in one bond of vnity, hauing all the fortreſſes in theyr owne handes, together with the Portes and Shippes that are there, ſhould one day reſolue to bee gouerned by themſelues, denying all obedience to their Kings commaundement. Another contrariety alſo dooth this great State incurre, and it is this; that the Prince thereof, hath far better means to get Mony then Men. For howbeit vpon euery occaſion, & when need ſerueth, he is ſerued by the *Swizzers* & the *Dutch*, yet theſe of themſelues are little or nothing worth, and eaſily vpon euery ſleight occurrence of their ſlack pay, ready to make commotions, and in their fury to forſake the field. Of other Nations (beſides that, his Maieſty dareth not to truſt them) he cannot (although he would) haue ſuch a ſufficient number as ſhould ſupply his neede and occaſion. So that, howbeit that this Prince be Sole Lord and Maiſter of ſo many mighty States, and of ſo great and Potent an Empire, yet liueth hee full of continuall trauels and diſcontents.

Now hauing taken a full viewe and mature conſideration; both of the States, as alſo the ende and intent of this mightie Monarch, together with thoſe contrarieties which thoſe ſtates doe ſuffer; it reſteth, that in this laſt place wee ſhould intreat of the correſpondency which he holdeth with other Princes; which as it is of al other knowledges the moſt neceſſary, ſo is it the hardeſt to bee diſcouered, bringing with it for the moſt part greater difficulty, to be able fully & iudiciouſly, to pierce into the purpoſes and inward thoughts of Princes, but eſpecially, into the ſecret Councels of the State of *Spaine*, being full of

Digitized by Google

of cunning dissimulation.

To begin therefore with this point: I say, that generally (to instance first of all in the Pope) his Catholique Maiesty, will haue him to be such a one as hee may wholy depend vpon him, and to be confident of his fastnesse. And therefore in the election of Popes, his indeuour is, that not any ascend to that Dignity, that doth any way sauor of the *French* faction (and therefore alienated from his deuotion) nor any that are of singuler Nobility, least their spirits might be too generous to be baselie abused by him: nor any of the kingdome of *Naples*, for feare (taught by former examples) of some new disturbance in his States: But his principall desire is, to create one of base lignage, and of meane respect, and such a one, as shall if it bee possible, acknowledge his Cardinalship, and all other Dignities, to proceede from him: and such a one, whose Parents and Kinsfolkes are poore, that by the bounty which hee shall bestow vppon them, and the pensions which hee shall conferre on their Friends, he may binde them vnto him, and confidently assure himselfe of their fauour and partaking, when occasion serueth.

And for this cause in all that hee can, hee seekes to weaken the Popes, and detract from their Dignities, to make them inclinable to his will, and wholy to depend vpon him, procuring them to continue in this office of their loue, by furnishing their State with Corne out of *Puglia* and *Sicily*; and by vpholding the authority of the holy Sea, in defending their Coasts from the incursions of the Turkish fleetes, and from the depredations and inrodes of Pirats: and lastly, by giuing them to vnderstand, that it is in his power to call a Councell, and in it to take an account of their actions, and to call their prerogatiues in question. And howbeit the absolution & rebenediction of the late King of *Nauarre*, did much moue, nay beyond measure trouble the mind of *Phillip* the second, who in those times did hope for great things at the Popes handes, yet did he dissemble this offence; As on the contrary, did his Holinesse the preiudice that was, and is, done him in *Spaine*, in regard of holy Church, whereby not onely his orders and decrees are broken & moderated by the Councel of the King; but also, some-

times

Digitized by Google

times reiected and contemned, whereof his holineſſe hath made often complaint to the Spaniſh Ambaſſador, but to final purpoſe.

In the Colledge of Cardinals, the King at this preſent hath not much authority, by reaſon of his Imperious proceeding, and leſſe will haue hereafter, the *French* Nation being now riſen to ſome greatneſſe, which will now euery day more and more, bee able ſtrongly to oppoſe themſelues againſt the Spaniſh, by whoſe ieloufies, greatneſſe, and contention one with another, that Sea hath gained ſuch greatneſſe and reputation in the world.

With the Emperor (howbeit all be of his bloud) his Catholike Maieſty hath not any great intelligence, becauſe in many occurrences that haue beene offered, hee hath giuen him but ſlender ſatisfaction, neither would euer ſeeke any counſell of his Maieſty, which principally is by him deſired, to the intent that he might ſeeme to relie vpon him. But true it is, that theſe guſtes are now ouer-blowne, and theſe diſtaſts are at length ſome-what leſſened, in conſideration of the ſaide Catholique Kings late marriage.

For the Arch-Dukes, his Catholike Maieſtie doth make little reckoning of *Maximilian*, he hates *Mathias*, and onely loues that Noble Cardinall, to whom (as it hath been told you) hath beene giuen the gouernment of *Flaunders*, and the *Infanta* for Wife.

As for the State of France, he is not onely hated of the Spaniſh vppon intereſt of State, becauſe by depreſſion thereof, *Spain* would the ſooner and more eaſily haue riſen to a Monarchy, but alſo out of that auncient emulation, which hath euer been betweene theſe two kingdomes; being exaſperated one againſt another, by ſo many iniuries, ſo many wrongs, and ſo many iars and brawles, both new and old. Which are ſo much the worſe taken, becauſe it is not vnknowne to his Catholike Maieſty, that his highneſſe is much hated of the French, aſwell for the foreſaid reſpects, as alſo for that he hath more feelingly beene offended by the houſe of *Auſtria*, then of any other Prince whatſoeuer. For, of two kingdomes (the one of *Nauarre*, and the other of *France*) this Kinges Anceſtors were of the

Digitized by Google

the firſt depriued, by the Graund-Father of *Charles* the fift that was Emperor: and for the ſecond, it hath beene ſhrewdly purſued by the late Catholique King, who left nothing vnwrought to ſtop the paſſage of his Fathers riſing.

With the King of *Polonia* he hath not any negotiation, ſaue good correſpondency, becauſe he is linked in kindred with this Crowne, hauing to Wife one of the houſe of *Auſtria*. And becauſe betwixt theſe two Crownes there is not any pretenſion of State, or intereſt of Confines, which are wont to bee cauſes from whence diſcords ariſe, and alſo for the moſt part euill intelligence among Princes. Polonia.

Some wiſe and experienced Commaunders, in diſcourſing on this point, and oppoſing the iealouſie and emulation of the *Grand-Seignior*, affirme; that if the King ſhould imploy thoſe treaſures, which now he ſpendeth in erecting of fortreſſes, vpon the increaſe of his Nauy (an expence ſufficient for the furniſhing of an hundred and fifty Gallies) it would be an occaſion, that the *Turke*, whoſe Nauy nowe exceedeth not the number of an hundred and thirty Gallies, would augment it to the number of two hundred, leaſt he ſhould ſeeme to bee inferior to this King; whereby his Maieſty ſhould bee drawne vnto an exceſſiue expence, and his reputation nothing augmented thereby. But that ſubtill (I will not tearme it ſophiſticall) argument, is eaſily aunſwered: and let men aſſure themſelues, that in action nothing is more dangerous, then an ouerweening conceit of their own wiſedome. For it is not inough, barely to ſay, that the *Grand-Seignior* will be ſuperior in Sea-forces, but wiſe men muſt weigh, whether it lie in his power ſo to doe, or no. For although the Turke be Lord of a larger Sea-Coaſt then the King, yet can he not compare with his Maieſty, eyther in furniture, or Marriners. Along all the Coaſt of *Affricke*, he hath not an harbour, where hee can build or keepe a couple of Gallies, except *Algier* and *Tripolie*. In the *Euxine* Sea, what place of name is there, beſides *Capha* and *Trapezond*? What better report can wee giue to the Coaſt of *Aſia*? More implements then a ſpacious Sea-Coaſt are incident to this buſineſſe: he muſt haue plenty of Timber and Cordage; he muſt be furniſhed with a people practiſed in Sea-affaires, able to endure

Digitized by Google

dure the labour and woorking of the Waters; delighting in Traffique and Nauigation; cheerefull in Tempests and rough weather, which dare dwell as it were amongst Perils, and expose their liues to a thousand dangers: As for the Turkish subiects, the better part neuer saw Sea, and those that haue vsed it, are not to be compared to the *Byskains*, *Catalonians*, *Portugals*, and *Genowais*; (I adde this people for their many good seruices done at Sea, in the behalfe of this Crowne.) To conclude, in two things the K. excelleth the Turk; the first is, that although the Turke can commaund more men, yet the best and greater part of them being Christians, he dare hardly trust against vs; the second, that the Sea-Coasts of the King are neerer conioyned then those of the Turke, and in that regard hath his forces sooner incorporated. By this facility, experience hath proued, that the Easterne Nauies haue been often ouerthrowne by the Westerne, the Southerne by the Northerne, the *Carthagenian* by the *Roman*, the *Asian* by the *Grecian*. *Octauius Cæsar* with the Nauy of *Italy*, defeated the Fleet of *Ægipt*, & in our times the *Armada* of the Christians, the Fleete of the *Turkes*. The *Turkes* themselues confesse, that in Sea-fightes the Christians excell, and are vnwilling to deale with those forces. As often as *Charles* the fift rigged forth his Nauy, it was so puissant, that the Turke neuer durst leaue the harbour. In his iourney of *Algier*, he rigged 500. vessels; in his *Tunis* voyage, six hundred. *Andrew Dorie* conducted so gallant an *Armada* into *Greece*, that the Turke not daring to moue out of his Station, he took *Patras* and *Coronna* in *Morea*.

With the Turke, the King of *Spaine*, hath not now, neyther peace, truce, nor warre. The one he ought not; the other hee will not; and the third he abhorreth; knowing how great the power of the great Turke is, especially at Sea, against him, without the help of the *Italian* Common-wealth. And yet for all this, dooth not this King feare the Turke so much, but the great Turke feareth him as much, if not more. For he knowes, that he is to deale with a Potentate of much estimation and reputation, and well practised in the Worlde; and although of late there haue fallen out betweene them certaine iarres and differents, vpon damages done by the one and the other Prince recipro-

Digitized by Google

reciprocally in each others Dominions, yet it is to be thought, that these two so powerfull Princes, will not easily be brought to take armes, seeing they emulate each others greatnesse, and contend with equall strife, to bring all Christendome to their subiection; pretending both, one and the selfe-same end, viz. Religion. Besides, it is sufficient for the Catholike King, to haue reuenged his wronges, and for the Turke, that hee is no more molested by the *Spanish Armadoes*. Hee expecteth (after he shall haue ended his warres with *Hungary*) to haue occasion to shew his griefes, by assayling eyther the Kingdome of *Naples*, that of *Sicily*, or by inuading *Affrica*: by these meanes practising to indamage and trouble the said King, with whom he supposeth that he may contend vppon equality. For as the one hath a warlike and a well armed Empire, so hath the other a vnited and most rich Kingdome. But heerein the Turke hath the greater aduantage, that he spendeth but little in the wars, in regard of that, that not onely the King of *Spaine* disburseth, but euen all the Princes of the world: for his Souldiers receiue for their pay, those Lands which hee hath giuen them to hold for life, with condition annexed, alwaies to be in readinesse to serue at an instant.

His Land-forces consist in Caualry and Infantery: the best Foot-men of all the *Germaine* Nations, is the *Wallon*: and it is wel known, that in all ages, the *Spanish* haue beene accounted one of the most valorous Nations of the World. The French in nine yeare were subdued to the *Romaine* yoake; the *Spaniards* held out two hundred. The power and person of *Augustus Cæsar*, were requisite to the subduing of the *Cantabrians*, whereas they not onely deliuered their owne Countrey from subiection of the *Moores*, but inuaded *Affricke*, and therein tooke many strong places. So the *Portugals* inuaded *Barbary*, tamed the Coast of *Guinea*, *Æthiopia*, & *Cafraria*; they conquered *India*, *Malaca*, and the *Moluccas*. The *Castilians* sayling through the *Atlanticke* Sea, subdued the *New-world*, with al the Kingdomes, Prouinces, and people therein: and finally, droue the *French* from *Naples*, *Sicill*, and *Millaine*. Forces at land.

This people is much inclined to melancholy, which maketh them solemne in their conuersation, slow and aduised in action:

Digitized by Google

on: they loue complement, and ſtand much vpon appearance, preſuming greatly of themſelues, and exceedingly boaſting of their owne doinges: and to maintaine their reputation, they will imploy all they haue in furniture & apparell: in ſuffering of hunger, thirſt, heat, cold, labour, and extreamities, they will lay vp any nation in Europe. By theſe vertues, they haue atchieued the glory of ſo many victories, and although ſome-time they haue beene ouercome; notwithſtanding, they haue vanquiſhed their vanquiſhers, as it fell out at *Rauenna*. They neuer ſuffered any famous defeature, but in the iournies of *Algier*, and England; the one by the Caſualty of Tempeſt; the other by the skilfull proweſſe and Sea-faring dexterity of the Engliſh. Three or foure thouſand of them turned topſie turuy the better part of *Germany*, and made way with their Swords through the thickeſt of their enimies. In the iourney of *Caruen* in *Barbary*, being 4. thouſand foot-Souldiers of great valour, they made a braue retraict the ſpace of foure or fiue Miles, beſet and charged with twenty thouſand Horſe by the King of the *Moores*, at leaſt fiue or ſixe times, with the loſſe only of eighty men, and the ſlaughter of 800. of the enemy. They ſerue better on foot then on horſebacke, although they haue Horſes of excellent courage, and better with the Harquebuze, then with any other kinde of Weapon. With great care they will couer their loſſes and weakneſſe.

As concerning their Caualry, it cannot be gain-ſaid, but that the Spaniſh Genet is the Nobleſt Horſe of Chriſtendome, far excelling the Courſer of *Naples*, or the Horſe of *Burgundy*, ſo much eſteemed of the *French*; or the *Frieſlander*, in ſo great requeſt with the *Germans*. It ſhould ſeeme that nature her ſelfe hath armed this people, in giuing them the Iron Mines of *Biſkay*, *Guipuſcua*, and *Medina*, with the temperature of *Baion*, *Bilbo*, *Toledo*, and *Calataiut*; the Armories of *Millaine*, *Naples*, & *Boſcoducis*; the Corne and prouiſion of the inexhauſtible Garners, of *Apulia*, *Sicill*, *Sardinia*, *Arteſia*, *Caſtile*, and *Andeleuzia*, with the plentifull vintages of *Soma*, *Calabria*, *San Martin*, *Aymont*, and ſundry other places. To conclude, this Prince is ſo mighty in Gold and Siluer, that therewith (to ſpare his owne people, ingaged in the defence of ſo many Territo-

Digitized by Google

Territories, Prouinces, and Frontiers, from vndoubted destruction) he is able to wage what numbers of Horse-men & Foot-men of the *German* and *Italian* Nations it pleaseth him.

The Princes, whose Dominions are bordering, and in regard of their forces are any way able to indanger his Dominions, are the *Venetians*, the Kinges of Fraunce and England, and the *Turke*. The *Venetians* (long since the Dutchy of *Millaine* came to the possession of this Crowne) haue set them downe with great quietnesse, rather looking to the strengthening and keeping of their owne Townes and pieces, then to the winning of others from their Neighbours. And good reason it is, sithence peace is the surest anker-hold of their Common-wealth.

Concerning *Fraunce*, sithence the *French* Nation hath put an end to their ciuill discontents, what Trophee or Tryumph can the *Spaniard* boast to haue carryed from them? Indeede it cannot bee denyed, but in elder dayes, the warinesse of the *Spaniards*, hath turned the furious attemptes of the French to matter of too late repentance. For the great Captaine surprising *Barletta*, and then incamping vpon the bankes of *Gariglano*, first tooke from them the possession of the Kingdome of *Naples*, and afterwardes all hope of regaining it againe. By the same temporizing, *Anthonie Leua* wearied King *Francis* at *Ticinum*, and *Prosper Collonna*, cleared the Dutchy of *Millain*.

In assaulting of Townes and fortresses, I confesse fury to bee of great moment; I confesse likewise, that by this vertue, the *French* preuailed at *Ioious*, *Momedium*, and *Caleis*; but in set battels, as at *Graucling*, S. *Quintins*, and *Siena*, most commonly they haue had the foyle: for in the fielde good order & skilfull conduction dooth more preuaile, then valour and furious resolutions: In all assaultes, fury, and resolution, more then counsell or temporizing.

In the East *Indies* he confineth with the King of *Persia*, betwixt whom there is not any ciuill intelligence, but contrarywise, rather great tokens of much loue and amity, as by whose help that King hopeth to find meanes to ouerthrow the Turk. Howbeit hee hath very oftentimes denied him assistance and aide

Bordering Princes.

Digitized by Google

aide in thoſe wars, which he made againſt the houſe and family of *Ottoman*, beeing very much vrged and ſought vnto by the *Perſian*, to ſend vnto him ſome of his people that were men expert and skilfull in caſting great Ordinance, as alſo in building of Forts, and other the like matters of defence and aſſiſtance. Excuſing himſelfe, with the perrill of his Religion, which doth not permit Chriſtian Princes to lend aid vnto Infidels: though indeed the true cauſe was, becauſe he would not thereby giue an occaſion of future trouble and moleſtation to himſelfe (by communicating theſe two aduantages ſo important in war) in his Nauigation to the *Indies*, which are adioyning to the *Perſian* Sea.

In Barbary. With the King of *Feſſe* and *Morocco* his Catholique Maieſty is in league, vpon intereſt of thoſe States he poſſeſſeth in *Africa*.

In Sauoy. With the Duke of *Sauoy*, to whom he is knit by coniunction of bloud, and tyed by ſtrictneſſe of kindred, there ought not to be any doubt of their good intelligence each to other.

In Tuſcany. His Catholike Maieſty would very willingly that the great Duke of *Tuſcany* ſhould wholy depend vpon him; but he is ſo farre from that, that hee doth not onely depend; but in many occaſions hath ſtill ſhewed himſelfe oppoſite vnto this crowne, and hath lately diſcouered him-ſelfe to bee a welwiller to the Crowne of *France*, by ioyning alliance with the moſt Chriſtian King: & therefore, there is not any good intelligence betwixt them. In like manner, the Ambaſſadour of *Tuſcany* is of little regard in that Court, and the Dukedome of *Ferrara*, is now diuolued to the Church.

In Mantua. The Duke of *Mantua*, labours bodily to be in grace with his Catholike Maieſty; and for this end, hath yeelded himſelfe vnder his protection; hoping hereby to be ſecured from thoſe troubles, which he might receiue from the Duke of *Sauoy*, for the Marquiſhip of *Monferrato*. Imagining withall, that for the quiet of *Italy*, and for the better aſſurance of his owne States therein, and particularly, for the State of *Millaine*, the Catholike King will bee ready to defend him from all moleſtations, that ſhall be offered.

Parma. The Duke of *Parma* is not onely a deuout Seruant, and a neare

Digitized by Google

neare Kinſman, but alſo a ſubiect to this Crowne, by the Citty of *Placentia*, and therefore wholy depends thereupon, hauing taken a ſecret oath to obey him in all commands. Proceeding with all poſſible reſpect, not to giue the leaſt occaſion of offence, by reaſon that the inueſtiture of *Placentia* was not granted abſolutely to the houſe of *Farneſi*, but onely to the fourth deſcendency after which it returnes againe to the King of *Spaine*, as Duke of *Millaine*. And therefore his excellency (that he may not ſeparate himſelf from his Maieſties deſire) did lately refuſe to linke himſelfe in aliance with the great Duke, leaſt he ſhould diſpleaſe the King, whoſe mind hee ſaw was bent againſt it.

The Duke of *Urbine* being a Prince of ſmall power, wholy relies vpon his Maieſty, as receiuing his greateſt benefite from him, to whom he hath committed the charge of all his *Italian* Caualry.

The Common-wealth of *Genoa*, is like a ſhip beaten at Sea, and toſt with contrary windes, and tempeſtuous ſtormes, placed as it were betwixt two Anchors; which are, Prince *Doria*, a true borne Cittizen, and the Ambaſſador of the Catholique King, who hath the protection thereof in his Maiſters name, to his great benefit. If euer he chance to become Sole-Lord thereof, it will adde a greater Dominion to his greatneſſe; for the nature and quality of the ſcituation of that Citty, whereof the *Spaniards* are wont to ſay: That if the King their Maiſter were but once Lord of *Marſelles* in Prouince, and of *Genoa* in *Italy*, by the benefit of theſe two moſt famous ports, he might eaſily ariue to the Monarchy of the whole World. But howbeit the King of *Spain* be not Lord thereof, nor yet hath ſo great a part therein, that hee can aſſuredly ſay, that it wholy reſtes at his commaund, yet by fauouring and vpholding the greatneſſe of the Prince *Doria*, hee maketh him the Inſtrument to ſerue his turne, and by his meanes obtaineth what hee will or can in reaſon deſire of that Nation which is alſo deeply intereſſed with his Catholique Maieſty, in regard that the King of *Spaine*, hath taken vp great ſummes of Money vppon intereſt of the *Genois*, and will take heede how they break with him, leaſt they bee hindered of their gaines, together with their principall: Genoa.

And

Digitized by Google

And it is thought, that his Maiesty is behind hand with them for more then a Million and a halfe of Gold. Neither with this Nation could the publique good preuaile so much, but that their priuate benefit, was euer able to sway them more, being manifest to all the World, that in this respect the publike treasury is alwaies poore, and particular men continually abound in wealth.

Malta. Of the Religion of *Malta*, the said King taketh a particuler protection, as that in like sort depends wholy vppon his pleasure, and dooth readily execute his royall commaundements, seruing his turne oftentimes, in keeping the Coastes of *Spaine*, and the kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicily*, from the incursions of Pirates, and that without any one peny cost or charges to the King.

Lucca. The Signory of *Lucca*, hath placed both her selfe and al that it hath (fearing the potency of the great Duke) vnder the protection of his Catholike Maiesty.

Venice. In generall, the Spanish Nation beareth little loue to the *Venetian* common-wealth, as suspecting it to fauour the *French*, and for the strict friendshippe which it holdes with the most Christian King, and the most renowned State of England, of late apparant and professed Enemies to his Catholique Maiesty.

Againe, there is also little inclination of loue towardes this State, because they thinke, that it maketh profession to ballance the States and forces of the Princes of Christendome; and though they esteeme well enough of it; yet they loue it not a iot. Notwithstanding, the Spaniards know, that in those warres which may happen betwixt the Turkes and this people, they cannot (out of their particular interestes) but ayde and assist them, and that on the contrary from them, they haue no hope of retribution in like occasion. But withall they assuredly beleeue, that the aydes which they shall affoord it, shall be but feeble, and slowly subministred, in such sort, that they shall not giue it any great re-enforcement, but onely such as may be sufficient to saue it from ruine, yea scarce that.

Finally, for a perfect review of this tedious discourse, I will recite vnto you, these most weighty, secret, and last instructions

giuen

Digitized by Google

giuen by *Phillip* the ſecond, King of *Spaine*, to his Son *Phillip* the third, now raigning: teaching him how to gouern himſelfe and his kingdoms after the deceaſe of his ſaid Father; brought to light by a Seruant of *Don Chriſtophero di Mora*, called *Rederigodſt*, and tranſlated out of *Spaniſh* and *Dutch* into Engliſh, that the world may ſee how iudiciouſly this manuſcript of the Kings owne hand, agreeth with theſe relations.

SOn, I haue often troubled my mind, and entered into moſt deepe and ſerious conſiderations, how to leaue a quiet and ſetled eſtate vnto you after my deſceaſe: Howbeit, neither the long time of my life, nor the opportunity of Princes affected to my ſeruice, would affoord me ſufficient aſſiſtance in this behalfe. I confeſſe, that I haue ſpent more then 594. Millions of Duckets; in liew whereof, I haue inioyed nothing the ſpace of 33. yeares, but hart-ſorrow, and vexation of Spirit. True it is, that I recouered *Portugall*; but as lightly as France is eſcaped from me, ſo likewiſe may *Portugall* ſlide backe. Would to God I had followed the councell of *Charles* the Emperour, my Lorde and Father of famous memory: for then could I much more quietlie brooke thoſe my ſorrowes, and dye with a more willing mind, leauing to you the ſucceſſion of this mortall life.

This then, beſides ſo many ſtately Kingdomes and Seigniories, as a perpetuall teſtament I leaue behind vnto you, as a mirrour and Looking-Glaſſe, wherein you may ſee how to frame your actions, and to carry your ſelfe in your gouernment after my death.

Alwaies looke well to the charges and alterations of other States and Countries, to the end you make vſe, and reap good profit thereby, as occaſion ſhall ſerue; and withall, haue a cautelous and circumſpect eye ouer them that be in Counſell with you.

Two meanes you haue whereby to maintaine your Spaniſh Kingdomes; the one is gouernment; the other, the Trade of the *Indies*.

Touching your Gouernment, you muſt draw vnto you, and relye eyther vpon the Nobility, or the ſpiritualty, of your Dominions.

Digitized by Google

If you leane vnto the ſpiritualty, you muſt ſeeke to bridle and curb the other, as I haue done: but if you meane to ſtrengthen your ſelfe with the Nobility, cut ſhort the liuings & Reuenues of the ſpiritualty, as much as is poſſible. For holding them both in equall fauour, they will conſume you; and beſides, you ſhall ſet your Realmes out of quiet, and neuer come to reſolution, the ballance being ouer-weighed, ſometimes by the one, and ſometimes by the other.

My Counſell is, that you hold in league with the Prouinces of the *Netherlands*, eſpecially if you meane to helpe your ſelfe with the Nobility: for they be friends to *France*, *England*, and the *Germaine* Princes. And neyther *Italy*, *Poland*, *Sweden*, nor *Denmarke*, can ſtand you much in ſteed: for the King of *Denmarke* getteth his Reuenues by forraine Nations.

Sweden is alwaies at diuiſion, and is vnfit in regard of ſcituation.

The *Polacks* be as Maiſters ouer their Kinges. *Italy*, though it be rich, yet it is far diſtant from theſe before named; beſides that, all the Princes therein are of diuers humours and diſpoſitions.

But on the other ſide, the *Netherlands* are exceeding populous, and abound mightily in ſhipping: the Inhabitants being a people moſt conſtant in labours, diligent in ſearching out things profitable, couragious in their attempts, patient in aduerſity.

True it is, that I haue beſtowed thoſe Prouinces vpon your Siſter *Iſabella Clara Eugenia*, howbeit in the tranſport thereof, are comprized an hundred meanes, whereby you may help your ſelfe: The principall whereof bee, that you are Tutour and ouer-ſeer of all her Children; and that ſhee may alter nothing in the Catholique Religion: Theſe two maine pointes being taken away, you are abſolutely diſpoſſeſſed and quit of the *Netherlands*; & other Kings would be ſo forward to draw them vnto their allegiance, that it may happily redound to you ouerthrow.

Contrariwiſe, if you meane to relie and cleaue to the Clergy and State ſpirituall, you ſhall purchaſe your ſelfe many enemies: I haue had the experience thereof: but hold all correſpon-

Digitized by Google

reſpondency with the Popes: Giue them much: be friendly alwaies to them: Entertaine ſuch Cardinals as be moſt in credit with them: Make your ſelfe Maiſter of the Conclaue. Make much of the *German*-Princes Biſhoppes, and vſe to beſtow no more penſion on thē by the hand of the Emperor, but deale ſo, as they may acknowledge your ſelfe for the giuer; ſurely they will ſerue you the more willingly, and receiue your guifts with greater gladneſſe.

As for them that be of baſer degree and quality, let them not come neere you, and ſo ſhall you ſeeme to giue your Nobility and Commons the better countenance. For certainelie I muſt needs ſay, their pride is great, they are mighty in ſubſtance, whatſoeuer they deſire muſt be done, they will be chargeable vnto you, and in the end will ſeek to rule your Scepter. Wherefore make your party good, by the meanes of ſuch as are deſcended of Noble parentage, and great families, and promote them now and then to ſome ſpirituall liuinges. The common ſort is not ſo ſeruiceable; for they will procure you ſuch vnſpeakable hatred, as that thereby you might be forced to conſume your treaſure, and therefore repoſe your truſt in none of them, vnleſſe they be of great quality.

Abandon and ſhake off your Engliſh Spies.

Cleare your ſelfe of the *French* charges.

Vſe the ſeruice of ſome part of the Netherlandiſh Nobility, ſo that you may ioyne and knit them vnto your beſt and moſt truſty Subiects. Now as concerning the trauaile and Nauigation to the Eaſt & Weſt Indies, therein doth conſiſt all the power and might of the kingdome of *Spain*, as likewiſe the ſtraining and bridling of the *Italians*.

France and *England* cannot be debarred from medling with the aforeſaid Trade and Nauigation, their powers bee great, their Sea-men bee many, their Seas bee too large, their Merchants too rich, their Captaines & Souldiers to greedy of money, and their Subiects too truſty.

I haue for your ſake, in the tranſport of the Low-Countries, put downe a prouiſo, altogether to reſtraine the *Netherlanders* from dealing in the aforeſaide Trade: but I feare that time and men will proone changeable: wherefore you muſt doe two

Digitized by Google

thinges. First, alter often your Gouernours in the West-Indies. Secondly, those which you drawe from thence, you shall put in office here at home, and make them of the counsell of *India* in *Spain*. So shall you neuer (in my opinion) be deceiued, but both parties will discouer your profit, and seeke their owne honour.

If you perceiue the English-men prepare to bereaue you of these commodities, as being strong both in shipping and Marriners (for the French I make small account) see that you strengthen your selfe with the Netherlands: notwithstanding, that a great part of them be Hereticks, & would so continue, with condition, that they shall haue full libertity to vtter all their commodities in *Spaine* and *Italy*, paying their royall Incomes and Customes, and all duties belonging vnto you: and then also you may grant vnto them passage to trauaile & Trade vnto your East & West Indies, prouided that they put in good security in *Spaine*, and take vppon them a corporall oath, that vppon their returne from the Indies, they shall arriue in some part of *Spaine*, and there to vnloade, vppon paine of death, if they shall be found to do otherwise. Mine opinion is, that they will neuer refuse to accept of this easie condition, and to accomplish the same: and by these meanes shall the *Indian* and *Spanish* bee lincked and knit to the *Netherlandish* Trade: and England and France must then liue vpon their owne purses.

My Sonne, I could relate vnto you more secrets for the conquests of other kingdomes and Countries, but all such aduertisments, with the discourses thereuppon deliuered vnto mee, and by mee amended, you shall finde in my Cabinet. Cause *Christopher de Mora* immediatlie to deliuer the Key vnto you, least these so weightie secrets come into the handes of some other.

Vppon the seauenteenth of September, I caused the transcript or last scribled Coppy of these remembrances, being in diuers places interlined, amended, and altered, to be cast into the fire: but I feare somewhat thereof might vnderhand be kept and reserued: wherefore set your eares to hearken thereafter.

I haue this present daie added thus much. If you can deale with

Digitized by Google

with *Antonio Peres*, to draw him into *Italy*, or at leaſt to procure him to doe you ſeruice in ſome other Countries, but into *Spaine* or the *Netherlands* neuer let him come.

Touching your marriage, the particular writings thereof remaine vnder the cuſtody of the Secretary.

Moreouer, remember that you often reade ouer this ſigned Bill and theſe writinges, heere-about was neuer any body in Counſell with me, but mine owne hand.

Haue alwaies an eſpeciall care ouer your Counſellers, and ouer thoſe that are neere vnto you.

The deciphering of Letters you muſt your ſelfe take vpon you.

Doe not offend nor anger your Secretaries: deliuer them alwaies worke of ſmall or great importance, Make proofe of them rather by your Enemies, then by your Friendes. And although you be inforced to diſcouer your ſecrets to your deereſt fauorites, yet locke the cheefeſt alwaies within your own breaſt.

Thus much gentle Reader, as it is thought hath beene ſaued out of thoſe notes and writings which were ſeene to bee burned, and this I thought good to publiſh for the common benefit.

Portugall.

THis Kingdome (which is not aboue 320. Miles long, and ſixty broade; not very populous, and but meanely rich in eſſentiall Reuenues:) by Nauigation and Acquiſition, of late daies, helde equal rancke with the moſt famous Prouinces of the Worlde: yea, this humour of induſtry ſo poſſeſſed theyr mindes, that they ſoly vndertooke the famous expeditions of *Barbary*, *Æthiopia*, *India*, and *Braſile*. Wherein, within theſe hundred yeares, they haue taken and fortified the principall places and harbours of thoſe Prouinces, challenging vnto thẽſelues the peculiar Traffique of the *Atlantick* and Eaſt Ocean. They ſeized vppon the *Tercerax*, knowing that without touching at thoſe Ilands, no ſhip could ſafely paſſe into *Æthiopia*, *India*,

Digitized by Google

India, *Brasile*, or the *New-world*. Returning from those Countries towardes *Spaine* or *Lisbon*, they put in to releeue theyr wants and sicke Passengers, and ontward they touch to take in fresh Water and fetch the Winde. In *Affricke* they are Lordes of those places, which wee spake of before in the description of *Spaine*: In *Persia* they haue *Ormus*: In Cambaia, *Diu*, *Damain*, and *Bazain*, the hither *India*, *Chaul*, *Goa*, and the fortresses of *Cochin*, *Colan*, the Iland *Mauar*, and the Hauen *Columbo* in *Zeilan*.

Amongst these *Goa* is the chiefest, as the place where the *Viceroy* keepeth his Court. *Ormus* is faire for the iurisdiction of the Sea, and the Traffique of the *Persian* and *Cambaian* Gulphes. *Cochin* and *Colan* for their plenty of Pepper. *Mauar* for the Pearle-fishing. *Columbo* for the aboundance of Cinnamon. *Damain* and *Bazain*, for fertile prouision. In these quarters they haue some Princes their Confederates, others their Feodaries. The chiefe and wealthiest of Allies, is the King of *Cochin*, some-time tributary to the *Calecute*, but now by the entercourse and Traffique with the *Portugals*, hee is growne so rich and mightie, that the other Princes doe enuy his prosperity. The King of *Colan* is likewise their confederate.

orces. Their chiefe force consisteth in scituation & strength of places, and in number and goodnesse of their shipping. As concerning scituation, this people wisely foreseeing, that in regard of their contemptible numbers: they were not of power to make any famous iourney into the In-land Regions, neither able to match the *Persians*, the *Guizarites*, the Princes of *Decan*, the King of *Narsinga*, and other barbarous Potentates in *Campania*, turned all their cogitations to immure themselues in such defensiue places, that therein with small forces they might euer haue hope to diuert great attempts, & make themselues Lordes and Commaunders of the Sea and Nauigation: which when they had doone, they entertained and maintained so strong a Nauie, that no Prince in those partes was able to wrong them; yea, they furnished those Vessels so throughly, that one single Shippe would not refuse to cope with three or foure of the *Barbarians*. With this *Armada* (of one and twen-

ne

Digitized by Google

tie ſhippes) *Francis Almeida* defeated the *Mameluckes* neere the Towne of *Diu*. *Alfonſe Alburquerick* with thirtie great ſhippes won *Calecute*: with one and twentie hee tooke *Goa*, and regained it (being loſt) with foure and thirtie. With three and twentie he tooke *Malaca*; with ſixe and twentie he entered the Red-Sea; and with two and twentie recouered *Ormus*. In proceſſe of time, as their mightineſſe increaſed, *Lopes Zuarezius* made a iourney into the Red-Sea with ſeauen and thirtie *Galleons*. *Lopes Sequeira* with twentie foure Ships, but with greater number of Souldiers then euer before, laide ſiedge to *Guidda* in the Red-Sea: *Henry Meneſius* waſted *Patan* with fiftie ſhippes. *Lopes Vazius Sampaius* left in the *Arſenall* 136. veſſels of warre, whereof the greateſt part were excellent well furniſhed. *Nonus Acunia* vndertooke a iourney to *Diu* with three hundred ſhips, wherein were three thouſand *Portugalles*, and fiue thouſand *Indians*, beſides a great number of his Guard and Seruants, which ordinarilie follow the *Viceroyes* in thoſe Countries.

Beſides his confederates and feodaries, he is confined with moſt mightie Princes, his enemies: as the *Perſian*, who challengeth *Ormus*, as holden of him in vaſſalage: the King of *Cambaia*, who maketh Title to *Diu*, and other places, which were once vnder his iuriſdiction: *Nizzamaluc* and *Idalcam* (for ſo the *Portugals* call the two Princes of *Decan*) and the Kinges of *Calecute* and *Narſinga*. Bordeters.

As for the Kings of *Perſia* and *Narſinga*, they neuer waged warre againſt them, becauſe they haue alwaies had to do with more dangerous enemies: other Princes though they haue enterprized to their vttermoſt, to regaine *Diu*, *Chial*, *Goa*, and other places, and haue left no meanes vnattempted to bring their deſſeignes to effect, yet their abilities could not woorke any proſperous ſucceſſe to their laborious endeuours, by reaſon of ſcituation, ſo commodious for the tranſportation and receite of continuall ſuccours from the Sea. And though they haue vndertaken the like actions in the deepe of Winter, hoping by tempeſts and other caſualties, to barre the *Portugalles* from their Sea-ſuccours, yet they neuer preuailed; becauſe the ſhips and courages of the *Portugals*, the one reſolute to endure the

Digitized by Google

the siedge; and by patience to ouercome; the other determining (hap what may) neuer to forsake their distressed Countrymen, haue set all vpon hazzard, and exposed their fortunes to the mercy of winde and waues in those tempestuous seasons. Their worst, greatest, and fiercest enemie is the Turke (who being backed with the like aduantage of scituation, which the Cittie of *Aden* affoordeth him) and sometime pricked on by his owne propper enuy, emulation, and ambition, sometime egged on by the perswasion of the King of *Cambaia*, hath often indeuoured to dispoile them of the Soueraignety of the Red-Sea, and finally to driue them out of the East *India*. The greatest Nauy that euer hee sent against them, was to recouer *Din*, consisting of sixtie foure Shippes, but by them defeated. Afterwards hee sent a Nauy of greater vessels, to the conquest of *Ormus*, and that likewise was almost wholy beaten, bruised, and drowned.

In the further Indies they holde nothing but *Malaca*, and the *Moluccas*. In times past, *Malaca* was far greater then now it is: for it lay scattered three Miles alongst the Sea-coast; but the *Portugals*, that they might the better defend it, haue broght it into a round forme, containing not aboue a Mile in compasse. Heere the King hath two puissant Enemies, *Ior* and *Achem*, the one mightie at Land, and the other farre mightier at Sea, by whom the Towne, not without great danger hath more then once bin besiedged, but by the aide sent from *India*, alwaies relieued, with great slaughter of the Enemy. At length *Paul Lima* defeated King *Ior*, and raced the Castle built by him neere *Malaca*, wherein besides other spoiles he found 900. brazen cast peeces. This Territory is subiect to great danger, by reason of the puissance of this King of *Achem*, bending all his cogitations to the rooting and finall destruction of the *Portugals* out of this Prouince, and therefore the King of *Spaine* of late yeares, sent *Matthias Alburquerk* with a great power into India, with authority, either to secure the Territory of *Malaca*, or to fight with the King of *Achem*.

To secure their Trade of Spice and Nutmegs in the *Moluccas* and *Banda*, they haue built many Castles, but for many yeares past they haue beene mightily molested by the *Dutch* and

Digitized by Google

and Engliſh Nations, who by no meanes wil be excluded from the free Traffique of the Sea, eſpeciallie the Engliſh, who by reaſon of their great puiſſance, haue of late builded the faireſt ſhippes of the World for that onely Trade, and therein ſeated a peaceable Factory.

The Romaine Empire.

THis Empire in its greateſt glory (viz:) in the daies of *Traian*, ſtretched from the Iriſh Ocean; and beyonde, from the *Atlantique* Ocean, to the *Perſian* Gulfe, & from *Catnes* in *Scotland*, to the Riuer *Albis*, and beyond the *Danuby*. It began firſt to decline by the ciuill wars of *Galba*, *Otho*, & *Vitellius*. For in thoſe times the Legions of *Brittany* were tranſported into the Continent; *Holland* and the bordering Countries reuolted, and immediatly after, the *Sarrazens* finding the Frontiers of the Empire without Garriſons, paſſed ouer *Danubius*. The *Alani* won the Streightes of the *Caſpian* Hils: the *Perſians* indeuoured to get them a name and reputation; the *Goths* wandred throughout *Mœſia* and *Macedonia*; the French-men entred *Gallia*. But *Conſtantine* the Emperor reſtored it to the former glory, made an end of ciuill Warre, and tamed the barbarous and cruell Nations; and had he not committed two great faults, the Romaine Empire might long haue flouriſhed. The firſt was, the tranſlating of the Imperiall Seate, from *Rome* to *Conſtantinople*; which action weakned the Weſt, and ouerthrew the Empire. For it is more cleare then the day, that as Plantes remooued out of their naturall ſoyle, and tranſported into Regions contrary in temperature and ayre, retaine ſmall vigour of their radicall vertue: So humaine actions, but eſpecially Cities and Kingdomes, doe looſe their glory and ſplendour by theſe great alterations. In which regard, the *Romaine* Senate wold neuer conſent, that the people ſhould leaue *Rome* and dwell at *Veij*, a Citty far more pleaſant and more commodious then *Rome*, eſpecially after the ſacking thereof by the French-men.

Digitized by Google

The second fault of *Constantine*, was, the diuision of the Empire to his Children, Anno Dom. 341. By this diuision, of one Empire he made three, and withall, a memorable diminution of his authoritie and forces. For when his Sonnes fell to ciuill dissention, they consumed one another so cruelly, that the Empire resembled a bloudlesse, yea, a liueleſſe body. And though sometime, vnder some one Prince, it stood on foot againe, yet it remained alwaies subiect to diuision, and parted into two Empires, the East and the West, vntill the comming of *Odoucer*, King of the *Herules* and *Turingi*, into *Italy*, with a mightie Hoast: by which inuasion, *Augustulus* suffered such irrecouerable losses, that in extreame despaire he was forced to cast himselfe into the protection of the East Empire. This happened in the yeare of our Lorde 476. And about this time the *Hunnes* passed *Danubius*: *Alaricus* King of the *Gothes* tooke *Rome*: the *Vandals* first spoiled *Andoluzia*, afterwards, *Affricke*: the *Alans* wonne *Portugall*: the *Gothes* conquered the greater part of *Spaine*: the *Saxons Brittany*: the *Burgundians*, *Prouince*. Anno 556. *Iustinian* restored it some-what to a better State, driuing the *Vandals* out of *Affrick*, and the *Goths* out of *Italy*, by his Captaines; but this faire weather lasted not long. For in the yeare 713. the Armes and Heresies of the *Malumitans*, began to vexe the East Empire, and shortly after, the *Sarazens* wasted *Syria*, *Ægipt*, the *Archipelago*, *Affricke*, *Sicill*, and *Spaine*. In the yeare 735. they vanquished *Narbon*, *Auiguion*, *Tolouse*, *Burdeaux*, and the bordering Regions. Thus by little and little began the Westerne Empire to drop, and as it were, to draw towardes his last age. As for the Easterne, it stood so weake and tottering, that withall the force it had, it was scarce able to defend *Constantinople* against the Armes of the *Sarazens*, much lesse to minister aide to the Westerne Prouinces. But in the yeare of our Lord 800. *Charles* the great, King of Fraunce obtained the Title of the Westerne Empire, and in some sort mitigated the fury of these barbarous Nations.

And thus the Westerne Empire stood then deuided: that *Naples* and *Sipont* East-ward, with *Sicill*, should belong to the Greeke Empire; *Bononia* should remaine to the *Lumbards*; the

Digitized by Google

the *Venetians* were Neuters : the Popedome, free; the reſt *Charles* ſhould poſſeſſe. *Blondus* ſaith, that the Empreſſe *Iren*, gaue the firſt councell to this diuiſion, & afterwards was confirmed by *Nicephorus*. For before *Charles* his time, there was one forme of Gouernment; and the Lawes, Magiſtracies, and ordinances which were enacted for the welfare of one Empire, tended to the good & honor of both Empires, as to the members of one body; and if one Emperor died without iſſue, the whole Empire remained to the Suruiuour. But when *Charles* the gteat was choſen Emperor of the Weſt, there was no more regard taken of the Eaſt Empire, neyther the Emperour of the Eaſt, had to do with the Weſt, nor the Weſt with the Eaſt. The Empire of the Weſt, continued in this line aboue an hundred yeares, and failed in *Arnolph*, the laſt of that houſe. In the yeare 1453. *Mahumet* Prince of the *Turkes*, tooke *Conſtantinople*, and vtterly extinguiſhed the ſucceſſion of the Eaſterne Empire.

In the yeare of Chriſt 1002. all claime of inheritance reiected, the Creation of the Emperour was granted to the free election of ſeauen Princes, tearmed Electors. The reaſon why the Empire became electiue, which had ſo long continued hereditary in the Houſe of *Charles*, was, becauſe *Otho* the third, left no iſſue Male. After whom the Weſterne Empire was maruellouſly curtald and diminiſhed: for nothing was left but *Germany*, and a part of *Italy*. The Pope held *Romagnia*; the *Venetians* liued free, poſſeſſing great Dominion ioyned to theyr State: the *Normans* (taking *Naples* & *Sicill* from the *Greekes*) held them in Fee of the Church, firſt vnder *Clement* the Antipope, then vnder *Nicholas* the ſecond and his ſucceſſors, who for their priuate gaine ratified the former grant of *Clement* Antipope.

In *Tuſcane* and *Lumbardy*, partly by the quarrels betweene *Henry* the fourth. *Henry* the fift, *Fredericke* the firſt, and *Fredericke* the ſecond, with the *Romain* Biſhops: partly by reaſon of the valour of the Inhabitants, the Emperor reaped more labour then honour, more loſſe, then profit. And therefore *Rodulphus* terrified with the misfortunes and croſſes of his predeceſſors, had no great mind to trauell into *Italy*, but ſold them their li-

Digitized by Google

berties for a small matter. They of *Luques* payd ten thousand Crownes, the *Florentines*, but six thousand. And so euery State by little and little forsaking the Emperour, no part of *Italy* remained, but the bare Title. The Dukes of *Millaine* (and so euery other State) vsurped what they could catch, without leaue asking, onely they desired their inuestiture of the Empire. But *Frances*, after the conquest thereof, did little regard this inuestiture, saying; *That hee was able to keepe it by the same meanes that he had got it.* The Princes beyonde the Mountaines also withdrew their obedience; so that at this day the Empire is inclosed in *Germany*: and why the Prouinces of *Germany* are not vnder one gouernment, I will now relate.

Some Prouinces are as it were members of the Empire, yet disvnited; for they neither do, nor wil acknowledge that they belong to the Empire; as the Kings of *Denmarke* and *Sweathland*, the Duke of *Prussia* and *Swissers*, the *Netherlands*. Others confesse the Emperour for their Soueraigne Prince; but they come not to the diets of the Empire, nor will beare the tax and tallages of the Empire, as the Dukes of *Sauoy*, *Lorraine*, and the Princes of *Italy*. Other come to the diets and pay all impositions; those are properly the Princes & Cities of *Germany*. But the King of *Bohemia*, by the grant of *Charles* the fourth, is exempted from all contributions. Other places do not onely pay contribution, but likewise a peculiar tribute to the Emperour: those are the Cities tearmed Imperiall.

Some of the Princes of *Germany* haue to do, both in the diets, and at the election of a new Emperour; those are the sixe Electors; three Church-men, and three Lay-men, to whom vpon equality of voyces, the K. of *Bohemiah* is adioyned; Though he come not to the diets, yet hath he his voyce in the election. To speake in a word, those are truely tearmed the Cities and Princes of the Empire, who haue to doe in the diets, and as members of one body, participate of good and euill, aduantage or disaduantage, throughout the Empire. These liuing after the manner of a Common-wealth well vnited, haue the Emperor for their head, and for their common safetie, who ruleth not absolutely, but by the diets, and cannot call them, without the consent of the greatest number of the Electors.

The

Digitized by Google

The Ordinances of these dyets cannot bee frustrated, but by another dyet; but of putting the decrees in execution, the Emperour hath full and sole authoritie. And therefore as touching preheminence and dignitiy, hee is to bee accounted the cheefe of the Christian Princes, as the person vpon whom the Maiesty of the Romaine Empire resteth, and who ought to defend the Church of God, and the Catholique Faith, and to procure the peace and welfare of the whole Christian common-wealth.

And seeing it is manifest that the glory of the westerne Empire at this day, consisteth onely in *Germany*, it is good reason to say somewhat of this most ample and flourishing Prouince. It lieth betweene *Odera* and *Mosa*; between *Vistula* and *Aa*; and betweene the *Germaine* Sea; the *Balticke* Ocean, and the *Alpes*. The forme thereof is foure square, equall in length and breadth, stretching 650. Miles euery way. That it aboundeth with Corne, Cattle, and Fish, let experience shew. For *Charles* the fifth, had vnder his Ensignes at *Vienna*, ninety thousand footmen, and 35. thousand Horse. *Maximilian* the second at *Iauerin*, almost 100. thousand Foot-men, and thirty foure thousand Horse, and yet no man complained of deerenesse or scarsity. In the war betweene *Charles* the fifth and the Protestants, for certain months, 150. thousand men sustained themselues aboundantly in the field.

It is rich in Mines of Golde, Siluer, and all sorts of Mettall, and therein surpasseth the residue of the Prouinces of Europe. Nature hath also bestowed vpon the Vp-land Countries many Springs and Pits of Salt Water, of which hard Salt is boyled. Neyther is it lesse stored with Merchandize; for the Inhabitants more then any other Nation, do excell in curious workmanshippe, and mechanicall inuentions: and it it so watered with Nauigable Riuers, that all sortes of Merchandize and Wares are with ease conuayed from one place to another. The greatest of them is *Danow*, next the *Rhene*, which runneth cleane through the Countrey, from the South to the North, as the *Danow* from East to West. *Albis* riseth in *Bohemiah*, passeth by *Misnia*, *Saxony*, *Marchia*, and the ancient *Marquisat*. *Odera* springeth in *Morauia*, watereth *Silesia*, the

Digitized by Google

two *Marquiſates*, and *Pomeran*. Then followeth *Welara*, *Neccarus*, *Moſa*, *Moſelia*, *Iſara*, *Cenus*, *Varia*, the *Maſe*. This diuideth *Germany* into two partes, the higher and the lower: The high, ſtretcheth from the *Maſe* to the *Alpes*: the low from the *Maſe* to the Ocean. It is deuided into many Prouinces, the cheefe whereof (I meane the true members of the Empire) are *Alſatia*, *Swenia*, *Bauaria*, *Auſtria*, *Bohemia*, *Morauia*, *Sileſia*, *Luſatia*, the two *Marquiſates*, *Saxony*, *Miſnia*, *Thuringia*, *Franconia*, *Haſſia*, *Weſtphalia*, *Cleueland*, *Magunce*, *Pomeran*. In theſe Prouinces (beſides *Belgia* and *Heluetia*) are eſteemed to bee tenne Millions of Men, and eighty great Cities; Villages innnmerable, and thoſe plentifully ſtored with all ſortes of Mechanicall Occupations. Thoſe which are ſeated neere Riuers, for the moſt part are builded of Stone; the Vp-land, part of Stone, and part of Timber. The Houſes thereof are very faire, the Streets ſtraight, large, and paued with Stone; yea, more neat and handſome then thoſe of *Italy*.

Strabo writeth, that the *Romaines* excelled the *Gracians*, in cleanlineſſe of their Citties, by reaſon of their Channels to conuay away the ſoyle; but at this day, the Dutch-men doe farre exceede the *Romaines* heerein. The greateſt number of theſe Citties are free, and haue had their liberty; ſome for ſeruice done to the Empire, ſome for Money, & ſome by force (as *Brunſwike*) which had with-drawne her ſelfe from the commaund of their Dukes: *Saxony* and *Denmarke* vſe their owne Lawes.

In criminall cauſes they inflict moſt ſharp torments, and vnuſuall kindes of death; a ſigne of the cruelty of their Natures. They were the inuentors of Printing, of Gunnes, and Clocks, things of notable vſe for mankind.

The nature of this Climate is temperate enough, yet ſomewhat of the coldeſt, tollerable and healthy. No place thereof, vnleſſe by nature it bee vtterly barren, lieth vnmanured, inſomuch, that few remainders of that huge wood of *Hercinia*, are to be ſeene at this day, vnleſſe in place where humaine neceſſity requireth their growing, or Nature hath made the Earth fit for no other imployment; as are the *Blacke*-wood, the *Ottonique* Wood, and the Woodes of *Bohemia*. And yet do they neither

Digitized by Google

neyther carrie that horrid face of thickneſſe, as in olde times, neyther are they ſo vntrauelled, or vnhabitable, but exceeding full of Habitation, Hamlets, Villages, and Monaſteries.

The people thereof is diuided into foure ſortes; *Husbandmen*, (they beare no office) *Cittizens*, *Noble-men*, and *Prelats*. The laſt three ſorts make the aſſemblies, and States of the Empire. Of Prelats, the Archbiſhoppes Electors haue the cheefeſt place. The Archbiſhop of *Ments* is Chancellor for the Empire, the Biſhop of *Coloine* is Chancellor of *Italy*, and the Biſhop of *Treuers* is Chancellor of France. The Archbiſhop of *Saltzburg* is of greateſt iuriſdiction and reuenue. The Biſhop of *Maidburg* writeth himſelfe primate of *Germany*. *Breme* and *Hamburg* had great Iuriſdictions: next follow aboue forty other Biſhops, the great Maiſter of the *Dutch* order, & the *Prior* of the knights of *Ieruſalem*: then ſeuen *Abbots*, and they likewiſe are States of the Empire.

Of ſecular Princes, the King of *Bohemia* is principall, who is chiefe Taſter: the Duke of *Saxony*, Marſhall: the Marqueſſe of *Brandburg*, high Chamberlaine: the Earl *Palatine*, Sewer. Beſides theſe places, there are thirty other Dukes, amongſt whom, the Arch-Duke of *Auſtria* holdeth the higheſt place: and of theſe Dukes the King of *Denmarke* by his tenure of the Dukedome of *Holſatia*, is reckoned to be one. The Marquiſes, Lantgraues, Earles, and Barons are innumerable.

The free Citties (which in times paſt haue been ninetie ſixe, and are now but ſixtie, gouerning themſelues by their peculiat Lawes) are bound no further then to pay, two fiue partes of whatſoeuer contribution is graunted in the aſſemblies. The Townes Imperiall (becauſe as wee ſaide before) they pay tribute to the Emperour, aunſwere fifteene thouſand Florens. But the Citties haue ſufficient Reuenue of their owne, for the moſt part, amounting aboue the value of the impoſed contributions.

It is thought that the Empire receiueth euery way aboue ſeauen Millions, which is a great matter: yet beſides this ordinary, the people, not ouer-preſſed as in *Italy*, do pay other great ſubſidies to their Princes in times of danger. The Empire was bound (at leaſtwiſe accuſtomed) to furniſh the Emperor, when

he

Digitized by Google

he went to *Rome* to be Crowned, with twenty thousand foot-men, and foure thousand Horse, and to maintaine them for eyght monthes, and therefore it was called *Romanum subsidium*. The Reuenues of the Citties and Lay-Princes, haue bin greatly augmented since the suppressing of Popery, and bringing in of new impositions, which taking their beginning from *Italy*, (for euill examples spread farre) quickly passed ouer to *France* and *Germany*. In times of necessitie great taxes are laid vpon the whole Empire, and leuied extraordinarily; And that they may be gathered with the greater ease, *Germany* is parted into ten diuisions (for circuits) which haue their particuler assemblies for the execution of the Edictes made in the generall dyets of the Empire.

Forces. As concerning the multitude of people, it is thought, that the Empire is able to affoord two hundred thousand Horse and Foot, which the war (before spoken of) may proue to be true: As likewise the forepassed warres of *France* and *Belgia*, which were euer continued in those two Prouinces, for the most part with *Germaine* Souldiers. At one time, *Wolfang* Duke of *Bipont* led into France, an Army of twelue thousand Foote-men, and eight thousand Horse-men in behalfe of the Protestants; and at the same time, the Count *Mansfielde* was leader of fiue thousand Horse-men of the same Nation, in behalfe of the Catholiques. *William* of *Nassaw* had in his Army eight thousand Germaine Horse-men, and ten thousand Footemen: the Duke of *Alua* had at the same instant 3000. What should I speake of the numbers that entred *Flaunders* with Duke *Casimere*? Or those that entred *France* vnder the same Leader, in the yeare of our Lord 1578. Or to what ende should I make mention of that Armie, whereof part serued *Henrie* the fourth, part the league? But to prooue that this Nation must bee verie populous, seeing that warres are continually open in some one or other, part of Christendome, and no action vndertaken therein, wherein great numbers of *Germaines* are not waged, and entertained. To speake nothing of the *Netherlands*, who in times past, haue resisted the whole power of France, with an Army of fourescore thousand men; or of the *Swissers*, who in their owne defence, are thought able to raise an Army of one hundred

Digitized by Google

hundred and twentie thouſand Souldiers; I will onely put you in mind of that expedition, which they made out of their owne Territories into *Lumbardy*, in defence of that State, againſt *Francis* the French King, with an Army of fiftie thouſand footmen.

The beſt footmen of *Germany* are thoſe of *Tiroll*, *Swetia*, & *Weſtphalia*: the beſt Horſe-men thoſe of *Brunſwick*, *Cleueland*, and *Franconia*.

Of Weapons, they handle the Sword and the Pike, better then the Harquebuze. In the field they are very ſtrong, as well to charge as to beare the Shocke: for Order is of great effect, which is as it were naturall vnto them, with a ſtately pace and firme ſtanding. They are not accounted off for the defence of fortreſſes; and for their corpulent bodies, I hold them not fit for the aſſault of a breach. And therfore they are to be accounted rather reſolute and conſtant, then fierce and couragious; for they will neuer come to the ſeruice, wherein courage and magnanimity is to be ſhewed. After the victory, they doe kill all whom they meet, without difference of age, ſex, or calling: If the warre be drawne out at length, or if they be beſiedged, they faint with cowardize. In Campe, they can indure no delaies, neither know they how to temporize. If their firſt attemptes fall not out to their mindes, they are at their wits end and looſe courage; if they once begin to run, they will neuer turne againe. He that retaines them muſt bee at extraordinary charges and great trouble, by reaſon of their wiues who conſume ſo much prouiſion, that it is a very hard thing to prouide it, almoſt vnpoſſible to preſerue; and without this prouiſion they ſtand in no ſtead. Their Horſes are rather ſtrong then couragious: and becauſe often, which goe to the warre, eight are preſt from the plough, they are of ſmall ſeruice, and when they ſee their bloud, their heart quaileth. The Spaniſh Genets in this caſe waxe more fierce.

In Sea-forces they are not much inferior to their Land-forces, although they vſe no Sea-fights: the Citties of *Hamburg*, *Lubecke*, *Roſtoch*, & ſome other places, are able to make a hundred ſhips; ſome ſay one hundred and fifty, equal to the forces of the Kings of *Denmarke* and *Sweathland*. Sea-forces.

Digitized by Google

When theſe ſtrong and inuincible forces are vnited, they feare no Enemy; and in imminent perrill they are ſure of the ayde of the Princes of *Italy*, *Sauoy*, and *Lorraine*; for theſe Princes neuer forſooke the Empire in neceſſitie. To the *Zegethan* warre, *Emanuell* Duke of *Sauoy*, ſent ſixe hundred *Argolitrees*. *Coſmo*, Duke of *Florence* three thouſand Foote-men, paide by that State. *Alphonſus* the ſecond, Duke of *Ferrara*, was there in perſon with 1500. Horſe-men; better Horſemen there were not in the whole Campe. *William* Duke of *Mantua*, was there alſo with a gallant troope of Footemen; and *Henrie* of *Lorraine* Duke of *Guiſe* had there three hundered Gentlemen. The Common-weales of *Genes* and *Lucca* aſſiſted them with Money. With the ayde of theſe Princes, and with thoſe whom *Pius* the fift ſent to his ſucceſſours, *Maximillian* the ſecond, had in the fielde one hundred thouſand footmen, & fiue and thirty thouſand horſe. Anno 1566. the States of the Empire granted him an aſſiſtance of forty thouſand footmen, and eight thouſand Horſemen for eight months, and twenty thouſand footmen, and foure thouſand Horſemen for three yeares next following.

Auſtrich. And now becauſe the Weſterne Empire hath continued in the moſt Noble Family of the Houſe of *Auſtrich*, and ſeauen Emperours haue ſucceſſiuely ſucceeded one another of that liue; for the delight of the Reader, we will ſpeake ſomewhat thereof.

This houſe grew famous almoſt about the ſame time that the *Ottoman* Prince began his Empire, and (as it may ſeeme) was raiſed vp of God, to ſtand as a wall or Bulwarke againſt theſe Turkes and Infidels.

Phillip the firſt, King of *Spaine*, Arch-Duke of *Auſtrich*, &c. had two Sons, *Charles* the fift, afterward Emperor, and *Ferdinand* the firſt, King of *Romains*. To *Charles* as to the eldeſt, fell *Belgia* and *Spaine*, with their dependances; *Ferdinand* ſucceeded him in his Lordſhippes of *Germany*, as *Auſtrich*, *Boheme*, *Tiroll*, and other Prouinces, whereunto by the marriage of his Wife *Anne*, *Hungary* was adioyned. This *Ferdinand* left three ſons behind him, who although they diuided their inheritance into three partes, yet their ſucceſſours euen to this day, did, and

Digitized by Google

and do gouern them as one intire gouernment; their counsels are one; their minds one, their dessignements one, most liuely representing the ancient *Gerion*, where for the common safety, if any part be afflicted, euery member runneth to the succour of the other, as if it were to their peculiar tranquility. Their dominion stretcheth so large, and of such force, that if (by reason of the great tract of Lande lying betweene the *Carpathy* Mountaines and *Segonia*) they did not border vpon the great Turke (who alwaies constraineth them to stand vppon theyr guard; and to be at excessiue charges) no Potentate throughout the Christian World, could goe beyonde them for numbers of people, for Wealth and Treasure, or for magnificent Cities. Any Man may perceiue this to be true, that considereth the distance from *Tergiste* to the Borders of *Lusatia*; from *Tissa* to *Nobus*; from *Canisia*, to *Constantia* vpon the Lake *Podame*.

In this progresse are contained *Lusatia*, *Silesia*, *Bohemia*, *Morauia*, *Austria*, and a great part of *Hungary*, Territories large and ample, abounding with people, Corne, and riches. Then follow *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, the Countries of *Carinthia*, *Tiroll*, *Cilia*, the Princedomes of *Sweuia*, *Assatia*, *Brisgouia*, and *Constantia*.

Amongst these Prouinces, *Bohemia* is the largest, stretching one hundred and forty Miles in length, and reported to containe 780. Castles and walled Townes, and thirtie two thousand Villages. *Morauia*, *Silesia*, *Lusatia*, are as large as *Bohemia*, but in strength and numbers of people, farre inferiour. These three Prouinces are foure hundred Miles long, and 120 broad: they abound with excellent good Horsemen and footmen. The Inhabitants of *Lusatia* (where twenty thousand men fit for the war may be gathered) are accounted as good Footmen, as any other: *Sciria* is rich in Mines of Siluer and Iron, threescore Miles broad, and 110. long: *Carinthia* a hilly and woody Country, is seauenty fiue miles long, & fifty fiue broad: *Carniola*, with the bordering Countries vp to *Tergiste*, is 150. Miles long, and forty fiue broad. They are plentifull of Corne, Wine, Flesh, and Wood.

The Countrey of *Tirol* is ful of Mines of Siluer and Salt-pits,

Digitized by Google

and is eighteene *Germaine* Miles long and broad. The Territories of *Sweuia*, *Alsatia*, and *Rhetia*, doe pay little lesse then two Myriades and an halfe of ordinary reuenue, and so much extraordinary: besides the eighteene Cantons of *Rhetia*, are vnder the same iurisdiction. They are so well peopled, that vpon occasion, they are able to leuy an hundred thousand Footmen, and thirtie thousand Horse. I knowe no other Prouince in Europe able to say the like. And therefore the Emperour is not so weake a Prince, as those, are ignorant of the State of Kingdomes doe suppose him, reporting his territories to bee small, vnprouided of necessaries, poore in Money, and barren of people. But this is certaine, that as hee is Lord of a large dominion, fertile, rich, and infinite of people; so let euery man think, that by the neighbourhood of the Turke, bordering vpon him from the *Carpathy* Mountaines to the *Adriatique* Sea, the forces of a mightier Prince may seeme small and ouerlaid. For what Prince is there bordering vppon so puissant an enemy, but either by building of fortresses, or by entertaining of Garrisons, is not almost beggered; I will not say in time of war, but euen during the secureſt peace; especially considering that the forces of the Turke are alwaies ready, strong, & cheerefull; yea, better furnished in the time of peace, then any other Nation in the hotteſt fury of war? Wherefore it stands him vpon, who is a borderer vpon so powerfull an Eneny, eyther for feare or iealousie, or to be euer watchfull, and to spare no charges, as doth the Emperor; retaining in wages continually twenty thousand Souldiers, keeping Watch and Ward vpon the borders of *Hungary*. These aske great expences, and yet lesse then these, are not to bee defraied for the strengthning of other places, besides other expences not meet here to be spoken of.

Saxony. The Dominion of the Dukes of *Saxony*, containeth the Marquisat of *Misen*, the Lant-graue-dome of *Turinge*, *Voitland*, part of neather *Saxony* (almost within two Dutch Miles of *Maigdburg*) part of the Landes of the Earles of *Mansfielt*, pawned to *Augustus* for some summes of Money, and a parcell of *Frankhenland*. The whole Countrey is seated almost in the midst of *Germany*, on all sides very farre from the Sea, except

Digitized by Google

cept *Voitland*, very plaine and Champion, ſprinkled heere and there with ſome faire woods and Hils, and very full of many pretty Riuers, but few of them nauigable. The chiefeſt of thē al is the *Elue*, to which al the reſt pay the tribute of their waters. All of it together is imagined to bee in bigneſſe about a third part of England, or ſomewhat more.

The climate in temperature is not much differing from ours of England. It confineth on the South-eaſt with the kingdome of *Bohem*, and is parted with many high hils and great woods: on the South with the Biſhoppe of *Bambergs* Country, and on the South-weſt with the Lantgraue of *Heſſe*: on the North & North-weſt with the Counts of *Mansfielt*, the Princes of *Anhault*, and the Citty of *Maidburgh* (of which, this Duke writeth himſelfe *Bargraue*, and the Marqueſſe of *Brandeburghs* eldeſt ſon, Arch-Biſhop) yet is it not vnder either Iuriſdiction, but freely gouerned within it ſelfe: On the North-eaſt lieth the Marqueſdome of *Brandeburgh* and the *Lanſnites*, who partly belong to the Marqueſſe, and partly to the Emperor. Situation.

It is in peace at this time (as all *Germany* beſide) with all the Neighbour-Princes. Betweene the *Bohemians* and them, there is a great league, but betwixt the Emperour and their Dukes, great iealouſies vnderhand. The Duke of *Saxony*, the Marquiſes of *Brandeburg*, and the Lant-graues of *Heſſe*, haue many yeares (they and their anceſtry) beene linked together, both *Lutherans*, howbeit the Lantgraue is thought to ſauor of Calueniſme. The Biſhop of *Bamberge*, both himſelfe & his Countrey are all Catholikes, but of no power to hurt, though they were Enemies. The Countes of *Maunsfielt*, haue a grudge to the houſe of *Saxony*, becauſe moſt of their land being pawned to *Auguſtus*, is, as they pretend, wrongfully detained, the debt being long ſince ſatisfied: but they are ſo many, and ſo poore, as they may well haue the will, but not the power, to annoy *Saxony*; in Religion, Catholiques. Borderers.

The Princes of *Anhault* (as alſo the Counts of *Mansfield*) are homagers to this Duke, but of ſmall power or riches. In Religion *Calueniſts*.

For home defence and ſtrength, this Dukedom is ſo ſtrong by nature, on *Boheme* ſide, and vpon the frontiers, and within Forces.

Digitized by Google

Land ſo well fortified by Art, with reaſonable ſtrong Cities, Townes, and Caſtles; ſo well peopled, & all places of ſtrength ſo well looked vnto, and kept in ſo good order, that it ſeemeth prouided to withſtand the Enemie, not onelie of any one, but of all the Neighbour-Prouinces. The greateſt and cheefeſt Cittie within this Dukedome, is *Erdford* ſeated in *Turing*, not ſubiect to the Duke, but a free and Hanſtowne; the next vnto it is *Leipſique*, the Metropolis of *Miſen*; a Towne very well ſeated, both for profite and pleaſure, yet of no great ſtrength, though it helde out *Iohn Fredericke*, a ſiedge of two or three monthes with ſmall diſaduantage: of building very faire and ſtately, with faire large ſtreetes, and moſt of the houſes of ſeauen, eight, or nine Stories high, but all of Brick, and no ſtone. There are beſides, diuers other pretty and reaſonable ſtrong Townes, but aboue all *Dreſda* (ſeated likewiſe in *Miſen* vpon the *Elue*) beſides that, it hath the honour of the Dukes Court there, almoſt continually reſident; it is for delicacy of Seate, ſtrong and skilfull fortification, and faireneſſe of building, being moſt of Stone, ſo farre ſurpaſſing the reſidue, that it is in al mens iudgements equaled, if not preferred, before any other Towne, eyther of *Germany* or Chriſtendome, for the bigneſſe, beeing not aboue a mile and a halfe Engliſh at the moſt in circuit. In this Towne is that famous Stable able to receiue an hundred twentie eight Horſes, and an Armory ſo well furniſhed with excellent Artillery, and ſo well prouided of all furniture, both for Horſe and Foote (but for Horſe extraordinarily) and ſo delicately kept, and in ſo good order, both for ſhew and vſe, as it is deſeruedly preferred for prouiſion of Land ſeruice, before any other Arſonall in Chriſtendome whatſoeuer. There were in it, in 1595. ſome eighty Cannons, and demy-culuerins, and about 170. other Culuerins, and Sacrez, beſides great prouiſion for fire-workes, with all thinges neceſſary, eyther for ſiedge or defence. It is generally reported, that therein is Armour ſufficient for 100000. men: but indeede it is thought, that there is enough to arme 70000. of which may be ſome ten or 12000. furnitures for horſemen. Beſides this armory, al the Citties & Townes haue armories very well kept and prouided: neither are the Noblemen, Gentlemen, and Countrey-people, vnfurniſhed.

There

Digitized by Google

There are in *Saxony* three Vniuerſities, *Wittenberg*, *Liepſique*, and *Iene*. The firſt is ſuppoſed to contain about 1000. or 1200 Schollers: The other two, ſome ſixe or 700. a-peece; but in Colledges, Lectures, Order, proceeding, and all thinges elſe, infinitely inferiour, either to *Cambridge* or *Oxford*: There are all profeſſions in each of them, but *Wittenberg* is eſteemed the cheefe Seminary of Diuines; *Iene* of *Ciuilians*, and *Liepſiege* of Philoſophy. Vniuerſities.

All the Dukedome, but eſpecially *Miſen*, is one of the pleaſanteſt and fruitfulleſt parts of all *Germany*, and in truth, much exceeding any that I ſaw, but onely the Dukedome of *Wittenberg*. It hath great ſtore of very good Corne of all ſorts, reaſonable good, and conuenient ſtore of moſt ſort of Cattle: of Horſes they haue plenty, and thoſe ſtrong and tall of ſtature, but fitter to draw, then to ſerue, yet very well fitting their maner of ſeruice, being heauily armed (viz:) with a Petronell, a caſe of Piſtols, a Courtleaxe, and diuers times with a Battle ax; ouer & aboue all which, his Horſe muſt be able to carry, two or four Bottles of Wine or Beere, in his great heauy Saddle, leaſt in any caſe his Maiſter ſhoulde faint for want of liquor in his iourney. But their beſt races they haue out of the neather *Saxony*, where there be exceeding ſtore. The Bullocks are but ſmal and nothing good. Of ſheepe they hane in ſome places indifferent ſtore, eſpecially within theſe few years; of body little and but reaſonable good, yet ſo, as bearing indifferent good wool; either the ſheepe themſelues or their fleeces, are bought vp by the Netherlands, and imploied in the making of cloth to ſome preiudice of ours in England.

They haue great ſtore of Mines of moſt ſorts, as Siluer, Copper, Tin, Lead, Iron, and (as they ſay) ſome Gold. The cheefe places of the Siluer Mines, are *Tiberg*, *Aniberg*, *Mariaberg*, & other Townes at the foot of the *Bohemian* Mountains. In *Voitland* there are alſo ſome Hils verie rich in Mineralles, eſpecially one called which being much celebrated for hauing ſome Riuers running out of it, Eaſt, Weſt, North, and South, is exceedingly ſpoken of for Siluer and Golde Mines, inſomuch as in a Story written of the Mines of *Saxony*, called *Berg-Chronicon*, it is affirmed, that this Hill yeelded to the Dukes of *Saxo-* Riches.

ny

Digitized by Google

ny in eightie yeares, twentie two Millions of *Florins*, onely for the tenths. Beſides theſe Mines, the Duke hath the Mine of *Mansfielt*, pawned to diuers Merchants of *Norinberge* and *Auguſta*, and are thought to be worth yearely 30000. li. ſterling. It is held that all his Mines of *Saxony* (beſides thoſe of *Mansfielt*) yeeld the Duke one yeare with another, 700000. Florens, which is about 130000. thouſand pound ſterling.

Other commodities of worth they haue none, but Flax, and a kind of thicke courſe cloth, which by reaſon of exceeding falſifying and deereneſſe of ours, groweth euery day into more & more requeſt with them.

The whole dukedome, but eſpecially *Miſen*, is very populous, full of Citties, walled Townes, and Countrey villages, and all of them very well peopled. It is certainely affirmed, that the Duke at 20. daies warning, is able to make an Armie of 80000. men, very well armed and furniſhed.

The people generally are reaſonable faire of complexion and flaxen haired, but not wel-fauoured, either men or women. In behauiour as ciuill as any part of *Germany* whatſoeuer, eſpecially the Women, who taking themſelues (as they are indeed) for the faireſt and beſt ſpoken of all *Dutchland*, are in their apparrell and entertainment indifferently gracefull. For their diſpoſition (as indeede almoſt all the reſt of the *Germans*) is very honeſt, true, and not ordinarily giuen to any notorious vice, but drinking, nor willingly offering any iniury, either to their owne Country-men, or to Strangers, but when they are drunk; and then very quarrelſome, and (as it is ſaid) more valiant, then when they are ſober. Wiſe in mediocrtie, but not of any great ſharpneſſe or ſubtilty of wit: Of body ſtrong, and big boned, eſpecially the Countrey-people, but of a kind of lumpiſh, heauy, and vnactiue ſtrength, fittter for husbandry, and other toilſome labour, then fighting.

In their cheefe Citties ſome fewe giue themſelues at theyr great and principall feaſts to a little vſe of their Peece, in ſhooting at a marke; but otherwiſe, by reaſon of their long peace, altogether vntrained to the Warres, or any warlike exerciſes: But the vſe of the pot ſerueth for all other paſtimes, and delights, in which notwithſtanding they haue very ſmall ſtore

of

Digitized by Google

of Wine, yet they are nothing inferiour to any other part of *Dutchland*.

They haue great ſtore of Artizans, and handy-crafts men of all ſorts, but in their ſeuerall trades, nothing ſo neat and artificiall as the Netherlands and Engliſh, or thoſe of *Norimberg* & *Augusta*. Of Merchants they haue great ſtore, eſpecially in *Liepſiege*, and other chiefe Citties, and thoſe for the moſt part very rich, whereof this reaſon is yeelded; that though they haue no commodities, ſaue thoſe before mentioned, nor are neare the Sea, or any great Riuers, by which they may haue cheap and commodious importation or exportation of wares, yet *Germany* is ſo ſeated in the midſt and heart of all Chriſtendome; and *Saxony* ſo in the bowels of it, as by continuall trafficking with *England*, *Fraunce*, the *Low-Countries*, *Italy*, *Poland*, and all the *Eaſterne Countries*, and by daily conueying all the commodities of each Countrey ouer-lande to others that want them, they grow very wealthy.

For ſuch as giue themſelues to the wars, and haue no other profeſſion of liuing, though generally all the *Germans* are mercenary Souldiers (and ſo their ſeruice accordingly) yet I heard of as few in this Prouince, as in any part of *Germany*; whether it were that the wars of *Hungary* imploied them all, or that other Princes growing weary of their ſeruice, their occupation began to decay.

Touching the Nobility, I can ſay nothing in particular of their numbers, names, titles, diſpoſitions, &c, onely in general, there be Earles and Barons. Some are meerely ſubiect to the Duke, others are Borderers, which are only but homagers; as the Princes of *Anhalt*, the Counts of *Mansfielt*, the Counts of *Swarzenberge*, &c. Of Gentiles there are good ſtore, to the number as it is ſuppoſed of three or 4000. at the leaſt, by which meanes the Duke is alwaies in his Warres well furniſhed with Horſe-men, euery one, one with another, bringing three or foure good Horſes with him to the fielde.

The Nobility and Gentility generally through all *Germany*, and particularly in this Dukedome, haue great royalties and reuenues. The lands, goods, and chiefe houſes, are vſually equally diuided amongſt all the Children, reſeruing but little

Digitized by Google

prerogatiue to the eldeſt Brother. The Honours likewiſe diſcend equally to the whole Familie, all the Sonnes of Dukes beeing Dukes; and all the Daughters: Dutcheſſes, all the Sonnes of Counts, Counts; and the Daughters, Counteſſes, &c.

They are exceedingly had (both Noblemen and Gentlemen) in extraordinary reuerence and eſtimation amongſt the vulgar people, which both in their Gate and Seates in publique places, they very religiouſly maintaine. In time of peace they are but little vſed in counſell or matters of State, being almoſt all vtterly vnquallified, eyther with wiſedome, learning, or experience; onely contenting themſelues with that ſhaddow of honor which their anceſtors haue left them. And if they haue bin famous (as by the raiſing of their Houſes to that greatneſſe it ſhould ſeeme they haue bin) they imitate them in nothing, but in onely continuing their ſo long, and ſo holily obſerued order of carowſing.

In time of war (which hath beene for many yeares till the late warres of *Hungarie*, very ſmall, or rather none) becauſe of their greatneſſe, both in Reuenues and number of Tenants, their ſeruice hath beene vſually imploied: but now by reaſon of their long diſvſe of Martiall matters (which therefore ſeemed to make ſome amends, or at leaſt ſome excuſe for theyr other defectes) they are become, if I geſſe not amiſſe, not ſo fit for their greatneſſe, as vnfit for their want of knowledge, euery way, eyther in experience or contemplation. And truly I cannot ſo much as hear almoſt of any of them, eyther Noble or Gentlemen, that giue themſelues to any Noble ſtudies, exerciſes, or delights, except now and then to the hunting of the wilde Boare; by which, and by accuſtoming their heads to the wearing of their great heauy thrummed Cappes, in ſtead of a head-peece, they take themſelues to bee greatly inabled for ſeruice.

For the valour and warlike diſpoſition of the people of this Dukedome, I canuot commend them aboue the reſt of theyr Country-men; neither ſhall I, as I thinke, neede to ſtand much vpon that point, ſithence their actions ſhall plead their ſufficiency in generall. The great matters which they haue vndertaken,

Digitized by Google

ken, and the little that they haue performed will produce ſufficient teſtimony. What they did one againſt another in the time of *Charles* the fift, is not much materiall to proue their courage; ſince without queſtion, Bulruſhes againſt Bulruſhes, are very good Weapons. But in the ſame time, and vnder the ſame Duke and Captaine, they performed very little againſt the *Spaniards*, though with farre ouer-ballanced numbers, as in diuers places of *Sleyden*, manifeſtly appeareth: Touching their actions in the Low-Countries, in the Prince of *Orange* his time, aud in France during the ciuill warres, and ſithence for the King, (if I miſtake it not) it hath alwaies beene praiſe enough for them, if they haue helped to keepe their Enemies frō doing any great matters, though they haue performed nothing thēſelues. Of latter time they haue rather increaſed then diminiſhed this opinion in the wars ten yeares ſince in *Hungary*, beſides many other times of notable diſorders amongſt them by falſe Alarmes. They fled moſt ſhamefully out of the Iland of *Komora*, beeing charged by a few *Tartars*, who with infinite hazzard and inconuenience ſwam ouer a part of the *Danuby* to come at them. The Summer after, Count *Charles* of *Manuſfielt*, their Generall, had them in ſuch ieloufie, as when the Turkes onely with ſome twelue or foureteene thouſand men, came to victuall *Gran*, and paſt almoſt cloſe by their Tents, and they being at leaſt fiftie thouſand ſtrong, hee durſt not ſet vpon them till they retired, hauing performed the proiect of their iourny, leaſt the *Germans* (who were by far the greater part of his Army) beeing luſtily charged, might giue backe, and ſo indanger the whole Campe. To omit many other particularities, about this point, too long to dwell vpon in this diſcourſe, they are no more to bee commended for their diſcipline, then for their valour. For though they bee commonly (as I haue heard) very well armed, and keep indifferent good order in their march, yet are they for the moſt part no more watchfull and prouident in their Campe, then if they were ſafely intrenched in an Ale houſe. Quarrel-ſome exceedingly, and in a manner giuen to drinking continually, and almoſt euery common Souldier carrying with him his Shee-baggage, beſides his bagge and other furniture. For theyr vnrea-

Digitized by Google

vnreasonable spoyling and free-booting, the French Stories make sufficient relation; and it hath alwaies beene hard to discerne, whether those Nations that haue cald them to their succour, haue receiued more detriment by them, or by their professed Enemies. For instance of their spoyling humor, the Marquesse of *Turloch*, taking in the Marquesdome of *Baden*, and being constrained to keep some foure or fiue thousand men in sundry places in garrison, they all offred (though he gaue them very extraordinary pay) to serue without any Wages, so they might haue free liberty of pillage. Therefore let it not seeme strange, that I produce these generall examples of this Nation, for though in diuers Prouinces they are much differing in complection, in stature, and many other circumstances, yet for war, especially for their vices in warre, they are in a manner all of the same ayre.

They haue greatly affected the English Nation, but of late times, they are not a little distated, vpon pretence of iniuries offered them about prizes, Sea-matters, and suppressing theyr priuiledges of the *Stillyard*; wherein though they themselues (as being Inland people, and trading little by Sea) are nothing interessed; yet their neighbours of *Hamborough*, *Lubech*, and diuers other Hanse-townes, making all these matters far greater and worse then indeed they are, haue spread euen into their minds the contagion of their owne grudge.

The Councell of *Saxony*, are at this time few. Amongst them, there are some that are of the Nobility, Councellors rather in name, then effect. For in that they liue in their Countries, they are sildome present at any consultations, and meddle little in the ordinary gouernment of the State. The rest, after the manner of *Germany*, are most Ciuillians. The whole gouernment of the affaires (as also the Court) is very priuate. Other particulars I cannot specifie, neither in truth if a man consider their outward portlinesse, though otherwise I doubt not but wise enough, do they merit the setting downe of any. For beeing (as all *Germans* are) plaine and homely in their behauiour and entertainment, they are both in their retinue, apparell, and all things else very sutable; so that not only in this court, but in the Courts of diuers great Princes of *Germany*, they go

vsually

Digitized by Google

vſually apparelled in black Leather, or Linnen died black, the chiefeſt hauing onely an addition, for ornament ſake, of the Princes picture in Gold, or a Chaine of one or two boughts, whereby they ſeeme ſuch lethern and linnen Gentlemen, as, if they were in England, all men would take them for honeſt factors vnto Merchants, or elſe ſome vnder Clearke of an Office, rather then ſuch great and chiefe Councellors to ſo great Princes & eſtates. But as it ſhould be great folly for a man to iudge the pretiouſneſſe of a Iewell by the caſe wherein it is kept, and much greater to eſteeme it by the couer of the caſe; euen ſo, by the ſame reaſon, it were an equall indiſcretion, to eſtimate a mans worth, either by their body or apparrell, the one beeing but an earthen caſe of the heauenly mind; the other, but the outward couer of that worthleſſe boxe. So on the other ſide, it is an vndeniable certainty, that not onely the common people and ſtrangers, but euen wiſe men are moued & ſtirred vp with outward ſhewes, and their minds according to thoſe exterior matters, prepared to receiue a deep impreſſion either of like or diſlike, fauour or disfauour, of reuerence, or careleſſe retchleſneſſe, and debaſed diſpoſitions.

The reuenues of this Dukedome are, as moſt men affirme, very great, and without compariſon the greateſt of any *Germaine* Prince whatſoeuer. The means whereby it ariſeth to that greatneſſe, are diuers; firſt, the great quantitie of Siluer Mines, and ſuch like, whoſe profit notwithſtanding is very vncertaine, according to the goodneſſe or badneſſe of the veines: the great impoſitions vpon all ſorts of Merchandize, and the aſſize vpon Beere, which only in the Citty of *Liepſiege*, being a little town of two Pariſhes, amounteth yearely to aboue 20000. pound ſterling. The tenths of all ſorts of increaſe, as Corn, Wine, &c. The Salt-houſes at *Hall*, and ſome other places, which belong all to the Duke; beſides the Landes of the Dukedome beeing very great, and the Taxes and ſubſidies aſſeſſed at their Parliaments or diets, with diuers other caſualties, which falnot within my knowledge. But aboue all, the greateſt is an impoſition which hath long time been laid vpon the people towardes the maintenance of the warres againſt the Turke; which notwithſtanding, they haue bin ſuſpended for a long ſpace latelie, yet Reuenues.

Digitized by Google

yet vnder colour of being ſufficiently prouided and furniſhed againſt future neceſſities, they haue beene continued, and the treaſure conuerted to the Princes priuate vſe, ariſing in all this time to that quantitie, that if it had beene reſerued to the pretended vſe, the wars might be continually very royally maintained (I ſpeake as much as is required on the behalfe of that Dukedome) and the people freed theſe many yeares from the impoſition; which notwithſtanding is not onely ſtill continued, but ſince the laſt warres increaſed. What the generall ſum of all the reuenues ariſe vnto, I haue nothing certain, neither indeede is it certaine in it ſelfe, a great part thereof as aforeſaid, conſiſting vpon caſualties, as the Mines and Tenths, &c. But for mine owne particular conceit, beeing not altogether vnconfirmed by other mens opinions, I cannot imagine how that it can ariſe to leſſe then foure hundered thouſand pound ſterling yearely at the leaſt.

Thus haue I briefly runne ouer ſome few particulars of the great and Noble Dukedome of *Saxony*, worthy a much more ample diſcourſe, and a farre more worthier and better enformed diſcourſer; being (all thinges conſidered) not onely the greateſt and mightieſt Princedome vnder the Empire, but euen greater and mightier (I meane as it ſtood vnited in the time of *Chriſtianus*) then the Empire it ſelfe. For though the Emperor by his ſacred imperiall Seat bee his Liege-Lord, and in greatneſſe of Dominion far ſuperior, yet is he in reuenue, in great loue of his people, in warlike prouiſion, and in *German* leagues and confederacies, far inferior.

The Palatine. Of the Princes vnder the Empire, the *Palatine* elector is in place before him, as beeing the cheeſe Elector temporall, and firſt Prince of the Empire, but in power and riches nothing comparable.

The Marques of Brandenburg. The Marqueſſe of *Brandenburg* poſſeſſeth a much greater circuit of Countrey, and hath more Nobility and people; yet is a great deal of it very barren, his people for the moſt part poore, and himſelfe (though of great reuenue) yet far ſhort of that of *Saxony*.

The Duke of Brunſwicke. The Duke of *Brunſwicke* hath a large Dominion, well peopled, well furniſhed, and himſelfe of a great reuenue; but

Digitized by Google

both

both in place much inferior (being no Elector) being as of body the ſtrongeſt, ſo alſo of mind the vileſt natured people of all *Germany*. In other things likewiſe he is inferior to the duke of *Saxony*, a great part of his Countrey being barren, and his Subiects poore.

The Duke of *Bauaria* hath a large, rich, and goodly Coun- Bauaria.
try, lying in great length on both ſides the *Danuby*, a great reuenew, and his Subiects in good eſtate: but (as beeing almoſt the onely Catholike great Prince of the Temporalty) of no great party, and vnfurniſhed of warlike prouiſion, but much more of treaſure, being exceedingly behind hand, principallie through the abuſe of his Ieſuits, by whom being wholy gouerned, he hath ſpent, and daily doth, infinitely, in building them Churches, Altars, and Colledges, and indowing them with large reuenues.

The Duke of *Wittenberge*, as in dignity he is inferiour to all Wittenberg.
theſe, ſo doth he (if I be not deceiued) approch neareſt in moſt particulars of greatnes to the Duke of *Saxony*: hauing a countrey, in circuit but ſmall, being not much bigger by geſſe then *Yorkeſhire*, but very full of neat townes and rich villages, very well peopled, and they generally very rich: The Land is not ſo fruitfull as in other places, but farre excelling the beſt in England, that euer came vnder my view; abounding exceedinglie (eſpecially about *Stutgard*) with Wine, and the Countrey ſo pleaſantlie diuerſified, as that the hils (whereof it is full) and Riuer ſides being onelie imploied to Vines, the plaine is euery where full of Corne of all ſortes, of excellent Meddow and Paſture, with ſufficient ſtore of wood. The Duke himſelfe is well loued of his people, very rich in treaſure and yearely reuenue, ſo that ſetting the mines aſide, he is thought to be equal, if not ſuperiour to the Duke of *Saxony*. But for prouiſion of war (excepting powder, whereof there is ſome ſtore) verie meanly furniſhed, & for many reſpects not loued of his neighbour-Princes.

The reſt of the Princes of *Germany*, as the Duke of *Michel-* Michelburg.
burg, the Lantgraue of *Heſſe*, the Marqueſſe of *Baden*, the Mar- Heſſe.
queſſe of *Ansbach*, or any other whatſoeuer, beeing in all re- Baden.
ſpects much inferiour to theſe already named, neede not to be Ansbach.
brought

Digitized by Google

brought into competition with the Dukedome of Saxonie, which makes the caſe more lamentable, that ſo mightie a Princedome hauing beene many yeares wholy vnited in *Maurice*, *Auguſtus*, and *Chriſtianus*, ſhould now by the ill ordred cuſtome of *Germany*, be diſtracted & diuided into three parts, amongſt three young Princes, and likely in time to bee more diſvnited by ſubdiuiding it againe to their Iſſues.

Geneua.

Geneua, is alſo an imperial Citty in *Sauoy*, ſcituated at the South end of the Lake *Lomanus*, hard by the Lake. It is in circuite about two Engliſh miles, reaſonable ſtrong by nature and art, as well for that it is ſeated on a hill, which on the Weſt is not eaſily acceſſable, as alſo for that it is indifferentlie well fortified with rauelings, Bulwarkes, and Platformes, beſides a deepe ditch. The Eaſt and Weſt partes thereof ſtanding continually full of water: The South part remaining dry continually, and is well defended with Caſemats, the better to ſcoure the Curtaine: it is ſo much the ſtronger, for that it ſtandeth almoſt in an Iſland, hauing the Lake afore-ſaide on the North, the Riuer of *Rhoſne*, vppon the Weſt, and the Riuer of *Arba* vpon the South, beeing from the Towne halfe a Mile, and by reaſon of the ſwiftneſſe of the currant, and great mooueable Stones in the bottome, which are violently carryed downe the Riuer, it is not paſſable, but with great danger.

The Riuer *Rhoſne* diuideth the Towne into two partes, the one is called the high Towne, and the other Saint *Geruais*. Betweene the Riuer (in paſſing) diuideth it ſelfe into two braunches, making a little Iſland, wherein are ſome few Houſes, & ſeauen or eight milles to grinde Corne. The weakeſt part of the Towne is vpon the Eaſt-ſide, and out of the Weſt by Saint *Geruais* Church; and for that it might haue beene ſurpriſed from the Lake, *Mounſier la Noue* cauſed a new Fort to bee made in the mouth of the Lake, by reaſon whereof, that part is moſt ſecure. The Towne is well peopled, eſpecially with Women; inſomuch as they commonly ſay, that there are three

Wo-

Digitized by Google

Women for one Man: yeelding this reaſon, that the Warres haue conſumed their Men. They reckon ſome ſixteene thouſand of all ſortes. The Territories are ſmall, being no way aboue two leagues and a halfe; yet by reaſon the ſoile is fruiteſull, being well manured, it bringeth graine of all ſortes, and great ſtore of Wine. There is likewiſe plenty of paſture and feeding grounds; by meanes whereof, the Inhabitants are very well prouided of all ſorts of good fleſh at a reaſonable rate: no want of good Butter and Cheeſe, and for moſt part of wild-foule; as Partridge, Quaile, Pheſant, and Mallard, in great abundance.

There are all manner of good fruits, and eſpecially excellent pere-maines: beſides the riuer and the lake afford diuers ſorts of freſh Fiſh; as Pike, Roch, Carp, Tench, &c. and aboue al, the beſt and biggeſt Carpes of Europe. The Commodities of the Dukes Countrey, and of the *Berneſe*, with ten or twelue miles next adioyning are brought to this Towne, by reaſon the Peaſant can get no Mony in any place, which maketh the market to be well ſerued. The Towne ſtandeth very well for Trade of Marchandize, and if it might haue peace, it would grow rich in ſhort time, for the ordinary paſſage to tranſport commodities out of *Germany* to *France*, eſpecially to *Lions*, and ſo back againe into *Swizerland* and *Germany*, is by this Towne: beſide all *Sauoy*, in a manner, and a good part of the Countrey of the *Berneſe* reſort hither to buy their Armour, apparrell, and other neceſſaries, the Inhabitants being for the moſt part mechanicall perſons, making excellent good Peeces; as Muskets, Caleeuers, &c. They likewiſe work, Satten, Veluet, Taffata, and ſome quantity of Cloath, though not very fine not durable. There are many good Merchants, eſpecially *Italians*, who haue great dealing: ſome others are thought to be worth 200000. Crownes, and in generall, the Towne is reaſonable rich notwithſtanding their warres.

The ordinary reuenue of the towne, is ſome 60000. Crowns, which ariſeth of the gables of Merchandize, fleſh, demain, and tithes: and if there might be peace, it would amount to twice or thrice ſo much.

There is reaſonable prouiſion againſt a ſiedge, the Towne

Digitized by Google

being able to make some 2000. men, and 100. horse, and furnish them with all necessaries, and hauing the Lake open, they want no prouision of Corne, or any victuals. In the Arsnall there is Armour for some 2000. Men, with Muskets, Pikes, Caleeuers, &c. Some twelue or foureteen peeces of ordinance, whereof there are about eight or nine Cannons and Culuerings: plentie of small shot, Bullets, and fire-workes, besides some sixty peeces in the Bulwarkes. There was in former times prouision of Corne for sixe months, but of late yeares they haue not beene so prouident. The people generally are maruellous resolute to defend their Towne, especially against the Duke of *Sauoy*, whom they hate exceedingly, not onelie in respect of the difference of Religion, but in matter of State: for the Duke counteth them Rebels, and pretendeth a Title to their Towne, alleadging, that till the yeare 1535. they were vnder the rule of their Byshop, who was Lorde both in Temporall and Spirituall matters, and the Bishop acknowledged him for his cheefe Lorde, and did him homage, till the yeare thirtie, at which time, and before, the Money which was Coyned in *Geneua*, was stamped with the Dukes name and figure vpon it. Besides, till the time aforesaid, the Duke of *Sauoy* might pardon offendours that were condemned: and further, there was no sentence of Law executed, but the Dukes office was made acquainted there-with, in whose power it was to disanull, as he liked best. Likewise in the yeare 1529. when as those of *Geneua* had leagued themselues with *Friburge*, the Duke disliking thereof, because it was done without his priuity, caused the league to bee broken, alleadging, that the Town of *Geneua* could not conclude a matter of such importance, without his allowance and approbation. Besides, all these reasons before remembered, this also is alleaged as most materiall, that Duke *Charles* comming to *Geneua* with the Dutches *Beatrice* his Wife, those of the Towne presented him the Keies thereof, thereby acknowledging him their chiefe Lord and Mayster. During the ciuill Warres in Fraunce, the Towne was maruellously peopled, insomuch as there were to the number of twelue or foureteene thousand strangers, the greatest part whereof were Gentlemen: but since those troubles

Digitized by Google

bles beganne to diminiſh, the number likewiſe hath decayed, and at this inſtant there are not many beſides the Inhabytants, by reaſon whereof, the Towne is very much impouerißhed.

The Towne is gouerned by a Counſell of two hundred, called the great Counſell, out of which is choſen another Counſell, compoſed of fiue and twenty, and of theſe foure eſpeciall men, called *Sindiques*, who haue the managing of the whole Common-wealth, vnleſſe it be in ſome great matters, wherein the whole State is deepelie intereſſed, as in making of peace or warre, in leagues offenſiue and defenſiue, appeales, &c.

The people are gouerned by the ciuill Lawe: the iudge whereof is called a Lieutenant Criminall, before whom all cauſes are tryed, and from whom there is no appeale, vnleſſe it bee to the generall Counſell of two hundred. When the Towne was beſiedged in eighty nine, the *Venetians* did not onely ſend them intelligence of ſundry practiſes againſt them, but alſo ſent them twenty foure thouſand Crownes to maintain their wars; and out of England they had 13000. crowns. The great Duke of *Thuſcan* did likewiſe ſend them many intelligences at the ſame time: and heeretofore when as the Pope, the King of *Spaine*, the French King, and the Duke of *Sauoy*, haue ioyned their powers together, with purpoſe to beſiedge them, the Emperour hath not onely reuealed al their practiſes, but offered to aide them with Men and Money: yea, and ſometime the Dukes of *Sauoy* haue lent them Money to maintaine them againſt the others. For hee had rather the Towne ſhould remaine as it doth, then fall into any other mans handes then his owne.

The people are very ciuill in their behauiour, ſpeech, and apparrell, all licenciouſneſſe being ſeuerely corrected, and eſpecially dauncing: Adultery is punniſhed with death, and the Women drowned in the *Rhoſne*; ſimple Fornication with nine daies faſting, Bread and Water in priſon; for the ſecond offence, whipping out of the Towne, and the third time, with baniſhment. The Towne lent vnto *Henrie* the third, King of France a little before his death 450000. Crownes, and twelue Canons, which are not yet reſtored: the *Berneſi* ſeeme to bee

Digitized by Google

their friends, but those of *Geneua* are very iealous of them, and dare not trust them.

The Ministers haue a consistory, vnto which they may call publicke offendors, and such as giue scandall vnto others, and there reproue them: and if the crime bee great, and the partie obstinate, they forbid him the Communion; if notwithstanding he persist, they may excommunicate him. But the Ministers cannot cal any before them into the consistory, but by the authoritie of a *Sindique*, who must assist them; otherwise, the Ministers haue power to summon any Man. They haue their maintenance out of the common Treasurie, and meddle with no Tithes. Maister *Beza* in eightie seauen, had some 1500. florens for his stipend, which amounteth to some seauen or eight and fiftie pounds sterling, besides twenty coupes of Corne, and his House. All which, will hardly amount to foure score pounds: the rest of the Ministers had some sixe or sea uen hundred florens, twenty coupes of Corne, and their houses. The Ministers in the Countrey haue 345. florens, and twenty coups of Corne. The professor in Diuinity, hath *per annum* 1125. florens, and twenty coupes of Corne; the professor in law 580. florens; the professor in Greeke 510. florens; the professor of Philosophy 600. florens, and twenty coupes; the professor in Hebrew 510. florens.

All honest exercises, as shooting in Peeces, Crosse-Bowes, Long-Bowes, &c. are vsed on the Sabbaoth day, and that in the morning, both before and after the Sermon, neither doe the Ministers find any fault therewith, so that they hinder not from hearing the word at the times appointed.

Swizzerland.

IN the daies of *Cæsar*, this Prouince contained 240. miles in length, and one hundred and foure score in breadth; which circuit or territory, seeming too narrow a roome to containe so valiant and a warlike people, that not long before had ouerthrowne *L. Cassius* a *Roman* Consull, slaine the Consull himselfe, and sold the Souldiers for Bondslaues; vpon these apprehensions, and the conceit of their owne valors, they began to entertaine a resolution, by conquest to gaine a larger territory, cor-

Digitized by Google

correſpondent to the ambitious greatneſſe of their minds, and to forſake their owne Countrey, which firſt gaue them breath and being. In heat whereof, they prepare for their departure, they prouide victuals, ſtudy tillage two yeares, buy Carts and carriage beaſts, & leaſt any mans courage ſhould decline with the time, they make a law, that euery one ſhould be in readyneſſe to ſet forward in the beginning of the third yeare. Being vppon their way, and hearing that *Cæſar* (then Pro-conſull of France) had cauſed the bridge of *Geneua* to be hewen downe, & to debar them of paſſage, had raiſed that famous fortification betweene the Lake and the Mount *Iura*, they ſent ſome of their greateſt Princes to *Cæſar*, to intreat a quiet paſſage thorough the *Roman* Prouince. At their appointed day of Audience, hearing *Cæſars* denyall, they reſolue to open the way with the power of their forces. In tryall of which proiect after they had receiued diuers defeatures, they againe ſent their Ambaſſadors to *Cæſar*, to intreate an acceptation of ſubmiſſion, throwing themſelues at his feete, and with many ſupplications, crauing ſuch fauourable conditions of peace, as might beſt comfort ſo diſtreſſed a people, and beſeeme the glory of ſo mightie a conqueſt: which requeſts, *Cæſar* vppon deliuerie of pledges, mercifully granted, inioyning them to returne to the Countrey from whence they came, and to builde the Cities and Villages, which before their comming forth, they had deſtroyed. Euer ſince which time they retained the reputation of their ancient glory, but neuer enterpriſed to forſake their limited habitations. The number of Men, Women, and Children, that were in that iourney, was 3680000. whereof 920000. were fighting men: of them that returned, and ſaw the fortune of both their States, was 110000. Some hold opinion, that this Nation is vtterly extinguiſhed, and that the preſent Inhabitants (whereof we now intreat) both for their reſemblance in manners and phraſe of ſpeech, are deſcended from the *Germans*.

Scituation.

It is almoſt all ſcituated amongeſt the *Alpes*, and therefore, ſuppoſed, to be the higheſt Region in Europe, and the rather, for that the moſt famous Riuer of this part of the Worlde, (viz:) *Rhone*, *Rodan*, and *Po*, falling from the high places, do

Digitized by Google

dispierse their channels through diuers Prouinces of Christendome. It is called in History *Confaderatorum Regio*, a State populer, and subiect to no one Prince. And although it seeme to be inuironed with steepe and barren Mountaines, alwayes couered with Snow, yet in truth it is fertill enough, and intermixed with fruitfull places, full of excellent Pastures, wherein they bring vp infinite numbers of Sheep and Cattle, to their inestimable profit, by venting of Butter, Cheese, and other white meates to forren Nations. Of Wheate and Wine they haue no such plenty, but are glad to craue in aide of their neigbbours to relecue their wants.

From the times before spoken of vntill the comming of the *Sarazens* into *Italy*, at what time the Pope sent an honourable Embassage of Cardinals, to intreat their fauour and assistance, they seemed to liue contented within their owne limits; and onely in reward of their many good seruices, (imployed for the defence of the Church and Christendome) they desired of his Holinesse; that they might liue in liberty in these places, which they then inhabited, with the vse of their owne lawes and auncient customes. Which the Pope not onely graunted, but in token of their worthinesse and valour, hee gaae them a red banner, with the Image of the Crucifix painted therein. After this seruice, they again gaue themselues to a quiet & peaceable life; to follow tillage, and to husband their granges, vntill such time as certaine Noblemen their neighbours began to incroach vpon them, and to exercise tyrannicall iurisdiction ouer them. Which kind of seruitude (as people bearing in fresh remembrance their ancient and generous reputation) beeing vnable to indure, and invred to giue, and not to take the law of their neighbours, opposed their forces against the insolency of the Nobility.

This discontentment first burst out in the yeare of our Lord 1300. about which time the Countes of *Asburgh* (afterward Dukes) had placed in one of their Castles of *Urania* in *Vallstreete*, a Gentleman proud aboue measure, vnsociable, and in lust insatiable. At first he was secret, but by custome imboldned, in Feasts and publique banquets he would boast, how he had now abused one Woman, then another: at last, amongest the

Digitized by Google

the reſt, hauing rauiſhed a verie young and beautifull Damſell, he was ſlaine by her two Bretheren. The Count agreeued hereat, offered to doe iuſtice vppon the offenders, but the Inhabitants of that Vally valiantlie reſiſted, ouerthrew two or three Caſtles in one day, and ſlew diuers of his officers. Which preſident the *Vnderualdenſes* imitating, committed the like outrage vppon the Gentlemen of their Territory, exclaiming, that the tyranny of the Nobility had inforſt them to this action. The firſt of the confederates were, the *Suaui*, thoſe of *Vro*, *Zurich*, and *Vnderuald*, and as well as they might in ſo ſuddaine an innouation gaue themſelues to peace, and to reſpect the good of the league and the confederated Citties.

The reſidue of the Noblemen and Gentlemen, fearing if this example were left vnpuniſhed, the ſore would grow incurable, as an euil which could bring forth no leſſe a miſchiefe, then the vtter loſſe of their iuriſdiction; muſtred all their friends & followers, determining, eyther to tame or raze the confederated Citties. But the *Swizers* well acquainted with the difficult paſſages of the Countrey, eaſily fruſtrated the attemptes of theyr Enemies, thereby rather increaſing, then diminiſhing theyr liberty.

Lupold Duke of *Auſtria*, enterprizing vppon them with a mighty Army for the ſame quarrell, had the like fortune. So in ſucceeding ages, had *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, by theyr ſeruice vnder-taken and performed for the defence of *Rhene* Duke of *Lorraine*. They are men of ſmall ſtature, and very ſeldome goe armed, but ſeruc onely with the Pike, or two-hand-Sword, becauſe they fear no other forces ſaue the furie of the great Artillery, from which (they ſay) a Breaſt-plate or curace is not able to defend them. And becauſe of their order, they thinke it a matter impoſſible, for any forces to breake them, or to enter vppon them, neerer then a Pikes length. In a pitcht fielde, without doubt they are excellent good Foot-men, but to inuade a Prouince, they haue little courage, and leſſe to defend it; and commonly, where they are not able to maintaine their accuſtomed order of fight, they auaile nothing; as in the warre of *Italy* was plainely manifeſted, eſpecially when they were put to aſſaultes, as at *Padoa*, and other places, wherein they

Digitized by Google

they gaue but weak teſtimonies of valour: whereas when they fought it out in open fielde at the Pikes length, they carryed themſelues valiantly, inſomuch that at the battaile of *Rauenna*, if the French had beene without their aſſiſtance, they had queſtionleſſe loſt the glory of that daies victory. For before both Armies came to handy-ſtrokes, the Spaniſh had alreadie ouerthrowne the *French* and *Gaſcoine* Foote-men, and if the *Swizers* had not ſuccoured them, they had beene all ſlaine or taken. So in the warre of *Guien*, it plainely appeared, that the *Spaniſh* were more affraid of one band of *Swizers*, whereof the K. had them waged ten thouſand, then any of the reſt of the French Regiments. Thus by the reputation of theſe and their former exploits, they won vnto their Nation ſo glorious a perpetuity of their Armes and valour, that euer ſince they haue beene called vnto the ayde of diuers Princes, and in continuall action vnder ſome one State or other, bordering vppon them; but eſpecially vnder the Kings of France, of whom they entertaine ſometimes more, and ſometimes leſſe. Sithence the raigne of *Lewes* the eleauenth, they haue been in perpetuall league, and in their penſion; to whom they giue yearelie fortie thouſand Florens, twenty thouſand to the Citties, and twentie thouſand to other particuler perſons. They againe are diuided into thirteene Cantons, eyght whereof are Catholique, the reſidue of the Religion. But thoſe of the Religion, are much greater; and out of theſe it is, that the Kinges of France are ſupplied: the reſidue are in penſion with the King of *Spaine*.

When the French King demaundeth any forces out of their Cantons, they call a Diet, the charge whereof, as likewiſe the Souldiers wages the King defraieth. Theſe forraine bandes, more or leſſe, to whom hee alwaies committeth the battaile, and the guard of his Cannon, (as for entring of breaches, and giuing aſſaults, they do expreſly capitulate to be exempt) with the fiue regiments before ſpoken of in the diſcourſe of *France*, are his maine moderne forces on foote: but when hee would haue greater numbers, he giueth his Captains Commiſſions to take vp Souldiers through the whole Realme, (not by preſſe, as with vs) but by ſtriking vp the Drum, when if any come voluntarily,

Digitized by Google

luntarily, and take pay, they are inrolled, & inioyned to ſerue, otherwiſe not.

The gouernment of theſe thirteene Citties, with their dependances (which they tearme Cantons) is meerely populer. For though the members ſeem to be ſeparated, yet liue they as one body firmely knit and vnited, hauing a cheefe Magiſtrate ouer euery Territory choſen by the comminalty of euery particular Citty, and euery City hath his particular counſell and place of aſſembly, ſaue onely when they are to ſit vpon matters of importance, and ſuch as concerne the generall eſtate; then they appoint a generall Diet, and that to be held in ſome one of the Citties, which they thinke moſt conuenient: whereunto foure or fiue of the moſt principal of euery Citty are bound to reſort. In their conſultations, for the moſt part, they are conformable one to another, & becauſe one Citty is as free as another, hauing no one chiefe Gouernour ſuperior to any other, in caſe the cauſe (be it peace or warre) concerne the vniuerſal State of all the Cantons, looke how the maior part of voices ſhall ſway in the Senat, ſo it preuaileth, and that which the greater number reſolue vpon, is without more ado put in execution. The benefit which they gaine by a common Warre, is deuided in common: but if ſometimes two or three vnited Cantons purchaſe any booty by their peculiar Armes, of that purchaſe the reſidue can claime no ſhare. Yet hath it happened, that the reſidue thinking themſelues iniured in not participating in generall of like preyes and booties haue raiſed diuers Controuerſies, and becauſe (as aforeſaide) they are equally free, and as great is the Soueraigne authoritie of one Cittie, as of another, both parties haue appealed vnto the French King; who vpon hearing of the cauſe in queſtion, gaue iudgement, *That a particular gaine, appertained to particular perſons.* And ſo the reſt. Gouernment.

Therefore, when they are eyther occaſioned or determined to make any particular war, the vnited Cantons erect lights & make Bone-fires: but when they are to raiſe forces in general (as ſuppoſe they ſhould for the French King) firſt they ſtrike vp their drumme, then all the Citties preſent, as many perſons as they thinke good: which may bee to the number of fiue and

Digitized by Google

thirty or fortie thousand, of whom after the Captaines haue culd out their limited proportions, the residue are licensed to depart to their owne homes. Euery Citty hath his principall standard, with their peculiar armes and deuises beaten therein, to distinguish one people from another. And because no politicke body can stand without a head (although in no case they will tollerate one absolute gouernor ouer the whole) yet are they contented to submit themselues to the gouernment of one particular Magistrate in euery particular City: him they tearme *Vnama*. The election of which officer is on this maner. On the first Sunday in May, the principall of all the houses and Families through euery Canton, of all sorts and qualities, assemble themselues, eyther in some meadow, or elfe in the chiefest streets of their Citty: where all of them taking their places in order, the *Vnama*, whose time of office is now expired, seating himselfe in a place some-what aboue the rest, after some stay, riseth vp & maketh a speech to the people, excusing himselfe in good tearmes of his in-sufficiency to discharge the weight of the office committed vnto his charge, and craueth pardó of that which he hath through ignorance or negligence committed, to the preiudice of the common good, and therewithal offereth to resigne his determined office into the hands of the people. Immediately vpon this resignation, with a lowd voyce he nominateth the partie, whom in his iudgement hee thinketh worthy to succeede in his place. Hee that is nominated, commeth foorth before the multitude, and presenting himselfe before them, after some speeches, nominateth a second; and the second, with like ceremony, a third. The nomination being ended, the cheefe of the companies demaund of the people, which of these three thus nominated, they are willing to elect. So naming them anew, one by one, the multitude lift vp their hands at the naming of him, whom they desire to be their Gouernor. And oft-times it falleth out, that hee that hath beene once *Vnama*, in desert of his iustice and good carriage towardes them, hath beene chosen againe the second time. This election finished, they proceede to the choise of other Officers.

This officer continueth in his place three years, and although he

Digitized by Google

he be the chiefeſt amongſt them, yet goeth he but little better attired then the meaneſt, onely attended with fiue or ſixe perſons. He dwelleth in his owne houſe, becauſe they imploy the publique places for the holding of the Dyets, the keeping of their Munition and Artillerie, and other furniture belonging to the warres. In criminall cauſes, he can do nothing without the counſell of the fifteene, but in ciuill matters, he hath larger limitation.

Next the *Vnama* is that Officer of Iuſtice, who is as it were the Chancellor, and the ſecond perſon in that State. After him, are certaine Counſellors, men well experienced in affaires of Princes, and occurrance of Prouinces. Then the Chamberlaine, and his is the charge of the Munition and publike Treaſure. Next to him are the foure Deputies, in authoritie greater then the Councellors, and may do many things in abſence of the *Vnama*, ſo as the Chancellour bee preſent. Theſe with the *Vnama* make the fifteene, which gouerne the State as well in peace as in war, and are euer preſent at the hearing and deciding of al occurances ariſing within the Territory of their own Canton.

Theſe in effect mannage all matters in the common-wealth, and are from yeare to year confirmed by the people, although (as doth the *Vnama*) they continue their office for three years. Theſe ſend gouernors to the Caſtles on the Frontiers, and (to decide inferiour matters) they allow ten perſons choſen out of the meaner ſort, but the parties in controuerſie may appeale to theſe fifteene: other Iudges, or further appeales (as in the Ciuill Law) they haue not to fly vnto. For their cheefeſt care, is their tillage and warfare, coueting to liue ſimply and plainely, and not to intrappe one another in quarrels and ſuites of Law. The party euicted is ſeuerely puniſhed. Neyther will they ſuffer any of their people to appeale out of their owne Countries; and if any offend therein, he is greeuouſly chaſtened.

Through the whole world, lawes are not obſerued with leſſe partiality; for they are neuer altered according to the humors of the inconſtant multitude, nor violated without due penaltie inflicted; for as of thoſe fiue ſortes of popular gouernments,

Digitized by Google

which *Aristotle* discourseth of, there is none more dangerous then that wherein the will of the people beareth sway, aboue reason, and standeth for Law, as *Zenophon* writeth of the *Athenians*; so no forme of gouernment can be compared to that wherein the comminalty without distinction liue subiect to the censure of the Law: in regard of which pollicy, we ought not to maruaile, if this Common-weale haue flourished now these two hundred and fifty yeares, in great reputation of valour.

For by two meanes hath this populer estate been preserued, (viz:) by vnpartiall administration of Iustice; and frequencie of neighbourly feastings; whereas the scornefull ambition of great men, hath heretofore ruinated the popular estates of the *Megarians*, the *Romans*, the *Florentines*, the *Syennois*, and the *Genooise*; of which sort, the *Swizzers* haue none at all; or if there be any (as there are but few which escaped the generall massacre) yet are they contented (without laying any claim to their auncient gentility) to range themselues with the residue of the baseft comminalty, and can but seldome be admitted to the chiefest magistracies, beeing commonly bestowed vppon Butchers, and such like Mechanicall Artizans.

Italy.

Italy, (according to *Pliny*) the most beautyfull and goodliest Region vnder the Sunne, the Darling of Nature, and the Mother of hardy Men, braue Captaines and valiaunt Souldiers: flourishing in all Arts, & abounding with Noble wits, and men of singuler spirits, scituate vnder a Climate most wholesome and temperate, commodious for Traffique, and most fertill for Corne and Herbage; containeth in length, from *Augusta Pretoria*, vnto *Otranto*, one thousand and twentie Miles, and in breadth, from the Riuer *Varo* in *Prouince*, to the Riuer *Arsia* in *Friuli* (where it is the brodest) foure hundered and tenne miles: and in the narrow places, as from the mouth of

Digitized by Google

of *Pescara*, to the mouth of *Tiber*, 126. miles. So that to compasse it by Sea, from *Vara* to *Arsia*, are 3038. miles, which with the 410. by Land, maketh the whole circuite 3448. miles.

Thus it appeares, to bee almost an Iland, bounded on the East with the *Adriatique* Sea, on the South and West, with the *Tirrhene*, and on the North, with the *Alpes*: the which, for that it is described by others, wee will but point thereat, and so much the rather, because there is no Countrey in the World better knowne, and more frequented by Strangers.

Inheritances there, descend to the Children, as Lands holden by *Gauelkind* with vs in some parts of England, so that one Brother hath as good a share as another, and if the elder bee borne to the Title of a *Conte*, so is the younger, and so called; yea, if there be twentie Brethren, except it be in the Estates of Prince-domes, as *Mantua*, *Ferrara*, *Vrbin*, and such like, which euermore discend to the eldest entirely. By this means it commeth to passe, that oftentimes you shal see Earls and Marquesses without Lands or goods, yet most strictly standing vpon the reputation of their descentes, and the glory of theyr names for themselues, and their Issues for euer. But the Gentlemen which haue whereof to liue, are reported to surpasse the Gentry of any other Nation in good carriage and behauiour, and for the most part professe Armes, and follow seruice. And to be discerned from the vulgar, they all in generall speak the Courtisan, which is an excellent commendation, considering the diuersity of dialectes amongst them. For leauing the difference betweene the *Florentine* and the *Venetian*, the *Milanois*, and the *Romane*, the *Neapolitan* and the *Genois*, (which may well be likened to the difference betweene a *Londoner* and a Northerne man) yet by the tongue you shall not lightly discerne of what part of the Countrey any Gentleman is of. No more different are they in manners and behauiour: honourable curteous, prudent, and graue withall, that it should seeme each one to haue had a printe-like education; to their superiors obedient; to equals respectiue; to inferiours curteous; to strangers affable, and desirous by kind offices to win their loue. Of expence and loue of his Money very wary, and will be assu-

Digitized by Google

red to be at no more coſt, then he is ſure eyther to ſaue by, or to haue thank for. In apparrell modeſt, in furniture of houſhold ſumptuous, at their Table neat, ſober of ſpeech, enemies of ill report, and ſo iealous of their reputations, that whoſoeuer ſpeaketh ill of one of them, if the party ſlandred may know it, and finde opportunity to performe it, the party offending ſhall ſurely dye for it.

The Merchants likewiſe, for the moſt part are Gentlemen. For when of one Houſe there bee three or foure Bretheren, lightly one or two of them giue themſelues to Traffique. And ſometimes, if they chaunce not to deuide their Fathers ſubſtance and patrimony (as many times they doe not) then doe they which profeſſe themſelues Merchants, trauell for the welfare of their Bretheren, ioyntly participating of loſſe and profit. But in outward ſhew theſe carry not like reputation to the Gentlemen afore ſpoken of: for they profeſſe not Armes, but deſire to liue in peace, and how to vent their Wares, and haue newe Traffique into ſtrange Countries: yet haue no leſſe reputation of Nobilitie for their Trade of Merchandize, but by reaſon they ſtay at home, and vſe the richeſt Farmes, and follow Husbandry by their Bayliffes and Factors, they become the beſt and wealthyeſt Merchantes in all Chriſtendome.

Their Artificers are thought the beſt workmen of the world, and are ſo well paid, that many liue by their labours as well as many do by their reuenues; yea, and grow very rich, and within two or three deſcents to the reputation of Gentry.

The poorer ſort are the Husbandmen, for they are oppreſſed on all hands, and in the Countrey liueth no man of wealth. The Gentry and wealthier ſort dwell in Townes & walled Cities, leauing the Villages, fields, and paſtures to their Tenants; not at a rent certaine, as we do in England, but to halfes, or to the thirds of all graine, fruit, and profit ariſing of the ground, according as it ſhall be, eyther barren or fertile. And this the poore Tenant muſt Till and manure at his own charge, ſo that the Lords part commeth cleare without diſburſing one peny; yet ſhall you ſee many faire houſes in the villages, but they are onely for the owners paſtime in Summer. For then they leaue the

Digitized by Google

the Cities for a month or two, where vnder the fragrant hedges and bowers, they solace themselues in as much pleasure as may be imagined. And for the most part, euery man hath his Mistris, with Instruments of Musicke, and such like pleasures as may serue for recreation and delight. Thus much of the maners and nature of the Inhabitants, now will we speake of the estates of the Countrey.

The King of Spaine hath the greatest part for his share, as *Naples*, and the Dutchy of *Milaine*.

The Pope hath the Citty of *Rome*, *Campagnia*, part of *Maremma*, part of *Tuscan*, the Dutchy of *Spolet*, *Marca d' Ancona*, *Romagnia*, and the Cittie of *Bononia*.

The *Venetians* haue for their part, the Citty of *Venice*, with the townes in and about that Marish, called *La contrada di Venetia*, *La marka Triuigiana*, a great part of *Lombardy*, and part of *Istria*. They likewise are, and haue bin, Lordes of certaine Ilands, some whereof the Turke hath won from them.

The Common-weale of *Genua*, hath the Territory about them, called at this day, *Il Genouosato*, and anciently *Lyguria*.

Tuscan, once *Hetruria*, is diuided into diuers Signiories, whereof the Bishop of *Rome* holdeth a smal part, but the greatest is vnder the Iurisdiction of *Florence*.

Then are the common wealthes of *Siena* and *Lucca*, whose Territories are not great. 13. The Duke of *Ferara* hath part of *Romagnia*, and part of *Lombardy*. 14. The Dutchy of *Mantua*, lieth wholly in *Lombardy*, and the Dutchy of *Vrbin* betweene *Marca d' Ancona* and *Tuscane*. 15. The Dutchies of *Parma* and *Placentia*, are in *Lombardy*, and holden of the Church.

Of these Princes and Common-wealths, euery one holdeth himselfe in his owne Territory absolute Prince and gouernor, and maintaineth his estate vpon the custome, taxes, and impositions of the people. For lightly, they haue little or no Landes of their owne.

The estate of the Pope is of two sortes: the one consisteth in Temporall Dominion; the other, in Spirituall Iurisdiction. His Temporal Dominion, is likewise diuided into two kinds; the one profitable, and as a man may tearme it, immediate and

The Bishop of Rome.

Digitized by Google

and hereditary patrimony: the other mediate, and holden in fee of the Church. As touching his Temporall Dominion immediate, he is Lord of a great part of *Italy*, as of all that lyeth betweene the Riuer *Fiore* and *Caietta*, betweene *Preneſt* and the *Truentian* ſtreights (except the Dutchie of *Vrbin.*) In that compaſſe are incircled the Prouinces of *Bonnonia* and *Romandiolia*, *Marchia*, *Vmbria*, the Dutchy of *Spolet*, S. *Peters* patrimony, and *Tuſcan*. It is ſeated in the hart of *Italy*, ſtretching from the *Adriatique* to the *Tirrhene* Sea; and in regard of ſcituation, as alſo in plenty of prouiſion, as Corne, Wine, and Oyle, it is comparable to any State of *Italy*: For *Romandiola* imparteth great ſtore vnto their Neighbours, the *Venetians* and *Sclauonians*, and yet haue the Inhabitants ſufficient for theyr owne prouiſion.

Marchia reacheth from *Tronto* to *Foglia*, betweene the *Apenine* and the Sea; it is deuided into little hils and plaines. It is rich of Wine, Oyle, and Corne, hauing diuers great Townes and Caſtles therein. The Cittie of greateſt Trading, is *Ancona*, by reaſon of the Hauen, to which many Eaſterne Marchants doe repaire. The faireſt is *Aſcoli*, the moſt powerfull *Fermo*, becauſe of many Fortreſſes ſubiect vnto it. *Macerata* is a new Cittie, and becauſe it lyeth in the middeſt of the Prouince, it is the Gouernours Seate. In ſome yeares it hath ſupplied the *Venetians* wantes, with many thouſand meaſures of Corne and Oyle. And although *Vmbria* is not ſo plentifull of graine, as to ſpare for their Neighbours, yet is it able to maintaine it ſelfe without buying of others, and in ſtead thereof, it is aboundantly ſtored with Wines, Cattle, and ſome Saffron. S. P. Patrimony and *Tuſcane*, often releeued *Genes*, and at ſome ſeaſons, *Naples*. This Territorie bringeth forth fierce & warlike Souldiers; and herein it is reported to excell all the reſidue of the *Italian* Prouinces. *Bonnonia*, *Romania*, and *Marchia*, are able to leuy twentie thouſand Foote-men, and the other Prouinces as many. In the time of Pope *Clement*, *Marchia* alone ayded him with a thouſand Souldiers. The cheefe Seat is *Rome*, once the Lady of the World, and at this day inhabited with 2000. Soules, but two parts thereof conſiſting of Church-men and *Curteſans*. The defenceable places are the

Caſtle

Digitized by Google

Caſtle and Borough of *Rome*, *Ouietta*, *Teracine*, *&c.* It is a great credite and commendation to this State, to haue many Noble-men therein ſo excellent in Negociation of peace and war, that the reſidue of the States and Princes, doe moſt commonly chuſe their Leaders and Lieutenants out of theſe Prouinces. If the Prince hereof were ſecular, both for people and power, hee might verie well bee compared with any State of *Italy*.

Beſides theſe Dominions, the Pope hath the Territory of *Auigion* in *Fraunce*, wherein are foure Cities, and foureſcore walled Townes. In *Naples* he hath *Beneuent*.

Romagna extendeth from *Foglia* to *Panoro*, and from the *Apenine* to the Riuer *Po*. For temperature and fertility it is like to *Marchia*, but hath generally more famous Cities, as *Rimini*, *Ceſana*, *Faenſa*, *Rauenna*, *Turly*, *Imola*, *Sarſina*, *Ceruia*, *Bertinoto*, once a Biſhoppes ſeat, but now tranſlated to *Forlimpoli*. The Nobleſt of all theſe, is *Rauenna*, where ſome Emperours haue kept their Courts, and after them their *Exarches* or Lieutenants. When *Pipin* hauing expulſed *Aſtolpho*, put the Church in poſſeſſion thereof, this Territory comprehended *Bologuia*, *Regio*, *Modena*, *Parma*, *Piacenza*, *Rauenna*, *Sarſina*, *Claſſe*, *Forli*, *Forlimpoli*, and made one eſtate called *Pentapoli*, which indured an hundered eightie three yeares, euen to the yeare of our Lorde 741. in which yeare, it ended by the taking of *Rauenna*, by *Aſtolph* King of *Lombards*. So that firſt the Romaine Emperours, eſpecially *Honorius*, and after him the Kinges of the *Gothes*, and then *Exarkes*, amongſt all the Cities of *Italie*, choſe this for the Seate of their Courts, which from amongſt other reſpects, I ſuppoſe to proceede by reaſon of the plentifull Territory (now couered with water) and the conueniency of the Hauen, which at this day is likewiſe choaked. This Prouince was firſt called *Flaminia*, but *Charles* the great, to raze out the remembrance of theſe *Exarkes*, and to make the people willing to obey the Romaine Prelats, called it *Romagnia*.

As touching his mediate Soueraignety, he is the Lord Paramount of the kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicil*, and the Dutchies of *Vrbin*, *Ferrara*, *Parma*, *Placentia*, and many others.

Digitized by Google

Where his authority is maintained, he hath ſupreme gouernment of all religious orders, and beſtoweth the Eccleſiaſticall benefices at his diſpoſe. Hauing thus many ſtrings to his Bow, he hath ſo many meanes to raiſe Money, that *Xiſtus* the fourth was wont to ſay, that the Popes ſhould neuer want Coine, as long as their hands were able to hold a penny. *Paule* the third, in the league betweene him, the Emperor and the *Venetians*, againſt the Turke, bare the ſixt part of the charges of that warre. Againſt the Proteſtants, and in ayde of *Charles* the fiſt, he ſent 12000. footmen, and 500. Horſe-men, bearing their charges during the war: this was hee that aduanced his houſe to that honor, wherein it continueth to this day in *Florence*. *Pius* the the fift, aided *Charls* the ninth King of France with 4000. footmen, and 1000. horſe. *Xiſtus* the fift, in fiue yeares and a halfe of his Pontificy, raked together fiue millions of Crownes, and ſpent bountifully notwithſtanding, in bringing Conduites and Waterpipes into the City, and in building *Pyramides*, pallaces, and Churches.

Tuſcan. It lyeth betweene the *Apenine* and the Sea: and contayneth from *Magra* to *Tenere*, aboue 200. threeſcore and ten miles. It hath larger Champians then *Lyguria*, becauſe the *Apenine* ſtretcheth not ſo neare the Sea, and ſo enlargeth the plaine. In it are many large valleies, populous, and rich in commodities. But to ſpeake of particulars: when we are paſt *Magra*, *Sarazana* offereth it ſelfe to our view, a Citty holden by the *Genoiſe* with great ielouſie, by reaſon of the Neighbour-hood of the great Duke, and a little higher lyeth *Pentrimoli*, a Caſtle belonging to the King of *Spaine*, of great account, and ſcituated not far from the Sea; then *Maſſa* and *Carrara*, places famous for their quarries of white Marble. *Lucca* ſtandeth on the Riuer *Serichio*, *Piſa* on *Arnoy*, and beyond the Citty of *Florence*. To the State whereof belongeth *Piſtoia*, *Volterra*, *Montepulcino*, *Arezzo*, *Cortona*. Thoſe of *Lucca* doe ſtand vppon their guard for maintenance of their liberties. The Citty is three miles in compaſſe, ſtrong in ſcituation and wals, and well ſtored with Artillery and Munition. On the North it confineth *Carfagnana*, a fruitfull valley, and well inhabited with ſeruiceable people, on the other parts it is incompaſſed with the Territories

Digitized by Google

ritories appertaining to the great Duke. *Pisa* was once of such wealth, that at one instant, the Cittizens thereof held warre against the *Venitians* & the *Genoois*. They grew great by the ouerthrow which the *Sarazens* gaue to the *Genoois*, in the yeare 1533. the remainder of which defeature, were receiued into the protection of their Citty; and declined by the slaughter of their people, and also of their Nauy giuen them by the *Genoois* neere to the Ile *Giglio*. For thereby they became so weak, that not able to sustaine their wonted reputation, they were forced to submit themselues vnder the protection of the *Florentines*, against whom (when *Charls* the 8. inuaded *Italy*) they rebelled. But being againe reduced to their former obedience, the City notwithstanding was in a manner left desolate, because the cittizens (impatient of the *Florentines* gouernment) passed into *Sardinia*, *Sicill*, and other places to inhabite. So that the place wanting Inhabitants, and the Countrey people to manure it, the scituation thereof beeing low and mooriſh, by reason of Fens & Marishes, it became infectious. *Cosmo* the great Duke, vndertooke to re-people it again, and to further his intention, he builded there a stately house for the receit of the Knights of S. *Stephen*, gracing it with many priuiledges, which yet to this day remaine vnaltered.

Florence is the faireſt Citty in *Italy*. It is in compasse sixe miles. It is deuided into 44. Parishes, and into 21. Companies. It hath in it 66. Monasteries, and 37. Hospitals. The Cittizens bought their freedome of the Emperour *Rodolfe* for 6000. Crownes; as they of *Lucca* theirs, for 10000. In whose time, and euer since it hath flourished in great prosperity. For vppon occasion, the City is able to arme 30000. men, & the Country 60000. It is strongly wald, the scituation thereof being low, especially on the North side: but on the other parts is somwhat subiect to the commaund of certaine hils, which ouerlooke it, the inconuenience whereof they haue preuented by fortifications. It hath a Citadel built by Duke *Alexander*, and after inlarged by *Cosmo*. The streets thereof are straight, large, and very cleane kept. There are to bee seene the most artificiall buildings of all Europe, both publike and priuate. *Charles* Archduke of *Austrich* was wont to say, that it was a Citty not to be Florence.

Digitized by Google

ſhowne but on Holidaies. No ſoyle is Tilled with more Art, dilligence and curioſity: for you ſhall ſee one little peece of ground to bring forth Wine, Oyle, Corne, Pulſe, and fruites. Notwithſtanding, it will not affoord ſufficient victuals for a third part of the yeare: to remedy which ſcarcity, it was not without good reaſon that they ſpent two millions of Crownes for the recouery of *Piſa*. The laſt Duke became an earneſt Petitioner to the Pope, that he might be created king of *Tuſcany*, but the Pope not brooking ſo lordly a Title in ſo neer a neighbour, anſwered; that he was content, that he *ſhould be King in Tuſcany, but not King of Tuſcanie*, which ſcholler-like diſtinctions, great Princes cannot well diſgeſt.

The qualities of the *Tuſcans* appeare by the excellency of the *Florentines*, whom Nature aboue all the Prouinces of *Italy* hath adorned with ſharpneſſe of wit, frugality, prouidence, induſtry, and ſpeciall in-ſight into the Negotiations of peace and warre; yea, their continuall diſſentions and hazzardes, wherein they haue almoſt liued from the firſt foundation of their Citty, I doe, to nothing ſo much attribute, as to the ſharpneſſe of their wits. So, the ciuill diſcords of the *Piſtolians*, did not onely ruinate their owne eſtate, but therein likewiſe ingaged *Florence*; yea, and as a man may ſay, drew al *Tuſcany* after it, by the factions of the *Neri* and *Bianchi*, for thus it hapned: Two young men deſcended of Noble Families falling out, the one of them chanced to be lightly hurt: the father of the other to extinguiſh all ſparkes of mallice, and that no further inconueniency ſhould ariſe vpon that quarrell, ſent his Sonne to aske forgiueneſſe of him that was hurt, but the effect enſued contrary to his expectation: for the Father of the wounded Gentleman, cauſed his Seruants to lay hold on him, and cut off his handes, and ſo ſending him backe againe, willed him to tell his Father, that *wounds were not cured with words, but with Weapons*. Heereupon grew betweene thoſe two Families a mortall and cruell warre, which drew the reſt of the Cities into the quarrell, and was the cauſe of great effuſion of bloud: yea, the *Florentines* inſtead of executing due punniſhment vppon the principall authors of the faction, receiued the baniſhed on both ſides, into their Citty: where the *Donati* vn-

Digitized by Google

der-

dertaking the protection of the *Neri*, and the *Cherfi* of the *Bianchi*, all the Citty became to be diuided into *Neri* and *Bianchi*, this ſedition was not of long time after pacified.

Arezzo, being by long diſſention amongſt themſelues almoſt brought to wracke (as the other Citties of *Tuſcane* likewiſe were) was ſolde to the *Florentines* by *Lewes* of *Anioy* for forty thouſand florens of Golde; and not many yeares after, *Cortona*, by King *Ladiſlaus*.

With the State of *Florence*, doth confine that of *Siena*, a Citty builded by the *Senoni*, and of late time become ſubiect to the houſe of *Medici*. It is fiue miles in compaſſe, ſtrong by ſcituation, and whereunto *Coſmo* the great Duke adioyned a Citadell. From *Florence* it is not aboue thirty three miles diſtant; but the people thereof are much differing in manners, as alſo diſpoſition, they ſparing, ſlowe, and vnſociable towardes Straungers, theſe bountifull, and of kinde entertainement: they loath to part with Money, and prouident, theſe liberall, and onely caring for the preſent; they graue, melancholie, & alwaies expecting their profit; theſe plaine, and of chearefull countenance; The one inclined to Traffique and gaine; the other, content with their Reuenues, and the fruites of their Farmes. *Siena* hath a large and fruitfull Territory, wherein are contained in the Citties of *Pienza*, *Montalcino*, *Chuſi*, *Soana*: and in *Maremma*, *Maſſa*, and *Croſſeto*, the ports of *Orbetello*, *Portercole*, with twentie ſixe other walled Townes. The Coaſt beginneth at *Capiglia*, and extendeth to the little Riuer of *Fiore*, being all good ſoyle for Corne, but the ayre is ſo infectious, that none liue long therein. The ports doe all belong to the King of Spaine, together with the Hill *Argentino*, a place famous, by the diſcourſe which *Claudius Ptolomeus* made thereof, for the excellency of the ſcituation fit for the building of a royall Citty. In this Prouince beginneth the patrimony of S. *Peter*, bequeathed to the Church by the Counteſſe *Matilda*.

The cheefe place heereof in auncient time was *Capua*, the pleaſant ſcituation whereof was the ouerthrow of *Hannibal* and his Armie. *Cicero* writeth, that the *Romaines* were Lords of three imperiall Citties, *Carthage*, *Corinth*, and *Capua*. The Campaigne.

Digitized by Google

two first being farre off, they vtterly ruinated; of *Capua* they long consulted: in the end they concluded that it were extream tyranny to spoile so noble a Cittie of *Italy*. But for their better security, they confiscated the Territories thereof, and depriued it of all forme and maiesty of a Common-wealth. They let the buildinges stand to serue for receit of those which should till the ground. *Naples* is now the chiefe seat, not onely of *Campagnia*, but of the whole Kingdome, and is indeede a princely City: It is in compasse seuen miles, but narrow: of late times it is much augmented, and would encrease continually, if the King of Spaine had not forbidden a further increase by building; whereunto he was moued, partly by the complaints of the Barons (whose Tennants to inioy the liberties granted to the *Neopolitans*, did forsake their owne dwelling to seat themselues there) partly by the daunger of rebellion, which in so mighty a Citty cannot easily be represt. It is strongly walled, and hath in it three Castles, the chiefe whereof is Castle-*Nono*, builded by *Charles* of *Angeow*. The hauen is not large nor safe, but that inconuenience is somwhat eased by an artificiall key. It hath likewise an Arsenall, wherein all Instruments of warre are forged. Amongst other religious places (of which sort there are many, and those well maintained) there is the house of *Piety*, called *il monte della pieta*, which by ordinary reuennues and guifts, may dispend yearely 60000. Crownes, wherewith (amongst other charitable workes) it maintaineth through the kingdome 2000. Infants.

It is one of the regions belonging to the kingdome of *Naples*; It is bounded with the riuer *Iano*, & the *Terrhene* and *Ionian* Seas; it is in compasse aboue 500. miles, and is diuided into two Prouinces; the one lieth on the *Terrhene* Sea, where in ancient times the *Brutians* did inhabite, and that part is properly called *Calabria*; the other lyeth on the *Ionian*, and called *Magna Græcia*. It is deuided into the higher and lower. Of the higher, the cheefe Seate is *Cosenza*, of the lower, *Catanzara*. *Cosenza* is a large Citty, *Catanzara*, a strong. Betweene the cape of the Pillars, and the cape *Alice*, is *Corone*, a place of very holesome ayre. Vpon this Territory, Anno 1551. the Nauy of the great Turke landed and made some stay; which

was

Digitized by Google

was the cauſe that moued *Charles* the fift to mortify this Citty. It is a thing worthy to bee noted, how much the Inhabytants of this Countrey in former age, exceeded the numbers of this preſent: for in thoſe daies this Citty ſent more men againſt the *Locrians* then the whole kingdome of *Naples* is now able to affoord, beeing numbred to 130000. A little aboue that do inhabite the *Sabarits*, who were alwaies able to arme 30000.

At *Tarent* beginneth the Countrey of *Otranto*, in auncient times called *Iapigia*. It containeth all that corner of Land almoſt inuironed with the Sea, which lieth between *Tarent* and *Brunduſium*. In it (as *Strabo* writeth) were once thirteen great Citties, but in his time onely two, *Tarent* and *Brunduſe*. The ayre is very healthfull, and though the ſuperfices of the ſoyle ſeeme rough and barren, beeing broken with the plough, it is found to be excellent good mold. It is ſcarſe of water, neuertheleſſe it yeeldeth good Paſture, and is apt for Wheate, Barly, Oates, Oliues, Cædars, excellent Melons, Oxen, Aſſes, Mules of great eſtimation. The people are in their manners more plaine then their Neighbours. In this Countrey is bred the *Tarantola*, whoſe venome is expelled with Fire and Muſique, as *Gellius* reporteth out of *Theophraſt* his Hiſtory of liuing Creatures. There are likewiſe bred the *Cherſidi*, Serpents liuing both on the Land and in the Sea: yea there is no part of *Italy* more cumbred with Graſhoppers, which leaue nothing where they come, but would vtterly conſume in one night whole fieldes full of ripe Corne, if nature by ſending the Birds called *Gaiue* into thoſe quarters, had not prouided a remedy againſt this miſerie. The place at all times of the yeare indureth much dammage by Haile: Thunder is as vſuall in winter as in Summer.

This Prouince is ſcituated betweene two Seas: the Citty is ſeated in an Iland like vnto a ſhip, and ioyned to the Continent with bridges, where the tide ſetteth violently: on the other ſide, the two Seas ioyned together by meanes of a trench cut out by mans hand, and is of largeneſſe ſufficient to receiue a Gally. Where the Citty now ſtandeth, was before a Rock, & is holden to bee the ſtrongeſt Fortres of the kingdome. From thence

Digitized by Google

thence along the ſhore lyeth *Cæſaria*, now ruined by them of *Gallipoli*. *Gallipolis* is ſeated on a ridge of Land, running into the Sea like a tongue; On the furtheſt point whereof, ſtandeth the Citty, and is of great ſtrength, by reaſon of the ſcituation, being fenced with vnacceſſable Rockes, well walled, and ſecured by a Caſtle; with which Motiues of incouragement in the wars, between the *French* and the *Arragons*, the Cittizens thereof to their great honour, continued euer faithfull to the fortunes of the *Arragons*.

It hath beene counted one of the chiefeſt Cities of *Italy*; it is now by their ciuill diſſentions almoſt deſolated, the cauſe, as I take it, wherefore the ayre there-abouts is become ſo vnhealthfull: an influence incident to all great Cities. For as nothing doth better temper the ayre, then the frequency of Inhabitants (becauſe by husbandry and induſtry, they drie vppe Fenny and vnholeſome places, prime ſuch woods as grow too thicke and obſcure; with their fires purge noyſome exhaltations, and with their high buildings extinuate groſſe vapors. So on the contrary, there is nothing apter to breede infection, then the deſolation of ſpacious Citties: for ſo the places are not onelie depriued of the aforeſaid helpes, but euen the houſes and their ruines are receptacles of infection, and matter of corruption. Which appeareth to be true by the ruines of *Aquilea*, *Rome*, *Rauenna*, and *Alexandria* in *Ægypt*. For which inconuenience, the *Gracians* neuer built huge Citties; *Plato* would not that his ſhould exceede 500. families, and *Ariſtotle* wiſhed that al his people might at one time heare the voice of one Cryer.

This Prouince, extendeth from the Confines of *Brunduſe*, to the Riuer *Fortore*. It is diuided into two Territories: the one at this day called *Bari*, and by the Latines *Peucetia*, the other *Puglia*, and by them, *Dawnia*, deuided each from other, by the Riuer *Lofanto*.

In the ſecond part, it comprehendeth *Capitanato*, contayning in it many great Citties, places of Trade, and Fortreſſes of good account. Amongſt the number whereof, is *Monfredonia*, built by King *Monfredi* in a high place, and healthfull, with a conuenient and ſafe harbour. It lieth vnder the hill *Gar-*

Digitized by Google

gano,

gano, at this day called S. *Angelo*, becauſe of the appearing of Saint *Michaell*, who is honoured there with great deuotion. It ſhoulde ſeeme, that in this Hill all the riches of *Puglia* are heaped togethe r: it hath plentie of Water, an element rare in this Prouince. The *Sarazens* finding the opportunity of the ſcituation thereof, did there fortify, and therein maintained themſelues a long time: for in truth, there is no place better to moleſt the Kingdome, and to commaund the *Adriatique* Sea.

It is another Prouince of this Kingdome: it is bounded with the Riuer *Fortorie*, and the Riuer *Tronto*: in which circuite are contained many people. Towardes the Sea it is a fruitfull Country, in the midſt rough and mountainous, and the coldeſt Region in the Kingdome. The wealth thereof conſiſteth in Cattle and Saffron. The Countrey of *Maliſi* is deuided with the Riuer *Peſcara*, the Gouernour thereof reſideth in *San-Seuoro*. This Prouince hath no famous place vpon the Sea-coaſt, but in the Inland. *Beneuento* was giuen to the Church by *Henrie* the fourth, in recompence of a tribute which *Leo* the ninth did releaſe to the Church of *Bamburgh*, which in thoſe daies beeing by diuers caſualties often vſurped, was at laſt reſtored againe to the Church by the Armes of the *Normans*.

It was the habitation of the *Lucans*, extending from the Riuer *Sarno* to *Lauo*: it is a Territory rough and mountainous. Towards the Sea-coaſt are *Nico*, *Sorento*, *Maſſa*, *Almaſi*, and *Salerne*, the aire whereof is very temperate; in the vpland are *Caua*, *Nocera*, *San ſeuerino*, and more neere the Sea, *Peſte*, where Roſes blowe twice a yeare; *Agropoli*, *Poſſidoniat*, now *Licoſa*, *Policaſter*, *Capace Noni*, *Venoſa*, *Accella*, and *Melfi*, holden ſecond to *Naples*.

The places of moſt note therein are *Nizza*, hauing a Caſtle of great account, *Villa franca* a Hauen of great receite, but dangerous: *Monaco*, a notable fort, *Ventimilia*, a good Citty. The Champion of *Arbenga* is fertill, but the ayre infectious. *Finale* is a famous Lordſhip, *Noly* hath a conuenient harbour for ſhipping, but *Sauona* had a better, if the iealous *Genoeſi* had not choaked it. Lyguria.

The people are witty, actiue, high minded, tall of ſtature, and

Digitized by Google

of comely perſonage. They builde ſtately: At home they liue ſparingly, abroad magnificently.

Genoa, is now the Metropolitan Citty of the Prouince, and by reaſon of ſcituation was holden to bee one of the keyes of *Italy*. The people thereof were once very famous for their manifold victories, and great commaund by Sea, inſomuch that wraſtling with the *Venetians*, they had almoſt bereaued them of their eſtate & taking their City: But (Fortune fauoring the *Venetians*, and croſſing the *Genoiſe*, euen to their vtter vndoing) euer ſince this Citty hath declined, and that not onely in regard of their former defeature, and their continual and ciuil diſcords, but alſo, for that they haue giuen ouer their Traffick and care of their publicke good, and haue betaken themſelues to liue by vſury, retaile, and mechanicall Trades, altogether regarding their priuate benefit; whereupon, not being of puiſſance, as in former ages, to make good their actions, they were forced to put themſelues vnder the protection, ſometimes of the Kings of *France*, and ſometimes of the Duke of *Millaine*, and now vnder the *Spaniſh*.

Venice. In the very bottome of the *Adriatique*, called at this day, the Gulfe of *Venice*, is a ridge of Land, reaching from the Lime-hils, called by them *Fornaci*, to the mouth of the Riuer *Piane*, in forme of a Bow; and containeth in length thirty fiue miles; and in breadth two, where it is broadeſt, and in ſome places, no more then what an Hurquebuſh can ſhoote ouer. This ridge is parted and cut (what by the falling of Riuers & the working of the Sea) into ſeauen principall Ilandes: the Ports of *Brondolo*, of *Chiozza*, of *Malamoco*, of the three caſtles, of Saint *Eraſmus*, the *Lito Maggiore*, or great ſhore, and the Treports. Betweene that part of this ridge, which is called *Lito*, and the Continent, ſtandeth the Lake of *Venice*, in compaſſe ninety miles. In this Lake is ſeated the Citty of *Venice*, vppon 72. Ilandes, diſtant from the ſhore two miles, and from the firme land fiue; deuided with many Channels, ſome greater, ſome leſſer. It was begun to be built in the year 421. the 25. of March, about noone.

It increaſed in people, with the report of the *Hunnes* comming into *Italy*, and more, afterwardes by the deſolation of

Aqui-

Digitized by Google

Aquileya, and the bordering Citties; as *Padoa*, and *Monſelice* deſtroyed by *Agilulfus*, King of *Lombardie*. Some are of opinion, that anciently the Lake reached vppe as high as *Oriago*, which ſtandeth vppon the *Brent*: which beeing true, then was *Venice* tenne miles diſtant from the Continent. The Cittie, amongſt many other Channels which doe incircle it, is deuided by one maine Channell (for his largeneſſe, called the *Grand Canale*) into two partes, whereof the one part looketh South-weſt, the other North-eaſt. This Channell in his winding, maketh the forme of the Letter S. backward: And it is the more famous for the admirable proſpect of ſo many moſt curious and goodly Pallaces, as are built all the length of it on either ſide, to the aſtoniſhment of the beholders. Some report, that the Channell was the bed of the olde Riuer *Brenta*, which it made before the courſe thereof was turned, by making the banke of *Leccia fuſina*, and to broke out and emptied it ſelfe by the mouth, which is called the three Caſtles. On the middle of this Channell, ſtandeth the bridge of *Rialto*, built firſt of wood, but in our time reedified and built of ſtone, and that with ſuch excellency of workmanſhip, that it may iuſtly bee numbred amongſt the beſt contriued Edifices of Europe. This Bridge, ioyneth together the two moſt and beſt frequented parts of the Citty, the *Rialto*, and Saint *Markes*. Many leſſe Channels fal into this, which are paſſed ouer, either by Bridges, or Boates appointed for that purpoſe. The Citty hath in circuit ſeauen miles, and yeeldeth an ineſtimable reuenue. About the Citty, eſpeciall North-ward, lye ſcattered heere and there in the Lake, ſeauentie fiue other Ilands, the cheefe whereof, are *Murano* and *Burano*, both for circuit, building, and number of Inhabitants. Eſpecially *Murano*, abounding all ouer with goodly houſes, Gardens, and a thouſand other obiects of delight and pleaſure. Heere are theſe ſo famous Glaſſe-houſes, where ſo many admirable inuentions in that kind are made in Gallies. Tents, Organs, and ſuch like; whereof the quantitie yearely vented, amounteth to 60000. Crownes.

Now the Citty of *Venice*, which from her Infancy hath maintained her ſelfe free, and as a Virgine, for one thouſand and three hundred yeares, and that hetherto hath beene in-

Digitized by Google

touched with any iniury of Warre or Rapine, amongst other aduantages required in the scituation of a Citty, hath those two which are required in a well seated Cittie, whereof hauing already discourſed in the scite of England, wee will heere surceaſe further to dilate off. The safty then of this Cittie, groweth from the Waters, and the scituation thereof in the Water, where neither it can bee well approached or assaulted by Land, for the interpoſition of the Water betweene it and the Land: nor yet by Sea, for that the streames are not nauygable, but by Veſſels of the leſſer size onely: for greater ships riding out of the Channels (where the Water is some-what deepe) would driue, and riding out of the Channels, with euery turning water would be on ground. So that a Nauy of leſſer shipping would do no good, and greater shipping cannot wel there be mannaged. In concluſion, theſe Waters are rather made for the places, and intertainement of peace, then for motions of warre. We may adde to theſe difficulties (which nature and the scituation doe preſent) another as great, which ariſeth from the power and prouiſions of the Cittie, which are euer ſuch as will better inable the Inhabitants to offend another in thoſe Waters, then any man can inuent to offend them. All which young *Pepin* taſted to his loſſe.

Who with his ſhips and men fild all the Coaſt,
From the Fornaci *to the greater ſhore,*
And laid a bridge to paſſe his ventrous Hoaſt,
From Malamocco *all the Channell ore,*
Euen to Rialto: *yet for all this boaſt*
Hee's faine to fly with ſhame: the Seas do drowne
His men: His Bridge, the Waues haue beaten downe.

And laſtly we may adde the continuall Art and care which the Seigniory doth vſe, euer to augment ſomething to the fortification of this their Citty and State.

Diuiſion of the State of Venice.

The whole Dominion of the *Ven.* Seigniory, is diuided into *Firme-land* and *Sea*. By the *Firme-land*, we vnderſtand all that which they poſſeſſe in *Lombardy*, in *Marca Treuiſana*, and in *Friuli*; for that all thoſe parcels doe make one continuated Countrey, paſſable from one to the other, without helpe of Sea. We will tearme that Sea, which confineth with the Lake

Sea-

Digitized by Google

Sea-ward, or that which cannot bee approached without passing by Water. This State is againe diuided into Continent and Iland. On the Continent they haue *Istria*, *Dalmatia*, *Schiauonia*, *Albania*, or at least some partes thereof: The Ilandes stand partly within the Gulfe, not farre distant from the Continent, and part of them are without the Gulfe; which are *Corfu*, *Cephalonia*, *Zante*, *Candia*, *Cerigo*, *Tine*, and other in the *Adriatique*.

The State of the firme Land, containeth one of the Marquisats of *Italie*; to wit, *Treuisa*, which besides the head Cittie whereof, it taketh its Name, hath also in it, the Cities of *Feltre*, *Belluno*, and *Ceneda*. It hath moreouer, two of those Cities which are of the first rancke of the Cities in *Italy*: namely, *Venice* and *Brescia*. Nor, let it seeme strange to any man, that I reckon *Bresia* amongst the saide Cities, considering, that for largenesse of Territory it giueth place to no Citty through *Italie*; containing in length one hundred miles, and in bredth fiftie. Considering also the number of Inhabitants, and the entrade it yeeldeth to the Seigniory, besides the priuate reuennue of the Cittie it selfe; In all which, few other Citties come neere it.

There is also in the firme Land the Citty of *Verona*, called so for its supereminent conditions, as *Verè vna*. And is the first of the second ranke of Cities of *Italy*.

The Citty of *Padoa*, which for goodnesse of Soile, exceedeth *Bologna* it selfe. There is also the Cities of *Bergamo*, *Vicenza*, and *Crema*. There is againe the State of *Friuly*, with two honourable Cities; *Vdine*, where the Lieutenant of the State resideth and Ciuidall; besides, a number other populous Townes, little inferiour to Cities. Lastly, there is the fruitfull *Polesine*, which the Noble Citty of *Rouigo* therein, with other places of good respect.

If we consider the Water, there are few States of *Italie*, that hath more aboundance in that kinde, eyther for standing Waters or Riuers. In the Territory of *Bergamo* in the Lake of *Iseo*; in the Countrey of *Brescia*, the Lake of *Idro*. In the *Veroneſſe* and *Brescian*, is the Lake of *Gùardo*. It is also watered with many great Riuers, that not onely serue to make the fields

Digitized by Google

fruitful, but also to fortify the place. And those riuers are, *Oglio*, *Chiese*, *Nauilio*, *Muncio*, *Seri*, *Mela*, and *Garza*; which indeede is rather a Mountaine *Bourne*, then a Riuer, &c. The Countrey of *Polesine* and *Padoa*, are so stored with Lakes and Riuers, that therein is no Burg or place which standeth not within fiue miles of some fresh Water. And all this Countrey of the Firme-Land (whereof I haue spoken) is also for Ayre exceeding wholesome and temperate, as the complections and cheerefull countenances of the Inhabitants can well witnesse, together, with the quicknesse of their apprehension and wit, as well for matter of Armes as learning.

Touching the Land, this State hath in it many partes that are very diuers in quality, some-where exceeding happy and fruitfull, but lesse industry in the people: other-where, the people are exceeding industrious, but the ground defectiue. Againe, some patts there are, where both the people are exceeding carefull and industrious, and the Soyle also good. Of the first sort, is the Territory of *Crema*, of *Padoa*, of *Vicenza*, of *Treuisa*, and the *Polesine*.

Of the second sort, is the Countrey of the *Bergomasche*, the *Veronese*, and *Friuli*.

Of the third sort, is the Countrey of *Brescia*. And touching the first, it is almost incredible what the riches and increase is of those groundes; what fresh Meddowes, what fruitfull arables, what aboundance of Cattle, of flesh, of all thinges that come of Milke; what plenty of Corne, of Pulse, of Fruite, Wood, Flaxe, Linnen, and Fish. Amongst all which particularities, the *Padoan* dooth notwithstanding excell; which for goodnesse of Soyle, doth carry the praise from all the rest of *Lombardy*. The wealth of this Territory may hence be coniectured, that it hath the richest Bishoppricke and Prebendaries of *Italy*. It hath one of the richest Abbaies of Saint *Benet* in *Italy*, which is Saint *Iustina*. It hath one of the most beautifull Conuents of the same order (viz:) that of *Praxa*. It hath the richest Monastery, belonging to the *Austen-Friers*, which is that of *Candiana*. It hath two of the greatest Churches that may be found in *Italy*, which are, S. *Iustina*, and S. *Anthonie*, with one of the greatest Customes of Salt in Europe.

In

Digitized by Google

In the time of the *Romaine* Common-wealth, no Citty of the Empire had more Knights of *Rome*, then had *Padoa*. For that (as *Strabo* teſtifieth) there were ſome-times counted fiue hundred of them at once. Which muſt needs proceede from the extraordinary goodneſſe of the Soyle, and the greatneſſe of priuate liuely-hoods. But at this day, the greatneſſe of the *Venetian* Nobility, hath in great part diminiſhed the Nobility of othet Citties. Amongſt which, *Aquileia* in old time, took in compaſſe twelue miles, and made 120. thouſand Cittizens. And *Rauenna* which was ſcituated in a Lake (as *Venice* is) was once of ſuch reſpect, that it was thought fit, and choſen firſt by *Honorius*, and afterwardes by the *Gothes* and *Exarches*, for the Seate of the Empire. In our daies, by the comiration of *Cambray*, it was beſiedged by *Maximillian*, with ſeauen hundred French Lances, 1200. men at Armes, *Italians* 18000 *Dutch* foote, 6000. *Spaniards*, 2000. *Italians* in pay, and 600. Aduenturers of diuers Nations, with a huge quantity of Artillery, and all other Munition. Againſt this force, the Seigniory oppoſed as great a force for defence, and put into the Citty ſixe hundred men at Armes, 1500. light Horſe, as many *Carabines*, vnder very expert commaundes: And for foot, they had aboue 12000. *Italians*, other 10000. drawne out of the Gallies, a great number of Gentlemen of *Venice*, & Peaſants of the Countrey without number; together with an Army of ineſtimable quantity of Munition and victuall. With which quantity of men and prouiſions, the greatneſſe of their works and fortifications well aunſwered. Now, there being about and in *Padoa*, two ſo great and populous Armies, one to aſſault it, another to defend it, and that this infinite number of Horſe on both ſides, did neuer ceaſe from bothalling and forraging the Countrey about, ſetting fire on all that they could not carry away, and that the Peaſants had alſo conueyed away as much as they could into the Citty, and the adioyning holds, yet did neyther of theſe Armies euer want victuals during all that ſiedge.

And yet as fruitfull as is *Padoa*, the Countrey of *Crema* is no whit behind it, for all things; for ſtore and fineneſſe of flax, beyond it. Of *Poleſine* it ſhall onely ſuffice to ſay, that it holdeth

Digitized by Google

deth the like proportion with *Padoa*. The Country of *Vicenza*, hath the Champion exceeding fat, and for that part thereof which is hilly, few Countries come neere it for pleasantnesse. It leaneth its shoulders vppon the *Alpes*: it hath on the right hand the new Riuer, on the left, *Bronta*, in the midst of it runs *Bacchilion*, *Remon*, &c. It is the Garden of *Venice*.

The Territory of *Treuisa*, as it cannot be reckoned amongst the fertilleſt, yet it is numbred amongst the pleasanteſt.

Now the Countries where the industry of the people is more then the goodnesse of the Soile, are those of *Verona*, *Bergamo*, and *Friuli*. For in the *Bergamash*, there is more then fortie Miles of Mountaine: the *Veroneſe* hath many Miles of Champian, altogether barren and sandy. The like hath *Friuli*, whence it commeth that these parts are much subiect to dearths, and scarsity of Corne, but what they want in Bread, is recompenced in Wine aboundantly; so that as I vnderstand, the Iland alone of *Scala*, which is one great Village in the *Veroneſſe*, doth rent in this commodity, to the number of fifty thousand Crownes yearely. Nor are they destitute of very good Wooll, whereof they of *Verona* doe weaue Clothes and Felts. The *Burgamash*, an infinite quantity of *Dornix*, besides broadcloths and Kersies, which they vent partly into *Lombardy*, and partly into *Almaigne*.

The fruitfulnesse of the Soyle, and industry of the people together, is notably discouered in the Territory of *Breſcia*, insomuch that I beleeue that no part of *Italy* in these two points, can be compared thereto for opulency & plenty, in those parts which for goodnesse of Soile we count to be fertill. There is no priuate mans Garden for art and gracefulnesse of compartement, or order more equisitly cast, or more diligently planted, or more neatly kept and dressed, then this whole Territory.

Now touching that part of the *Breſcian* Territory that is vnfruitfull, impossible it were to declare the diligence and art that is there vsed, for plowing of the Mountaines, & for planting of Vines throughout the said Mountaines. But a sufficient Testimony thereof will be, that the barrenneſt part of this Territorie, is no lesse well inhabited, then is the best. In the

Towne

Digitized by Google

Towne of *Cardone* alone it is knowne, that if neede require, they are able in one day to make two hundred Harquebuſhes at all pointes out of the Maſſe, although there be no Harquebuſh but goeth through leſſe, then ten hands at the leaſt. No Iron is brought in more then groweth in the Countrey, and yet little goeth out vnwrought. Some is ſold made into barres, but moſt into wares. In the Cittie of *Breſcia*, are accounted more then two hundred Smiths Shops, of which, fifty at leaſt are Cutlers.

There are alſo ſome Iron Mines in *Val Comonica*, which yeild Water for ſixe Furnaces, and ſixe Milles, in which they make Plate for Armour. In the Citty of *Cordone* are made in great quantity, Swordes, Daggers, Halberds, Kniues, and other like Weapons: In the Marquiſate of *Treuiſa*, great quantity of excellent Steele, and ſo in *Alphaga Soldo*, and in *Cador*, exceeding good Swordes are wrought in *Belluno*, *Feltre*, and *Seravalle*.

The Dominion which the *Venetians* hath by Sea, is of two kinds, as hath formerly been ſaid; partly *Continent*, and partlie *Ilands*. The greateſt Territory of the Continent is *Iſtria*, and the beſt, vnleſſe it were for the Ayre thereof, is naturally vnwholeſome, or rather to ſpeake freely, contagious, and peſtilent, eſpecially about *Pola*. For which caſe, that it grow not to be diſinherited, the Seigniories alloweth to al men that wil dwell there, a certaine quantity of Land, with diuers immunities and priuiledges beſides. It yeildeth great aboundance of Oyle, Fiſh, and Salt. Of the Sea, & firſt of the Continent.

Dalmatia, *Sclauonia*, and *Albania*, affoord excellent wines: and in theſe quarters, partly by the commodiouſneſſe of the Sea, and partly by reaſon of the intertainement and pay that runnes there amongſt the Gariſons, the carefull induſtrie of the Inhabitants, the people liue indifferently well there.

The Ilandes belonging to this State, and lying within the Gulfe, are not many. The names of them are *Veggia*, *Arbe*, *Brazza*, *Pago*, *Lieſina*, *Curzola*, *Liſſa*, with the Ilands of *Zara* and *Seſa*. They all yeelde in generall, Wines of reaſonable goodneſſe. *Cherſo*, with ſome other, doe exceede for plenty of Cattle, Milke, meates, and Wooll. *Pago* hath Salt-pits, and Of the Ilandes of the Gulfe.

Digitized by Google

Salt-pits, and yeelde great profits. *Veggia* hath ſtore of Pulſe, light Vines, Wood, and Horſe, though ſmall. They are all beautified with Hauens, excepting *Arbe*, which defect is there recompenced with the naturall pleaſantneſſe of the Countrey. They haue very rich Fiſhings; eſpecially *Leſina*, whoſe Sea yeildeth Pilchers in great abundance. The greateſt of theſe Ilands is *Leſina*, containing in compaſſe fiftie miles. The beſt peopled is *Curzola*: The moſt delicious, *Arbe*: and both with the partes of the Continent ouer againſt them, whereof we ſpake before, do yeeld great number of ſeruiceable men for the field and the Gallies.

Of the Ilandes out of the Gulfe.

It remaineth to ſpeake of the Ilands out of the Gulfe. Of which the firſt in order, is *Corfu*, for commodiouſneſſe of ſcituation of great account. For it lieth in a manner in the very center of all the Sea-Dominions belonging to this State, betweene the *Adriatique* and the *Ionique* Seas, equally diſtant from *Venice*, and *Candy*. In which reſpect, it ſtandeth fitly both to hinder an Enemy that would aſſault the Ilands, and Continent within the Gulfe, and to releeue *Candy*, if it were diſtreſſed. It alſo lyeth fitly to defend all the Weſterne parts, and to moleſt the Eaſt. It ſtandeth in ſo excellent a Seat, for the defence of *Italy*, that it may properly bee tearmed the *Baſtion* thereof. It ſtandeth well alſo for the Conqueſt of *Greece*, bordering vpon it, as it were a ſtrong Mount or Caballier. It ſtandeth opportunely for the receit, releeuing and vniting of the Forces and Nauies of Chriſtendome againſt the Infidell. And albeit the Iland be not very plentifull in graine, yet thorough the vicinity thereof to *Puglia*, and *Epire*, and the facile tranſportation it hath to *Venice* and *Cicill*, it cannot want any neceſſaries. The experience whereof, hath beene manifeſted both in the time of the *Romans*, and in our daies alſo. The *Romane* Fleete made head alwaies at *Corfu*. There alſo in the ciuill warres betwixt *Cæſar* and *Pompey*, did ride M. *Bibulus Pompeis* Generall. And in our memory, the forces of the league concluded by *Paule* the third, and *Pius* the fift, did there aſſemble, and from thence ſet forward.

The Iland was of ſo powerfull an eſtate, that it armed ſixty Veſſels to Sea. It aboundeth with excellent Oyle, Wine, Waxe,

Digitized by Google

Waxe, Hony, and fruits of all ſorts. All which commodities, it hath in that goodneſſe and protection, that better in the ſame kind, are not to be found through the whole World. It hath in length ſixtie Miles, twenty Miles ouer, and in circuit 120. It hath three places of great importance; to wit, the old Citty, neere the old Seat of *Pagiopili*; the new Fort, & thereto adioyning the Caſtle Saint *Angelo*, beſides ſixtie and eyght Townes.

Next in order, is *Cephalonia* containing in cõpaſſe 160. miles. It hath two hundred Townes, with Hauens belonging vnto them: Two whereof *Argoſtoli* and *Guiſcardo*, are moſt famous; the third is *Nallo*. It yeeldeth ſtore of Graine, Oyle, Sheepe, Cheeſe, Wooll, Honie, and Currants, and theſe in ſuch plenty, that thereby it receiueth great and yearely reuennues. *Candia*, is likewiſe one of the moſt renowned Ilands of the *Mediterranean*. It containeth in length two hundred ſixty miles, in breadth fifty, and in compaſſe, in regard of the many promontories, it maketh almoſt ſixe hundred. It yeeldeth great plentie of Wine, with vs called *Malueſies*; Cheeſe and Hony. It is ſeated ſo conueniently, and with ſuch aduantage for Marrine occurrances, that *Ariſtotle* cenſured it, to be Ladie of the Sea. His reaſon, becauſe it lyeth very neere the middle, betweene *Europe* and *Aſia*, and betweene *Greece* and the Ilandes of the *Archipelago*, which in a manner Court her as their Miſtris and Soueraigne. It lieth from *Conſtantinople* three hundred and fifty miles, from *Alexandria* and *Soria* 500. from *Caramania*, *Epire*, and *Ciprus*, three hundred, from *Affrique* 200.

There remaine behinde two other Ilands, *Cerigo* and *Tine*. Of which *Cerigo* containeth in compaſſe ſixtie miles. In ſcituation it is Mountainous, hauing one good Citty, ſeated on the top of a Hill. It hath two Hauens, one called, *Delphino*; the other *Tine*. That looketh North, this South. It hath beſides diuers Creekes, but narrow and vnſafe: with the ancients it was of good eſteeme; for *Leon* of *Sparta* conſidering well the Seate and quality of the place, wiſhed that eyther it had neuer beene; or beeing, it had beene drowned, as ſoone as it had beene made. Which wiſh, as things afterwardes fell out,

Digitized by Google

wrought him a great opinion of wisedome, and fore-sight. For *Romaratus*, who was banished from *Sparta*, and soiourned with *Zerxes*, counselled him to bring vp all his Nauy vnto this Iland, if hee meant to impatronize himselfe of *Greece*; as hee might easily haue beene, if he had followed that counsaile, as in fewe yeares after did *Nicius*, Generall of the *Athenians*, in the war of *Peloponesus*. In our time it is called the Lanthorne of the *Archipelago*.

Tine is in the midst of the *Archipelago*, sixe miles from *Delos* (round about which *Delos*, lye the *Cyclades*, in number fifty three.) It hath in circuit fortie miles, with one great and populous Citty. And by reason of the Scite which is on a Hill, very strong, very many Townes it hath besides. And heere with endeth the Sea-Dominion of the *Venetian*. In all which, there are little lesse then three hundred and fifty thousand Soules. Which number perhaps is greater, then a man at first woulde beleeue, especially if hee consider withall, how some of these parts, as *Sclauonia*, are not very fruitfull: and many of the Ilands are barren; besides the terror of the Turkish incursions. Insomuch, that if these Countries were vnder any other L. then the *Venetian*, they wold surely be desarted. But the Seigniorie, with intertaining peace with all their Neighbours, with building of Fortes, maintaining of Garrisons in places of necessity, and with exceeding expence of Money, keepe and maintaine their people in this sort, as at this day we see them inhabited.

Of the riches of the Venetians.

Faure reporteth, the *Venetians* to be exceeding rich: But besides opinion, there is great reason, why they should bee so indeede. First, they are Lordes of a large Territory, both by Land and Sea: but cheefely on Land: where they haue Citties of the best ranke of *Italy*, with large and opulent Territories adioyning vnto them, and full of people, industrious & thrifty. They haue also rich Bishopprickes, wealthy Abbies, with the fattest and most commodious benefices of *Italy*: Families both for Nobility and reuennue, worshipfull; and buildinges, for State and Magnificence, singuler. Besides which, they haue also very wealthy comminalties. Amongst which, to omit many, *Brescia* alone hath 18. thousand Crownes of yeare-

Digitized by Google

yearely reuenue: and *Asola* which is but a Towne, subiect to *Brescia*, ten thousand.

Another reason, is the great aduantage which the *Venetian* hath for Traffique, both in drawing vnto himselfe other mens Commodities, and in venting his owne. I call his owne Commodities, whatsoeuer is growing, or made within the State: or whatsoeuer Trade besides hee hath ingrossed, or by proscription of time appropriated to himselfe; This aduantage is maruellous great throughout the whole State of *Venice*, for that the firme Land on euery side, is full of Nauigable Riuers and Lakes. Besides, it is for the greater part a plaine Countrey, so that the conueyance of all sorts of Merchandize by Cart or by Horse, is very easie. They are also in possession of the Vallies and passages of the *Rhetian*, *Giulian*, and *Carmian Alpes*, by which lyeth all the Traffique betweene *Italy* and *Germany*.

The State of the Sea, is full of excellent, large, and safe Harbours, especially *Dalmatia*, and *Sclauonia*. The Ilandes haue the like, especially the greater ones, as *Corfu*, and *Candia*. But the flower of gaine, and emolument to the State, is the Traffique of the great Sea of *Soria* and *Ægypt*, which the *Venetian* had altogether in his hand, especially the ancient Traffique for Spice, which hath alwaies beene, and yet is, of great consequence vnto them. In some, all the Trade of Cloues, Nutmegs, Ginger, Cinnamon, Pepper, Waxe, Sugars, Tapestries, Cloathes, Silkes, and Lether, with all the Commodities of the East to passe this way, and are vttered from hence into the greatest part of *Italy*, and a good part of *Germany*. The greatnesse of this Trade, may the better bee perceiued by the greatnesse and multitude of priuate shipping, belonging to Cittizens and other Strangers, Merchants of *Venice*, & other Hauen-Townes belonging to the State: As also by the multitude and wealth of the saide Merchants, and of the great stirring and bartering, that is there euery day. In which kind the Merchants onely of the *Dutch* Nation, in *Venice* doe dispatch as much, as were thought sufficient to furnish a whole World. To which purpose I may not omit to note, that Cities of Traffique haue three degrees of difference; for eyther the

Digitized by Google

Trade lyeth by the Ware-house that dispatcheth by grosse; or by open Shoppes that doe retaile, or by both. Of this first sort, are *Lisbon*, *Cirill*, *Antwerpe*, *Amsterdam*, *Hamburgh*, *Dansh*, *Norimberg*; and in *Italie*, *Naples*, *Florence*, and *Genoa*. Of the second sort, are all the other Citties of *France* and *Germany*. And amongst the Citties of *Italie*, *Milan* is herein the cheefest; where there are to be seene Shoppes of all Wares so rich, and well furnished, that they may well serue for Megazins to many Citties. In both sortes, *Venice* goeth beyond all the Citties of *Italy*. For there are open Shoppes of infinite number, and the Ware-houses there, doe farre passe all other in *Italie*. So that this Cittie doth Traffique by way of Shop, as much as any other Citty, and by Ware-houses, more. And to conclude, putting both together, it is the Citty of greatest Traffique in Europe, and perhaps of the World. And ouer this, whereas wealth doth arise to euery Citty, by three waies; first, by profits of Dominion; secondly, by recourse from places, to Iustice: and thirdly by Merchandize; *Venice* is by all these waies continually inriched. First, the reuennue of the whole is brought to *Venice*, both of Firme-Land, and of the Sea: Secondly, all appeales and suites of importance through the whole State, doe come thether; and thirdly, *Venice* is as it were the center of the East and West, the Store-house of all that is produced by Sea or Land, and in summe, the receit of the whole wealth of *Asia* and *Europe*.

To set downe precisely the Reuennew of the State, is no easie matter: but a man may be bold to say, that it is held to be the greatest of any Prince Christian, except those of *Spaine* & *France*. But whatsoeuer it be, certaine it is, they doe lay vp euery yeare a great Masse, ouer and aboue their expences, notwithstanding, their incredible charge they are at in the *Arsenall*, in the building of Gallies, in Fortifications, in Garrisons, and Stipends. To this, the *Venetian* hath beene for these many yeares in continuall peace with all Princes: during which intermission, they haue set al their study to the augmenting of their Reuenues, whereby it is now credible, that hauing some yeares since discharged their debts, and disburthened themselues of the interests of the said Monies, they haue saued together

Digitized by Google

gether great quantity of Treasure. Besides which Treasure in ready Coyne, they haue another Treasure of no small consideration, and that is the wealth of the Citty, and the priuate substance of particulars, with the Reuennues of the greater Schooles, or as they tearme them, Hals; which the Commonwealth in her neede may vse as her owne. For that in occasions, some do giue voluntarily; others do lend franckly, or vpon light vse: And in the warre of *Cambray*, they gathered fiue hundred thousand Crowns, vpon the sale onely of certaine offices amongst them.

Now the *Venetian* Territory, for the extent of it, hath in length some-what aboue one thousand miles; and the breadth thereof answereth not to the length. But when soeuer they are drawne vnto seruice, they wage forraigne forces. And hereupon, they haue alwaies amongst them ten bands of *Albanesses* and *Croatians*: They keepe moreouer in entertainment, certaine Colonels of the *Swisses* and *Grisons*, with diuers Captaines besides, out of the State of the Church. In former times, they haue beene able to draw vnto their seruice such a Potentate as a Duke of *Vrbine*, vnto whom they committed the Lieutenancy and leading of their Armies, making as secure a vse of his forces, as of their owne. But aboue all thinges, they haue alwaies made right excellent vse of their leagus & confederacies with other States. In the league which they made with *Armadis de Launy*, cald commonly the Green Count, and with *Vbald* Earle of *Champaine*, with *Lewes* Earle of *Blois*, *Baldwine* Earle of *Flanders*, & *Boniface* Marquesse of *Mountferrat*, they first recouered *Zara*, and then entred vpon the protection of *Constantinople*: wherein they got for themselues three eyghts of the whole Conquest; and in particuler, the Citties of *Gallipoli*, *Modoni*, *Corone*, and *Durazzo*; with all the Ilands in those Seas, sauing a few, which lye before *Morea*. Amongst which Ilandes, *Candy* and *Corfu* fell to their shares, the greatest part whereof, they infeoffed to their priuate Gentlemen. The Cittie of *Constantinople* it selfe, remained to the Emperour, but not without a proportionable consideration made to the Seigniory. The strength of the State.

In the league made with *Azzo Viscont*, and the *Florentines*, against

Digitized by Google

against *Martin Scala*, they possessed themselues of *Treuegi*, *Bassane*, and *Castilbaldo*. Beeing confederated with *Mathias Coruinus*, King of *Hungarie*, and *G. Scanderbeg*, Prince of *Albania*, they made head against the *Ottoman* power. In another league contracted with the *Florentines* against the *Visconti*, they enlarged their Dominions within *Lombardy*. Lastly, in the conferation which they had with *Francis* the first, King of France, they re-entred vpon *Brescia* and *Verona*.

With their Money they haue also not a little aduanced their affaires. Of *Emanuell Palcologus*, they bought *Lepanto*, *Napoli*, and *Malualia*. Of *George Belsichius*, they had the Towne of *Scisarim* pawne, of Money lent him.

Neyther haue they beene wanting to helpe themselues with honourable pretences. In the warres which *Charles* the eyght King of France made vppon *Italie*, the *Venetians* vndertooke to stand Head and Protector of the common liberty; and in that pretence, made all Italy arme against him.

And because indeede, this State may, and is rightly helde for one maine Fort of *Italy* and Christendome beside, against the Turkish inuasions; therefore haue they had also in their assistance from time to time, the forces of the Church, and of the King of *Spaine*: of whom the daunger hath alwaies beene accounted common, and as neere vnto themselees.

Now, on the firme Land, they haue a continuall Ordinance of twentie and eight thousand Foote, with Captaines, Ensignes, & all other Officers inrolled & paid. They haue besides, to the number of foure thousand Muskaters, men well trained to that kinde of Weapon. For which occasions, they haue also their times of Musters yearely; partly to approue their experience, and partly to render such rewards as are due to the best deseruers. Of this multitude and their valour, the battaile fought at *Lepanto*, to the vtter rowting of the Turkish Nauie, is a sufficient Testimony. Besides these, they maintaine sixe thousand men at Armes, well mannaged and appointed, the like whereof is not to be found in all *Italie* besides.

Touching their Sea-forces, they haue on the firme Land ten thousand men inrolled to serue at the Ore: And of these kinde of Men, all *Dalmatia* and *Sclauonia*, doth yeelde them what numbers

Digitized by Google

numbers they will beſides; and that at a reaſonable hand.

The Cittie of *Venice* alone, armeth vppon occaſion fiftie Gallies, and *Candy*, forty.

What their whole power and forces euery way may amount vnto, they ſhewed in the warre of *Ferrara*: wherein they had on foote two ſeuerall Armies, one about *Ferrara*, the other on the Confines of *Milan*. They had at the ſame time beſides, two ſeuerall Nauies; the one vpon the *Po*; the other vpon the Sea, to obſerue the proceedings of *Naples*; and all this without aſſociats. In the warre againſt *Lewes* the twelfth King of France, their Armie was compoſed of 2000. men at armes, 3000. light Horſe, and thirty thouſand foote. In the yeare 1570. they armed forth one hundred and fiftie leſſer Gallies, eleauen great Gallies, one Gallioon, and twentie fiue tall ſhips: albeit that number, by occaſion of Peſtilence happening in the Nauy, was reduced to one hundred and twentie, and ſeauen leſſer Gallies, and foureteene Shippes, the other Veſſels remaining vntoucht; like as had befalne them before, in the yeare 36. when as they had the name onely to make one part of three: but indeed they made a full halfe of all the Chriſtian forces beſides.

But becauſe there is nothing that can giue more certaine coniecture of the power of any State, then to haue ſuſtained and gone through with great and perillous warres, it will not be vnpleaſant to ſet downe ſome of their moſt important actions, which in that kinde they haue ſupported.

Anciently they had warre with the Kinges of France, and in that war they diſcomfited *Pepin*, Son to *Charlemaigne*. They warred afterward with the King of *Hungarie* and tooke from them the Townes which they now hold in *Dalmatia* and *Sclauony*. They fell at debate with the Emperors of *Conſtantinople*, and gat from them the Citties of *Salonichi*, and of *Moria*. One the moſt daungerous warre that they euer had, was that which they mannaged with the *Genois*: and yet at length, ſuch was the yſſue thereof, that howſoeuer, hauing loſt to the Enemy *Chiozza*, and were neere driuen to their vtter deſolation, yet was the enemy too farre off from gayning an intire victorie vpon them, that in the purſuit thereof, he moſt of all deſtroy-

Digitized by Google

ed himselfe: insomuch that hauing for maintenance of that warre engaged the reuenues of the State to Saint *George*, and so by little and little, through feebleneſſe growing vpon them, were compelled to throw the Citty within the armes and protection, sometimes of Fraunce, and sometimes of *Millan*; so that to this day they could neuer recouer their Priſtinat fortunes.

Then had they to doe with the *Viſconti*, Princes of *Milan*, whose was at that dreadfull through *Italie*: yet by that War, the *Venetian* not onely gained profit, but honor also.

They opposed themselues against all the Princes of *Italie* in the prosecution of *Ferrara*, and that with such succeſſe, that in fine they annexed to their owne Dominion, all the *Poleſinie* of *Rauiſo*. And after they had irritated the Princes of *Italie*, these letted not to draw vpon themselues a warre, vndertaken by all the Potentates of Christendom, combined against them in the confederation concluded at *Cambray*: which warre, as it was the most hapleſſe and diſpairefull that euer they mannaged, through the miscarriages of their Armies at *Carrauaggio*, at *Breſcia*, and at *Vicenza*: yet in the end they remained Lords still of their owne, and of beeing conquered, at last remained with Conqueſt.

They haue for many ages together, waged warre with the Turke, especially with *Amurath* the second: *Mahomet* the second; with *Baiazeth*, and with *Zelim* the second. They maintained a sixteen yeares warres with *Mahomet* the second, euen him which had the fortune to haue subdued two Empires, *Conſtantinople* and *Trapiſond*; to haue destroied twelue Kingdomes, and to haue sacked two hundred Citties. Which War they finished, although not altogether to their profit.

They held wars for seauen yeares without intermiſſion with all the Princes of Christendome, and went away Winners: neyther in all these occasions were they destitute, either of Men or Money.

In our memory they warred with *Selim* the second, and in that warre they disburſed aboue twelue Millions of Money. The like exceſſiue summes they spent in their Warres with *Michaell*, Emperour of *Conſtantinople*; in the enterprize of *Ferrara*,

Digitized by Google

rara, and in the war vndertaken of the conderacie at *Cambray*. All which ſo ineſtimable ſummes, notwithſtanding at this day, whether they were parcels of their owne Treaſure, or lones of Money from others, they haue re-imburſed or extinguiſhed.

The Princes that border and confine vpon the *Venetian*, are theſe. The *Turke*, the King of *Spaine*, the *Pope*, and the houſe of *Auſtria*. Of Neighbors

As touching the *Turke*, whoſe State and power hath been ſo regarded in the Worlds opinion, he ſeemeth at this time rather to bee impaired, then otherwiſe. Whereof, one great ſigne is, his protraction of the Warre in *Hungary* theſe many yeares, with Armies of much better quality, then any his predeceſſors were wont to lead or ſend thither. Whereuppon it hath happened, that not onely his forces haue oftentimes bin broken and diſcomfited, but alſo the Prince himſelf hath hardly eſcaped, from beeing taken or ſlaughtered; if on our partes there had beene other better Chiefes to temporize with him, or more agreement in thoſe Heads, to aſſaile him. Notwithſtanding, he hath there loſt the Townes of *Filech*, *Lippa*, *Rab*, and *Strigonia*, places of great conſideration. Hee hath alſo the ſecond time loſt *Giauarine*. Theſe loſſes doe more then counteruaile the winning of *Agria* from vs, being a fortreſſe of many knowne impertections for ſcite and building, beſides the with-drawing of *Tranſiluania* and *Valachia* from his ſubiection, with the alienation of many rich Prouinces in *Aſia*.

The State of theſe preſents conſidered, the *Venetian* for that part of his Dominion, that confineth vpon the Turke, had neuer more cauſe to think himſelfe better ſecured from violence, eſpecially hauing all Maritime Townes, both by Sea and Land gallantly fortified: which ſtrength is alſo the greater, by the facility, the Sea affoordeth to ſuccor his owne, and to diſtreſſe his Enemy.

Touching the King of *Spaine*, vppon whom they doe border, as well in the *Adriatique*, as in *Lombardy*, it is now more then threeſcore yeares, that there hath beene any variance at all befalne them. Neyther in truth can it turne the *Venetian* to

Digitized by Google

any great gaine to haue warre with ſo powerfull a King; nor the King of *Spaine* to make warre in *Italy*; where by putting things in vprore and tumult, hee might perhaps hazzard ſome part of his owne.

For that warre (as *Emanuell* Duke of *Sauoy* was wont to ſay) hath ſomething of the nature of Dice, which no man knoweth how they will run.

I may ſay as much of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, Princes that do exceedinglie cheriſh and affect quietneſſe, wherewith they are become great, and with the ſame meanes doe maintaine their greatneſſe.

Of the Church, it were alike ſuperfluous to ſpeake; for that neither Saint *Peter* can make any excuſe to make warre vpon S. *Marke*, nor will S. *Marke* ſeeke to trouble him.

In ſome, the *Venetian* hath two many aduantanges aboue all other Princes: The one is that they haue a counſell that is immortall; the other, that the heart of the State cannot bee pierced vnto by any Enemy. And ſo conclude, that the Pope and the *Venetian* at this time are more potent, and of greater antiquitie in *Italy*, then euer heeretofore they haue beene; not onely for that the Pope hath a more ample Territory, and that but little incumbred with petty Lordſhips, and that the *Venetian* hath his Dominion better fortified, and his Coffers fuller then in times paſt; but alſo in regard that the States of *Naples* and *Millan* are in the handes of a Prince, abſent and farre off, and therefore circumſpect to raiſe innouations.

Lumbardy, anciently called *Ciſalpina*, extendeth from *Panaco* vnto *Seſia*, lying betweene the *Apenine* and the *Alpes*. *Marca Trinigiana*, ſome-time called *Venetia*, lyeth betweene the *Menzo* and the *Po*. Moſt commonly both Prouinces paſſe vnder the name of *Lumbardy*, becauſe there the Kings of the *Longabards* ſeated their dwellings, then in any other place of *Italy*. Beſides, the ſoyle, the ayre, and the Inhabitants, hold ſuch correſpondency, that they ought not to be diſtinguiſhed. This is the richeſt and ciuilleſt Prouince of *Italy*; for, ſuch another peece of ground for beautifull Citties, goodly Riuers, fieldes, and paſtures, for plentie of Foule, Fiſh, Graine, Wine, and Fruites, is not to be found againe in all our Weſterne World;

ariſing

Digitized by Google

ariſing partly by the eaſe of Nauigable Riuers, as *Teſino*, *Adda*, *Oglio*, *Menzo*, *Adige*, and *Po*: partly by Channels cut out of thoſe Riuers, and partly by the great Lakes of *Verbano*, *Lario*, and *Benaco*. No leſſe Commoditity ariſeth by the plaines paſſable for Cartes, Mules, and other carriage.

The greatneſſe likewiſe of the Lordes of *Lumbardy*, hath bin a great furtherance thereto. For while the *Viſconti* raigned, this State maintained warres of great importance againſt moſt puiſſant Princes. And for the Empiry heereof, happened thoſe notable warres of our daies, betweene the Emperour and the French King. And no maruell, that two ſuch puiſſant Potentates, contended with ſo great effuſion of bloud for this Dukedome: for though to many it ſhould not ſeeme great, yet in very truth, for the wealth of the Country, and the quantity, it hath beene of as great reputation, as ſome Realmes of *Europe*. Some Dukes whereof haue poſſeſſed greater Territory, enioyed wealthier reuennues, and haue beene more puiſſant in wars, and more honourable in peace, then diuers Princes, graced with kingly Titles.

Amongſt the Citties of theſe Prouinces (accounting *Venice* amongſt the Iſlandes) *Millan* without Controuerſie holdeth the precedency. It is able to leuie neere 200000. perſons, and hath a large and populous Territory. A Cittie (ſaith *Guicciardin*) moſt populous and rich in Cittizens, plentifull in Marchants and Artificers, proud in pomps, and ſumptuous in ornaments for men and Women; naturally addicted to feaſtinges and pleaſure, and not onelie full of reioycing and ſolace, but alſo moſt happy in all other nature of contentment for the life of man.

The ſecond Citty of *Lumbardy*, is *Breſcia*, not for compaſſe, or multitude of people, for it is not able to make 50000. men, but by reaſon of the large iuriſdiction thereof, comprehending therein many large Townes, and populous Champaines, therefore cenſured to be able in all to leuy 350000. men. Among the Townes ſubiect thereto, *Aſalo* and *Salo* haue the preheminence: amongſt the Vallies *Valcamonia*, beeing fiftie miles in length, and therewith populous and full of Iron Mines. *Bologna* (if it pleaſe you to account it in *Lumbardy*) and *Verona* are

Digitized by Google

are alike populous: *Verona* is larger and of more beauty: *Bologna* more rich and commodious: as well for that it hath a larger Territory, as also for that there is no Citty that dooth more absolutely enioy her owne commodities, and doth more freely partake of others, by the great resort of Courtiers, Clergy-men, and Officers dispersed through all the Ecclesiasticke State. To which, three thinges are much auaileable: the Vniuersity, where al professions are practised; their wealth, which is equally diuided; and lastly, their inclination and patience to take paines, and do seruice.

Betweene *Verona* and *Padoa*, there is no great difference in respect of circuit; but *Verona* hath double the people. Whereof the *Venetians* to supply that defect, do as much as they may, grace their Vniuersity and the Schollers. As in this Prouince the Citties are great and beautifull, so are the fortresses many & impregnable. And whereas other Prouinces haue their places of strength on their Frontiers, in this, the neerer you approach the center, the stronger shall you see the Country planted and fortified.

Hungary.

Hungary, for the plentie where-with it aboundeth of all thinges, both for vse & pleasure, may be numbred amongst the most fertile Kingdomes of Europe. In it are found fruites of as much variety and goodnesse, as in *Italy*: Corne sufficient to sustaine the Inhabitantes; Wine to furnish their neighbours (*Poland, Silesia, Morauia, Bohemia*) Fish in such plenty, that Straungers borrow of their aboundance from them, and out of *Valachia* (before the losse of *Agria* in 96.) were Beeues driuen into *Italy*, and all parts of *Germanie*, which now find a present want in their former prouision thorough the Turkes stopping of that passage.

The *Hungarian* Horse, by nature are not improper for war, be-

Digitized by Google

beeing couragious, ſtrong, hardy, and ſwift, but for want of mannagement they fit no ſeruice but trauaile, to which the *Italian* Hackney-men, and *Almain* Coachmen, find them excellent.

Hungarland is deuided by the Riuer *Danubius*, into two partes: the one Mountainous; and therefore called the vpper *Hungarland*, abounding in Golde, Siluer, and Copper-Ore; the other, neather *Hungarland*, plaine, without Hils, and called for the firtility thereof, the Store-houſe of *Italy* and *Germany*. The *Metropolitan* Citty of that part of *Hungarland* that obeyeth the Emperor, is *Poſſonium*; little, and not very beautifull, no more then are *Strigonium*, *Coſſouia*, *Nitria*, *Teruanio*, or any other Citties of *Hungarland*: a reaſon whereof may be, that the Gentlemen, haue their Houſes in the Countrey, and the Cittizens are more ſtudious to builde for vſe, then for pompe.

It confineth toward the North with *Poland* and *Morauia*: on the Eaſt, lyeth *Tranſiluania* and *Valachia*; on the South, *Bulgaria*, *Seruia*, *Boſnia*, *Sclauonia*, and *Croatia*: and towards the Weſt, it is ioyned to *Stiria* and *Auſtria*; two thirdes of it poſſeſſed by the Turke. The Inhabitantes bee of ſtature and complection not vnlike the Engliſh, but in habit reſembling the poore Iriſh; in warre ſtrong, valiant, and patient; couetous aboue meaſure, yet hauing rather deſire then art to enrich themſelues, permitting (of negligence) the *Germans* to inhabit in their Citties, and to Traffick their Merchandize; a cauſe why none of them riſe by their owne induſtry to any great wealth. They neuer combate amongſt themſelues, but reuenge iniuries with words, except vpon obiection of Cowardice, whereof the charged is neuer disburthened, vntill he haue prooued himſelfe in ſinguler combate with a Turke. It hath beene an auncient cuſtome amongeſt them, that none ſhould weare a Feather, but he who hath killed a Turke, to whom it was lawfull to ſhew the number of his ſlaine Enemies, by the number of Feathers in his Cappe. They punniſh Adultery and Fornication with death: the Husband forcing his Wife, the Father his Daughter, and the Brother his Siſter, to the place of Execution. The Sonnes inhabit equally after the death of

their

Digitized by Google

their Fathers, occupying for the moſt part the poſſeſſions left them in common. The Daughters haue the value of the part of the Landes in Money. They are deſirous of warres aboue meaſure, they admit no vnprofitable man into their Camp, but ſuch as hold Seruants, are ſerued with men. They march in troopes both Horſe and Foote lodging apart, but not in that good order, which is vſed by the *Germans*, who diſtinguiſh both their Companies and Regiments into ſtreetes, placing their baggage at their backes, or flankes, according to the neceſſity of the Citty. They goe on round, neyther in theyr Camps nor Townes, but inſteed thereof, one Sentinell whoppeth to another, as in like caſe do the Turkes. The Horſemen in battell, range themſelues in files after the *German* order, as do alſo their foot, placing all their ſhot on front. They giue a furious charge, & the Enemy broken, fall preſently to ſpoile, leauing to follow the execution for any ſmall booty: but beeing broken, they flye euery man home, without euer turning head, lying in waight by the way for the *Almans*, whom they rob in their flight, counterfeiting for the more terrour the clamour of the *Tartars*, from whom they differ in the faſhion of their Caps.

Gouernment. The gouernment of *Hungarland* was anciently ſpirituall, & ſeculer, the ſpiritualty was gouerned by the Arch-Byſhop of *Strigonium*, (who were Chancellors of the Land) and of *Colozza*. They had vnder them twelue Biſhoppes, which are all now vnder the Turke, except *Strigonium*, *Nitia*, *Iauerine*, and *Vacia*. For the due adminiſtration of Iuſtice vnder the ſecular, the ancient Lords deuided their Land into twenty Countries appointing to euery Countrey a Baron for Gouernour, with twelue D. of Law to be his aſſiſtants, reſeruing euer to themſelues an appeale for the redreſſe of Iniuſtice, and preuenting of extortion. Nowe ſince the Princes of *Auſtria* got the Crowne, their tyranny ſo yoaketh the Peaſants, that nothing may be done without the Lords leaue. Inſomuch, that theſe people liuing in the true condition of ſlauery, want nothing but the name thereof. In the time of the ancient gouernment, when the Kinges would alter any thing in the adminiſtration of the Common-weale, vndertaken a forren warre, or con-

clude

Digitized by Google

clude a peace, there assembled together at one place three degrees of Subiects; Barons, Bishoppes, and Gentlemen: with consent of the greater part whereof, the Kinges had authoritie to confirme, abrogate or institute lawes, to denounce warre, conclude peace, and charge their Land with impositions fit for their necessities.

This assembly is still in vse, but the freedome thereof is altered, nothing being at this day propounded to the assembled by the new Gouernours, but a contribution of Money, to which demaund at a day giuen, the Nobility giue their resolution, which in the yeare 96. and 97. when the Turkish Emperor threatned to descend himselfe in person, was, that the Nobility would put themselues in Campania with their forces, & promised for their Subiects (for so they tearme their Peasants) that euery Housholder should send a Man, and giue two Dollars of Money for entertainment of Souldiers: but the Turkish Emperor not comming in person, the Gentiles did not further binde themselues, then that their Subiectes should pay euerie house one Dollar, with which Money were to bee waged 20000. Horse and Foot, the halfe of which neuer appeared in fielde, there beeing not at any time in armes vnder the three Generals of *Tenfeubach* in vpper *Hungarland*, of *Palfeis*, vpon the border of *Danubius*, and of *Zerius* in neather *Hungarland*, aboue 9000. men: And at the battell of *Kerestur* in 96. where were assembled the greatest forces that could be made by the three Confederates, *Germany*, *Hungary*, and *Transiluania*: the combatants amounted not to aboue 51000. (viz:) out of *Hungarland* ariued 6000. Horse, and 10000. Foote: out of *Transiluania* 6000. Horse, and 12000. Foote: out of *Germany*, 9500. Horse, and 7000. Foote. The *Germans* were so well appointed, Horse and Foote, as for quantity of Armes, and goodnesse of Horse, nothing could be better deuised; of the foote, the third part were Pikes armed compleate, the rest were shot, whereof three parts were Muskets: the Horsemen were all armed, many of whose Curases were Musket proofe: some of them carried fiue Pistols, most foure, all two. That which was indeed a want amongst thē was, that 3. parts were Seruants, according to the *German* custome, many of whom

Digitized by Google

tooke pay for eight Horſes. The *Hungariſh* and *Tranſiluanian* Foot were all naked, part of whom carried Fire-lockes of two foote, and the reſidue Pikes of nine foote long, eyther Armes of ſmall or no vſe, either in offence or defence, whether in Forts, ſtreightes, or Champania. The Horſe-men carryed hollow Launces of twelue foote long, which they brake by the helpe of a Leather Thong faſtned to their Saddles: for the reſt, they were armed according to their meanes, the rich with Curaſes, the meane with Shirtes, the poore with Sleeues of Male, and all with Caskes, which kind of arming, as it maketh them much defectiue in proofe, ſo are they of leſſe worth for their horſes, which (for their maner of riding, bridles and ſaddles) are more forceable to doe execution vppon victory, to make excurſions, and to diſcouer, then they be eyther to giue or ſuſtaine a charge.

Their forces by Water (or to ſpeake more properly the Emperours) were much impaired by the loſſe of *Iauerin*, in 94. where, of 13. Gallies the Turkes tooke ten; that loſſe is not yet repaired, the Emperour not hauing at this time aboue fiue Gallies: which at the ſiedge of *Strigonium*, durſt not make head againſt three of the Turkes which came to releeue the Towne. There be moreouer ordinarily vppon the *Danuby* 16. ſmall Barkes, twelue foote broad, and fifty foote long; Theſe carry in the prow two peeces, a crogue bong three foot, and one pound ball; they are rowed by Souldiers with twentie Oares on a ſide, hauing their halfe pikes ſtanding by them, and their peeces hanging at their backs.

The Captaine gouerneth the rudder, and the Lieutenant attendeth on the peeces. Theſe barkes (for that which I haue ſeene) are fitter for the Skout and gard of the Campe, when it marcheth or lodgeth by the water ſide, then commodious for fight.

The *Hungarians* preſuming (more then reaſon) on theyr valour in Campania, haue euer neglected to fortify their frontiers: the laſt and beſt inuented meanes, whereby ſmall States preſerue themſelues from being ouer-run by the great; which error being better lookt vnto by the Princes of *Auſtria* (who about fifty yeares ſince, obtained that Kingdome) haue vſed

Digitized by Google

ſome

ſome dilligence in this kind, yet with ſo ſmall iudgement, as that no fortreſſe in the Land, can iuſtly bee ſaid to bee ſtrong, (except *Rab* recouered the 18. of March, and now loſt again) the reſt being eyther onely ſtrong by ſcite, as *Tockay*, *Villak*, *Strigonium*, *Comora*; *Altemburgh*, *Papa*, *Caniſia*: or by art, as *Caſtlenouo* and *Nouigrade*, or neither by art nor ſcite, as *Guents*, and *Edenburgh* (paſſages of importance in neather *Hungarland*) with almoſt infinit others. *Tockay*, *Altemburgh*, *Papa*, and *Caniſia*, are gouerned by the *Germanes*: *Nouigrade*, *Caſtlenouo*, *Strigonium*, and *Komara*, haue Hungariſh Gonernours, but the greateſt part of their Garriſons be *Dutch*, a deuice peraduenture as well to ſecure the Emperour of *Hungarland*, as to defend thoſe places againſt the Turkiſh inrodes, to which ſeruice the *Hungarians* are more proper if they were prouided of like armes.

The foreſaide fortreſſes were well prouided of all ſortes of Munition, Artilliry, Powder, Bals, Fire-workes, and victuals, but not ſo well foreſeene with defendants, as was conuenient againſt ſo mighty an Enemy as the Turke; there beeing in the laſt appointed fortreſſe not aboue 1500. men, and in ſome not 200.

How aboundant this Prouince is in victuals, I ſay no more then hath been mentioned in the beginning of this diſcourſe; That it is one of the moſt-plentifuleſt Countries in Europ, furniſhing the Inhabitants with aboundance, without borrowing of any Neighbour Prouince. For, as for the Bread, Wine, & Oates which *Auſtria* miniſtreth, that is onely when the Camp is lodged by the Riuer *Danubius*, which Merchants tranſport thither, rather for their gaine, then that their Armies ſuffer any ſcarſity, in want thereof. Artillerie is ſent them from the Emperours Arſenall in *Vienna*, themſelues neyther finding great peeces, nor making ſmall; which likewiſe they haue out of *Germany*, as alſo Powder and Balles; A note of their exceeding negligence, hauing excellent Mettals for this purpoſe, which they tranſport vnwrought into *Germany*.

The greateſt fruite which the Emperour reapeth by the Crowne of *Hungarland*, ariſeth by the benefit of Mines, which yeelde him yearely one Million and a halfe of Gilders; which com-

Digitized by Google

commeth clearely into his Treasury, the presidary Souldiers being all paid with the contribution Mony, as is also his Lieutenant Generall 30000. Dollars yearely for his prouision. The Emperour *Maximillian* the second, tooke into his hands the liuing of the Cathedrall and Colligiat Churches, giuing to the Byshops and Cannons small stipends; by which deuice he gained yearely halfe a Million of Gilders. The religious houses are almost all abandoned for the feare the Monkes and Friers haue of the Turk, except those of the Gray-Friers, to which order he is very fauorable. The Villages likewise are many in part, some wholy desolate, the Peasants retyring themselues vnder the Turke, where they liue with lesse agreeuance then vnder the Emperor. The liuings of both are confiscat, which hath much increased the yearely reuennue of that kingdome.

Now *Hungarland* being not in better teamnes, to support it selfe against the irresistable power of the Turke, then appeareth in the premises, t may reasonably be demanded, what hath beene the cause that the Turke in an hundred and fifty yeares space (about which time he inuaded that Countrey) hath not made an absolute conquest thereof: for hauing in this time not conquered aboue two third partes thereof, it is manifest, that he must be defectiue in the means before spoken of, wherwith Princes augment their greatnesse, (viz:) eyther in Treasure, Munition, Men, Armes, or (that which is principall) in iudgement to embrace or prosecute occasion. For aunswere vnto which, I say; first, that the Turkish Emperour hath not onely aboue these foure hundred yeares beene superior to the Kinges of *Hungarland*, in Treasure and Munition, but also to any other Prince in the World. So is hee likewise in number of his Captaines and priuate Souldiers; but borrowing a coniecture from the mannaging of his actions, it is manifest that his counsell of warre (schooled aboue in the barbarous seruice of *Persia*) hath euer beene inferior to that of Christendome, as it is at this present. Secondly, the Emperor hath of late serued himselfe in all his occasions of *Count Charles Maunsfielt*, the Marquesse *Sanseuerino*, *Alexander Malospina*, *Francisco de monte*, the Baron *Swarzenburg*, *George Basta*, *Ferronto di Rossi*, &c. All which, eyther by their experience in their Netherlan-

Digitized by Google

diſh warres, or dilligence in Hiſtory, or elſe paines in both, haue long ſithence obtained the names of great Souldiers; which prouidence of late times vſed by the Emperour, and heretofore by other Princes, hath in part preuented the *Turks* deſſignes in this Conqueſt. Another hindrance hath been the euill arming of the Turkiſh Souldiers, the greateſt numbers whereof are naked: and which is as great a defect. None of them carry Weapons of much offence, except the Ianizers, who ſerue with Muskets of longer and bigger bore then the Chriſtians: To which number of Ianizers, being 2000. tripled, if 20000. Pikes compleat were added, they would make an Army of greater conſequence for the Conqueſt of this Kingdome (which is ſecured by paſſages) then doth the multitude of Horſes, in which the Turke putteth ſo great confidence.

Laſtly, as I muſt confeſſe, that the Turke in all his attempts againſt *Hungary*, hath vſed irreproueable iudgement, making no inrode into that Countrey, but when hee had peace with his Neighbours, and the Chriſtians at diuiſion amongſt themſelues, atchieuing by ſuch prouidence infinite victory; ſo can it not be denied, that if he had proſecuted the leaſt aduantage, with conſtancy and celerity, befitting the occaſion, the Conqueſt of *Hungarland* had beene finiſhed many yeares ſince. But of all negligences in this kinde, there hath beene none of greater note, then that of *Mahomet* the 3. ſuperior in the battell of *Kereſtur* in 96. by which victory, not *Hungarie* alone, but all *Auſtria* ſtood in great danger: for the Chriſtian Army being irrecouerably ouerthrowne, and all the Townes diſfurniſhed, both of defendants and Munition, there wanted nothing (in mans iudgement) to the gaining of that Kingdome, but the ſpeedy proſecution of that abſolute victory. But ſithence a manifeſt declination of this ouer-weighty Monarchy is apparantly to euerie eie of iudgement in theſe dayes obiected; I imagine it will not ſeem vnto any man to be much from my purpoſe, to declare in this place, from whence this declination in this age, more then is apparant in reaſon, ſhould be deriued.

Let vs therefore lay this for a ground, *That States doe commonly*

Digitized by Google

monly decline, through the alteration of their ancient orders and discipline. Nor can it otherwise be, but that as those ordinances and Lawes which reason at first introduced, and experience afterward approoued, doe settle and fortify States: so the manifest neglect of the same, should make them weake againe and crazy.

Now therefore, a Prince ought not in any thing to be more watchfull and vigorous, then to keepe in life those lawes, by which his State at first became to bee exalted to that height, wherein he found it at the decease of his predecessour: for let him be assured, that the same are still, and shall be the foundations and basis of his future prosperity.

Heerein the *Ottomans*, haue by two meanes especially aduanced their power, and haue raised it to the height, wherein we see it at this day. The one was their personall presence, and travelling to the warres; the other, their making of great wars and fierce to effect, but short. Their perpetuall expeditions produced many profitable effectes; as first, that it kept in awe and attendance the great Seruitors of the State: Secondly, that the *Ianizars* were thereby the better invred to obedience, patience, and practise of their Armes, with the discipline of the fielde. Thirdly, it caused their whole forces to attend them.

For better vnderstanding whereof, it behoueth to know, how that the Port (or Court) of the great Turke, was anciently wont to make twelue thousand Ianizars monthly paide, and that without faile. Now that number, by occasion of the wars of *Hungarie*, is much increased, and their pay raised to fiue Aspers aday; to some, more, in regard of defect.

Out of the number of these Ianazars, are chosen 200. whose office it is to run by the startup of the Prince, and 300. Porters that receiue twentie Aspers aday, aboue their ordinary stipend: The Caualry ariseth to a far greater number. The *Spahi* are six thousand, marshalled in two troopes; whereof the one guardeth the right hand of the Prince, the other the left, in all marches. Euery one of these *Spahi*, as bound to maintaine three or foure Seruants on Horseback for the warre: and these Seruants, eyther in valour or costlinesse of furniture, doe in little

Digitized by Google

or

or nothing giue place to their Lordes. Their place of march, is in rere of their Maiſters, but in diſtinct troopes.

Beſides theſe troopes, doe march two other ſquadrons, conſiſting of 1000. Horſe apeece: The one is made of certaine ſelect and ſtalled perſons, knowne for ſome one or other famous exploit. Into which troope doe alſo enter ſome Ianizars, and many Seruants, as well belonging to the Prince himſelfe, as to other of his principall Miniſters, that haue approoued themſelues by ſome notable indeuour, to be worthy and capable of that degree.

The other ſquadron is all of naturall Turks, recommended to that Honor, for ſome ſuperordinary skill at their Weapon; for horſemanſhip, or ſome ſuch like quality.

The Souldiers of theſe two troopes, are not tyed to keepe aboue two Seruants mounted at the moſt. So that theſe foure ſquadrons (whereof we haue ſpoken) do make in all, as good as forty thouſand Horſe, all excellently furniſhed.

Beſidss theſe, there alſo neere twenty thouſand men that are Seruants and attendants vpon the ſupreame officers of the State, as Iudges, Treaſurers, Councellors, and Commanders. Amongſt which, ſome there are, that bring into the field two or three thouſand apeece; all well armed, and in like libertie, being indeede tyed for euery fiue Aſpers that they haue of prouiſion, to finde one Horſe-man. So that what for pompe, and what for their owne ſafety, in this occaſion they do ſet al their ſlaues, being Renegadoes or Horſebacke. What ſhall I ſay of the infinite number of carriages, of Mules and Camels, accompanying this Equipage. Of which ſort, *Baiazet* led into the field forty thouſand, and *Selim* in the enterpriſe of *Ægipt*, one hundred and thirty thouſand. This was the auncient proportion: Now all theſe forces, (whereof I haue ſpoken) from the Court doe accompany the Prince, ſetting forward to the warres. But if his perſon mooue not, then doe theſe alſo ſtay ydle at home, where the Ianizars (for their too much eaſe) do often fall into munities, and the great Queſſe buſie themſelues about nothing but to diſgrace or ouerthrow one another through enuy, and ambition. Which is well witneſſed on the one ſide, by the extreame rancors and partialties that boile

Digitized by Google

boile amongſt them, and ſometime breaketh forth; and on the other, by their immoderate affection and ſwelling into tytulary dignities, which of neceſſity cannot bee auoyded; for that, as Trees which are leſſe fruitfull, doe thruſt foorth moſt leaues and branches, to couer therewith the defects of nature: So do men (in whoſe minds deſert & vertue is wanting) ſeek nothing ſo much as with outward vanity of apparrel, and ſhew of great diſcent to ſhaddow their inward imperfections. Thorough which abuſe, it is not poſſible to imagine, vnto what number the titularie Offices of that State is augmented. The *Baſhawes*, which in the flouriſhing daies of this Empire were onely two, one in *Aſia*, the other in *Europe*, are now ſeauen in *Aſia* alone (viz:) of *Natolia*, *Caramania*, *Amaſia*, *Anadule*, *Damaſcus*, and *Cair*: who do ſucke from the Princes Coffers no leſſe then one hundred and thirtie thouſand Duckets yearly. And this is ſprung from nothing elſe, but that vppon opportunity of the Princes keeping at home, the Miniſters of the State, eſpecially ſuch as lye fartheſt of, haue by little and little preſumed to vſurp and arrogat to themſelues more power and authority, then was anciently belonging vnto them. Beſides which, the Prince by his profound interuention in all expeditions, became by his experience, better acquainted with the condition of his Armies, made himſelfe cunning in the cauſes that did enuigor or corrupt his Souldiers: ſo that, by cheriſhing of the one, and redreſſing the other, the diſcipline of the fielde, was made more firme euery day then other.

And in truth, it can ſeeme to no man leſſe then a very miracle, that in this houſe of the *Ottomans* ſhould follow a continuall ſucceſſion of twelue Princes together, that haue beene all men of great action, and extreame Warriors. Bus ſince the ſucceſſors of *Soliman*, haue diſuſed themſelues from the field, and to be perſonallie abſent from the Warres, it is wonderſull againe to ſee, how much the power of that Empire is impayred.

The firſt that gaue paſſage to this diſorder, was *Soliman* himſelfe; who howbeit he were a Prince of excellent courage and great ſufficiency for State; and not onely did put his own perſon into many & hazzardous attempts, but alſo did leaue his life

Digitized by Google

life in one of them (which was at the siedge of *Sigeth*) yet did he suffer his Sonne *Selim*, to lye shamefully ryoting and consuming himselfe at Court. By which custome once taken, he neuer after his Fathers time, would abandon the Cittie, but mannaged all his affaires abroad, by his Captaines and Ministers.

The selfe-same course helde *Amurath* also, *Selims* Sonne; *Mahomet* indeede his Sonne, hath not wanted to shew both spirit and valour enough by his personall going into *Hungary*, and forcing of *Agria*. But for all that, whether through the indisposition of his owne person, or through the ouer deepe rooting of disorders growne in the Empire, he was neither able to recouer the olde reputation of his predecessors, nor to reforme the lost discipline of his Souldiers. From hence haue budded all these so great inconuenienees.

For the Ianizars lying ydle, and hauing nothing to doe, are swolne vnto insolence, that they make euery thing lawfull for them to doe by prescription, not forbearing to sacke and pillage the naturall Townes of the State, instead of the enemies: yea, falling into further fury aud insurrection, they were (these few yeares passed) the causes that *Amurath* was forced at their instance, to behead his best beloued *Bassa Hebraim*. In which mutiny they also fiered aboue fiue thousand houses in *Constantinople*. And euen the last day almost, at the importunate request of the *Spahi*, he was faine to behead his *Capi Aga*, who was the greatest personage for counsaile, and the most deere Seruitor he had in Court. Albeit indeede his death was afterward reasonably well reuenged, with the heads of three of the principall of the said seditious *Spahi*. One example for many of latter times.

And for as much as through the want of exercise of Armes, & imployment of the Ianizars, their valor also is much abated, for recompence of such defaults, they haue beene faine to increase their number from twelue, to twenty and nine thousand. Which number also beeing not able to be made vppe of Christian Children, and the *Anamoglain* of Europe, they haue beene faine to supply it with *Asians* and *Mahumetans*, contrary to the first and ancient ordinance of the Ianizars.

Neither are lesse the inconueniences and mischiefes, that do

Digitized by Google

doe ariſe from prolonging of warres, whereas by contrary vſages, the *Ottomans* were wont to reape two notable benefits. One was, that by leading a full force into the fielde, whether they wan any Towne, or had the better of a fielde, they euermore in the ſame inſtant hppreſſed their aduerſary; and againe on the other ſide, by making ſpeedy and ſhort wars, they gaue vs reſpit and leiſure vnto the ſubiectes of thoſe parts, where their Armies lay, to repaire themſelues againe: vnto which ſubiects, otherwiſe the neereneſſe of the *Ottoman* Campe do bring vnrecouerable dammage: for it is obſerued, that the *Ottoman* Prince neuer doth conquer ſo much of the Enemies Countrey, but that he deſtroyeth more of his owne. Nor can they otherwiſe chuſe, hauing no peaceable or orderly way of prouiſion, but for want of neceſſaries, they muſt make pray of all they can come by.

And the reaſon is, that becauſe of the vaſt extent of that Empire, and the diſtance of the Frontier partes from the head, they are faine to march more vppon their owne ground, then vpon other mens. And they paſſe it not once, but twice; firſt, in ſetting forth; and againe, in the retrait. Whereby the people, and eſpecially the Husbandmen, being pilled and ſpoiled of their ſubſtance, are conſequently conſtrained to forſake their tenures, and to leaue their land vnmanured.

Another benefit which they receiued by making great, but ſhort warres, was, that thereby they kept their owne Souldiers in continuall practiſe and exerciſe of warre, without giuing their Enemy ſo much breath as to do the like. For as ſoone as any one exploit was ended, their order was, ſuddenly to bring the aduerſary as Sheepe, by negotiating of ſome truce or peace; that done, as ſuddenly they transferred the warre vpon another part and Enemy, neuer giuing time to their owne to lay downe, or to their Neighbours, to take vp their Weapons. With theſe practiſes they tooke from the *Venetian*, *Cyprus*, and making peace with them, they preſently transferred the War into *Affrique*, where they ſurprized *Goletta* and *Tunis*: and that war being finiſhed, *Amurath* himſelfe, without intermiſſion, put himſelfe into the expedition of *Perſia*. And this courſe is indeede in it ſelfe of ſo great conſideration, that *Lycurgus*

Digitized by Google

curgus amongſt the three Lawes, onely which hee left to the *Spartan* Common-wealth, left this for one: firſt, that they ſhould vſe no written Lawes; ſecondly, that they ſhoulde admit of no other architecture, but of ſuch as might bee performed with an Axe and Saw; and laſtly, that they ſhould neuer fight twice together with one enemy.

In this point the King of *Spaine*, amongſt many other, hath committed the greateſt ouer-ſight, in protracting the warres ſo many yeares in the Low-Countries: for by means thereof, the people of *Holland* and *Zeland*, who in former times had little or no experience in the warres, became one of the moſt warlike and ſouldierlike Nations of *Europe*. So *Amurath*, contrary to the cuſtome of al his predeceſſors, made warre in *Perſia*, that laſted 22. or more years. And albeit hee took from the *Perſian* at that time a good peece of his State, yet doe I not thinke but that the loſſe thereby receiued, did more then counterpoize the gaine, not ſo much by fight and fortune of the field, as by length and tediouſneſſe of the iournies; wherein, partly through want and diſtreſſe of victuall, with other ſiniſter accidents ariſing from the qualitie of thoſe Countries, he loſt the flower and vigor of all his forces; namely, aboue two hundred thouſand horſe, and fiue hundred thouſand men: leauing the Country beſides ſo naked of Inhabitants, ſo poore and ruinous, that in one Prouince alone (*Armenia*) *Oſman Baſha* was forced to deſtroy and ſet fire on aboue two hundred thouſand houſes. Moreouer, by occaſion of ſo long a warre, not onely the *Perſians*, but the *Georgians* and *Arabians* alſo betooke themſelues to the exerciſe of Armes, and therein attained to ſuch hability, that to this day they are euer and anone in tumult, and begin to recouer ſome of their loſſes. This was the true reaſon (as aforeſaid) that induced *Amurath* and his Councellors diſtruſting the obedience of that people, (againſt the Turkiſh cuſtome) there to erect many Citadels, as at *Chars*, *Naſſiuan*, *Lori*, *Teflis*, and at *Tauris*; wherein they thruſt great Gartiſons: as namely, into that of *Tauris*, eight thouſand. The predeceſſors of *Amurath*, who repoſed the maine reputation of their forces to conſiſt in being Maiſters of the fielde, made no account of theſe holds; maintayning this

Digitized by Google

rule: *That who is ſtrong in the fielde, needeth not the aſſiſtance of Holds, and who will maintaine many fortreſſes garriſoned, can neuer be very ſtrong in Campania.*

From theſe and ſuch like ouerſights, haue ariſen all the corruptions, whereof I haue ſpoken in this relation of the Turkiſh greatneſſe. Whereby thoſe Armies, which were wont to amount to two hundred thouſand fighting men and vpward; and their Nauies accuſtomed to be of two hundred ſayle and more, are now brought to a farre leſſe reckoning. They are now come to fifty thouſand, the proportion that *Hebraim* brought with him not many yeares ſince into *Hungary:* and ſome thirtie ſixe Gallies, or there-abouts, with which *Cicola*, Admirall of that Empire, came of late into the Leuant Seas.

By which diminutions it hath faleln out, that a poore Prince of *Tranſiluania* durſt meete *Sinan Baſſa*, and fight with him; and that the *Vayuod* of *Valachia*, durſt alſo make him the like oppoſition.

And to bring this matter yet a little neerer our purpoſe, by comparing the forces of the *Turke* and *Venetian* together, I ſay firſt, that one Kingdome, and one Common-wealth hath done more, in abatement of the ambition, and checking the fortune of the *Ottoman*, then all other Chriſtian States haue done together: for where all the reſt of the Princes bordering anciently vpon them, were in ſhort time deuoured and ſpoyled of their Eſtates, the *Hungarian* and the *Venetian* alone, hath for the ſpace of one hundred and fifty yeares and more, maintained themſelues. And though both the one and the other, haue quitted vnto the *Ottoman* ſome parts of their Territorie, yet haue they well warded, and retayned the reſidue; ſo that to ſpeake truth, Chriſtianity hath at this day no other frontier vpon the Turke, but what is theirs. Which, how much it importeth, no man can rightly iudge, who hath not by experience made trial, how dreadful the *Ottoman* power is to al thoſe that dwel neer it. And howbeit, in theſe latter years, the *Hungarian* hath had in his fauour the continuall ſupplies of *Germany*, and the *Venetian* hath beene aſſiſted by the aſſociation of the *Pope* and the *Spaniard*, yet it is to bee vnderſtood, that vnleſſe both thoſe and theſe, had had of their owne a ſufficient body of

Digitized by Google

war,

warre, the cold aſſiſtance of others would ſmally haue helped their ſuddaine neceſſities.

Poland.

THis Kingdome was neuer ſo ſpatious as at this day, the great Dukedomes of *Lituania* and *Liuonia*, being ioyned thereto. It ſtretcht from the flouds, *Notes* and *Obra* (which deuide it from *Marchia*) and *Odera* (which ſeperateth it from *Sileſia*) to *Bereſay* and *Boriſthenes*, which two parteth it from *Moſcouia*. It reacheth from the *Baltique* Sea, to the Riuer *Nieſter*, which deuides it from *Moldauia*, and to the Mountaines *Carpathie*, which ſeparate it from *Hungary*. By this limitation (from the borders of *Sileſia*, to the frontiers of *Moſcouia*, betweene the Weſt part and the Eaſt) it containeth 120. German miles, and from the vttermoſt boundes of *Liuonia*, to the borders of *Hungary*, not much leſſe. So allowing the forme thereof to be round, it is farre larger then a man would take it to bee. It containeth many and goodly large Prouinces, as *Polonia* the great, and the leſſe, *Maſſouia*, *Pruſſia*, *Ruſſia*, *Volinia*, *Liuonia*, and *Lituania*. Among theſe Prouinces, *Poland* was the proper inhabitation of the *Polonians*: but *Pruſe*, part of *Pomerau*, *Podalia*, *Volonia*, *Maſouia*, and *Liuonia*, haue bin obtained and gained by armes: *Lithuania* and *Samogathia*, (Prouinces of *Ruſſia*) were the inheritance of the houſe of *Iagello*. For in the yeare 1380, *Iagello* then Duke of *Lithuania*, took vnto Wife the Princeſſe of *Hedinge*, the laſt of the bloud royall of *Polonia*, and was then inſtalled King on three conditions: the firſt, that he ſhould become a Chriſtian; ſecondlie, that hee ſhould cauſe his people to doe the like; and thirdly, that he ſhould vnite his principalities to *Poland*. Theſe conenants were accompliſhed in our age, when the race of *Iagello* ended. For when the people were vnwilling, by depriuing the Heires (who had right to the Empire by iuſt inheritance) to ſubiect it to election, they alwaies cald vpon the performance of the conditions, hoping that the Nobility and the people of

Digitized by Google

Lituania would not looſe their honor and dignity by this mixture: yet at laſt, on the one ſide, when they conſidered the yſſue of their Princes to faile (for *Sigiſmund Auguſtus* was the laſt heire male) and on the other ſide, fearing the force of the *Moſcouite*, they agreed to vnion and election. In times paſt, *Liuonia* was the ſeat of the Dutch Knights, and they had therein their chiefe *Gouernor*, whom they tearmed the *Great Mayſter*: But in the yeare 1558. being ſpoiled of the greateſt part of their teritory by the great Duke of *Moſcouy*, they fled to *Sigiſmond* King of *Poland*, who tooke them into his protection, and vntill the raigne of King *Stephen* 1582. the Prouince was neuer regained.

For the moſt part, *Poland* is a plain country, and (but for certaine mountaines, (rather hils then mountains) ſcituated in the leſſer *Poland*, deuiding it from *Pruſland*) all the reſidue of the Countrey ſtretcheth it ſelfe into moſt ample plaines, wherein are very many woods, eſpecially in *Lituania*. The greater and leſſer *Poland* are better inhabited then any other Prouince of the kingdome. The like may be almoſt ſpoken of *Ruſſia*, for the neereneſſe of the Sea, concourſe to the hauens, and commodiouſneſſe of the Riuers. *Pruſſia* and *Liuonia* haue fairer Cities, goodlier buildings, and by Traffique and concourſe of Marchants, greater plenty of riches. For when the Dutch knights were Lordes of the Countrey, they builded Cities like thoſe of *Germany*, and al along the Sea-coaſt, for the ſpace of foureſcore miles, many Caſtles and peeces of good eſteeme. They haue many faire Hauens of good worth, and are Lords of all the Traffique betweene *Poland* and the *Baltique* Sea: which is a thing of great value and conſequence. For the Riuer *Viſtula* ariſing in the extreameſt boundes of *Sileſia*, watereth all *Poland* the leſſe, and part of the Greater, *Mazonia* and *Pruſſia*, and then it falleth into the *Baltique* Sea belowe *Danske*, whether it tranſporteth the greateſt quantity of Rie, Corne, Hony, and Waxe, of the whole Kingdome, a iourney of four hundred miles. From another coaſt, the moſt famous Riuer *Duina*, ariſing out of the Lake *Ruthenigo*, and parting *Liuonia* into equall portions, falleth into the Sea about *Riga*, a citty of great concourſe. There are in *Pruſſia* and *Liuonia* many Lakes, amongſt

Digitized by Google

mongſt which one is called the *New-Sea*, one hundred miles long: in *Liuonia* is a Lake called *Berhas*, more then foure hundred miles long: from thence ſpring the Riuers, which running by *Pernouia* and *Narue*, make two notable Hauens for Traffique. Betweene theſe two Cities, ſtandes *Riualia*, giuing place to neither in beauty. *Samogithia* is more rude and barbarous then the other Prouinces, & *Podalia* more barren: which is not to be attributed to the nature of the ſoile (for it is plentifull of thoſe commodities, which the climate vnder which it lyeth can affoord) but to the cruelty of the *Tartars*, which ſo vex it with continuall inrodes, that the Inhabitants are driuen eyther to fly for feare, or to be led away Captiues by theſe barbarous people.

The riches of *Poland*, are the aboundance of Corne, and all ſorts of graine, which grow there in ſuch plentifull ſort, that in the yeare 1590. and 1591. it relieued not onely the bordering Nations, oppreſſed with famine and ſcarſity, but alſo yeelded ſome portion of reliefe to the wants of the *Genowaies*, *Tuſcane*, and *Rome*. It floweth with Honey and Waxe: And whereas in all theſe Northerly Nations of *Poland*, *Lithuania*, *Ruſſia*, *Moſcouia*, there are no Wines growing, in ſtead thereof, Nature hath beſtowed vppon them incredible quantities of Honey, whereof theſe people do brew an excellent kinde of Beuerage. The Bees make Honey eyther in Woodes, where they finde the Trees made hollow by rottenneſſe or mans induſtry, or in Hiues ſet in open fielde by the Countrey people, or in holes of the earth, or in any place where they can finde neuer ſo ſmall a liking.

It aboundeth with Flaxe, Hempe, with Sheepe, with Cattle and with Horſes. Amongſt the beaſts of the wood, are found wilde Oxen, wilde Horſes, and the Buſle, which cannot liue out of the Wood of *Nazonia*; The riches of the Land conſiſt in the Salt-pits of *Bozena* and *Velisca*, in the Territory of *Craconia*.

The reuenues of the kingdome (for the moſt part) are equally deuided betweene the Noblemen and the Gentlemen: for no man is left ſo rich by inheritance, that hee may exceede others aboue meaſure; and the greateſt reuennue of all excee-

of

Digitized by Google

deth not fiue and twenty thousand Duckets. Onely the Dukes of *Curland* and *Regimount* exceede this meane. For although they are feodaries of the Kingdome, and acknowledge the King as their superiour, yet are they not as liuely members of the State: they come not to the diets of the Kingdome, they haue not their voices in the election of the Prince, neither are they accounted as naturall Lordes of the Kingdome, but for strangers (as in truth they are:) the Duke of *Curland* being of the house of *Ketleri*, and the Duke of *Regimount*, of the familie of *Brandenburge*.

All *Prussia* did belong to the Dutch Knights, who had theyr Great Mayster resident there, but he not beeing able to withstand the force of the *Polonians*, yeelded himselfe feodary to King *Cassimere*: Afterwardes, when *Albert* of *Brandenburge* their Great Maister became a Protestant, he was created duke of *Prussia*; and the Couutrey was deuided into two parts; the one Regall, mediatly holden of the Crowne, the other Ducal, allotted to *Albert* and his Successours, to holde by fealty. In the Kinges partition stand *Marieburge*, *Torouia*, *Culma*, *Varnia*, and *Danske*: in the Dutchy (which yeelded 120. thousand Duckets yearelie) the cheefe Towne is *Regimount*: the *Germans* call it *Conningsburgh*, and there the Duke keepeth his Court.

The gouernment of *Polonia* representeth rather an Aristocracie then a Kingdome, because the Nobility (who haue great authority in the diets of the kingdome) chooose the King, and at their pleasure limite him his authority. They haue neyther law nor statute, nor forme of gouernment written, but (by custome from the death of one Prince to the election of another) the supreme authority resteth in the Archbishop of *Gesna*, who is president of the Counsell, appointeth the diets, ruleth the Senate, and proclaimeth the new elected King. Before King *Stephen* erected new Bishops Palatines, and Castellanes in *Liuonia*, few other besides the Archbishop of *Leopolis*, and his 13 Suffragans, 28. Palatines, and thirty of the chiefest Castelans, were present at the election of the new King. They hold an assembly of the States euery year, for two causes, the one, to administer Iustice in Soueraigne causes; vnto which are brought ap-

Digitized by Google

appeales from all the Iudges of the Countrey : the other, to prouide for the ſafety of the Comon-weale, againſt their next Enemies the *Tartars*, who make often incurſions vpon them.

In the time of their diets, theſe men aſſemble in a place nere vnto the Senate houſe, where they choſe two Marſhals, by whom (but with a tribune-like authority) they ſignifie vnto the Counſell what their requeſts are. Not long ſince their Authority and reputation grew ſo mighty, that they now carry themſelues as heads and Gouernors, rather then Officers and Miniſters of the publique decrees of the eſtates. One of the Counſell, after the manner of *Clodius*, refuſed his Senators place to become one of theſe Officers. When a King is to be choſen, theſe men do more and more limit his authority, not ſuffering it to ſtrerch one iot farther then accuſtomed. But although the Crowne of *Poland* bee at the diſpoſition of the Nobility, yet was it neuer heard, that they reiected or ouerſlipped the Kings ſucceſſour, or transferred the Kingdome into any other line, more then once, when depoſing *Ladiſlaus* (whom notwithſtanding they afterward reſtored) they elected *Weneſlaus* the *Bohemian*. Likewiſe, they haue alwaies a regard to the Kinges Daughters, as of *Hedinge*, married by them to *Iagello*, and in our times, of *Anne*, giuen in marriage to King *Stephen*. It was no ſmall cauſe of the aduancement of *Sigiſmund* the third, to the Crowne of *Polonia*, that ha was the Sonne of *Katherin*, Siſter to *Sigiſmund* the Emperour, and of the foreſaid *Anne*. And although the kingly authority be electiue, yet after hee is choſen, his power is abſolute in many thinges : As to call the dyets, to appoint the times and place at his owne pleaſure, to chuſe lay Counſellors, and nominate the Biſhops, and whom he will haue to be of the Priuy Counſell : he is abſolute diſpoſer of the reuennue of the Crowne, and Lorde of thoſe which hold of him iimmediate, but ouer the Tenants of the Nobility he hath no iuriſdiction ; hee is abſolute eſtabliſher of the decrees of the diets, and Soueraigne Iudge of the Nobles in criminal cauſes ; it is his power to reward and aduance who pleaſeth him ; to ſpeake in a word, ſuch is his valour, dexterity, & wiſedome, ſuch is his power, authority, and gouernment. As the Polanders ſay, the decrees of their King indure but three

Digitized by Google

dales, and they conuerſe not with him as Cozins, as in *France*, but as Bretheren. And as the King hath abſolute authority ouer them, which immediately hold of him, ſo the Nobility diſpoſe abſolutely of their vaſſails, on euery of whom they exerciſe more then kingly Authority, in manner as vppon ſlaues. In eſtabliſhing their kingdome, they haue doone one thing worthy the noting, which is, that as the *Romans* increaſt their Name and Dominion, by communicating the Lawes and Honors of *Italy*, and the Cittie of *Rome* to other cities, yea whole Prouinces: ſo the Kinges of *Polonia*, haue enlarged, vnited, and ſtrengthened their eſtate, by participating the priuiledges of the Popiſh Nobility to thoſe Prouinces, which eyther they haue conquered by Armes, or otherwiſe purchaſed, gracing the Nobles thereof with fauours equall to any beſtowed on the Popiſh Nation. By this equallizing, K. *Lawdiſlaus* ſtrongly vnit d *Ruſſia* and *Podalia*; *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, *Lituania*: *Stephen*, *Liuonia*: for equallity in offices and promotions knitteth affections in peace and war.

Forces. The force of this kingdome (as of others) conſiſteth in grain, Coine, Foot-men, Horſe-men, Armor, & Munition. Of Grain we haue ſpoken o already. In Coine it is not very rich: for excepting *Danske*, they haue neuer a Mart-town worthy eſtimation; and the wares that are brought from *Pruſſia* and *Liuonia*, do not enrich the kingdome with ready Money; yea, they doe hardly ſuffice to barter with the Engliſh and Flemiſh for cloth, Silkes, or Wools; or with the *Spaniſh*, *Portuguize*, and other Marchants, for Sugars, Spices, Fruites, and Malueſeies. For when the Country is not giuen to Traffick, nor the Cities to buy and ſell, nor the people to labour; and the Nobility is very gallant, prodigall in expences, ſpending more then their reuennues in dyet and apparrell, and the ſeaſoning of their viands (for the *Polanders* vſe more Spices then any other Nation:) and their Wine, their Silk, and the greateſt part of their Wollen-cloath is brought from forren Nations; how can the kingdome be rich in Siluer? For in tranſporting of much ware, and returning of little, conſiſteth the wealth of euery dominion; gathering together (by venting home-bred commodities) the Coine of forrain Nations, & keeping it once brought in,

Digitized by Google

in, from passing abroad. In this practise consisteth the wealth of *Naples* and *Millain*: for *Naples* sendeth to Sea great store of Corne, Wine, Oyle, Silke, Woad, Horses, Fruits, and such like commodities, which bring in huge masses of forren coin: *Millain* supplyeth the want of other Prouinces, with Corne, Rice, Cloathes, Iron-workes, wares of all sorts; and returneth little againe. If the kingdome of *Naples* and *Sicill* were as wel stored with artificiall workmanship, as they are prouided with Corne and wealth, no other Kingdome could compare with them.

To returne to *Poland*, notwithstanding their riches are not so small as some say they are; for the reuennues of the Crowne raised of the Mines of Salt and Siluer, amount yearely to sixe hundred thousand Duckets. True it is, that *Sigismund Augustus* pawned part of these reuenues, and King *Henry*, a month before his fight (to bind some part of the Nobility vnto him) sold vnto them more then three hundred thousand Duckets of yearely rent. It is lawfull for the King by sales of escheats falling to the Crowne, to purchase liuinges for himselfe, and of the said reuennues to retaine great portions to his proper vse, and spare his owne expences: for when the King with his Court abideth in *Lithuania*, the *Lithuanians* defray the charges: the like is done in most places of *Poland*. He that weigheth with himselfe, that the reuennues of *Scotlend*, *Naples*, or *Sardinia*, exceede not yearely one hundred thousand Duckets, nor the kingdome of *Aragon*, to yeelde aboue one hundred thousaud Crownes euery three yeares; cannot lightly esteeme of the reuennues of this Kingdome; yet the King might raise his reuennues to a higher reckoning, if he were lesse bountifull to his Palatines and Castellanes: for most commonly hee bestoweth on them two partes, and three parts; yea, now and then the whole profits arising in their gouernments: but in the time of warre (yet by the decree of the assemblies of the kingdome) the King dooth lay grieuous impositions and taxes on the people, which are eyther leuyed of the Prouinces, or of the excise of victuall: and these tallages haue amounted to such a reckoning, that therewith King *Stephen* sustained the burthen of a most heauy three-yeares-warre against the great

 Digitized by Google Duke

Duke of *Moscouy*: yea, the Gentlemen for defence of the Kingdome, are bound to serue at their owne charges. These serue on Horse, some armed as our owne men at armes, some more light, some like the *Tartars*, and those they tearme *Cossaches*, or aduenturers, trayned vp to steal, to depopulate, waste, and to turne all thinges vp-side downe. These Gentlemen serue in the fielde gallantly furnished, attired in Cassocks and Hose shining with Gold and Siluer, and a thousand other colours: they adorne themselues with plumes and Feathers of Egles, with the Skinnes of Leopards and Beares, and with many Banners and party-coloured Ensignes. These and such like furnitures, do cause them to be discerned of their fellows, make them seeme terrible to their Enemies, and doth encourage their mindes to fierceneese and proweese: Their Horse are but small, yet very nimble, and farre more couragious then the Dutch.

It is thought, that vppon necessity, *Poland* is able to raise 100000. Horse, and *Lithuania* seauenty thousand, but far inferior in goodnesse to the *Polish*. They haue so great trust in the great number of their Horse, that nothing fearing the power of any Enemies, they regard not the building of fortresses, but resolue, that they are able to defend their Countrey, their Wiues and Children, their liberty and goods, in the open fielde against any Prince whatsoeuer; boasting, that in eyther chance of warre, they neuer turned their backes. *Sigismund Augustus* laboured, that in the diets of the Kingdome, order might be taken for the fortifying of *Cracouia*, because of the Neighbour-hood of the Emperour: but he could neuer effect it, partly because it should not giue their Kinges opportunity of absolute authoritie, and tyrannicall Empery, partly because they thinke themselues by Noble courage sufficiently able to defend the kingdome. They haue no infantery; for all the people of the kingdome is deuided either into Merchants and Artificers (which inhabit the Citties) or labourers which liue in the Countrey, in such subiection as we spake of before: and this is the reason that the Gentlemen onely goe to the warre, and will not in any case serue on foote; but alwaies when occasion serueth, they do giue wages vnto the *German* and *Hungarish*

Digitized by Google

gariſh footmen; and of theſe, King *Stephen* in his iourney into *Liuonia*, entertained vnder his colours little leſſe then 16000. to conuay their great ordinance: For Pioners they vſe the *Tartars*, and their owne vplandiſh people. The kingdome is ſufficientlie furniſhed ſtored with great ordinance, and all furniture belonging thereto, of which it can ſuffer no manner of ſcarſitie: firſt, becauſe the Gentlemen and Noblemen keepe many in their Caſtles; Next for the neighbour-hood of *Germany*, which is exceeding rich in Mettall to caſt great ordinance; and plentifull of Artificers to forge any thing belonging to the vſe of warre. And though it is not vſuall to ſee many Caſtles in *Polonia*, yet the fortreſſes of *Leopolis*, and *Camentzie* in *Ruſſia*, the Caſtle of *Cracouia* in the leſſe *Poland*, *Polocenſis* on the Frontiers of *Moſcouia*, *Mariembourge*, and ſome other Townes in *Liuonia*, are peeces of great ſtrength.

Theſe forces of *Polonia* (which we haue ſppken of) are ſuch in quantitie & qualitie, that few Nations in Europe can equall them, none ſurpaſſe them: one thing they want, and that is celerity: for to the ſure ſtrengthening of euery kingdome, foure things are required: that is to ſay, that their force be of theyr owne ſubiects, that it be populous, valiant, and quicke: their owne, becauſe it is dangerous truſting a ſtranger; populous, becauſe of re-enforcements after checkes or ouerthrowes; valiant, becauſe number without courage little auaileth; yea, it bringeth forth confuſion; quicke, that they lightly moue, and ſpeedily be drawne whether neceſſitie enforceth. The laſt of theſe foure vertues the *Polacks* want; that is, celeritie: which commeth two waies, one by the authority of the Prince; the other by readie Money.

The King hath no power to determine any thing; to denounce war, to impoſe taxes, or to gather treaſure, without the conſent of the Parliament, and this Parliament (where it is neceſſary that many bee preſent) is like an engine made of many peeces, which (without loſſe of time can) neyther readily bee ioyned, nor moued forward. For in warlike affaires, thoſe Princes make beſt ſpeede, which are beſt able to commaund, and haue moſt Money in readineſſe: otherwiſe, in appointing and ordering the diets, and deuiſing that the actions may anſwere

Digitized by Google

the Counſels; then in executing, & laſtly in prouiding of Money, there happeneth ſuch loſſe of time, that little is left for the beginning of the iourney, much leſſe to accompliſh. Beſides the Barons and Nobles are at ſuch charges, and tarry ſo long when they are there, that at their departure they haue little left to maintaine after-claps: It may be, that for the defence of the State, quicker and readier reſolution would bee taken, becauſe of the imminent danger, fatall in generall. But for the conqueſt of any forren place, I beleeue they will alwaies proceede with like ſlowneſſe and irreſolution; for the hope of good doth not ſo much moue vs, as the feare of euill: yet hath our age ſeene (in the raigne of *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*) the *Moſconite* to haue conquered the Prouinces of *Moloch* and *Smolock*, and that without reſiſtance or reuenge; a cowardize ill beſeeming ſo high a King, and ſo mighty a State: as likewiſe he inuaded *Liuonia* without impeachment, which had ſhaddowed it ſelfe vnder the protection of the ſaid *Sigiſmund*. In the daies of *Henrie* of *Aniow*, *Iohn* Prince of *Moldauia* (euen he that with an vndanted ſpirit & famous victory held war againſt the Turke) was ſhamefully forſaken of them, contrary to the couenants of confederacy betweene him, and this *Sigiſmund* concluded. Yet muſt wee needes confeſſe, that ſuch as is the courage, valor, and reputation of the Prince; ſuch is the reſolution, alacrity, and forces of the *Polackes*; of themſelues populous, valiant, and couragious. *Stephen Bathor* had good teſtimony heereof, in whoſe time *Polonia* not onely maintayned the honour of a King, ſufficient to defend it ſelfe from forren armes, but alſo to make conqueſtes of great matters from moſt potent Enemies. And ſeeing we haue ſpoken of celeritie, a vertue moſt neceſſary for euery State, it ſhall not be amiſſe to ſpeake of the cauſes thereof, which (as is aforeſaid) are two (viz:) the reputation of the Prince, which giueth it life, and ſtore of Coine, which preſerues it in action: for we haue ſeen in mightyeſt Armies, the body by the ſlowneſſe of the head, to haue ſpent he time moſt idely, and very famous victories for want of Money (to giue continuall motion to action) to haue brought forth ſmall, or no effects. Beſides, the diſpoſition of a Souldier is a great help hereunto: for no man can truly

Digitized by Google

ly praiſe the *German* and *Bohemian* Foot-men for celerity; but this commendation without doubt is proper to the *Italian*, *Spanyard*, and *French-men*, not onely for that they are of better conſtitution of body, but for that (which in warre is all in all) they are better contented to liue with a little: Though they want Coine they are not diſcouraged, neyther wax ſicke with fruits. if fleſh be wanting; and happen what may, they longer and better can indure hardneſſe and ſcarſity. Their riding light armed, is of more execution then armed at all pieces, and their argolitires more ſeruiceable then Lanciers: for which cauſe the French alſo in their late broiles haue quitted their Launces, wherein of old did conſiſt the glory of their Armes, and nowe taken themſelues to the Piſtoll. But to what purpoſe they haue thus done, let another diſpute; for I ſay not, that a light armed man is abſolutely to bee preferred before a man at armes in chances of warre; but onely affirme, that he is more actiue & more ready: yea, the goodneſſe of the Horſe is of great conſequence. For the *Flanders* Horſe farre excelleth the *Friſlander* and *German*. The *Hungary* Horſe, the *Polonian*; the *Turkie* Horſe, the *Genet*: the *Barbary* Horſe is more ſpeedy then the reſt. Betweene both, is the Courſer of *Naples*, who though he be not ſo ſwift as the Spaniſh Genet, yet is hee better able to indure trauell, and to beare the weight of Armor, not becomming ouer-flow therewith. To ſpeake truth, experience manifeſteth the *German* Horſe, by reaſon of their ſlow pace to woorke ſmall effect, eyther to purſue the flying Enemy, or ſwiftly to flye from their executing aduerſary: for if the *Wallachian*, *Hungarian*, *Poliſh*, *Turkiſh*, *Moriſh*, or *Barbary* Horſemen ſhould breake the *Germans*, they cannot ſpeedily fall, and if it happen the *Germans* to ouerthrow them, they are as vnable to purſue them: for they charge ſlowlie, and retire heauily. So in fights at Sea, Ships of burthen are of ſmall ſeruice; becauſe if wind want, they cannot be mooued, the *Galleaſſes* are ſomewhat better, yet performe little more, but the beſt of all is the Galley for his ſwift ſterage. And for proofe hereof, we haue ſeen the Nauy of the Chriſtians, conſiſting of great ſhips, to haue ſpent the better part of Summer and warlike ſeaſon in preparations onely; And on the contrary, the Turkiſh fleete

ſoone

Digitized by Google

ſoone furniſhed, and ſpeedily put to Sea: Of ſuch aduantage is ſpare dyet, and needfull prouiſion of the Turkiſh affaires, & ſo diſcommodious is gluttony to the proceedings of the Chriſtians: For the prouiſion of Wine, and other delicates, is as troubleſome to the Chriſtians, as the whole prouiſion for a Camp, to the Turkiſh Armies. Therefore let no man maruaile, if they march in all their iournies, excellent well furniſhed with ordinance, ſhot, Gun-powder, and all neceſſaries; for at land they haue their carriages laden onely with prouiſion, at Sea, their Shippes without Wine, Pullets, and ſuch needleſſe vanities. At a word, they goe to the warre to fight, and not to fill their bellies.

The third Booke.

The deſcription of Affricke

THat tract of the habitable World tending towards the South, which at this day wee call *Aphrica*, and the Græcians *Libia*, containeth one of thoſe three diuiſions, which were knowne to the Ancients, and yet not fully diſcouered; partly in regard of vaſt deſarts, impoſſible to be trauelled by Land, and wholy couered with wind-driuing-ſands, in manner of a tempeſtious Sea; and partly in regard of the long, tedious, and vncertaine Nauigation, vndertaken by fewe, diſcouered but little, and fully knowne to none. The vndertakers whereof, were *Hanno* the *Carthagenian*, and *Eudoxius*, a baniſhed man vnder *Ptolomy* king of *Alexandria*. But in this latter age, it hath beene wholy nauigated by the *Portugals*, and ſufficiently by them diſcouered, eſpecially from the Pillars of *Hercules*, almoſt to the very bottome of the *Arabian* Gulfe. The firſt of them, that paſſed the Cape *of good Hope*, was *Vaſco de Gama*, in the yeare of our Lorde 1497. from whence continuing his courſe to *Calecut*, and ſo to the reſidue of the Eaſt *Indies*, to the vnſpeakable honor and atchieuement of that Nation.

I will not ſpend time in diſcourſe, vpon the Originall of the name, *Quia pauca ciuitates norint originem*, but it is ſcituated in manner of a Peninſule, conioyned with a ſmall neck of land, lying

Digitized by Google

lying betweene the *Mediterranean* Sea, and the *Arabian* Gulfe. In quantitie it exceedeth Europe at leaſt by twice, but it is not halfe ſo well inhabited, for that it is not ſo temperate for inhabitation. Many places lying waſt, ſome-where, for want of Water, ſomewhere, for want of manurance, ſomewhere for abundance of light-ſand ſtirile Duſt, and all ſubiect to the immoderate heat of the ſcorching Sunne. And the Nature of theſe Sandes are ſuch, that ſome-times they lie as Mountaines in one part of the deſarts, and preſently vpon the riſing of any gale of winde, they are carried moſt furiouſly to another, in manner of a violent and terrible tempeſt. And laſt of all, the increaſe of venomous Serpents and deuouring Creatures, is ſo generall, that in ſome places no man will, in ſome places, no man dare to manure or inhabite the adioyning Countrey, although moſt fruitfull. By reaſon whereof (as aforeſaid) the Region ſeemeth rather waſt, then inhabited; but where it is manured, it is exceeding fruitfull, and full of inhabitation, eſpecially toward the North ſide, which looketh toward Europe, and alongſt the Sea-Coaſts, betweene the promontory of *Good Hope*, and *Cape Niger*, where the Plaines, Mountaines, and Vallies are ſingular fruitfull and pleaſant, as places inioying the benefit of a perpetuall ſpring-tide.

Our moderne *Coſmographers* vpon the North-ſide bound it with the *Mediterranean* and *Herculean* Seas, vppon the Eaſt with the *Arabian* Gulfe, and that *Iſtmus* of *Aſia* that lyeth betweene the ſaid *Mediterranean* and the *Arabian* Seas: vpon the South, beat the waues of the great Ocæan, eſpecially towards the *Cape* of *Good Hope*; which deriuing its denomination from the Countrey adioyning, (viz:) *Æthiopia*, is tearmed the *Æthiopian* Sea: vpon the Weſt, on this ſide the *Æquinoctiall* lyeth the *Antlantique* Ocean, and beyond that, it is tearmed the *Æthiopian*.

The Celeſtiall ſcituation, with the deſcription of the renowned Mountaines, famous Riuers, and remarqueable *Capes*, all worthy to be regiſtred (if breuity, requiſite for ſo ſmall a Volume did not perſwade the contrary) I would not omit, for the delight of thoſe who deſire to make deepeſt progreſſions in this kind of ſtudy.

Digitized by Google

Creatures proper to Affrick.

The liuing Creatures both tame and wild, which this & no other climat affordeth, by the testimony of *Leo Afer*, are many. As first the Elephant, a docible and wilde beast, found in many parts of the cõtinent. The *Giraffa* most admirable, fierce, and sildome seene. The Camell is a gentle beast and tame, wherein the wealth of the *Arabians* doth chiefly consist. The *Barbary* Horse, and the wilde Horse, whereon many of the *Arabians* inhabiting the desarts, do feed. The *Dant* or *Iant* resembleth the Oxe, and of his Hide are wrought impenetrable Bucklers. Heere likewise liue the wilde Oxen, and the wilde Asse. The *Adimain* is like the Ramme, but in stature resembling the Asse, with eares long and flagging. The tame Oxen that liue on the Mountaines, are small bodied, but laborsome and strong. Their Rammes differ onely in their tailes from ours, beeing most broade, and contayning twenty pound in waight. There are a kinde of Lyons, which in many places dare to aduenture vpon two hundred Horse-men. The Leopards are strong and cruell, yet sildome hurt they men. The Beast which the *Arabians* tearme *Dabul*, and the *Affricans Iesef*, is a base and simple beast, in fashion and bignesse resembling the Wolfe, but in feet and thighs like a man. This beast wil dig mens Carcases out of their Graues and deuoure them; towardes all other Creatures hee is harmelesse. The sortes of Apes are very diuers. Heere liueth the Musk-Cat and the wilde Cony. The strange Fishes, and other watery Creatures found in *Nilus*, *Niger*, and other principall Riuers are innumerable. The *Ambara*, for his shape and hugenesse is prodigious, as a Creature containing twenty fiue foote in length. The *Hippotame*, a Beast like an Horse, and as big as an Asse, liueth as well in Waters, as on the Land, and by his often striking of Boates laden with Marchandize, with his sharpe prickles sinketh them vnder water. The Sea-Oxe differeth nothing from the Land-oxe, saue in smalnesse of stature. The Tortoyce liueth in desarts, and are found oftentimes as big as a barrell. The Crocodile resembleth the Lacreta, and is twelue cubits long in body, and as many in taile. Most huge Dragons and poysonsome are often seene.

Fiue seuerall Nations inhabit this part of the World (viz:) the

Digitized by Google

the *Caseres*, that is, people without Lawe: the *Moores*, the *Abessines*, the *Ægiptians*, the *Arabians*, and the *Affricans*, whereof some are white, and some blacke. In Religion some are likewise *Gentils*, and worshippe Idols, some Mahumetans, some Christians, and some Iewes. All which Nations some Writers will haue deriued from *Cham* the Sonne of *Noe*, excepting some certaine *Arabians*, of the seede of *Sem*, which entred *Affrique* after the residue. And these *Arabians* are distinguished into many Families or regiments, vse diuers and many habitations, and possesse as many Regions; some dwelling by the Sea-side (properly tearmed *Arabians*) some in the Vpland, and they are called *Baduini*. Others in innumerable swarmes lead a rogish life with their Wiues & Children in the Wildernesse, dwelling in Tents in stead of Houses, altogether giuen to spoile, and alike infestious to neighbour & trauellor; which is the cause that the Inhabitants dare not trauell alone, but stay the time of the Carouan; that is, the whole assembly of the Merchants, trauelling vppon Camels and Asses all in one company at a set time of the yeare, for feare of the theeuish and rogish *Arabians*.

As the Nations are diuers, so are their languages: the chiefe they call *Aquel amarig*; that is, the Noble Language: And of the *Arabians* inhabiting *Affrica*, the *Barbarian* Language. And this is the true and proper Idiome of the *Affri*, vtterly differing from the residue, saue that it sauoreth of many Arabique wordes. The *Gnabets*, *Zombati*, *Ghineans*, the *Mellidi* and *Gagonti* vse the *Sungai* Language. The *Gubarits*, *Canontes*, *Cheseues*, and the other Blacke-Moores vse the *Guber* tongue. The *Abessines* haue their proper speech. Moreouer, the *Chaldæan*, *Ægiptian*, and *Arabian* tongues, with another compounded of all three, is in vse in some places: and by the intercourse of Marchants, many are accustomed to speake the Moorish, Turkish, Spanish, and Italian Languages. All the Sea-Townes, from the *Mediterranean* to the Mount *Atlas*, speake the *Arabian* corruptly, except the Kingdome and Citty of *Marocco*, which wholy speake the *Barbarian*.

The Noblest part at this day is called *Barbary*, and contay-

Digitized by Google

neth all that Sea tract which reacheth from *Ægipt* to the *Gaditan* Sea, inhabited by the *Arabians*, and including diuers Prouinces. At first, it was vnder the Empire of the Greeks, secondly, vnder the *Vandals*, and lastly vnder the *Saracens* and *Arabians*, who left them their language. Some part thereof at this day is subiect to the Turke, some to the *Xeriffe*, and some to the King of *Spaine*.

Their manners are not much differing from those of the *Arabians*, but that they are more ciuill, ambitious, light, subtill, treacherous, wrathfull, boasters, suspitious, and exceeding iealous. They are very actiue and ready Horse-men, but not able indure labour,

Barbary is deuided into foure kingdomes, *Marocco*, *Fez*, *Telessine*, and *Tunes*. *Sanutus* addeth a fift (viz:) *Barca*. Into what, and howe many Shires or Prouinces these portions are deuided, let him reade *Leo Afer*, that desireth the particulars.

Numidia is the second part of *Affricke*, and is tearmed by *Leo Afer*, *Biledulgerid*, that is, the *Almond*-Countrey. But it is of lesse estimation then the residue, and therefore inioyeth not the Title of a Kingdome. It was once disinhabited, as was *Barbary*, and at this day the Townes are but small, base, scattering, and very farre distant one from another. Those places that they manure, lye beyond *Atlas*, and are hot and dry; but beeing watered with certaine streames discending from the Mount, they yeelde Almonds in aboundance, but scarsity of Corne, nor any fruitfull tree except the Palme. Those grounds that border vpon *Libia*, are inuironed with craggy Mountains destitute of water, and all manner of trees, except some fruiteless shrubs at the foot of the Hils. As for infinite store of Scorpions and Serpents, it is so ouerlaid, that many are daily found dead by their venomous bytings. In old time they were idolatrous, and at this day little better, irrelegious, ignorant, base, treacherous, man-killers, and Theeues, vtterly destitute of any ciuill knowledge, saue that some fewe of them addict themselues to the study of the Lawes. The *Arabians* that liue amongst them, loue Poësie, and are more ciuill, but very poore. They liue long, but their teeth soone perish with eating of Almonds,

Digitized by Google

monds, and their ſight fayleth by the anoyance of the Sandes. They know not the French diſeaſe; yea, if an infected perſon ſhould but come into the Countrey, it were Phiſicke enough to cleare him. Their cheefe food is Barly, Almonds, and other moſt courſe food; as for Bread, they neuer taſt it but on feaſtiuals. And that Corne which they haue, they exchange for Almonds.

Lybia, the third part of *Affrique*, was once called *Sarra*; that is, deſart; and ſo it is, a Deſart, dry, and ſandy Countrey, vtterly bereaued of Springes and Riuers, vnfruitfull, and thoſe which they haue, they keepe in ſtanding pooles, and thoſe alſo, but rare and ſalt. So that the Merchants which are to trauell ouer thoſe Countries, muſt prouide carriage for Water; otherwiſe man and beaſt might perriſh, as not poſſible to finde one drop in ſixe or ſeauen dayes iourney. By this Region lyeth the way from *Fez* to *Tombut*, and from *Teleniſine* to *Agadas*, a Countrey of the Moores. Not paſt one hundered yeares ſince, they that were to trauell from *Fez* to *Cair*, were accuſtomed to trauell by theſe Deſarts; but vpon the riſing of the South Winde, the Welles (although intrenched with Skinnes and bones of Camels) were ſo ouer-whelmed with Sandes, that the Merchants not able to finde eyther ſigne or token of way or water, haue periſhed in the iourney through extreame thirſt.

Some Riuelets they haue deſcending out of *Atlas*, and ſtanding in manner of Lakes, as the Lakes of *Gir*, and *Ighidi Gheogan*, to the great comfort of trauellers, and preſeruation of the Inhabitants.

They liue without any form of law, in manner of bruit beaſts, leading a miſerable life. What learning meaneth they knowe not, and vertue they abſolutely defie. They are altogether addicted to hunting, notorious theeues, and moſt dangerous to Merchants: Yet there liue amongſt them many *Affricans* and *Arabians*, ciuill and curteous entertainers of ſtrangers, and true of their words. In compariſon of the other *Affricans*, they liue but a ſhort time, the ſtrongeſt bodies not exceeding the yeares of ſixty.

Yet for the time they are very healthfull, ſlender, and leane

Digitized by Google

of body, riding vpon Camels, and feede very ſparingly, as alſo very patient of thirſt and hunger. Bread they know not, but liue vpon Milke, Camels fleſh, and Butter. Their clothing is a ſhort rayment and rude, ſcarce couering their middle. Some of them couer their heads with blacke cloath, in faſhion like a *Dulipant*. Their Nobility goeth attired in a kind of long Garment like a ſhirt, made of blewe Cotton-Wooll, with large ſleeues. In ſtead of beds they vſe the greene banckes, or Mats wrought of Bul-ruſhes. Their Tentes are wrought eyther of Chamblet, or of a courſe kind of Wooll, which they finde amongſt the Date-trees.

This Region taketh his name either from the colour of the Inhabitants, or from the Riuer *Niger*. Some Writers affirme that (excepting *Ægipt*) this Country was firſt inhabited, and yet at this day is ſcarcely knowne, although in latitude it containeth very neere 400. miles. By reaſon of its ſcituation neere the *Torrid zone*, it is extreame hot, yet not altogether vninhabited. Yea it is moſt full of Inhabitants, and in ſome places alwaies ſpring-time. On this ſide the Riuer *Canaga*, which is the bounder of theſe blacke people, the Countrey is moſt dry, ſandy and deſart, but beyond for the moſt part fruitfull, by reaſon of their continuall letting in of Water from the Riuer *Niger*, running through the midſt of the Countrey. Whereby all the groundes which lie neere thereunto, or ſuch as participate of this water, are exceeding fruitfull, both in graine, cattle, ſcarlet dye, Cucumbers, Onions, and ſuch like ſawces. But they haue no trees, ſaue one which bringeth foorth fruit not much vnlike a Cheſt-nut, but ſomewhat bitterer. About the bankes of *Niger* there are no Mountaines, nor Vallies, but many Woodes ſtored with Elephants, and other ſtrange Creatures, watered with many Lakes and Miſtes, compacted with the ouer-flowinges of *Niger*. Heere faine neyther profiteth, nor damnifieth, but in the ouer-flowing of *Niger* conſiſteth theyr welfare, euen as it doth in *Ægipt* by the inundation of *Nilus*. For euen as *Nilus*, ſo this forty daies, (from the 25. of Iune) increaſeth, and in ſo many againe falleth, ſo that during thoſe foureſcore daies, they ſaile ouer the whole Land in Boats and Barges.

The

Digitized by Google

The Inhabitants deriued their Originall from *Chus*, the Son of *Cham*, the Sonne of *Noe*, whom at the first they worshipped as Lord of Heauen. Afterward they receiued the Iewish lawes, and perseuered therein many yeares, vntill they receiued the Christian faith. But sithence the Mahumetan superstition impoysoned the whole Confines of *Libia*, they likewise turned, excepting some few Prouinces, which to this day obserue the Christian rites. Towards the Ocean Sea they are all Idolaters and Gentiles. Generally they all lead a brutish life, far different from the instinct of reason, from imployment of wit, and manuary sciences. They are exceeding luxurious, by reason whereof the Countrey swarmeth with Whores. But they that inhabite the good Townes, are a great deale more neat and ciuill then these other *Affricans*; They liue not long, yet retaine they their wonted vigor, and the soundnesse of their teeth to their last gaspe.

The Countrey was once diuided into fiue and twenty kingdomes, now reduced to three; that is to say, the kingdome of *Tombut*, the kingdome of *Borneo*, and the kingdome of *Gaoga*. Besides *Gualata* hath its proper King.

Gualata is distant from the Ocean an hundred miles, it is very small, and containeth but three Burroughes, with some Territory of ground, Hamlets, and Date-bearing fields thereunto adiacent. The Inhabitants are most blacke, louers of Strangers, exceeding poore, without any gouernment, Gentry, or Iudges.

Tombut taketh his name of a Citty so called, & lieth beyond the Riuer *Canaga*. It is exceeding plentifull of Corne, Cattle, Milke, and Butter. Salt they haue none, but buy it at a deer rate at the handes of Merchants. Of Horse they haue infinite store. The King thereof is very rich, as a Prince raigning ouer many other kingdomes, and is Lord of some Ingots which weigh 1300. pound weight.

He keepeth a royall Court, guarded with 3000. Horsemen, and many more foot, armed with Bowes and impoisoned Arrowes. He is an vtter enemy to the Iewes, and doth not onely forbid them his kingdome, but likewise confiscateth those his subiects goods, of whom hee vnderstandeth, that they vse any

Trafficke

Digitized by Google

Traffique with any of that Nation. He maintayneth a great number of learned men. The buildinges of his imperiall Citty, are built of mud and thatch, except one faire Temple, and the Kings Pallace, which are wrought of ſtone and Lime. Sweete Springes are euery where to be found in this Country: and the people are curteous, and merry, ſpending the third part of their time in Songs and dancing. They are very rich, and eſpecially the Stranger. Infinite ſortes of Manuſcripts are brought hether from *Barbary*, which are here ſold at very high rates.

Gago is the name of the chiefe Citty, where the King reſideth. It is very large, without Walles, and diſtant 400. Miles from *Tombut*. The buildings are very baſe, except thoſe which pertaine to the King and the Nobility. Freſh water is here very frequent, with plenty of Corne, Rice and fleſh; but of fruites except the Melon & the Citron, great ſcarſity. The Merchants are rich, and their wares ſumptuous and precious, but exceſſiue deere.

Borneo is a large Country, hath vpon the Weſt *Guangara*, and towards the Eaſt it reacheth almoſt 500. miles. In ſome places it is plaine, in ſome mountainous. The plaine Country is repleniſhed with many Market Townes, from whence commeth great ſtore of Corn. The Mountains are inhabited with Neatheards, and Sheepe-heards, and bring foorth Mill, and other fruits to vs vnknowne. The Inhabitants are Infidels, liuing like beaſts, neither knowing their proper wiues, nor their owne Children. They haue no names at all, but are diſtinguiſhed by bodily accidents. The King is a mighty Prince, as maintaining three thouſand Horſe, and infinite troopes of foote, but hath no other reuenue, then what he taketh by force from his Enemies.

Gaoga, lieth between the kingdome of *Borneo*, and the deſarts of *Nubia*, ſtretched out fiue hundred miles in length, and breadth. The Inhabitants are vnciuil, ignorant, and moſt rude, eſpecially the Mountainers. They goe naked all ſaue theyr priuities. Their Houſes are built of boughes and leaues, hauing great flockes of Cattle, which they preſerue with much care.

Theſe

Digitized by Google

Theſe are the cheefe, the reſidue are not worth the reading; for nothing can be ſpoken vnto, but their barrenneſſe or fertility; their pouerty or riches; bleſſings & curſſes, peculiar more or leſſe to euery Nation.

The Xeriffe.



Amongſt all the Potentates of *Affrique*, I doe not thinke that there can any one bee found to excell this Prince, either in wealth or power. His dominion containeth al that tract of *Mauritania*, which the Romaines called *Tingitana*, and ſtretcheth from the promontory *Bayadir* or *Tanger*, and from the *Atlantique* Ocean to the Riuer *Muluia*. In which progreſſe is contained the beſt portion of al *Affrick*, the beſt inhabited, the pleaſanteſt, the fruitfulleſt, and moſt ciuill. Heerein amongſt others, are the famous kingdomes of *Fez* and *Marocho*, the one deuided into ſeauen Prouinces, the other into eight. The Countrey is diuided into plaines and Mountaines. The Mountaines are inhabited with a fierce people, rich in paſtures and Cattle, and poſſeſſing a great part of the leſſe and bigger *Atlas*. Betweene the greater *Atlas* & the Ocean, lyeth the plaine Countrey, and therein the royall Citty of *Marocho* diſtant foureteene Miles from *Atlas*, watered with many Springes, Brookes, and Riuers. In times paſt, this Citty contained one hundred thouſand Houſholds, and was the cheefeſt of *Affrique*, but by little and little it is decayed, and now lyeth more waſt, then inhabited. In the kingdom of *Marocho*, beſides others, is *Tedſi*, a Towne of 5000. Houſholds, & *Tagoaſt* of 8000. *Taradent* giueth place to none, for Nobleneſſe and Traffique, though for largeneſſe and circuit. It is ſcituated betweene *Atlas* and the Ocean in a plaine, ſixteene miles long, and little leſſe broad, abounding with Sugar and all kinde of prouiſion. The good regard and continuall aboade which *Mahumet Xeriffe* made in this place, did greatly augment and innobliſh this Towne. Beeing paſt *Atlas*, you enter into moſt batle plaines, wherein how fruitfull the ſoyle

Digitized by Google

is of Sugar, Oliues, Cattle, and all good thinges, can hardly be spoken.

The kingdome of *Fez* likewise containeth diuers Prouinces excellent well peopled. Amongst them is *Alga*, a Territory of eighty miles long, and sixty broad: *Elabut* is 100. miles long, and sixty broade. *Eriff* is a Prouince wholy mountainous: therein are said to be three and twenty branches of the Mount *Atlas*, inhabited for the most part with sauage and barbarous people. *Caret* is dry and rocky, more like Lybia then Barbarie.

Now because the glory and Maiesty of this kingdome consisteth especially in the Citty of *Fez*, I thinke it not amisse to describe the scituation thereof. It is deuided in two partes, a little distant one from another, the one is called the old town, the other the new. A little Riuer likewise deuideth the olde Towne into two parts. The East part is called *Beleyda*, containing foure thousand Housholds: the West part is commonly called old *Fez*, and hath foure score thousand and vpward, standing not farre from the new *Fez*, which likewise hath eight thousand. Old *Fez* standeth partly vpon hils, partly on plains, and hath in it fifty Mahumetan Temples of admirable largenesse. All of them haue their fountaines and pillers of Alablaster and Iasper: Besides these, there are 600. of a lesse sort: amongst which, that which is commonly called *Caruscen* is most beautifull, built in the heart of the Citty, and containing halfe a mile in compasse: In breadth it containeth seauenteene Arches, in length an hundred and twenty, borne vppe by 2500. white Marble Pillers: vnder the chiefest Arch (where the Tribunall is kept) hangeth a most huge Lampe, encompassed with 110. lesser. Vnder the other Arches hang very great Lampes, in each of which burne an hundred and fifty Lights. They say in *Fez*, that all these Lampes were made of the Bels which the *Arabians* brought out of *Spaine*, who not only made prey of Bels, but of Columns, Pillars, Brasse, Marble, and whatsoeuer was rich, first erected by the *Romans*, and afterwardes by the *Gothes*. There are in *Fez* aboue two hundred Schooles, two hundred Innes, and foure hundred water-mils, euery one driuen with foure or fiue wheeles. There are also diuers

Digitized by Google

diuers Colledges, among which, that which is called *Madarac*, is accounted for one of the moſt fineſt peeces of workmanſhip throughout all *Barbary*. There are likewiſe 600. Conduits, from whence almoſt euery houſe is ſerued with Water. It were a long labour to deſcribe their *Burſe* (they call it *Alcacer*) it is a place walled about, hauing twelue gates, and deuided into fifteene walkes, where Merchants meet to diſpatch their buſineſſe vnder Tentes. Their delightſome Gardens and pleaſant Parkes, with the Rillets and Waters running through them, I can hardly deſcribe.

For the moſt part, the King keepeth his Court at *Fez*, wherein hee hath a Caſtle, Pallaces and Houſes adorned with rare work-manſhip, rich and beautifull, euen to his hearts deſire. He hath away vnder ground from the old Towne to the new.

For greatneſſe and ſtatelineſſe thereof (by the grant of former Kinges) it inioyneth this ſtrange priuiledge; not indure any ſiedge, vnleſſe the Cittizens ſhall thinke their Prince for ſtrength and forces, able and equall to cope with his Enemie: if not, without reproach of treaſon, they may yeild their Cittie before the enemy approch within halfe a mile of the city. This haue they doone, that ſo goodly and ſo flouriſhing a Cittie, ſhould not ſuffer ſpoile vnder pretext of vnprofitable temporizing.

It is of no leſſe moment for ſcituation, ſtore of Corne, Oyle, Flax, and Cattle, then for pleaſantneſſe of Territory, and plentie of Water. The Wals are very ſtrong, and defended with many Bulwarkes. The Inhabitants are very thrifty, giuen to Traffick, & eſpecially to the making of Cloths of Wooll, Silk, and Cotton. The Kinges eldeſt Sonne is called the Prince of *Mequinez*. Though the Kingdome haue no good Hauens vpon the *Mediterranean* Sea, yet great ſtore of Engliſh-men and French-men reſort to *Alarach*, *Agner*, and other Ports in the Ocean, whereof ſome belong to the Kingdome of *Fez*, and other to the Kingdome of *Marocho*. They carry thether armor and other wares of Europe, which they barter for Sugar and other commodities. But how the kingdomes of *Fez* and *Marocho* (two ſeuerall principalities) with their dependances, became ſubiect to one Crowne, I thinke it worthy relation, becauſe

Digitized by Google

cause a more strange and memorable accident hath not happened in our age. About the yeare 1508. a certaine *Alfaique* borne in *Tigumedet* in the Prouince of *Dura*, began to grow in reputation, a man of a reaching wit, and no lesse ambitious then learned in the Mathematickes. His name was *Mahumet Ben-Amet*, otherwise called *Xeriffe*, by his owne commaundement. This man deriuing his petegree from *Mahumet*, and imboldned by the ciuill warre of *Affrique*, and the differents of the States and Common-weales thereof (wherein in those daies the *Portugals* were of no small puissance) began to dream on the Conquest of *Mauritania Tingitan*. Which the better to effect, he first sent his three Sons, *Abdell*, *Abnet*, and *Mahumet*, on pilgrimage to *Meca* and *Medina*, to visite and worship the Sepulchre of their great Prophet *Mahumet*. The young men returned from this pilgrimage with such opinion and estimation of holinesse and Religion (if it be lawfull to vse these tearmes to so great impiety and foppery) that the Inhabitants as they trauelled, could be kept from kissing their gannents, & adoring them as Saints.

They againe, as men wrapt in deep contemplation, iourned through the Prouinces, sighing and sobbing, and crying with a high voyce; *Ala, Ala.* They had no other sustenance but the Almes of the people. Their Father receiued them with great ioy and contentment, and perceiuing the fauour and opinion of the people not to be like a nine daies wonder, but to continue fresh and the same as at the first, resolued to make vse thereof, and thereupon sent two of them, *Abnet* and *Mahumet* to the Court at *Fez*. The King receiued them kindly, and made one of them President of the famous Colledge of *Auicenna*, and the younger Tutor of his Children. In processe of time, when they perceiued the King to grace them, and the people to fauour them, by the councell of their Father (taking occasion of the greeuances which the *Arabians* & *Moores* seruing vnder the *Portugall* Enfignes had doone to the professors of their superstition) they desired leaue of the King to display a Banner against the Christians, making him beleeue that they would easily draw the *Portugall Moores* to their party, and so secure the Prouinces of *Sus*, *Hea*, *Ducala*, and *Maroch*. *Muly*

mazer

Digitized by Google

mazer the Kings Brother resisted this petition, alleaging, that if once vnder the shewe of holinesse, they grewe to head, it would not afterwards lye in his power to suppresse them vnder his obedience. For warre makes men awlesse; victories insolent; popularity ambitious, and studious of innouation. But the King, in whose heart their hypocriticall sactimony had taken a deepe impression, little regarding his Brothers councell, gaue them a Banner, a Drumme, and twenty Horsemen to accompany them, with Letters of credeance to the Princes of *Araby*, and Cities of *Barbary*. In these beginnings, many thinges falling out to their honour and good liking, they began to make incursions into *Deucala*, and the County of *Safi*, ranging as farre as the promontory *Aguer*, then vnder the gouernment of the *Portugals*: and perceiuing themselues to bee fauoured, strong, and well followed, vrged the people (who for the most part in those daies lined in liberty) to ayde those which fought for their Law and Religion against the Christians, as likewise with willing mindes to giue God his Tithes, which they obtained of the people of *Dara*. Then by little & little, they incroched vpon the territory of *Tanedant* (of which they made their Father Gouernor) and inuaded *Sus*, *Hia*, *Deucala*, and the neighbouring places. The first seated themselues in *Tednest*, and after in *Tesarot*. In their next iourney (but with the losse of their elder Brother) they defeated *Lopes Barriga*, a great Warriour, and Captaine generall of the *Portugal* Army. By flattring speeches they entred *Maroccho*, poysoned the King, and proclaimed *Amet-Xeriffe* King of the Countrey. After this, happened the warre of the *Arabians*, of *Deucala*, and *Xurquia*, with the *Arabians* of *Garbi*, where while each party weakned other, and either promised to himselfe the fauour and assistance of the *Xeriffes*: they turned their armes vpon both factions, carried riches & preys from both Nations. Before this warre, they sent vnto the King the first part of all their spoiles, but after this victory, little regarding their Soueraign, they sent him onely six Horses, and six Camels, and those very leane and ill shapen. Which the King disdaining, sent to demaund his fifths, and also the Tribute which the Kinges of *Maroccho* were accustomed to pay to him; which if they denyed,

Digitized by Google

ed, hee vowed reuenge with fire and Sword. In the meane time the King dyed, and *Amet* his Sonne, once the pupile of the younger *Xeriffe*, not onely allowed, but alſo confirmed *Amet* in the Kingdome of *Marocho*, vpon condition, that in ſome things he ſhould acknowledge the King of *Fez* to be his *L. paramount*. To this the *Xerifs* (whoſe power and eſtimation daily increaſed) when the day of paiment of the tribute came, willed the Meſſenger to ſay vnto his Maiſter, that they were the lawfull ſucceſſors of *Mahumet*, and therefore that they were bound to pay tribute to no Man, yea, that they had more right to *Affricke* then he had, but if hee would reckon them in the number of his friends, no doubt but it would turne to his good and honor, but if he diuerted them from the warre of the Chriſtians, they would not leaue him ſo much as a heart to defend himſelfe.

The King taking this in ill part, proclaimed war againſt them, and beſiedging *Marocho*, but for that time, was conſtrayned to diſlodge. Afterward returning with eighteene thouſand Horſe-men, and two thouſand Harquebuſiers to renew the ſiedge; aſſoone as he had paſt the Riuer, hee was ouercome of the *Xeriffs*, who led an Army of 7000. Horſe, and one thouſand two hundred ſhot. In the pride of this victory they exacted tribute of this Prouince, and paſſing *Atlas*, they tooke the famous Citty *Tafilet*, and partly by loue, and partly by force compelled diuers people of *Numidia* and the Mountaines, to beare the yoake of their ſubiection. In the yeare 1536. the younger *Xeriffe*, which called himſelfe King of *Sus*, gathering together a mighty Army with great ſtore of Artillery, part whereof hee tooke from the King of *Fez*, and part whereof were caſt by certaine *renegado French-men* made a iourney to *Cape Aguer*.

This place is of great conſequence, and poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*, who built it and fortified it, firſt at the expences of *Lopes Sequiera*, and then at the charges of King *Emanuell*, after he vnderſtood of the commodious ſcituation thereof. It was fiercely aſſaulted, and as valiantly defended, vntill the fire began to take hold vpon the Bulwark where their Gun-powder was ſtowed; with which misfortune the companies appoin-

Digitized by Google

ted,

ted, for the defence of that quarter, growing fearefull & faint hearted, gaue way for the *Xeriffe* to enter, who made slaues of the greatest part of the defendants. After which victory, they subdued almost all *Atlas*, the Kingdome of *Marocho*, and the *Arabians* which were vassals to the Crowne of *Portugall*; the residue, as *Safi*, *Azamor*, *Arzil*, and *Alcazar* (places scituated vppon the Sea-Coast of *Mauritania*) King *Iohn* the third perceiuing the profite not to equalize the charge, voluntarilie resigned.

These prosperous beginnings brought sower ends; for the Bretheren falling at discord, twice put their fortunes vpon the hazzard of a battell; and twice the younger ouercame the elder, took him, and cast him in prison in the Citty *Tasilet*. Then turned he his Armes against the King of *Fez*, tooke him prisoner, and restored him to his liberty: but taking him again, for breach of Couenants, depriued him and his Sonne of life and kingdome. By the valour of his Sonnes, he tooke the Cittie *Tremissen*. But *Sal Aries*, Viceroy of *Algier* beeing iealous of these good fortunes, gathered a puissant hoast, recouered *Tremissen*, put the *Xeriffe* to flight, tooke *Fez*, and bestowed it with the Territory vppon the Lord *Velez*, who afterward in a battell against the *Xeriffe*, lost both life and kingdome. At last, in his iourney to *Taradant*, by the subordination of the Viceroy of *Algier*, he was murthered in his Tent by certain Turkes, who with their Captaine *Assen* comming to *Taradant*, rifled the Kings Treasures, but were all slaine (except fiue) by the Inhabitants in their iourney homewards. This came to passe in 1557. when *Muley Abdala* the *Xeriffes* Son, was proclaymed King.

Let this suffice for the originall of the *Xeriffe*: now let vs see how these risings were like the fortunes of *Ismael* King of *Persia*. Both of them in small time conquered many Prouinces: both grew great by the ruine of their Neighbours: both suffered crosses by the armes of the Turks, and to them lost part of their Dominions. *Selim* tooke from *Ismael Caramit*, and diuers other Cities of *Mesapotamia* the Vice-roy of *Algier* drove the *Xeriffe* from *Tremissen* and the adiacent Territory. *Selim* won *Tauris*, the chiefe seate of *Persia*, and then gaue it ouer;

Sal.

Digitized by Google

Sal. Aries tooke *Fez* the head City of *Mauritania*, and left it when he had done.

His manner of gouernment.

This Potentate is absolute Lord of the bodies and goodes of his Subiects: whatsoeuer imposition he laieth on them, they not repine thereat. For tribute he taketh the tenth, and the first fruits of their fruits and Cattle: yet is it most true, that for first fruits he taketh not aboue one in twenty: & though it exceed that number, euen to one hundred, yet he neuer taketh aboue two. Of euery Acre of Land, he taketh a ducket & the first part, and so much of euery household, and of euery pole male and female aboue 15. yeares of age, yearely. If he want, he taketh a great summe. To make the people more willing to pay what is imposed, he alwaies demaunded more then is paid, that so by paying their due, they may thinke they are well dealt withall, in seeming to be forgiuen somewhat of his full demaund. The Inhabitants of the Mountaines, a sauage people, for the difficult accesse vnto them, he cannot inforce to pay tribute, but those that manure the plaines, hee constraineth to giue the tenth of their harueſt.

Besides these reuenues, hee taketh Tole and custome of all kindes of Merchandize in Cities: inward, of a Cittizen two in the hundred, of a Stranger, ten. His rent of Mils is a great matter: for vpon euery Asse-load of Graine grinded in *Fez*, he taketh halfe a reall: in this Towne there are aboue foure hundred Milles. The Church of *Carruuen*, was indowed with 80000. Duckets of yearely reuennue, the Colledges and Monasteries of *Fez* with much more which now are escheated into the Kinges Coffers. Moreouer he is heire to all the Iudges (which they call *Alcaids*) and hath the bestowing of all their Offices. When they dye he seizeth vpon all their Horses, Armor, Apparrell, and all their other Cattles. If the intestate leaue Children behind him fit for the war, he bestoweth his fathers annuity vpon them: if they bee Sons and young, he nurseth them till they come to full yeares: if Daughters, he maintaineth them til they find husbands. To be fingring the wealth of the richer sort, he hath some Office or Lieutenantship with an annuity to sell them: but commonly to preuent those sales, they will not bee knowne of their abilityes, remouing their

Digitized by Google

their abodes far from the Court and Kinges fight, which is the cauſe that the Citty of *Fez* is much fallen from the auncient ſplendor.

He hath no Caſtles or pieces wel fortifyed, but onely *Aguer*, *Labace*, and *Tetuan* vpon the Sea ſide. His chiefeſt confidence is in the valor of his Souldiers, eſpecially his Horſe-men, like the Turke and *Perſian*. In this regard, hee taketh no great care to furniſh himſelfe with Ordinance, yet hath hee great ſtore thereof in *Fez*, *Marocho*, *Taradant*, and in the aforeſaid hauen Townes taken from the *Portugals* and others. As he ſeeth occaſion, he cauſeth new to bee caſt, for which ſeruice hee can want no workmen out of Europe. In *Marocho* he hath an Arſenall, wherein hee layeth vp monthly at leaſt 46. Quintals of Gun-pouder. Here he cauſeth his Harquebuſhes and Bowes likewiſe to be made. In the yeare 1569. by fire which happened among the Gunne-powder houſes, the greateſt part of the Citty was very much defaced.

His ſouldiery is of diuers ſorts: the firſt conſiſteth of 2700. Horſe-men, and 2000. Harquebuſhers, part lying in garriſon in *Fez*, and part in *Marocho*, where lyeth the Court. The ſecond conſiſteth as a man may ſay of a royall troope of 6000. Horſe, all Gentlemen Pentioners, and of great reputation. Theſe ride vppon braue Horſes, with rich Capariſons, theyr Armes and Furniture ſhining with Gold, Siluer, Stones, and al thinges elſe, which for variety of colours, or rich deuiſes may delight the eie with a gallant ſhew, or feede the humor of the curious beholder. To theſe ſeruitors, beſides their allowance of Corne, Prouender, Butter, and Fleſh, for themſelues, their Wiues, Children, and Seruants, they receiue yearely from ſeuenty, to one hundred ounces of Siluer. The third ſort are a kind of *Tamarots*: for the *Xeriffe* doth alot a certaine portion of Land and Tennants to his Sonnes, Bretheren, and Men of quality amongſt the people of *Affricke* and *Arabia*, for the maintenance of their degrees. Thoſe whom they tearme *Alcaids*, looke to the manuring of the fields, gather the rents of Corne, Rice, Oats, Oyle, Butter, Fleſh, Poultry, and Mony, & diſtribute it monthly amongſt the Souldiers, to euery man according to his place. They likewiſe giue them Linnen, wollen,

Digitized by Google

and Silke for their Garments: Armor and Horſes for ſeruice. If their horſes chance to be ſlain, they giue them new: ſo did the Romans to thoſe which ſerued on the horſes of the State. The commanders of theſe troops are very careful to ſee their Souldiers in hart and full of life, excellent well armed, and competently attired. They receiue betweene foure and twenty and thirty ounces of Siluer yearely. The fourth ſort make the *Arabians*, who commonly liue in Tentes, deuided by 120. vnder their ſeuerall Leaders, to be alwayes ready vpon all occaſions. They ſerue on Horſe-backe, but more like Theeues and Outlawes, then Souldiers. The fift ſort is like the preſſe of the Chriſtian Common-weales. Theſe companies conſiſt of Cittizens, Villagois, and Mountaine-people. Of theſe men the King maketh no reckoning, neyther dooth hee willingly arme them, for feare of ſedition and innouation, vnleſſe it be to war vpon the Chriſtians, wherein he cannot forbid them to ſerue. For vpon remembrance of the ſlaughter of the Moores by the Chriſtians ſpoken of in their Mahometicall Legend, the more Chriſtians they ſlay, the eaſier they think ſhall be their paſſage to Heauen. Heereupon you ſhall ſee heardes of people running to this warre, deſiring there to die vpon hope of meriting ſaluation by the ſlaughter of our people. The ſame fury (bee it ſpoken to our ſhame) inrageth the *Turkes*: eſpecially for the propagation of their hereſies, you ſhall ſee them more liker people running to the celebration of a marriage feaſt, then to a war-iourney, hardly induring to ſtay the limitted time of the *Randeuou*. They account them Saintes which dye with their weapons in their hands, and thoſe moſt vnhappy which depart this world amongſt the teares of their Children, and the mournings of their wiues.

By this, it may ſufficiently appeare what forces the *Xeriffe* is able to bring to the fielde, but examples will make it more cleare. *Muley Abdala* beleagred *Magazan* with two hundred thouſand men. Hee filled the Ditch with a Mount made of earth, and with his Ordinance beate the wall leuell with the ground. But by the proweſſe of the *Portugall*, and fury of their Miners, he was forced to raiſe his ſiedge and depart. It is certaine, he is not able to hold any warre aboue three months, becauſe

Digitized by Google

cauſe the Souldier liueth vpon his daily allowance of dyet and apparrell: and when ſuch like prouiſions cannot bee conuayed to the place of neceſſity, without great labour and hazzard, it commeth oftentimes to paſſe for want of prouiſion, that the army is conſtrained to breake and retire. *Molucco* King of *Fez*, who defeated *Sebaſtian*, had vnder his ſtandard forty thouſand Horſe-men, and eight thouſand hyred footmen; and with the *Arabians* and other common Souldiers, it is thought that he able to leuy ſeauenty thouſand horſe, and a far greater number of foot.

¶ *The higher Æthiopia: or the Empire of Presbiter Iohan being the fift part of Affrique.*

THat great Prince of the *Abeſſines*, who by vs of Europe is tearmed *Presbiter Iohannes*, by the *Moores Aſiclabaſſi*, and by his owne ſubiectes *Acegne*, firſt Emperor, and *Neguz*, firſt King, is Lord of all the higher or inward part of *Æthiopia*. He is worthily to bee regiſtred amongſt the greateſt Princes of the world, for that the bounds of this Empire do touch both Tropiques, the Red-Sea, the *Æthiopian* Ocean, and containeth in circuit 672. leagues.

Ioſephus affirmeth, that in auncient times they were called *Chuſæi*, of *Chus*, the Sonne of *Cham*, and at this day ſome hold that the *Portugals* tearme them *Cuſſios*. But in the *Ægiptian* tongue they are ſtiled *Abeſſini*, by reaſon of their ſcattering inhabitation. The Countrey, by report of late trauellers, is moſt fertill. For admit it yeelde Wheat in ſcarſity, yet aboundeth it in Barley, Millet, Peaſe, Beanes, and ſuch like Pulſe, as wee neither knowe, nor can name. Although the Soueraignty of this Prince be very magnificent, powerfull, and ſpacious: yet in truth doth it nothing anſwer the ſame, and report of the vulgar. *Horatius Malagueccius* in his diſcourſe *De amplitudine dominiorum huius temporis*, maintaineth it to be larger then the Empire of any other Potentate, except that of the King of *Spaine*. Truely I muſt needes ſay, that in elder age, by the num-

Digitized by Google

ber of his Titles, it may be coniectured, that his Dominions did ſtretch farre: for hee did intitle himſelfe King of *Goiam*, (which is beyond *Nilus*) *Vangue* and *Damur*; places ſcituated beyond the Riuer *Zair*, whereas at this day, he hardly commeth neere the bankes of eyther Riuer: yea *Iohn Baroz* writeth, that the *Abeſſines*, by reaſon of their Mountaines betweene them and *Nilus*, haue little or no knowledge of that Riuer.

In the Center of his Kingdome is *Barcena*: Eaſt-ward it ſtretcheth from *Suaquen* to the entrance of the Red-ſea, a tract of 122. leagues, and yet betweene him and that Sea lye infinite Mountaines inhabited by Moores, doing what out-rages they liſt vpon that Coaſt. Weſt-ward vpon the bankes of *Nilus* lye a ridge of Mountaines, inhabited by Gentiles, who pay him tribute. Towardes the North, his boundes are to bee limited by an imaginary line, to be drawne from *Suaquen* to the head of the Iland *Meroe*, containing the ſpace of 125. leagues, then making a ſemi-circle like a bow (not too much bended towardes the South) as farre as the Kingdome of *Adea* (in whoſe Mountaines the Riuer which *Ptolomy* called *Ratto*, ariſeth and falleth into the Sea about *Melind*) for the ſpace of two hundred and fifty leagues, it ſtretcheth euen to the Frontiers of the Gentles: and from thence turning your imaginary line, and abutting the end in the principality of *Adell*, (whoſe cheefe Citty is *Acar*, in the altitude of nine degrees) you ſhall finde this Empire to containe in compaſſe 672. leagues.

It is deuided into vaſt plaines, fertill Hillockes, and Mountaines, though wonderous high, yet fit for tillage, and full of habitation. It is not very well ſtored with Wheat, but it bringeth forth Barley, Millet, a certaine other Graine wholeſome and indurable, *Indian* Wheat, and all other kind of Pulſe (as well knowne as vnknowne to vs) in very plentifull manner. They haue Vines, but make no Wines, vnleſſe it bee in the Kinges Court, or the Patriaches Pallace, inſtead whereof they Brew a kind of ſharpe Beuerage, made of the fruite of *Tamerind*.) The Orange, Lymon, and Cædar-tree grow wild. They make Oyle of a certaine fruit which they call *Zaua*, it is of a

good

Digitized by Google

good colour, but vnsauory. The Bees build their Hiues euen in their Houses, whereupon ariseth a great quantity of Waxe and Hony. Their garments are wouen of a Cotten-wooll. The richer sort are clothed in Sheep-skins, the Gentlemen in cases of Lyons, Tygers, and Linces. Their riches consist in Heardes of Oxen, Goates, Sheepe, Mules, Asses, and Camels. Of horses their breede is small, but they haue great store of goodlie Courses brought them from *Arabia* and *Ægipt*. They leaue the Foales with the Mares not aboue three daies, but put them vnto Kine to sucke and reare vp. They haue Hennes, Geese, Wilde-Swine, Harts, Goats, and Hares, but no Conies; yea, and such Beastes, of which we haue not the like; as Panthers, Lyons, Elephants, and Linces. To speake in a word: there is no Countrey vnder Heauen fitter for increase of Plants, and all liuing Creatures, but none lesse helpt by art or industry, for the Inhabitants are ydle and vnthrifty. They haue Flaxe, but make no Cloath, they haue Sugar-canes, and Iron-Mines, but know not the vse of eyther, and as for Smithes, they feare them as fiendes. They haue Riuers and streames, yet will not they take paines in drouthes to cut the bankes to water theyr Tillage or harten their groundes. Few giue themselues to Hunting or Fishing, which causeth their fields to swarme with Foule and Venison, and their Riuers with Fish. But it seemeth, that the true ground of their idlenesse ariseth from their euill vsage; for the poore people perceiuing their Land-lords to pole and pill them, neuer saw more then they needes must. They keep no Method in their speeches, and to write a letter, many men (and that many daies) must lay their wits together. At meales they neither vse Cloath, Napkin, nor Tables. They are vtterly ignorant in Phisicke. The Gentlemen, Burgers, and Plebeians dwell apart, yet may any man rise euen to Honour by vertue and prowesse. The first borne is Heire to all, euen to the vttermost farthing. Through the whole Lande, there is not a Towne containing aboue 1600. houshold, and but few of that quantity: for, for the most part they dwel dispersed in small Villages. They haue no Castle or fortification, in imitation of the *Spartans*, maintaining that a Countrey ought to be defended by the Sword, and not by strength of

Digitized by Google

earth or ſtone. They barter one thing for another, and to make reckonings euen, they ſupply the want with Corne and Salt. For Pepper, Frankinſcence, Myrrh, and Salt, they giue Golde, and that by waight, as for Siluer it is in little requeſt. The greateſt concourſe of people is about the Kinges Court, which neuer ſtaieth long in one place, but is euer in progreſſe, ſometime in one place, ſometime in another, and euer in the open fieldes, vnder Tents and Pauillions. It is ſaid to contain ten miles in circuit. His gouernment is tyranicall; for hee intreateth his Vaſſals, rich and poore, more liker ſlaues then ſubiects: which doe with the greater ſafety, he carryeth himſelfe amongſt them with a holy and Saint-like adoration: for at his bare name they bow their bodies, and touch the Earth with their hands. They reuerence his Pauillion, yea though he be abſent.

In old time they were accuſtomed to ſhew themſelues to the people but once in three yeares, but ſince they are growne leſſe maieſticall, ſhewing themſelues thrice in one yeare; to wit, on Chriſtmas-day, one Eaſter-day, and on Holy-Rood-day; yea and in theſe times, *Pannſius* which nowe raigneth, is become more gracious. When any matter is committed in the Princes name to any man, hee is to attend his Commiſſion ſtarke naked to the middle. Being called to witneſſe a matter in controuerſie, they hardly ſpeake truth, vnleſſe they ſweare by the life of the K. He giueth and taketh, to whom, and from whom he pleaſeth, neyther dare he from whom he taketh, for his life make ſhew of a diſcontented countenance. Hee preſenteth to holy orders, and diſpoſeth at his good pleaſure of the goods of the Spiritualtie, as wel as the Laitie. In trauelling, he rideth ſhaddowed with red Curtaines, high and deepe, incompaſſing him round about.

He weareth on his head a Crowne, the one halfe wrought with Gold, and the other of Siluer, in his hand hee beareth a Siluer Crucifixe. He couereth his face with a peece of watchet Taffata, which more or leſſe hee lifteth vp and putteth downe according as he is minded to grace him with whom he talketh. Sometime he ſheweth his whole Legge, lifting it without the hangings, then may no man approch but by degrees, and af-

ter

Digitized by Google

ter many curteſies, and diuers meſſages paſſing too and fro. No man hath vaſſals but the King, to whom once a yeare they doe homage, and proteſt obedience as ſubiects to their Liege Soueraigne. He deriueth his petegree from *Milech* the Son of *Salomon* and *Saba*. In the raigne of *Candaces*, they receiued the Chriſtian Faith: and about that time, one *Gaſparis* became famous in *Æthiopia*: from whom after thirteene generations, deſcended that *Iohn*, who firſt tooke vppon him the ſir-name of *Sanctus*, and left it an hereditary Title to his houſe and ſucceſſors.

This man hauing no yſſue of his body, about the time of *Conſtantine*, gaue the Kingdome to the eldeſt Son of his Brother *Caius*, and inueſted the younger (*Balthaſar* and *Melchior*) the one with the Kingdome of *Fatigar*; the other with the Kingdome of *Goiam*, and ſo deuided the bloud royall into three Families, the *Goſpars*, *Balthaſars*, and *Melchiors*. To auoid ſedition and innouation, he made a Law, that the ſons, Bretheren, and neereſt Kinred of the Emperor ſhould be kept and ſhut vp in the Caſtle of *Amara*, and that they ſhould neither ſucceede in the Empire, nor inioy any honourable eſtate, for which cauſe the Emperours euer ſince haue ſildome married. He manureth his owne fields with his owne Slaues and Cattle: who by reaſon they are ſuffered to marry, and theyr Iſſues remaine in the ſame eſtate of villenage, as doe their Fathers; they increaſe to infinite multitudes. Euery man that hath any inheritance, doth likewiſe pay tribute, ſome Horſes, ſome Oxen, others Gold, Cotton-wooll, or ſuch like. It is thought that he is Lord of infinit treaſures, and to haue ſtore of Houſes full of Cloath, Iewels, and Golde. In his Letters to the King of *Portugall*, vpon condition that he would wage warre againſt the Infidels, he offered him a Million of Gold, and a Million of men, with prouiſion according. Hee is reported to lay vp yearely in the Caſtle of *Amara* three millions of Gold. And true it is, that before the daies of King *Alexander*, he did hoord vppe great ſtore of Golde in rude and vnwrought Maſſes; but no ſuch quantity as is ſpoken, becauſe they know not how to refine it. His reuennues are of three ſorts, the firſt ariſeth of his Crowne-Land: the ſecond of the

taxes

Digitized by Google

taxes of his people, who pay euery man by houſe ſome-what, beſides the tenth of all that is digged out of their Mines: the third, hee leuieth of the great Lordes, and they giue him the reuennue of any one of their Townes (which hee will chooſe) ſo hee chooſe not that wherein themſelues inhabite. And albeit the Prince be very rich, yet the people are ydle and beggarly: partly becauſe they are intreated as ſlaues, which vſage taketh from any people that courage and alacrity of ſpirit, which ſhould be in men profeſſing armes, & vnder-going dangers; and partly, becauſe in reſpect of that baſe bond of ſeruile fidelitie, where-whith they are ouer-awed to his Maieſty, they perceiue their hands are faſt bound, thorough feare whereof, they haue no other Weapon fit for ſeruice, then a ruſty head-peece, a Scull or Curaſſe, which the *Portugals* haue brought thither. So that, hauing neither fortreſſe to flye vnto, nor Weapons to repulſe wronges, their Villages and ſubſtance lye alwaies open to the prey and ſpoyle of whoſoeuer wil inuade thē. Their offenſiue weapons are certain Darts, and Arrowes without Feathers. They obſerue a Lent of fifty daies, which by reaſon of their true (or rather ſuperſtitious) abſtinence, doth bring their bodies ſo weake and low, that for many dayes after they are not able to gather ſtrength to mooue themſelues from one place to another. At which time the Moores watching opportunitie, inuading their Dominions, carry away Men, Women, and Wealth. *Francis Aluarez* writeth, that hee is able to bring into the fielde 100000. Men: but experience hath manifeſted, that euen in his extreamities, his numbers were farre inferiour to that reckoning. Hee hath Knightes of an Order dedicated to the protection of Saint *Anthony*. Euery Gentleman Father of three Sons (except the eldeſt) is bounde to giue one to the ſeruice of the King; out of theſe are choſen 12000. Horſmen for the guard of his perſon. Their vow and oath is to defend the bounds of the Empire, and to fight againſt the Enemies of the Chriſtian Faith.

He is fronted with three puiſant neighbours: the King of *Borno*, the great *Turke*, and the King of *Adell*. The King of *Borno* is Lorde of that Countrey, which from *Guangula* Eaſt-

ward

Digitized by Google

ward ſtretcheth about fiue hundred miles between the deſarts of *Seth* and *Barca*. In ſcituation it is very vneeuen, ſometime mountainous, and ſometime plaine, the people indifferent ciuill, the Countrey reaſonably well inhabited, and in regard of plentie of victuall, ſomewhat reſorted vnto by Marchants. On the Mountaines dwell Neat-heards and Sheep-heards, liuing for the moſt part vppon Milet, leading a beſtiall life, without Religion, and accompanying with one anothers Wiues. They know no other names then ſuch as are giuen them for ſome note or marke of their bodie, as Blinde, Lame, tall, bold, &c. This King is very puiſſant in people, of whom he exacteth no other tribute then the tenthes of the increaſe of their liuelyhoods. For exerciſe and inſteed of occupations, they giue themſelues to ſteale, to ſlay their Neighbours, and to take them Priſoners, and then to barter them for Horſes with the Marchants of Barbary. He hath vnder him many kingdomes and Nations, ſome white, ſome blacke. He is an heauy Eneiny to the *Abeſſines*, taking away their Cattell, rifling theyr Mines, and leading away the people in Captiuity. His Horſemen ride after the Spaniſh manner, armed with Lances (ſteeled at both ends) Darts and Arrowes: but their inrodes reſemble rather robberies and garboiles, then wars managed by valiant Souldiers.

The *Turke* likewiſe on the Eaſt, and the King of *Adel* on the South-eaſt, do cruelly vex him; for they haue curtald his large Dominion, and brought his Prouinces into great miſery. In the yeare 1558. the Turke harried the whole Territorie of *Bernagaſſo* (but ſince expulſed) and tooke from *Preſter Iohn* whatſoeuer hee was Lord of vpon that Sea-Coaſt, eſpecially the Hauen and Cittie of *Suaquen* and *Erococo*, in which place the Mountaines betweene *Abex* and the Redde-Sea, make a Gate as it were for the Traffique and carriages of the *Abeſſines* and *Arabians*. And ſince that, *Bernagaſſo* was forced to ſubmit himſelfe to the Turkiſh commaundes, to buy his peace, and in name of a tribute to pay 1000. Ounces of Gold yearely.

The King of *Adel* is his no leſſe infeſtious enemy: he bordereth vpon the kingdom of *Fatigar*: and his Seigniory ſtret-

Digitized by Google

cheth along the Red-Sea as farre as *Assum*, *Salir*, *Mith*, *Barbora*, *Pidar*, and *Zeila*. Many Shippes come from *Aden* and *Cambaia*, to *Barbora* with Merchandize, which they trucke for Flesh, Honey, Waxe, and Victuall; these commodities are carried to *Aden*, Gold, *Iuory*, and such wares are sent to *Cambaia*: the greatest part of Victuall, Hony, Waxe, Corne, and Fruits brought from *Zaila*, are carried into *Aden* and *Arabia*, also much Cattle, especially Sheepe, hauing tailes of twenty fiue pound waight, with heads and neckes all blacke, the rest of their bodies all white. Of these Cattle, there are some altogether white, with turning crooked tailes, as long as a mans Arme, and Lew-paps like Oxen. Some of their Kine haue hornes, with many branches like our Deere: othersome haue one horne in their fore-head growing backward, a span and a halfe long. The cheefe Citty of this kingdome is *Arar*, thirtie eight leagues distant from *Zeila* towards the South-East. Hee professeth Mahumitisme, and since his conuersion hee hath intitled himselfe with the sur-name of *Holy*, auowing continuall war against the *Abessine* Christians, and therefore he watcheth the time of the foresaid fast of fifty daies, when he entereth their Territories, burneth their villages, taketh prisoners, and then committeth a thousand other mischiefes.

The *Abessine* Slaues doe often leaue their Countrey, and take vpon them great iournies, putting themselues in the seruice of great Lordes, where many times by their industry and good-carriage, they become high Commaunders in *Arabia*, *Cambaia*, *Bengala*, and *Sumatra*. For the Mahumetan Princes, being all Tyrants and Lordes of those Countries, which they haue forced from the Gentiles, to secure their estates, do neuer trust to their home-bred subiects, but wage strangers & Slaues, vnto whose fidelity they commit their persons, and the managing of all the affaires of their Kingdoms. And amongst all sorts of Slaues, the *Abessine* is in greatest esteeme, for his faithfulnesse and towardly disposition. The King of *Adel* ouerlayeth *Ægipt* and *Arabia* with their Slaues, which hee changeth with the Turks & Princes of *Araby* for Armor, prouision of warre, and Souldiers. In the yeare of our Lord 1500. *Claud* King of *Abex*, perceiuing himselfe inferior vnto *Grand-*

Ameda.

Digitized by Google

Ameda King of *Adel* (for hee had vexed his Land foureteene yeares incurſions) forſaking the frontiers, retyred himſelfe into the inward parts of his kingdome, intreating for ayde of *Stephen Ganua*, Viceroy of *India*, vnder *Iohn* the third King of *Portugall*, who was then in the Red-Sea with a warlike Nauy. In compaſſion of his miſeries and Religion, he ſent him foure hundred Portugall ſhot, very well furniſhed, vnder the conduct of *Chriſtopher* his Brother. By the ayde and vſe of their Artillery, hee ouerthrew his Enemies in two battailes: but the King of *Adel* obtaining of the Gouernour of the City of *Zebit*, one thouſand Harquebuſhers, and ten peeces of Ordinance; in the third fight, put the *Portugals* to flight, and ſlew their Captaine. Afterwardes, when *Adel* had ſent away theſe Turkes, King *Claudius* ſet vpon him at vnawares, by the Riuer *Zeila*, and the Mountaine *Sana*, with 8000. Footmen, fiue hundred *Abeſſine* Horſemen, and the remainder of the liuing Portugals, one of whom gaue *Grada-Amada* his deathes wound. But in March 1560. *Claudius* fighting with the *Moors* of *Malaca*, gaining the victory, was ſlaine in the battell. *Adam* his Brother ſucceeded, againſt whom, being a *Demi-Mahumetan*, the greateſt part of the *Abeſſine* Nobility rebelled, & was ouerthrowne in the yeare 1562. by *Bernagaſſo*. By this caſualty did the *Æthiopian* affaires ebbe and flow, but in the raigne of *Alexander*, things began in ſome ſort to return to their ancient State, by the ayd of the *Portugals*, who furniſhed them with weapons, both offenſiue and defenſiue, and by their example incouraged them to be ſtout and couragious againſt their enemies.

All that were liuing after the defeature of *Chriſtopher Gama*, and all that euer went thither ſince that day to this, do remain there, marrying Wiues, and begetting Children. King *Alexander* gaue them leaue to elect a Iuſticer, and to ende all matters of controuerſie among themſelues, which maketh them ſo willing to ſtay and teach them the vſe of Weapons, the manners of warfare, and how to fortifie places of importance. Sithence thoſe times (*Francis Medicis* contracting friendſhip with the *Abeſſine*) diuers *Florentines*, ſome for pleaſure, and ſome for profit, haue trauelled into thoſe Prouinces, wherein

Digitized by Google

when they are once entred, the King entreateth them so faire, and giueth them so liberally whereon to liue, that they can hardly obtaine licence to returne again into their own Countries.

Besides these, he hath other enemies, as the King of *Dancah*, whose Citty and Hauen is *Vela* vpon the Red-Sea, and the Moores of *Doba*, a Prouince deuided into 14. Lieutenantships. These people, though they are accounted within the limits of the *Abessine* Empire, yet do they often rebell, hauing a Law amongst themselues, that no young man may contract Matrimony, vnlesse hee can bring good proofe that hee hath slaine twelue Christians.

Monomotapa.

IN the residue of the *Æthiope*, raigne diuers powerfull Princes, as the Kings of *Adel*, *Monomugi*, *Monomotapa*, *Angola*, and *Congo*, of which, as we yet vnderstand very little. But that the Reader, by the description of one, may coniecture of the rest; I will speake some-what of the State and pollicy of *Monomotapa*, because it is mightier & more famous then the rest. This Kingdome containeth all that Iland, which lyeth betweene the Riuers of *Cuama* and *Spirito Santo* (a Territory of one hundred and fifty leagues in compasse) and from *Spirito Santo*, it stretcheth euen to the *Cape* of *Good Hope*: for the Vice-royes of that huge tract, doe acknowledge him for their Soueraigne and supreame Gouernour. Of Townes and Villages they haue few, those Cottages which they haue, consist of Timber and Thatch. One of their cheefe Citties is called *Zimbas*, another *Benemetaxa*, the one twenty fiue miles, the other twenty one distant from *Cefala* towards the West. The soile aboundeth with Corne, and with Cattell, great & small wandering by heards through the fieldes and woods. By the store of teeth from thence transported, wee may coniecture, that lesse then 5000. Elephants cannot but dye yearely in this Countrey, these beastes are heere very great. There is no climate like it for plenty of Golde: for there are 3000. Mines, where-out Golde is digged: Golde is likewise found in the earth,

Digitized by Google

earth, in Rockes and Riuers. The Mines of *Manica*, *Boro*, *Quiticui*, and *Toroe* (which some men call *Butua*) are the richeſt. The people are meane of ſtature, blacke, and well ſet. They conuerſe with the King kneeling on their knees, and to ſit in his preſence, is the vſe with them, as with vs to ſtand, and that is granted but to great Lordes. The aſſay of meate and drinke is not made before, but after the Prince hath eate and drunke. Here are no priſons, becauſe law paſſeth vpon the offendor in the very moment wherein the offence was committed. The offences moſt ſeuerely puniſhed, are Witch-craft, Theft, and Adultry. They pay no other tribute but certaine daies worke and preſents, without which, no man may appeare in the Princes preſence. The King beareth in his Coat of armes a certaine little ſpade, with an Iuory handle, and two ſmall Darts.

He keepeth for his faithfulleſt Guard, two hundred Dogs. He keepeth the heires of his Vaſſall Princes to bee ſecured of their Fathers loyalty. One of the Kinges not long ſince was conuerted and baptized by *Gonſalua Silua* a Ieſuite, with the greater part of his Courtiers, but afterwards (by the perſwaſion of certaine Moores in great credit about him) hee cauſed him to be ſlaine. *Sebaſtian* King of *Portugall* offended heereat, proclaimed warre againſt him, vnder the leading of *Franciſco Berotio*. This Army conſiſted of ſixteen hundred, the greateſt part Gentlemen, to whom the *Monomopata* fearing theyr Armes and valor, offered honorable conditions, but the Captaine whom no offer or indifferency could ſatisfie) was ouercome, and his Armie vtterlie conſumed, yet not by the Enemy, but by ſickneſſe and the infectious ayre of the Countrey.

Egipt.

IN this deſcription, I will rather follow the opinion of *Ptolomy*, and ſome others, who make it a part of *Affrica*, then thoſe who either refer ſome portion thereof to *Aſia*, and the reſidue to *Affrique*. It is a moſt Noble and auncient Region, much celebrated, both in Scripture, and other profane Writers,

Digitized by Google

ters, for the excellency and antiquity thereof. In holy writ (as witnesseth *Iosephus*) it is called *Misraim*, and so the Inhabitants. For *Misraim* was the Sonne of *Chus*, the Sonne of *Cham*, the Sonne of *Noe*. The *Arabians* call the Countrey *Mesre*, but the Inhabitantes *Chibeth*, for such was his Name, that first brought his Colony into these partes. It is plaine, sandy, and low Land without Mountaines, which is the reason, that it cannot be seene a farre off: the ayre is hot and infectious; and therefore either to auoid, or mollifie, the intollerable heat of the Summer Sunne, the Inhabitantes are accustomed in all their Cities vppon the tops of their Houses, to build open Tarrases, to let the wind driue in through all theyr roomes. Yet is not this Countrey as the rest of *Affrique*, infested with the Southerne windes ingendred of heat, but is especially refreshed with the Northerne, which heere is moyst, and in other places dry. It hath no Earthquakes, nor shewers, but of very able fertility; and if it raine (as it sildome doth) it bringeth many diseases, as Murres, Catars, Agues, and such like.

The invndation of *Nilus* is mother of all fertillity, the want thereof, an assured prediction of famin and scarsity. The countrey is full of cuts and inlets from this Riuer, which long agoe *Sesostris* caused to be intrenched, least those Townes which were seituated from the maine banke in the heart of the Kingdome, should want water vpon the ebbing of the Riuer. This invndation causeth such plentifull haruestes, that through the whole earth, better increase, and speedier ripeneſſe, is not to be found.

The wealth hereof is rather to be admired, then estimated, in reuiuing the splendor and magnificence of their regall antiquities, their Laborinths, their Piramides, & water-workes, all built and perfected at inestimable charges. Their ruines are to be seene at this day, whereunto the braueſt Monuments of the *Roman* Empire are nothing comparable. The reuennue of this kingdome in times past, both in regard of the fertility of *Nilus*, and the infinit quantity of Merchandize transported from *Æthiopia*, *Arabia*, and *India*, hath bin very great. Some report (saith *Ptolomy*) that *Auletes* receiued from hence twelue

Digitized by Google millions

millions and fifty talents, which according to the computation of *Budæus*, ariseth to seauen millions and a halfe of Crownes: The *Romans* receiued a far greater masse, but now by the *Portugals* Nauigations, it yeeldeth the Turke no such reckoning.

About the beginning of Aprill they go to harueſt, ſo by the twentith of May, no one eare is left growing. About the banks of *Nilus*, it brings forth the fruits of the earth with great eaſe, but farther off, they are faine by the labour of Oxen and men, to let in Water from the Riuers by trenches to moyſten theyr grounds.

Beſides wild Beaſts and harmefull in aboundance, it affoordeth infinite ſtore of tame Cattle; as the Buffall, the Oxe, the Camell, the Horſe, the Aſſe, the Ramme, and the Goate. All which (as *Bellonius* affirmeth) by reaſon of their deepe paſtures, and excellent temperature of the Countrey, doe exceede common proportion. As the Ram, who groweth very fat end extraordinary big, hauing a large and groſſe taile trailing after him vpon the earth, and created with a *Dulap* in manner of an Oxe, and created with blacke wooll. And for that the Winter is very pleaſant, and the ſoyle Moöriſh, it is no leſſe ſtored with Foule, eſpecially Storkes, who for their infinite aboundance, (eſpecially towards the *Nile*) a man would imagine the fieldes to bee couered with white: But as theſe flockes of Birdes are admirable, no leſſe noyſome are their ſwarmes of Frogges; ſo that if God had not ordained the Birdes to deuour this Vermine, all places would prooue lothſome, barren, and infectious. The *Chamælion* is found here very frequent, but liueth not vpon the ayre as ſome doe imagine, but indeede is able to liue without food a whole yeares ſpace. It hath beene alwayes found to abound in mettals, eſpecially towardes the borders of *Æthiopia*, and it is not wholy without ſome ſort of pretious ſtones.

This Countrey was no ſooner knowne, but it was inhabited. And although it were and is of hard acceſſe, by reaſon of the hnge deſarts, ſteepe Mountaines, Mooriſh places, and violent Seas, where-with it is wholy incompaſſed, yet hath it ſuffered diuers and lamentable alterations vnder the yoke of ſtrangers.

For

Digitized by Google

For first it was subiect to their natiue Kinges, and they were the *Pharaos:* then to the *Æthiopians*, whom *Cambises* King of *Persia* expulsed, and subiected. After that, they reuolted from *Darius* (sur-named *Nothus*) and elected Kings againe of their owne Nation, vntill the dayes of *Alexander* the *Macedonian*. After whose death, the third time they had their owne Kinges, called *Ptolomies*, of *Ptolomy* the Sonne of *Tagus*, in whose race it continued till the times of *Ptolomeus Auletes*, Father of *Cleopatra*, whom *Augustus Cæsar* vtterly defeated, and annexed that Prouince to the Roman Empire. Vnder the *Romans*, the *Ægiptians* became Christians, and the deuision of the Empire accrued to the share of the *Constantinopolitan* Emperor.

But no sooner began the Mahumetan armes to prosper, but it fell in their laps, and many yeares continued both the seate of the *Sultans*, and the nurcery of *Militia*. In the yeare of our Lord 1516. *Selimus* the great Turk, razed cleane out both the name and fame of those Princes, and now gouerneth the Prouince by one of his Bassaes, who at this day keepeth his court in *Cair*.

They go apparrelled in garments close buttoned vnto their breasts, and from thence to the foot hanging loose with streit sleeues. In the Summer they vse a kinde of Cotten-Cloath, wouen of diuers colours, but in the Winter a thicker sort of Cloath. The Merchants and the better sort of Cittizens for the most part were the cloaths of Europe. Vpon their head they vse that height and round fashion, which is tearmed a *Dulipan*, whereby all callings & sorts of professions are distinguished, as in the rest of Turkey. They yet retaine the ancient forme of the *Sandall*. Their Women neuer walke abroad with bare faces, by the commaundement of *Mahomet*, as in the residue of Turkey.

Æthiopia inferior.

THe lower *Æthiope*, lyeth most southerly of any part of *Affrique*, vnknowne to *Ptolomy*, and but lately discouered by the *Portugals*. Towards the west it beginneth vpon the Riuer

Digitized by Google

Riuer *Zair*, not far from the *Æquator*, and incircling all the Maritime Coast of *Affrique* beyond the *Æquator*, incompasseth vppon that side the kingdome of the *Abessine*, euen to the *Arabian* fret. This Region containeth many memorable woorkes of God, as certaine great kingdomes, the famoused Mountaines of the Moone, the notable Riuers arising from the Lake *Zembre*, and the most renowned Cape of *Good Hope*. The chiefest kingdomes are *Aina*, *Zangueber*, *Monomopata*, *Cafrania*, and *Manicongi*.

It containeth besides many kingdomes, whereof some are famous, and vnwritten of; some obscure, and not worth the recording: Amongst which is *Adel*, a large kingdome, adorned with two famous Mart-Townes, *Zeila* and *Barbora*. *Adea*, *Magadazzum*, a Kingdome and Cittie, *Zanzibar*, *Melind*, *Mombassa*, *Quiola*, *Mozambique*, *Cafala*, *Angola*, and *Loangi*, all kingdomes.

Amongst the famous Ilands, are *Insula portus sancti*, *Madera*, the *Canaries*, *Capo virde*, Saint *Thomas*, *Magadascar*, and *Zocotary*.

The fourth Booke.

Of Asya.



Sya, is the most Noble, greatest, and vastest part of the World, and in auncient times acknowledged for the third part thereof. Now it is accounted the fourth, or if you please, one of the seauen, exceeding the ancient two, viz: *Europe* and *Affrique*, in largenesse and circuit: especially in these our daies, beeing wholy discouered to the East and North, the habitations of the *Chineis* and *Tartars*; without accounting the Ilandes thereunto belonging, which if they were multiplied, would make a Continent farre fayrer then Europe.

Vpon three parts it is bounded with the vast Ocean, sir-named the *Orient*; on the South, with the *Indian*, vppon the North with the *Scithian*; vpon the West, it is somewhere disioyned from Europe and Affrique, with the Red-Sea, some-

Digitized by Google

where with the *Mediterranean*, somewhere with the *Euxine*, and somewhere with the Riuer *Tanais*. The Regions which of old it containeth, were, *Pontus*, *Bithinia*, *Phrigia* the great, *Licia*, *Galatia*, *Paphlagonia*, *Pamphilia*, *Capadocia*, *Armenia* the lesse, *Cilicia*, *Sarmatia*, *Asiatica*, *Colchis*, *Iberia*, *Albania*, *Armenia* the great, *Ciprus*, *Siria Caua*, *Phinecia*, *Palestina*, *Arabia Petrea*, *Melopotamia*, *Arabia deserta*, *Babilonia*, *Assiria*, *Susiana*, *Media*, *Persis*, *Pathia*, *Carimanta deserta*, *Caramania Altera*, *Arabia Felix*, *Hircania*, *Margiana*, *Bractriana*, *Sogdiana*, *Sacarum Regio*, *Scythia* within *Imaus*, *Scythia* without *Imaus*, *Serica*, *Aria*, *Paramisus*, *Drangiana*, *Arachosia*, *Gedrosia*, *India* on this side *Ganges*, *India* beyond *Ganges*, *Sinarum Regio*, and *Trapoban*.

Generally it inioyeth a most excellent temperature of ayre, and is so rich, fertill, and bateful, for such variety of fruits and feeding; and so abounding there-with, that in all these good guifts, it excelleth all Countries whatsoeuer. For heere are to be found diuers sortes of liuing Creatures, and Plants, the like whereof the whole world againe affoordeth not. As Balme, Sugar-canes, Frankinscence, Mirrhe, Cassia, Cinamon, Nutmegs, Pepper, Saffron, sweete Woods, Muske, and diuers other sorts of Drugs and Odors, excellent Golde, all sortes of Minerals, and precious stones.

Of beasts, it affordeth the Elephant and Camell, with diuers strange sorts, both wild and tame.

The people are of excellent wits, exceeding rich, and happy in all good thinges: This Region hath beene the Parent of many rare spirits, and the seat of most mighty and flourishing Empires. As wherein raigned the Monarches of the *Assirians*, *Persians*, *Babilonians*, *Parthians*, and *Medes*. No lesse regardfull at this day are the Empires of the *Turkes*, *Tartars*, *Persians*, *Mogors*, *Indians*, and *Chinois*; but indeed most celebrated in *Holy-writ* for our Creation, Fall, & Redemption, as the Region wherein in a manner, all the *Histories* and *Actes* mentioned in the *Old Testament*, and a great part of those of the *New*, were wrought and accomplished. The *Ancients* deuided it into diuers parts, but at this present it is best deuided into fiue, according to the chiefe and principall Empires therein:

Digitized by Google

in: the first whereof confining with *Europe*, is gouerned by the great Duke of *Moscouie*; the second belongeth to the great *Cham*; the third is commanded by the *Turke*, the fourth is the Kingdome of *Persia*, the fift comprehendeth that which hath alwaies beene called *India*, and gouerned by diuers Princes, for the most part vassals, feodaries, & tributaries to other Potentates. The principall Ilands, are *Iapan*, *Luconia*, *Mindanao*, *Burneo*, *Sumatra*, *Zeilan* and *Ciprus*; *Gilolo*, the *Molucca*; *Banda* and *Celebes* belong to *Magelanica*.

The great Duke of Moscouia.

THE great Duke of *Moscouia* is Lord of a most large Dominion, and within the limits of his iurisdiction, are contained many Regions: the cheefe Prouinces and Shires whereof, are *Volodomer*, *Mosco*, *Nisnouograd*, *Plesdo*, *Smolensko*, *Nouogrod*, *Velica*, *Rostowe*, *Yarnestaue*, *Bealozera*, *Rezan*, *Dwina*, *Cargapolia*, *Meschora*, *Vagha*, *Vstuga*, *Golefsa*. These are the naturall shires pertaining to *Russia*, far greater and larger then the Shires of England, but not so well peopled. The residue with a great part of *Siberia*, haue beene ioyned to this Crowne by Conquest, who though they speake not the *Russie* language, yet obey they this Emperour, and are ruled by his Lawes, and are all at this day reduced into foure iurisdictions, or Tetrarchies; From the North to the South (if you measure from *Cola* to *Astrachan*, which draweth somewhat Eastward) it reacheth in length about 4260. verst or miles; the breadth is 4400. verst: a verst is (according to their reckoning) 1000. paces, lesser then our English mile by one quarter; wherein as some write, are contained fifteene Dukedomes, and two Kingdomes, (viz:) *Gasan* and *Astrachan*; wherein, if it were alike habitable and peopled in all places, as it is in some, hee could hardly hold it within one Regiment; or if he so could, then would hee surely bee ouer-mighty for his Neighbour-Princes.

It is scituated partly in *Europe*, and partly in *Asia*, which separation is caused by the Riuer of *Tanais*, bounder of *Asia*, and

Google

running through the middle of the Countrey.

The people were once subiect to the *Tartars*, whose Prince *Roydo* in the year 1140. conquered *Moscouie*; but *Iohn* the 1. (incouraged by their ciuill dissentions) denied them tribute. In processe of time, when *Ametes* the last successor of *Roydo*, (who died at *Vilua*) had ouercome the *Tartars Precopenses*, the great Duke adioyned to his Empire, *Permia*, *Veatia*, and *Iugria*, Prouinces subiect to *Ametes*. From this time, the forces of the great Duke increasing, *Basilius Casan*, and *Iohn* the second, conquered the Prouinces of *Citrahan*, which at this day are called kingdomes. To confesse the truth, the great Dukes haue mightily enlarged their boundes, and haue taken the great Dutchies of *Seuerin* and *Smoloncke*, *Bielchose*, *Prescouia*, *Nouogrod*, *Iaroslaue*, and *Roscouia* (some of them) from the *Polaques* and some from other Potentates: they possessed thirty great Towns in *Lituania*, with *Narue* and *Dorts* in *Liuonia*, but they are all quite gone, beeing of late yeares surprized by the Kings of *Poland* and *Sweueland*.

The chiefe Citty of the kingdome is *Mosco*, where the Patriarch resideth, *Roscouio* and *Nouogrod* are the seats of Archbyshops; *Cortisa*, *Resania*, *Columna*, *Susdelia*, *Casan*, *Vologda*, *Tuera*, *Smoloncke*, *Plescouia*, *Staritia*, *Sloboda*, *Ieroslaue*, *Volodomer*, (from whence the Kings Seat was translated to *Mosco*, by *Iohn* the second) *Mosayco*, Saint *Nicholas*, *Sugana*, *Vstind*, and *Gargapolia* are Bishopprickes. The Emperor abideth in the Citty *Mosco*, which taketh his name from the Riuer, arysing fourescore and ten miles higher into the Countrey. The Citty hath beene greater then now it is, and was nine miles compasse; the forme thereof is in a manner round, inuironed with three wals, the one within the other, and streetes lying betweene; whereof the inmost Wall, and the buildings closed within it, (lying safest as the heart within the body, fenced and watered with the Riuer *Mosco*, that runneth close by it) is all accounted the Emperours Castle. The number of houses through the whole Citty, (beeing reckoned by the Emperour a little before it was fired by the Enemy) was accounted to be 41500. in all. But since it was sacked 1571. and burnt by the *Tartars*, it containeth not aboue fiue miles. According to

Posseui-

Digitized by Google

Possevinus, a Writer of good iudgement and industry, there are housed in this Citty, thirty thousand people, besides Oxen and other Cattle. Doctor *Fletcher* writeth, that it is not much bigger then the Citty of *London*.

Nouograde hath the name of Great, and yet the same Author aloweth it not aboue twenty thousand Inhabitants; as likewise *Smoloncke* & *Pleſcouia*. As the *Russie* saith, here was committed that memorable war (so much spoken of in Histories) of the *Scithian* Seruants, that took armes against their Masters: who in memory of their great victory, haue euer since in their Coyne, stamped the figure of a Horse-man, shaking a whip aloft in his hand.

This seemeth most incredible to me (if it bee true as some write) that *Pleſcouia* when King *Stephen* of *Poland* besiedged it, had within it fifty thousand Footmen, and seauen thousand Horse. Truely this is a great number, and though they were not all *Moscouites*, yet this reckoning asketh a great proportion of Inhabitants; for if the King thrust in fifty seauen thousand fighting men, it must needs be, that the Inhabitants were very many moe. Some will haue it, that in times past, the Countrey was better repleniſhed with people, and that afterwardes it became desolate for three causes: the first, was the plague (a new disease in *Moscouie*) which gleaned away many thousand Soules: the second, the tyrranny of their Emperors, who haue put infinite numbers to death, especially of the Nobility: the third, the incursions and robberies of the *Tartars Precopie*, & the *Negaians*, which neuer cease vexing their bordering Neighbours. For the Nature of these Rogish *Tartars* is, to make spoile of all men, and to captiuate their bodies, selling them to the Turkes and other Nations. By reason whereof, many farre remooued Prouinces; partly vpon feare, and partly vpon pollicy, are suffered to lye wast and vnmanured. And this is all the good which ambitious Princes gaine by their vndiscreet inuasions of their Neighbours, to the destruction of their people, and their owne vexation.

No Prince made longer iournies and greater expences then the great Duke *Iohn*: hee vanquished the Kingdome of *Casan* to *Volga*, and *Astrachan* on the *Caspian* Sea; hee subdued a

 great

great part of *Liuonia*. But what honour, what profit, or what continuance of ſecurity gained hee by theſe victories? What was the end of this war? In theſe expeditions periſhed infinite numbers of men, in iournying, in aſſaults, with the Sword, with ſickneſſe, with hunger, and other extreamities. When he had ouercome them, he was inforced to keepe great Gariſons; yea, to bring thither whole Colonies. Beſides, when men were ſo farre from home, eyther buſied in getting other mens goods, or in keeping what they had got, their Wiues ſtayed at home like Widdowes, and the inward part of the Realme remained emptie, as a heart voyd of bloud, wanting his neceſſary nutriment, whilſt the Inhabitantes were waſted on the skirts of the kingdome. And therefore when it was inuaded by King *Stephen* of *Poland*, theſe remote forces were wanting to make reſiſtance, and through this ouerſight, he loſt againe *Pozonia*, and other peeces of good reckoning; yea, and inforced to leaue the whole poſſeſſion of *Liuonia* to the *Polander*.

To proceede, the ſoyle of the Countrey, for the moſt part is of a ſlight ſandy Mould, yet very much different one place from another, for the yeeld of ſuch things, as grow out of the Earth. Northwards towards the partes of Saint *Nicholas* and *Cola*, and North-Eaſt towards *Siberia*, it is all barren, and full of deſart Woods, by reaſon of the climate, and the extreamity of colde. So likewiſe along the Riuer *Volga*, betwixt the Countries of *Caſan* and *Aſtrachan*, notwithſtanding the ſoile be fruitfull, it is all vnhabited, ſauing that vpon the weſt-ſide, the Emperour hath ſome few Caſtles with Gariſons in them. This happened by meanes of the *Crim-Tartar*, that will neither plant Townes to dwell in, (liuing a wild and vagrant life) nor ſuffer the *Ruſſie* beeing farre off with Colonies to people thoſe partes. From *Vologda*, which lyeth almoſt 1700. verſts from the Port of Saint *Nicholas*, downe towardes *Moſco*, and ſo toward the South parts that border vpon the *Crim* (containing the like ſpace of 1700. verſts, or there-abouts) it is a very pleaſant and fruitfull Countrey, yeelding paſture and Corne, with Wood and Water in great ſtore and plenty. The like is betweene *Rezan* (lying South-Eaſt from *Moſco*) to

Digitized by Google

Nouo-

Nouogrode and *Vobſco*, that reacheth fartheſt towardes the North-weſt: So betwixt *Moſco* and *Smolensko* (that lyeth South-weſt towards *Lituania*) is a very fruitfull and pleaſaunt ſoile, and alſo very fertile and commodious, for thoſe Inhabitants that dwell therein.

The Countrey differeth very much from it ſelfe, by reaſon of the yeare; ſo that a man would maruel, to ſee the great alteration and difference betwixt Winter and Summer. In Winter it lyeth vnder ſnow (which falleth continually) which ſometime is of a yard or two thicke, but deeper towardes the North. The Riuers and other Waters are frozen vp a yard or more thicke, how ſwift or broad ſoeuer they bee. And this continueth commonly fiue monthes, (viz:) from the beginning of Nouember, till towards the end of March, about which time, the Snow beginneth to melt. The ſharpneſſe whereof, you may iudge by this: for that Water dropped downe (or caſt vppe into the ayre) congealeth into Ice before it come to the ground. In the extreamity of Winter, if you hold a pewter diſh or a pot in your hand, or any other mettall (except in ſome Chamber where their warme ſtoues be) your fingers will freez faſt to it, and draw off the skinne, at the parting: when you paſſe out of a warme roome into a cold, you ſhal ſencibly feele your breath to waxe thicke and ſtifling with the cold, as you draw it in and out. Diuers not onely that trauell abroad, but in the very Markets and ſtreetes of their Townes, are monſtrouſly pinched, yea killed withall; ſo that you ſhall ſee many drop downe in the ſtreetes, many trauellers brought into the Townes, ſitting dead and ſtiffe in their ſleds; and yet in Summer-time, you ſhall ſee ſuch a new hue and face of a Countrey, the Woods ſo freſh and ſo ſweete, the Paſtures and Meddowes ſo greene and well growne, (and that vpon the ſudden) ſuch variety of flowers, ſuch melody of Birdes (eſpecially of Nightingales) that a man ſhall not lightly trauell in a more pleaſanter Countrey; Which freſh and ſpeedy growth of the Spring, ſeemeth to proceede from the benefite of the Snow, which all the Winter time being ſpred ouer the whole Countrey, as a white Robe, keepeth it warme from the rigor of the froſt, and in the ſpring time, when the weather waxeth warm, and

Digitized by Google

and the Sunne diſſolueth it into Water, it dooth ſo throughly drench and ſoke the ground (beeing of a ſleight and ſandy mould) and then ſhineth ſo hotly vpon it againe, that it euen forceth the Herbs and Plants to ſhoot forth in great plenty & variety, and that in a ſhort time. As the winter ſeaſon in theſe regions exceedeth in cold, ſo likewiſe I may ſay, that the Summer inclineth to ouer-much heate, eſpecially in the monthes of Iune, Iuly, and Auguſt, being accounted the three chiefeſt months of burning heat, & yet in thoſe places it is much warmer then the Summer in England.

To returne to our relation of the ſoile and climate; for the moſt part it is couered with Woods and Lakes; theſe Woods are the branches of *Hircinia*, ſpreading it ſelfe through all the North, and perhaps more in this Prouince then in any other. Heere grow the goodlieſt and talleſt trees of the World, thorough which for their thickneſſe, the brightneſſe of the Sunne beames can hardly pierce. An vnſpeakeable quantity of Rozin and Pitch diſtilleth out of theſe trees, and heere is the neuer-waſting Fountaine of Waxe and Hony. For without any induſtry of man, the Bees themſelues builde their Hiues in the Barks & hollownes of trees. Here is al plenty of cattel & wild Beaſts: Beares, Martins, Beaſts called *Zibellini*, and Wolues: whoſe Skins doe beare high prices. Of the Timber of theſe trees are ſquared all neceſſaries, aſwell for buildings, as all other vſes; the Walles of the Citties are framed of beames cut foure-ſquare, faſtned together, filling all the chinks and vacant places with earth. And of theſe beames likewiſe they builde Plat-formes of ſuch height and thickneſſe, that they beare the weight of great Ordinance how maſſie ſoeuer. They are ſubiect to fire, but not eaſily ſhaken with the fury of battery.

For waters, *Moſcouie* may well bee called the Mother of Riuers and Lakes; witneſſe *Duyna*, *Boriſthenes*, *Volga*, *Duyna*, *Onega*, *Moſcua*, *Voliſca*, and the famous *Tanais*; the Lakes of *Iya*, vppon which ſtandeth the great *Nouogrnade*, *Volugpo*, and many others. The abundance of theſe Waters doe make the ayre colder then is requiſit for the increaſe of Cattell, or growth of Plants, and although cold is thought more wholeſome then heat, yet are their Cattell of ſmall growth thereby,

and

Digitized by Google

and many times their fruites come not to ripening, the Earth drowned with the Waters, for the most part becommeth light and sandy, and then eyther with too great drouth, or too much moysture, it destroyeth the fruite. Winter in some sort lasteth nine monthes, little more or lesse, and the Soyle bringeth forth plenty of graine and feeding for Cattle. It also bringeth forth Apples, Nuts, and Filberds: other kind of fruits they scarcely know. Of Fish thy raise their greatest gaine, as hauing greatest abundance of that commodity; they dry them in the frost and Wind, as in *Norwey*, and other northerly Nations, and they lay it vp for store as well in their townes of war, as for their priuate Families. The kingdome is not full of Merchants, because by Nature the Inhabitants are idle, and that Prouince cannot abound with Merchants, where Arts and Artificers are not established. They haue not the vse of the Sea, because it is not lawfull for a *Moscouite* to trauell out of his Princes Dominions; such, and such store of Wares as they haue, as Skinnes, Rozin, and Waxe, they barter for Cloath, & diuers other Commodities, which the *Armenians* bring to *Astrachan* by the *Caspian* Sea, and the English to S. *Nicholas* by the bay of *Graduicum*.

The gouernment of the great Duke is more tyranicall then of any other Prince in the World; for he is absolute Lord and disposer of the bodies and goods of his subiects. Therefore *Mahumet* the Visier was wont to say, that the *Moscouite* and the great *Turke*, amongst al the Princes of the earth, were only Lords of their owne Dominions, & in that regard, thought the iourney of King *Stephen* of *Poland* would proue ful of danger and difficulty. To preserue his Maiesty and reputation, he vseth incredible pollicy and seuerity: first it is not lawfull for any of his subiects to depart the Realme vpon paine of death; and therefore no man there, dare goe to Sea, no not speake to an Ambassadour, or vse the counsell of a forraine Phisitian, without licence. He weareth apparrell of inestimable value, ioyning the Ornaments of a Bishop to the Maiesty of a King, by wearing a Miter on his head, shining with Diamonds and rich stones; When he weareth it not on his head, he placeth it before his Chaire of Estate, and oftentimes changeth it, in

Forme of gouernment.

Digitized by Google

boast of his riches; In his left hand he beareth a most rich crosier, apparrelled in a long Garment, not much vnlike to that which the Pope weareth when he goeth to Masse: his fingers are full of Gold Rings, and the Image of Christ, and his blessed Mother the Virgin, are ouer the Chaire wherein he sitteth. The Priuy Chamber and great Chamber, are full of men cloathed in Cloth of Gold downe to the foot. In Ceremonies of Religion, he vseth great deuotion and reuerence: at the Table as often as a dish is changed, or he hath a desire to drinke, he maketh many signes of the crosse: hee beareth singuler regard to fasts, and in the Church he kisseth the ground with his forehead, euen as others doe. That no man should proue a better Scholler then himselfe, he suffereth no schoole but of writing & reading to be kept: they read nothing but the Euangelists, some History, the liues of Saints, a Homily of *Iohn Chrisostome*, or some such like; yea, they would hold him for an Heretique, that shonld go about to professe himselfe better learned; and assure himselfe, hee shall not escape punishment. Which is the reason that their Notories, nay the Secretaries themselues, commonly can neither write, nor answer Ambassadors of forraine Princes, no farther then they are taught by the great D. When they negociate, they no sooner name the *Great Duke*, but all of them rise vp with great reuerence: the like is doone at his Table, when he drinketh, or carueth to any man, & so in a thousand like casualties: they are taught euen from their cradles, to beliene and talk of their great Duke, as of God: vsing these phrases in their ordinary talking, *God onely and our great Semapor* knoweth this: *Our great Lord* knoweth all thinges. *All wee enioy, health and riches, all proceedeth from our great Duke*. For the subiect seeing such State and magnificence in the Prince, and knowing no more then hee is taught at home, reuerence and obey him as slaues, not as subiects, accounting him rather a God then a King. He hath not vnder him Lordes graced with Titles, as we haue Dukes, Barons, &c. but he bestoweth vpon one a Hamlet, vpon another a Farme; and these not hereditary, vnlesse he confirme it: and when hee hath confirmed it, the Farmers notwithstanding pay him a portion of their fruits, and owe him villaine-seruice: which is the cause, that

Digitized by Google

that euery man dependeth on the will of the Prince, and looke by how much the richer, by so much the deeper, is he indebted vnto him. To preuent rebellion, hee transferreth whole families and Towne-ships from one Prouince to another, and sendeth the one and the other into Garrisons, as into exile: so farre away are the miserable people carryed from their owne homes.

By this a man may gesse of his wealth and riches: for seeing he is absolute Lord of al, he vseth the seruice of their bodies at his pleasure, and what portion of their goods, him listeth. Of the skins of wild beasts he chalengeth what portion he liketh; and of euere sort of Fish, euen what he will. The skins are sold or giuen, as pleaseth him: the Fish (dried in the winde) is kept for victualling the garrisons. In the market no man may sell his wares before the King hath sold. He hath not many Mines of Gold or Siluer. The best Mart-Towns from whence he gathereth the greatest part of his reuenues, are *Astrachan* at the *Caspian* Sea, whither the wares of the *Persians* and *Armenians* are brought; and S. *Nicholas*, whether the ships of the *English* & *Hollanders* doe ariue, laden with Cloath and other Merchandize, which from thence are transported to *Vologda*. When his Ambassadors returne, he taketh from them the presents giuen them by forraine Princes, and instead thereof, bestoweth vpon them some other reward, and many times nothing at all. To speake in a word: he gleaneth whatsoeuer is good, or ought worth, thorough his whole kingdome; it is thought that hee hath great store of Treasure in his Castles of *Mosco*, *Ieroslane*, and the Marishes of *Albi*; which may be true. For the great Duke *Iohn*, wasted in a manner al *Liuonia*, sparing neyther relique, challice, Crucifix, nor any ornament of Siluer: and of that which is once brought in, he suffereth no part thereof to be transported, vnlesse it be for the ransome of Souldiers taken in the war, or of the poore people carried into captiuity. This is most true, that when hee lost *Liuonia*, which King *Stephen* of *Poland* reconquered in the yeare of our Lord 1582. he lost the richest Prouince of all his Dominions for the Traffique of the *Baltick* Sea, and the best, for the strength of 34. Castles standing therein. Riches.

Digitized by Google

Strength of ſcituation.

The ſtrength of the Kingdome conſiſteth in the manifolde numbers of Riuers and Mariſhes, and in the thickneſſe of woods. Beſides, they vſe to lay waſt the parts neereſt their enimies, that there the Woods may grow thicker, which for the moyſture of the ſoyle quickly commeth to paſſe, and are as auaileable as a wall or trench to the defence of the next towns. This pollicy brought great trauell to the *Polanders*, for they were conſtrained to looſe much time in cutting downe the woods before they could come to the inhabited places of their Enemies. They haue a few fortreſſes, ſome built of ſtone, ſome of Bricke, after the *Italian* faſhion, but without ſtrength of moderne deuiſes or cunning workmanſhip. Such are the Caſtles of *Moſco*, *Nouogrod*, *Pleſcouia*, *Percouia*, *Stobndy*: ſome are wrought with twigs and earth, wel trdden downe, as *Smolonck*. But commonly the wals of ſtrong places are built of great beames, ſtuffed with Turffe or Moſſe, leauing loop-holes for ſhot. This fortifying is very auaileable againſt great Ordinance, but exceeding ſubiect to fiering. They ſerue in the field (as wee tolde you before treating of his gouernment) rather bearing themſelues valiantly for feare of punniſhment, then of their owne natures ſhewing any alacrity or willingneſſe to the ſeruice. He hath his Captaines at a becke, his Souldiers ſuffer all extreamities patiently; they care not for froſt or raine: they indure hunger and ſcarſity with incredible contentment; they liue with a little: better able to defend a fortreſſe, then to fight in fielde; for heere courage and agility, there conſtancy and reſolution are moſt ſeruiceable; whereas the *Polanders* are better to fight in the fielde, then to keepe a Caſtle: as well appeared in eyther Nation at the ſiedge of *Vobſco*, where the *Ruſſe* repulſed the *Polonian* King, *Stephen Battore*, with his whole Army of 100000. men, and forced him in the end to giue ouer his ſiedge, with the loſſe of many of his beſt Captains and Souldiers: but in a ſet field the *Ruſſe* hath bin euer noted to haue had the worſe of the *Polonian* and *Sweden*. And therefore the great Duke *Iohn* finding by experience the vnaptneſſe of his Souldiers, and the readineſſe of the *Polonians* in skirmiſhes, was wont to ſay, that his men had neede of a Spur to driue them forward, and the *Polonians* wan-

ted

Digitized by Google

ted a bridle to hold them backe. His chiefest force is in horse; but what number hee can raise, who can shew? For I doe not beleeue that hee is able (as some say) to arme three hundred thousand, because, though his Empire bee large, yet for the greatest part it lyeth vnmannured, as the many daies iourney betweene *Cazan* and *Astrachan*, and scarce meeting one Village in the way, may well witnesse. In the warre which King *Stephen* waged against him (beeing not aboue 60000. Foote and Horse strong) hee was not able to raise so great a force, I will not say, as to meet him in the open field, but not to hinder him from forcing of *Pozonia*, *Vilocoloc*, and other pieces, no nor to diuert him from the siedge of *Plescouia*. In the yeare 1571. the Prince of the *Tartars* with 80000. Souldiers, pierced euen into the bowels of his kingdome, and set fire on his Imperiall Seat *Mosco*. Therefore I thinke, that they who report, that the great Duke can leuy 300000. men, and the king of *Polonia* 200000. doe rather meane heades of Horses then Riders; for there may be so many thousand Horse, and yet euety one is not to be counted a horse of seruice, no more then euery Horseman a Rider, or able to find himselfe Armor. One hath his hart in his hose; another wants ability; a third wants strength of body; a fourth, both courage and strength; yea, admit he could raise so many men (as these Writers speak of) yet would it bee a hard matter, perchance impossible, for him to assemble them in one place; or if hee could, where would wages or victuals bee found sufficient to sustaine them. For two hundred Horsemen in *Moscouie*, require three hundred Packe-horses, and so many tenders, who must all bee fed; as likewise the victulers, the Merchants, the Artificers, and such seruants as can hardly be spared, in warlike enterprises. To performe this, whole *Moscouie* must of necessity bee gathered into one place, and then it were to be feared, least in so great a iourney from one part of the kingdome, the other part opposite would runne to ruine and decay. Likewise, although such a proportion of Horse, as hath beene spoken of, might bee raised, it were not wisedome for the State to strip the Borders of their Garrisons, the Prouinces of their sinnewes, the Cities of their Magistrates, and the Countrey of Husband-men.

Digitized by Google

In which point *Baſilius* in the conqueſt of *Lituania* and *Livonia*, committed a great ouerſight; for that, taking away with him the vpland and Countrey people, who ſhould haue tilled the ground, and might eaſily haue bin kept in order without any danger by other good pollicies, by this courſe was afterwards driuen, many yeares together to victual the Country (eſpecially the great Townes) out of his owne Country of *Ruſſia*. And againe when he firſt conquered theſe Countries, he committed no leſſe an error in ſuffering the Natiues to keepe theyr poſſeſſions, and to inhabit all their Townes, onely paying him a tribute, vnder the gouernment of his *Ruſſe* Captaines, whoſe conſpiracies and attempts were the loſſe of theſe places. The like fell out at the Port-Towne of *Narue* in *Lieſland*, where his Sonne *Iuan Vaſiliwich*, built a Towne and a Caſtle on the other ſide of the Riuer (called *Iuangorod*) to keepe the Countrey in ſubiection, which ſo fortified, was thought to bee inuincible: When it was furniſhed, for reward to the Architect, (being a *Poloneſe*) he put out both his eyes, to diſable him to builde the like againe. But hauing left all the Natiues within their owne Countrey, without abating their number and ſtrength in due order, the Towne and Caſtle not long after was betrayed to the King of *Sweden*. Therfore I conclude, that that Prince whoſe kingdome is able to affoord him 150. thouſand Horſe, to be brauely furniſhed, if he can bring into the fielde but the third part (I ſpeake of warre and not of incurſions.)

Some more modeſt in writing, affirme, that the *Moſcouite* could leuy an hundred and fifty thouſand Horſe, if neceſſity to defend himſelfe, forced him thereunto; And that *Iohn* the third, in the voyage of *Aſtracan*, entertained 120. thouſand Horſe, and twenty thouſand foot. The ſame King inuading *Liuonia* in the time of King *Alexander*, leuyed a mighty Army, and notwithſtanding, maintained another vppon the borders of the Kingdome. The great Duke *Iohn* adioyning to his troops of Horſe, certaine thouſand of ſhot, moſt ſtrangers, which yeelded him notable ſeruice in the defence of his Citties.

And to make good the aforeſaide proportion of Caluary, the

Digitized by Google

the Englishmen, who by reason of their intercourse in those Countries, are best acquainted with these Relations; do write, that the ordinary number of souldiers intertayned in continuall pay is this: first, he hath his *Dowrancy* (viz:) Pentioners, or guard of his person, to the number of 15000. horsemen, with their Captaines and other Officers, that are alwayes in a readinesse. These 15000. are deuided into three sorts: the first are chiefe Pentioners, and they receiue, some a thousand, some foure score rubles a yeare, none vnder seauenty. The second sort, receiue betwixt sixty and fifty rubles, none vnder forty. The third and lowest sort, receiue thirty rubles a yeare, some 25. some 20. none vnder twelue, the whole summe ariseth to 55000. rubles by yeare.

Besides these 15000. Horse-men (beeing the guard of the Emperours owne person, when himselfe goeth to the wars, resembling the *Roman* prætorian souldiers) there are 110. men of speciall account for their Nobility and trust, chosen by the Emperor, who are bound to find 65000. Horse-men, with all necessaries meet for the warre, after the *Russian* manner. For the which seruice, they are yearely allowed for themselues, and their companies, the sum of 40000. rubles. These 65000. are bound to repair to the field euery year towards the borders of the *Crim-Tartar* (except they be otherwaies appointed) whether there be warres with the *Tartar*, or no. And because it should not proue dangerous vnto the State, to intrust so great a power to Noble-men, first as they are many, viz. 110. so are they changed by the Emperor at his pleasure. Secondly, they haue their maintenance of the Emperor, being men otherwise borne but to small reuennue. Thirdly, for the most part, they are about the Emperors person, beeing of his counsell, eyther speciall, or at large. Fourthly, they are rather Paimaisters then Captaines to their companies, themselues not going forth ordinarily to the warres, saue when they are directed by speciall command. So the whole number of horsemen alwaies in readinesse and continuall pay, are fourescore thousand, few more or lesse. If he need a greater number (which sildome happeth) then hee entertaineth those Gent. which are out of pay: if yet he want, he giueth charge vnto his Noblemen that hold Lands

of

Digitized by Google

of him, to bring into the fielde euery man a proportionable number of his Seruants (called *Rolophey*, (viz.) ſuch as till his Lands) with their furniture: the which ſeruice being doone, preſently they lay in their Weapons, and returne againe to their ſeruile labours.

Of Footmen in continuall pay, he hath 12000. all Harquebuſſiers, whereof 5000. attend about the Citty of *Moſco*, or where the Emperour ſhall abide; and two thouſand (called *Stremaney ſtrelſey*) or Gunners at the ſtirrop, about his owne perſon at the Court or Houſe where himſelfe lodgeth. The reſidue are placed in Garriſons, till times of ſeruice, and receiue for their ſallary euery man ſeauen rubbles a yeare, beſides twelue meaſures, a peece of Rice and Oates. Of Mercenarie Souldiers being ſtrangers (1588. hee had 43000. *Polonians*: Of *Churchaſſes* (who are vnder the *Polonians*) about 4000. Of *Dutch* and *Scots* about 150. Of *Greeks*, *Turks*, and *Swedens*, all in one band, a hundred or thereabouts. Theſe they imploy only vpon the *Tartarian* ſide, and againſt the *Siberians*, as they doe the *Tartar* Souldiers (whom they ſometime hire, and but onely for the preſent) on the other ſide, againſt the *Polonian* & *Sweden*. Concerning their arming, they are but ſleightly appointed. The common Horſe-man hath nothing but his bow in his Caſe vnder his right arme, and his Quiuer and Sword hanging on the left ſide, except ſome few that beare a caſe of Dags, or a Iauelin, or ſhort Staffe along their Horſe-ſide. The Noble-men ride better and richer appointed. Their Swords, Bowes and Arrowes, are of the Turkiſh faſhion, and practiſe as the *Tartars*, to ſhoot forwards and backwards, as they flye or retire.

The footman hath nothing but his piece in his hand, his caſting hatchet at his backe, and his ſword by his ſide; prouiſion of victuall the Emperour alloweth none, eyther for Captaine or Souldior, neither prouideth any, except peraduenture ſome Corne for their Money. Euery man is to bring ſufficient for himſelfe for foure monthes, and if neede require, to giue order for more to bee brought after him to the Campe from his Tennant that tilleth his Land, or ſome other place: for diet & lodging euery *Ruſſie* is prepared a Souldier before-hand; for though

Digitized by Google

though the chiefe Captaines carry tents with them after the faſhion of ours, with ſome better prouiſion of victuall than the reſt, yet the common ſort bring nothing with them, ſaue a kinde of dried bread, with ſome ſtore of meale, which they temper with water, and ſo make it into a ball, or ſmall lumpe of Dough, and this they eate raw inſtead of bread: their meat is Bacon, or ſome fleſh, or fiſh, dried after the Dutch manner. If this ſouldior were as hardy to execute, as he is able to beare out toyle and trauell; or as apt and well trained, as he is indifferent for his lodging and diet, he would farre exceede the ſeruitors of other Prouinces.

It is thought, that no Prince in Chriſtendome hath better ſtore of munition; which may partly appeare by the Artillery houſe at *Moſco*, where are diuers ſortes of great Ordinance, all of Braſſe, verie faire, and to an exceeding great number.

Vpon his frontiers lie the *Tartars Precopenſes*, the *Taurici*, the *Cherſoneſi*, the *Circaſſi*, and the *Negayans*. Theſe people inhabit a Countrey ſeauen daies iourney diſtant, and are gouerned by Dukes, after the maner of the *Heluetians*. He hath receiued great iniury of the *Precopenſes*, without hope of amends, becauſe they are confederate with the great *Turke*, & by him furniſht with Harguebuſiers, and Ordinance; & haue in their kingdome many ſtrong places fortified with *Turkiſh* Garriſons, and therefore he thinketh it hard and dangerous to inuade them, being backed by the Turke, whoſe power he ſhould likewiſe ſtir vp againſt them. It is the cuſtome of the *Precopi* (often vſed) to make inrodes into the Prouinces of the *Great Duke*, as likewiſe of the *Polonian*, and to carry away whatſoeuer commeth to hand. If the *Great Duke* haue vanquiſhed the *Tartars* of *Caſſan* and *Aſtrachan*, let him attribute that Conqueſt to his great Ordinance, which they wanted. But the *Precopi* haue the vſe of Guns, and (woorth all the reſt) the fauour and protection of the *Turkiſh* Emperor, who thirſting to open a way into *Moſcouy*, or the *Caſpian* ſea, aſſayed not many years ſince to digge a trench from *Tanais* to *Volga*: but his forces were put to flight by the *Moſcouites*, in feare of their vtter deſtruction, if the *Turk* had brought that deſeignment to effect. This was a deuiſe of greater corage then wiſe- Borderers.

Digitized by Google

dome: for the *Moſcouites* not onely defeated his Nauy, taking part thereof, but alſo put all his Land-forces to the Sword, conſiſting of foureſcore thouſand *Tartars*, fiue and twenty thouſand *Turkes*, and three thouſand *Ianizaries*.

As we haue ſaid before, the *Circaſſi* liue much after the manner of the *Swiſſers*; they endeuour not to inlarge their owne bounds, but ſerue for wages, ſometime vnder the *Turke*, ſometime vnder the *Perſian*, and ſometimes vnder the *Moſcouite*, from whoſe Dominions they are ſo farre diſioyned, that they ſtand in no feare of their ſeueral greatneſſes. The *Negayans* are more to bee dreaded, for their ſuddaine inrodes, and furious incurſions, then for iealouſie of their forces, or that they are able to raiſe, or vndertake any royall voyage. Of late times they threatned the *Moſcouite*, but their fury was ſoone appeaſed by ſending them preſents. It is the beſt courſe to hazzard our Money, rather then our forces, againſt the Theftes and ſpoyles of theſe barbarous Nations: for when they haue neyther Citty nor ſtrong place to ſubdue, thereby to keepe them in ſubiection: what can you tearme the Warre made againſt them, but labour with loſſe, and charge without profite? But to preuent all miſchiefes, the Duke is forced to keepe great troops of Horſe in *Citrachan*, *Caſan*, and *Viatca*, againſt theſe *Nagayi*: as alſo a great Garriſon in *Culagan* vppon *Tanais*, againſt the *Precopi*.

But the mightieſt of them all, is the *Crim-Tartar*, (whom ſome call the *Great Cam*) who lyeth South and ſoutheaſtward from *Ruſſia*, and doth moſt annoy the Country by often inuaſions, commonly once euery yeare, ſometimes entering very far within the Inland parts. In the yeare 1571. hee pierced as far as the Citty *Moſco*, with an army of 200000. men without battell, or reſiſtance; for that the *Ruſſie* Emperour (then *Iaan Vaſiliwich*) leading forth his Army to encounter him, miſtooke the way. The Citty he tooke not, but fiered the ſuburbs, which by reaſon of the buildinges, conſiſting for the moſt part of wood, kindled ſo quickly, and went on with ſuch fury, as that it conſumed the greateſt part thereof, almoſt within the ſpace of foure hours; where, by fire, and preaſe, 800000. people or more were reported to haue periſhed at that ſeaſon. Theyr princi-

Digitized by Google

principall quarrell aryseth about certaine Territories claimed by the *Tartar*, but possessed by the *Russie*. The *Tartar* alleadgeth, that besides *Astrachan* and *Cazan* (the auncient possession of the East-*Tartar*) the whole boundes, North and West-ward, so farre as the Cittie of *Mosco*, and *Mosco* it selfe pertaineth to his right, which seemeth to be true by the report of the *Russies* themselues, that tell of a certain homage doone by the *Russie* Emperour euery yeare to the great *Crim*, the *Russie* Emperour standing on Foote, and feeding the *Crims* horse sitting on horse-backe, with Oats out of his own Cap, insteed of a Boule or Manger, and that, within the Castle of *Mosco*.

And this homage they say was done till the time of *Basilius*, who surprising the *Crim-Tartar* by a Stratagem vndertook by one of his Nobility, was content to change this homage into a tribute of Furs: which afterwards also was denyed; whereupon they continue their quarrelles, the *Russie* defending his Countrey and Conquests, and the *Crim* inuading him once or twice a yeare, sometime about Whitsontide, but oftener in Harueſt. What time if the great *Crim* come in person, hee bringeth with him an Army of 100000. or 200000. men; otherwise, they make short and suddaine Rodes, with lesser numbers, running about the list of the Borders like wilde-Geese, inuading, and retyring, as they see aduantage. And now being entered thus farre, not without occasion, into the manners of these *Tartars*, I thinke it not amisse some-what to discourse of their fightes, their arming, their Religion and Customes.

Their common practise (beeing very populous) is to make diuers armies, and so drawing the *Russe* into one or two places of the frontiers, to inuade at some place vnsuspected, and without defence. Theyr order of fight is much after the *Russe* manner; that is, to thrust on altogether without discipline in a hurry, as they are directed by their Generall; saue that they are all Horsemen, and carry nothing else but a Bow, a sheafe of Arrowes, and a Semitar, after the Turkish fashion. They are very expert horse-men, and vse to shoot as readily backward, as forward. Some wil haue a horsmans staffe like a Boar-spear,

Digitized by Google besides

beſides their other weapons. The cõmon ſoldier hath no other armour, then his ordinary apparell, viz: a blacke ſheepe skin, with the wooll-ſide outward in the day time, and inwardes in the night time, with a Cap of the ſame. But their *Morſeis* or Noblemen imitate the Turke both in apparrell and Armour. When they are to paſſe ouer a Riuer with their Army, they tie three or foure horſſes together, and taking peeces of wood, binde them to the tailes of their horſes, and ſo ſitting on the poles, they driue their horſes ouer. At handie ſtrokes they are counted farre better men then the *Ruſſes*, fierce by Nature, but more hardy and bloody by continuall practiſe of warre, as men neuer inured to the delights of peace, nor any ciuill practiſe.

Yet their ſubtility is more then may ſeeme to agree with their barbarous conditions. By their continuall inuaſions & robberies they are verie pregnant and witty, to deuiſe ſtratagems on the ſudden for their aduantage. As in their Warres againſt *Beala* the fourth King of *Hungary*, whome they inuaded with 500000. men, and obtained againſt him a great victory. Wherein hauing ſlaine his Chancellor, they founde about him the Kinges priuy ſeale, and there-with preſently counterfetted Letters in the Kings name to the next Cities, with charge, that in no caſe they ſhould conuey themſelues or their goods out of their dwelling places, encoraging the people to abide therein without feare of daunger, and withall recounting how baſe a reſolutiõ it were to abandon their countrey and poſſeſsions to ſo barbarous a Nation as the *Tartar*, diſpraiſing themſelues in all deſpightfull maner, letting them to vnderſtand, that though he had loſt his cariages with ſome few ſtraglers, who had marched diſorderly, yet hee doubted not but to recouer that loſſe with the fortune of a Noble victory, if the ſauage *Tartar* durſt abide him in the fielde. To this purpoſe hauing Written their Letters in the *Poliſh* Charracter (by the helpe of certaine young men taken priſoners in the fielde) ſigned with the Kings ſeale, they diſpatched them forth to all the adiacent quarters of the Country; whereupon the *Hũgarians* that were now poſting away with their goods, wiues, and children, on the rumor of the kings ouerthrow, by the comfort of theſe counterfet letters, ſtopped their iourney,

Digitized by Google

and

and ſo being ſurprized, were hemd in, and made a prey to the huge numbers of theſe barbarous *Tartarians*.

When they beſiedge a Town or Fort, they offer much parle, and pretend many flattering curteſies to perſwade a ſurrender, and being once poſſeſſed of the place, they leaue no crueltie vnpractiſed, affirming that faith and Iuſtice is to be kept toward no people, but their owne; in their encounters (where they alway practiſe by ambuſhments) they retire as repulſed for feare, ſo to draw their enemies within daunger: but the *Ruſſie* being well acquainted with this ſubtilty, is very wary of them. When they war in ſmall numbers, like rouers, to make their army ſeem greater, they ſet counterfet ſhapes of men on horſebacke.

When they giue the onſet, they make a great and barbarous ſhout, crying altogether, *Olla Billa, Olla Billa*, God helpe vs, God helpe vs; they contemne death in that deſperate maner, that they chooſe rather to die, then yeeld: and when they are wounded to death, & paſt recouery, they haue bin ſeen to bite their weapons in rage; wherein appeareth the great difference of courage betweẽ the *Tartar*, the *Ruſſie*, and the *Turke*. For if the *Ruſſie* ſouldior bee once put to retire, all his ſafetie is ſet on ſpeedie and reſolued flight, and being once taken, he neyther defendeth himſelfe, nor intreateth for mercy, as reckoning ſtraight to dye: and the *Turke* commonly, when hee is paſt hope of eſcaping, falleth to entreat, and caſting away his weapon, offereth both his hands, as it were to bee manacled, chooſing rather to liue a ſlaue, then to die conſtantly.

The cheefeſt booty they deſire, is to get ſtore of captiues, eſpecially yong boyes or girles: whom they ſell to the Turks, or other their neighbors. And the *Ruſſie* borderers (being vſed to their inuaſions, lightly euery ſummer) keepe few other cattle on the borders, ſaue ſwine, which the *Tartars* wil not touch nor driue away, becauſe they are of the Turkiſh religion, and will eate no Swines fleſh. Of Chriſt, they confeſſe as much as the Turke doth in his *Alcoran*, viz: that he came of the Angel *Gabriel* and *Marie*; that he was a great Prophet, and ſhalbe iudge of the world at the laſt day. In other matters likewiſe, they are much ordered after the manner and direction of the

Digitized by Google

Turke, as hauing felt his force at the winninges of *Azon* and *Caffa*, with ſome other teritories about the *Euxine* Sea, which before were Tributaries to this *Crim Tartar*. So that at this day moſt vſually the Emperor of the *Crim* is choſen out of the *Tartar* Nobility by the Turkes appointment, and to him they giue the tenths of their ſpoils gotten by war from the chriſtians. Vnder the Emperor they haue certain Dukes, whom they call *Morſes* or *Diuoy morſes*, that rule ouer a certaine number of 10000. 20000. or 40000. a peece, which they terme *Hords*. When the Emperor hath vſe of thē in his wars, they are bound to come, and to bring with them their proportion of ſoldiers, euery man with two Horſſe at leaſt, the one to ride on, the other to kill, when it commeth to his turne to haue him eaten. For their cheefe victuall is horſe fleſh, which they eat without bread, or any thing els with it. And yet (with maruel) though they ſerue all on horſe-backe, and eate all of horſe-fleſh, there are brought yearely to the *Moſco*, to be ſold 30000. or 40000. horſe. So they haue great droues of Kine, and flocks of black Sheepe, which they keepe rather for their skins, then for their fleſh, though ſometim they eat of it. Towns they plant none, nor other ſtanding buildings; but haue mouing houſes built, on wheeles, like a Shepheards cottage: theſe they draw with them whereſoeuer they go, driuing their Cattle with them, & when they come to their iournies end, they plant theſe Carthouſes in a ranke, in forme of a Towne with large ſtreets: neither hath the Emperor himſelfe other place or maner of dwelling; ſaying, that the fixed and ſtanding buildinges of other Countreyes are vnwholſome and vnſauoury.

In the Spring, they begin to mooue their houſes from the South parts, towards the North; & ſo driuing on til they haue grazed vp all, to the fartheſt part of the North, they returne backe againe towards the South (where they continue all the Winter) by ten miles a ſtage. Of Money, they haue no vſe at all, preferring Braſſe and Steele before other Mettals, which they vſe for ſwords, kniues, and other neceſſaries; gold & ſiluer they neglect of purpoſe, as alſo Tillage, to be more free for their wandering kind of life, and to keepe their countrey leſſe ſubiect to inuaſions. Which courſe indeede cannot but proue diſad-

Digitized by Google

disaduantagious to the Innaders, as it happened in old time to *Cirus* and *Darius Histaspis*. For their manner is when they are inuaded, by flying, reculing, and fained feare, to drawe theyr enemies some good way into the bowels of their country, and then when victuals begin to grow scarse, & other extremities to oppresse their enemies (as needs they must, where nothing is to be had) they stop vp the passages, and enclose them with multitudes. By which pollicy (as some write) they had well nigh surprized the army of *Tamerlan*, had hee not with all expedition retired towards the Riuer *Tanais*.

For person & complection they haue broad and flat visages, of a tawny colour, fierce and cruel in looks, thin haired on the vpper lip and pit of the chin, light and nimble bodied, & short legd, as if they were naturally created for horse-men. Their speech is very sudden and lowde, speaking as it were out of a deepe hollow throate. Their cheefest exercise is shooting, wherein they traine their children from their infancy: and to conclude, are the very same people whom the Greeks & Latines called, *Scitha Nomades*, or the Schythian Shepheards.

There are diuers other *Tartars* (as I haue aforesaid) bordering vpon *Russia*, as the *Negay*, the *Cheremissens*, the *Mordwittes*, the *Circasses*, and the *Shalcans*: all differing in name, more then in custome or condition, frō the *Crim Tartar*, except the *Circasses* that border southeast toward *Lituania*, who are far more ciuill then the rest of the *Tartars*, of a comely personage and stately behauiour, as imitating the fashion of the Polonian: whereof some of they haue subiected thēselues to this crown, and professe Christianity. The *Negay* lieth Eastward, and is reckned the best man of war among the *Tartars*, but verie sauage aboue all the rest. The *Cheremessen Tartar* lieth between the *Russi* and the *Naigai*, & are of two sorts, the *Laganoy*, that is, of the valley, and the *Nagornay*, viz: of the hilly Countrey. These haue so troubled the *Russie* Emp. that vnder colour of a yearely pension of *Russie* commodities; hee is content to buy his peace, yet with condition to serue him in his wars.

The most rude and barbarous is the *Mordwit Tartar*, a people hauing many selfe-fashions, and strange kinds of behauior differing from the rest.

Digitized by Google

Next to the kingdome of *Astrachan*, the farthest part south-East of the *Russie* dominion, lyeth the *Shalcan*, and the Countrey of *Media*, whether the *Russie* Merchants trauell for raw silkes, Sindon, Saffron, Skins, and other commodities,

The next bordering neighbor by *Finland* side, is the king of *Sweueland*. Of late times this king holding a long war against him, tooke from him by force the castles of *Soreneſco*, and *Pernania* the great, and the lesse, in *Liuonia* on the one side, while king *Stephen* cruelly vexed him with warre on the other side. In the vtmost bounde of the *Finland Bay*, the *Swenian* to his great charge possesseth the fortresse of *Viburge*, maintaining therein a great Garrison, to resist the attemptes of the *Russie*. Likewise in that sea, and on the coast adioyning, he keepeth ships of warre, as well to be ready at al assayes, against the approaches of this great Duke. As also, to forbid the Easterlings the bringing of any munition or warlike furniture, into any part of his Dominions: Neyther doth he suffer other shippes to sayle in those seas, without a speciall placard signed with his owne hand. By the benefit of this Nauy, the K. of *Sweueland* (whereſoeuer he finds meanes to vse it) becommeth maister of the field, and by Vertue thereof seyzeth vppon manie places on the Coast of *Liuonia*, and the bordering Territories. But where the Dukes horse, or his great numbers of footmen may stand him in stead, (as in the open fielde remooued from the Sea) there he maketh his part good enough, & most commonly puts the *Swenian* to the worst. The best is, Nature hath placed betweene them such rough Mountains, such cold, such Ice, and such snowes, that they cannot greatly endamage one another.

The last Neighbour, is the King of *Poland*, between whom and the great Duke, this is the difference. The *Moscouite* hath more territories; the *Polonians* better inhabited, & more ciuil: the *Moscouite* more subiects, and more subiect; the *Polonian* better souldiors, and more couragious; the *Moscouites* are apter to beare the shock, then to giue a charge: the *Polonians* to charge: the *Moscouite* is fitter to keepe a fortresse, the *Polonian* to fight in the fielde; the *Moscouites* forces are better vnited; the *Polonian* more considerate and better aduised: the

Moscouite

Digitized by Google

Moscouite lesse careth for want and extremities: the *Polonian* death and the sword: yea, either Nation is of greater worth, when either of their Princes, is of greater magnanimity: As it hapned, when *Basilius* conquered the great Dutchy of *Smolonke* and *Polonck*, and the large circuite of *Liuonia*; And againe, when *Stephen* King of *Poland*, in his last warres against *Iohn* (*Basilius* his son, reconquered *Polonck*, with diuers other places of good reckoning; besiedged the Citty of *Plesko*, and forced the *Moscouite* to leaue all *Liuonia*: whereby I conclude, Such as is the valour and wisedome of eyther Prince, such is the force and courage of their people.

Tartaria.

NEeds must this kingdome of the *Tartars* fal out to bee the faireſt and greateſt principality thorough the whole worlde, when as besides that portion which lyeth in Europe, it contayneth more then a third part of *Asia*. In it are contained three famous and principal prouinces, *Sarmatia Asiatica*, both *Scithiaes*, and the Regions of *Serica*, now called *Cathaio*. Most fierce and barbarous Nations did alwayes inhabite this Countrey, as first the *Amazons*, a warlicke kinde of women, which in their dayes casting away the properties of their sex, vexed the whole world, vsurped *Asia*, and built *Ephesus*. Vpon their finall extirpation, arose the *Scithians*, no lesse dreadfull then the former. Then succeeded the *Gothes* or *Getes*, termed by their neighbours *Polonci*, that is; rauenous or theeuish. These the *Tartars* tamed, and erected their monarchy about the yeare of our Lord 1187. or as others say, 1162. electing for their King, one *Cingis*, a man of base birth and calling. This mans followers at that time liued without manners, Lawe, or Religion, in the plaines of *Caracoram*, tended their Cattle, & payed their duties to King *Vncham*, otherwise *Presbiter Iohn*, who without doubt in those dayes kept his Court in *Tenduch*, in the kingdome of *Argon*. But this King *Cingis* first subdued the Kingdome of *Vncham*, and afterwards imposed the yoake

Digitized by Google

of ſubiection on the bordering Prouinces. And without queſtion, that famous Comet ſeene in the moneth of May, 1211. laſting eighteene dayes, and glimmering on the *Goths*, *Tanais*, and *Ruſſia*, with its taile extended towards the Weſt, did foreſhew the ſucceeding invndation of theſe *Tartars*. For, in the yeare following, this Nation, whoſe name was not ſo much as dreampt of before in Europe, wholy ſubdued *Sarmatia Aſiatica*, or *Scythia*, inuaded *Ruſſia*, *Hungaria*, and *Polonia*. And laſtly, erected other famous Monarchies in *China*, *Mein*, and *Bengala*.

At this day it is deuided into fiue principall prouinces: *Tartaria Minor*, lying in Europe, betweene *Tanais* and *Boriſthenes*. *Tartaria deſarta* (of olde *Sarmatia Aſiatica*) containing moſt of the *Hords*, but not all: *Zagatai*, *Cathaio*: And laſtly, that great promontory, which lyeth out-ſtretched in the vttereſt part of *Tartari* towards the North and Eaſt, and may be called *Tartaria antiqua*, as the mother place of the true *Tartar* nation, vtterly vnknowne to *Ptolomy*.

Tartaria minor

The *Precopenſes* liue in the open field, about the *Euxine* ſea, the lake of *Meotis*, & the *Taurique Cherſoneſſe*, which adioyneth vpon *Boriſthenes* and *Tanais* in Europ. In this ſtraight or *Peninſula* ſtandeth *Theodoſia*, now *Caffa*, once a colony of the *Genois*, now a *Sangiacie* of the Turkes. Their whole teritories are very fruitfull for corne and cattle, and the people more ciuill and curteous then many of the reſidue, yet retayning a ſmatch of their ancient barbariſme. For they are ſworne enemies to the Chriſtians, yearly inuading *Ruſſia*, *Lituania*, *Valachia*, *Polonia*, and many times *Moſcouie*, yeelding to the Turk in the name of tribute, yearely 300. Chriſtian ſouls. To one of theſe Princes *Selimus* gaue his daughter in marriage.

Tartaria deſarta.

This in olde time was called *Sarmatia Aſiatica*, and better inhabited before the cõming of the *Tartars*. It lieth betweene *Tanais*, the *Caſpian* ſea, & the lake of *Kitay*. It is a plain country, by nature fertil, if it were manurd by theſe *Tartars*, nothing giuen to husbandry, but addicted to lead a roguiſh and wandering life after the maner of the *Arabians*. Their cheefe delight is in hunting and warfare; Mill and Panique, they caſt careleſly into the ground, which notwithſtanding yeelds ſufficient.

Digitized by Google

ficient encreaſe. Their ſtore of Horſe and Cattell is ſo plentifull, that they haue to ſpare for their Neighbors. For the moſt part they dwell vpon Cartrages couered with skins and wollen cloath. Some defenſible Townes they haue, whereunto they flye in times of neceſsity.

Aſtrachan is ſcituated vpon the *Caſpian* ſea: it is rich, affordeth excellent good ſalt, and very well frequented by *Moſcouiſh*, *Turkiſh*, *Armenian*, and *Perſian* Marchants. *Aſtracan.*

In the year 1494. it was taken by *Iohn Baſilides*, great duke of *Moſcouie*, and by him with the title thereof annexed to the *Moſcouian* Empire.

The *Zagatayan Tartars*, were ſo named of their Prince, the Brother of the great *Cham*, which once raigned among them. They are now called *Ieſolbas*, that is to ſay, Greene-heads, of the colour of their *Turbants*. They inhabit the ancient Countries of *Bactria*, *Sogdiana*, and *Margiana*, in times paſt the habitation of the *Maſſagetes*, ſo famous in Armes. Theſe are the moſt honourable people of the *Tartars*, indifferent ciuill, giuen to Arts, and Lords of many faire Cities built with ſtone, as *Shamarcand*, once a Towne of great fame, and renowned for the birth of the great *Tamelan*, but now decayed. The Zagatay.

The great Cham of Kataya.

AS our Aunceſtors were ignorant of the Regions ſcituated vpon the Eaſt ſide of the *Caſpian* ſea, which they imagined to be a branch of the Ocean: euen ſo, as yet little or nothing knoweth this Age, what Regions lie, or what people inhabit beyond that ſea, and the mountaines, commonly called *Dalanguer* & *Vſſont*. *M. Paule Venetus* was the firſt that broke the yce, in deſcribing of thoſe Contries, and of him we receiued what we know of the *Tartars*, The great diſtance of countries, the difficulty of the iourney, and the inacceſſible ſcituation of places, hath hindred the diſcouery of thoſe prouinces: & the great Duke of *Moſcouie* (by whoſe dominions we may eaſieſt trauell thither) will ſuffer no ſtrangers to paſſe through his Kingdome. The *Caſpian* Sea, a paſſage no leſſe fitting

Digitized by Google

for the iourney is not frequented: and by the way of *Persia* infinite Mountains and vaſt Deſarts, deuiding both Prouinces, oppoſe themſelues againſt vs. And to the further hindrance of this diſcouerie, neyther the great *Cham*, neyther the King of *China*, nor the Duke of *Moſcouy*, will ſuffer any of theyr Subiects to trauell out of their Dominions, nor any ſtranger to enter in, vnleſſe he come as an Ambaſſadour; neither (in this caſe) is it lawfull for him to conuerſe freely, or to range at his pleaſure.

They liue vnder diuers Princes, the principall whereof are thoſe that weare green on their *Turbants*. Theſe (as aforeſaid) inhabit *Shamercand*, and are at continual enmity with the *Perſians*. Next are thoſe of *Bochan*, *Mahumetans*: then thoſe of *Mogor*, of whom you ſhall heare heareafter; and laſtly thoſe of *Cathay*, whereof we now intreat.

Neuer was there any Nation vpon the face of the earth, that enioyed a larger Empery then they doe, or haue vndertaken haughtier exploits; and I would that they had had ſome, who might haue recommended by writing theyr doinges to the world.

M. Paule Venetus writeth, that this people once inhabited *Cinrga* and *Barge*, Prouinces ſcituated vpon the *Scythicke* Ocean, without Citty, Caſtle, or Houſe, wandering like the *Arabians* from place to place, according to the ſeaſon of the yeare. They (as before) acknowledged *Vncham* (whom ſome interpret *Preſter Iohn*) for their Soueraigne Lord, to whom they gaue the tenth of their Cattle. In proceſſe of time they multiplyed to ſuch numbers, that *Vncham* being iealous of their neighbour-hood, began to leſſen their numbers and forces, by ſending them, now hither, now thither vpon moſt long and deſperate voyages, as occaſion offered. Which when they perceiued, they aſſembled themſelues, reſoluing to leaue their naturall ſoyle, and to remooue ſo farre from the borders of *Vncham*, that neuer after hee ſhould haue cauſe to ſuſpect them: this they performed. After certaine yeares, they elected amongſt them a King, called *Changis*, to whom for the greatneſſe of his glory and victories, they added the ſir-name of *Great*. This *Changis*, departing from his owne Territories

Digitized by Google

in

in the yeare of our Lord 1162. with a moſt fearefull Army, ſubdued partly by force, and partly by the terrour of his name, nine Prouinces. At laſt, being denied the daughter of *Vncham* in marriage, he made war vpon him, and ouercomming him in battell, caſt him out of his Kingdom. After the death of *Changis* his ſucceſſours afflicted Europe. In the yeare 1212. they droue the *Poleſochi* from the banckes of the *Euxine* Sea. In the yeare 1228. they ſpoiled *Ruſſia*. In the yeare 1241. they razed *Kiouia*, the cheefe Citty of the *Rutheni*, and *Batu* theyr Captaine waſted *Polonia*, *Sileſia*, *Morauia*, and *Hungary*. *Innocent* the fourth amazed with the tempeſt of theſe inuaſions, in the yeare 1242. ſent certaine Friers of the orders of *Dominicke* & *Francis*, to the Court of this great *Cham*, to intreat a peace for Chriſtendome.

The circuit of this Empire in the times aboue ſpoken of, ſtretched from the vttermoſt bounds of *Aſia* to *Armenia*, and from *Bengala* to *Volga*, yea their incurſions pierced to *Nilus* and *Danubius*. The *Macedonian* and *Roman* Empires were neuer ſo large. But becauſe they were rather Runnagates, then men of war, wanting politicke gouernment and military diſcipline, ſometime ruling one Prouince, ſometime another, they rather wrought ſpoile and terrour to the conquered Nations, then feare of bondage or ſubiection, and at laſt ſeated themſelues beyond the Mountaine *Caucaſus*. After, it became deuided into many principalities, yet ſo, that the Title and Maieſty of the Empire, remained alwaies to the great *Cham*, who (as we ſaid before) took the originall of this name from the great *Changis*. At this day this Empire reacheth from the deſart *Lop* on the one ſide, and the Lake *Kitania* on the other, to that famous wall of *China* ſcituate betweene 43. and 45. degrees, (which leadeth from Mountaine to Mountaine, till it ende at the Ocean, and diuideth the *Tartars* from the *Chinois*) and from the *Scythian* Ocean, to the Confines of *Tipura*, and the bordering Regions.

In the foreſaide compaſſe, are contained many and mightie Kingdomes, and many puiſſant Prouinces, as *Tangut*, wherein are the Cities *Succuir* and *Campian*, built after the manner of *Italy*, *Ergimul*, *Carazan*, *Tebet*, & *Candu*, the chiefe Cities

Digitized by Google

of prouinces. In the midſt of the Empire is *Tenduch*, which in the time of *Paule Venetus*, was vnder the Iuriſdiction of *Preſter Iohn*, but now ſubdued by the *Great Cham*. The greater part of the people were Chriſtians (but *Neſtorians*) the reſidue *Mahumetans*. Heere is the Citty *Cambalu* the imperiall ſeate, containing in company eight and twenty miles, and neer vnto it *Taduc* ſcituated vppon a lake, and containing in compaſſe foure and twenty miles. Then *Xaindus* the pallace of the great *Cham*, being foureſquare, wonderfull to be ſpoken of. The whole region for the moſt part is very populous, full of townes, rich & ciuill, which you may the rather beleeue; firſt, for that the *Tartars* chooſing this for their country, beautified it with the ſpoyles of *Aſya*, *China*, and that part of Europ which they harried, and were neuer won or taken from thence againe to this day: next, for that the Prouinces are moſt commodiouſly ſcituated for Trafficke and Negotiation, partly by reaſon of their admirable plaines, and huge Lakes, amongeſt which are *Cazaia* (whoſe waters are falt) *Guian*, *Dangu*, *Xandu*, and *Catacora*: partly by reaſon of their large Riuers, which with a long courſe do runne by the Prouinces of *Curato*, *Poliſango*, *Zaiton*, and *Mecon*. *Paulus Venetus* calleth it *Quion*. A great helpe heereunto likewiſe is the variety of fruits, and the abundance of graine, Rice, wooll, ſilke, hempe, Reubarbe, Muske, and excellent fine Chamlets. *Paule* writeth, that it affoordeth Ginger, Cinamon, and Cloues, which I can hardly beleeue. In many riuers are found graines of gold. Their coyne is not all of one value. In *Cathaia* a coyne is currant, made of the black rinde of a certaine tree, growing betweene the body and the barke: this rinde beeing ſmoothed, rounded, and tempered with a gummy ſubſtance, is ſtamped with the Image of the great *Cham*. In the kingdomes of *Caiacan* and *Carazan*, certaine ſea-fiſh ſhels are currant, which ſome men terme *Porcelline*. This kinde of money is frequent in many places of *India* and *Æthyope*. By this meanes, the Princes get to themſelues all the Gold and Siluer of the Prouinces, which they cauſe to be molten and layde vppe in moſt ſafe places, without euer taking any thing from thence againe. In like ſort, *Preſter Iohn* is thought to be Lorde of ineſtimable Treaſure, while he maketh

Digitized by Google

keth graines of Salt and Pepper, to passe for currant Coyne amongst his subiects. They brew an excellent bereuage of Rice and Spice, which sooner procureth drunkennesse then Wine. As the *Arabians*, so they delight in sower milke or *Cosmus*, a kinde of churned sower Mares-milke, very forcible to burne the braine.

His force consisteth first (as we tolde you) in scituation, in spacious territory, in goodly Citties, in plenty of prouision, & in rich reuennewes: for amongest other thinges, he taketh the tenths of wooll, silke, hempe, graine, cattle, and is absolute Lord of all: but the chiefe sinnewes of his state consisteth in his armed troopes. These liue alway in the field, four, or fiue miles remote from the Citties. Ouer and aboue their Sallarie, they are allowed to make profite of their Cattle, Milke, and Wooll. When he goeth to warre, according to the custome of the *Romans*, he mustreth part of that Souldiery, which lieth dispersed thorough the Prouinces. For the most part, all the Nations of the *Tartars*, (except the *Varcheni*) who are not subiect to the Great *Cham*, fight on horsebacke. Their Weapons are the Bow and Arrow, with which they fight very desperately. They are very swift, their Tents are made of wouen wooll, vnder which they keepe in foule weather. Their cheefest meate is milke dried in the Sun, after the Butter is squeezed out; yea, the blood of their horses, if famin enforce them. They fight not pell-mell with their enemies, but sometime on the front, sometime on the flanke, after the *Parthian* manner, they ouer-whelme them as it were, with a shewer of arrowes. Whosoeuer carrieth himselfe valiantly, standeth assured of reward, and are graced with honour, immunities and guiftes. Twelue thousand horsemen, are appointed for the guarde of this Prince, and it is saide, that of this kinde of force, he is able to leuy a greater power then any other potentate. Forces.

Howsoeuer it be, two things in his kingdome are worthy consideration: the one is, numbers, which may be immagined by the spaciousnesse of his dominions: the other, their discipline, because he keepeth them in continuall pay. For as discipline rather than rash valor, is to be wished in a souldier; so in armies, a few trained & experienced soldiers are more worth

Digitized by Google then

then many ſtrong and raw bodies. The one may wel be compared to Eagles, Lyons, and Tygers, which obtaine principality amongſt other beaſtes, not becauſe they exceede them in hugeneſſe of bodies (for then ſhould they be a prey to the Elephant, Horſſe, and Bufall) but becauſe they excell them aſwel in agility of body, as in courage.

Beſide theſe things which *Mark Paul* writeth, certain *Engliſhmen* ſayling by the *Moſcouite* ſea, and the bordering Regions, haue pierced euen to *Cathaia*, and haue ſet downe many memorable matters of this Prince, whom the *Moſcouite* tearmeth the Cæſar of *Cathai*, and the Turke *Vluchan*, that is; the great Prince. And not without reaſon, for in magnificence of Court, ampleneſſe of Dominion, aboundance of Treaſure, and number of ſouldiers, he goeth far beyond all the Kinges and Potentates of *Aſya*, and raigneth in ſuch Maieſty, that his ſubiects fooliſhly call him, *The ſhaddow of ſpirits, and the Sonne of the immortall God*. His word onely is a Law, wherein conſiſteth life and death. He maintaineth Iuſtice with admirable ſeuerity, except for the firſt fault; for which, the Offender is greeuouſly whipped: for euery other fault, he is cut in pieces by the middle: heerein it ſhould ſeeme, tney imitate the opinion of the *Storkes*, concerning the equality of offences. A Theefe is likewiſe ſlaine, if he be not able to repay nine folde, as well for a farthing, as a pounde. The firſt ſonne is heyre to the Crowne, and inſtalled with theſe Ceremonies. The chiefe of their ſeauen Tribes, clothed in white (which is their mourning colour) cauſe the Prince to ſit vpon a blacke Woollen cloath ſpread vppon the ground, willing him to beholde the Sunne, and to feare the immortall God; which if he doo performe, he ſhall finde a more plentifull reward in heauen, then in earth; if not, that peece of blacke cloath ſhall ſcarcely bee left him, whereupon to reſt his wearied body in the field; beſides a thouſand other miſeries that ſhall continually attende him. Then they ſet the Crowne vpon his head, and the great Lords kiſſe his feete, ſweare fealty, and honor him with moſt rich preſents. Then is his name written in Golden Letters, and laid vp in the Temples of the *Metropolitan* City. He hath two Counſels, the one for war, wherein are twelue wiſe men: the

Digitized by Google

the other, for ciuill affaires, consisting likewise of as many Councellors. These manage all thinges belonging to the gouernment, rewarding the good, and punishing the euil, taking speciall care to see those preferd, who haue done best seruice, eyther in war, or peace, to his Countrey, or Emperor, and others seuerely punnished, who beare themselues carelesly and cowardly in the charges vnto them committed. In these two points (that is in rewarding and punishing) consisteth so high a pollicy of good gouernment, that it may well be said, that the greatest part of these barbarous Princes by these two vertues onely, haue imprinted so maiesticall a reuerence in the harts of their barbarous subiects.

For what other face of good gouernment see you in the *Turke*, *Persian*, *Mogor*, or *Xeriffe?* whom reward they, but Captaines and Souldiers? Where vse they liberality, but in the field amongst Weapons? Surely they built the foundation of their States, vpon no other ground-works, neither expect they for peace and quietnesse, but by victory and strong hand: yea they keepe no meane, in disgracing base minds and Cowards, and in honouring high spirits and valiant Souldiers. Neuer was their any Common-weale or Kingdome, that more deuised to honour and inrich the Souldier, then these *Barbarians*, and the *Turke* more then all the rest. The *Tartars*, *Arabians*, and *Persians*, honour Nobility in some good measure; but the *Turke* rooteth out all the Families of Noblemen, and esteemes of no man, vnlesse he be a Souldier; committing the fortunes of the whole Empire to the direction of Slaues, and men base borne, but with a speciall care of their good parts, & sufficiency.

Let vs returne to the *Tartar*, and his forme of gouernment. *Astrologians* are in great request in those Prouinces; for *M. Paule* writeth, that in the Citty of *Cambula* are fifty thousand: and when *Cublay-Cham* vnderstood by them, that that Cittie would rebell against him, he caused another to be built neere vnto it, called *Taindu*, containing 24. miles, besides the Subburbs. There are also great store of Fortune-tellers and Nigromancers in the Kings Pallace of *Xandu*: As also in *China*, they are in high esteeme. *Ismaell* King of *Persia* enterprised few

Digitized by Google

matters without their councell, and it is no wonder that it is of such repute in those places; for betweene the *Chaldeans* and *Assyrians* it tooke the first Original in those Countries. The *Turkes* cannot abide it. The *Roman* Emperors did more than once banish it and the professors thereof, out of their gouernments. I would to God the like might be done amongst vs Christians, for it is nothing else but a branch of Paganisme. To end with the nature of this people: In outward shape they are vnlike to all other; for they are broader betweene the eies hauing the balles of their cheekes hollower then men of other Nations: they are of meane stature, heuing flat and small Noses, little Eyes, broad faces and Eyeliddes standing straight and vpright, swarty of complexion, strong of constitution, patient of extremities, excellent horsemen, and very good archers. And as part of the *Arabians* inhabit cities, and are called *Moores*; part liue in the fields and mountains, and are termed *Baduins*: so some of these people dwell in cities; as the *Cathaians*, *Bochars*, and those of *Shamercand*: others wander through the plaines, and are deuided into Hords, being fiue in number, as aforesaid.

Those *Tartars* who are far scituated from the residue, and inhabit that remote *Scythian* promontory, which *Pliny* calleth *Tabin*, lying vpon the fret of *Anian*, are also dispersed into diuers Hords, wandering vp and downe the country, and in a maner all subiect to the great *Cham* of *Cathaio*.

Certain writers affirme that these Hords issued from those ten tribes of Israel, which were sent into captiuity by *Salmanasser* King of *Assyria*, beyond the *Caspian* mountaines. In remembrance whereof vntil this day, they retaine the names of their tribes, the title of Hæbrewes, and circumcision. In al other rites they follow the fashions of the *Tartarians*.

Some men likewise affirme, that king *Tabor* came out of these parts, to turne vnto *Iudaisme*, *Francis* king of *France*, *Charls* the fift, and other Christian princes; and for his paines in the yeare 1540. by the commandement of the said *Charls* was burnt to ashes at *Mantua*.

Turkey.

Digitized by Google

Turkey.

NOw vnder the Empire of the *Turke* is comprehended the better part of the ancient threefold diuision of the earth. He holdeth in Europ the whol sea coast, which from the borders of *Epidaurus* stretcheth it selfe to the mouth of *Tanais*; whatsoeuer lyeth betweene *Buda* and *Constantinople*, and from the *Euxine* sea, to the banks of *Sauus*, is his. In that perambulation is contained the greatr part of *Hungary* al *Bosnia*, *Seruia*, *Bulgaria*, *Macedon*, *Epire*, *Greece*, *Peloponese*, *Thrace*, and the *Archipelago*, with the Ilands. He holdeth in *Asia* and *Affricke*, al that is between *Velez de la Gomera* and *Alexandria* in *Ægipt*; between *Bugia* and *Gnargula*; between *Alexandria* and the citty *Siene*; and from the citty *Suez* as farre as *Swachen*. The hugenes of this territory may be imagined by the circuit of some of the parcels: *Palus Metis* (wholly his) spreadeth it selfe 1000. miles into the land; 200. miles doe hardly incompasse the *Euxine* sea. The coast of the *Mediterranean* (as much as is subiect to him) containeth in circuit 8000. miles. *Egipt* wholy his, is esteemed fiue hundred miles long. From *Tauris* to *Buda* is 3000. miles; so far is it from *Derbent* vpon the *Caspian* sea to *Aden* vpon the red sea; and from *Balsara* vpon the *Persian* gulfe, to *Tremessen* in *Barbary*, it is accounted little lesse then 4000. miles. In the sea, he is Lord of the most noble Ilands of *Ciprus*, *Eubea*, *Rhodes*, *Samos*, *Chio*, *Losbos*, and many other in the *Archipelago*.

In this progresse are containd many most puissant kingdoms, abounding with all sorts of sustenance for the vse of man. For what prouinces are richer in corne then *Egypt*, *Affricke*, *Syria*, and *Asia*? What regions more flowing with all good thinges, then *Hungary*, *Greece*, and *Thrace*? In these prouinces he hath 4. cities of inestimable wealth, *Constantinople*, *Cair*, *Aleppo* & *Tauris*. *Constantinople* exceedeth all the cities in Europ in populousnesse: for it is thought, that there are therein more then 700000. persons: which if it be true, it is twice as much

Digitized by Google

much as may be ſaid of *Paris*. *Alleppo* is a great City in *Syria*, and the Staple of the whole Traffick of *Aſya*. *Tauris* was the ſeat of the Kings of *Perſia*, but taken from them in our daies, and thought to containe more then two hundered thouſand perſons. Amongſt all the Citties of *Affricke*, *Cair* by manie degrees may challenge the principality, though ſome men compare *Cano* to it for greatneſſe. This Citty may wel be called the garner, not onely of Egypt, but of the greater part of *Affricke* and *India*, whoſe treaſures beeing conueyed firſt by the red ſea, and from thence ouer-land to *Cair* on the backes of Camels, are at length diſtributed through all the Regions of the *Mediteranean* ſea.

This Empire from ſmall beginnings hath roſe to ſuch greatneſſe, partly by their owne armes, partly by the diſcords of the Chriſtians, that at this day it is the onely terror of the whole world. Since thoſe beginnings, it hath beene their hereditary practiſe, to ſtand vpon their guard, to preuent their enimies; in their iourneyes to vſe admirable celerity; to keep their forces ready, and at hand; not to haue many irons at one time in the fire; nor long to mannage war with any one nation, leaſt by practiſe they become better warriors then themſelues, nor to ſpend their time and treaſure in voyages of baſe account; nor at one caſt to ſet at all, but to proceed leaſurely and aduiſedly, and, which is not the leaſt pollicy amongſt manie, that their Princes did march in perſon in moſt of their iourneyes. Diuers other leſſons they obſerue, by which, in the ſpace of 300. yeares, they haue attained vnto a moſt mighty Dominion; and that too, ſince the yeare 1500, to this day, they haue almoſt doubled.

The gouernment is meerely tyranicall: for the great Turke is ſo abſolute a Lorde of all thinges, contayned within the bounds of his dominions, that the inhabitants doo account themſelues his ſlaues, not his ſubiectes: no man is maiſter of himſelfe, much leſſe of his houſe wherein hee dwelleth, or of the field which he Tilleth, excepting certaine families in *Conſtantinople*, to whome for ſome good ſeruice, immunitie was granted by *Mahumet* the ſecond. Neyther any man (be he neuer ſo great) ſtandeth ſecure of his life, his goodes or eſtate,

Digitized by Google

longer

longer then *Durante beneplacito* of the grand Seignior. By two policies he eſtabliſheth this tyrannicall gouernment; firſt, by diſfurniſhing the people of weapons; ſecondly, by putting al commands into the hands of *Renegados*, whom hee taketh as Tith from their parents in their Child-hood. By this ſubtilty he gleaneth the prouinces of the flower and ſinnewes of their ſtrength (for the likelyeſt and ableſt ſpringals are choſen:) and ſecondly, with the ſame meanes hee armeth himſelfe, and ſecureth his eſtate. For theſe young Lads being taken from the laps of their Parents, and deliuered to the training of this or that Schoole-maiſter, are made *Mahumetans* before they perceiue it, and ſo by reaſon of their young yeares, forgetting their father and mother, depend wholy vppon the pleaſure of the Grand-Seignior, yeelding him all dutifull and acceptable ſeruice, as their maintainer and aduancer to honor and riches. His forces conſiſt in horſemen, footmen, ſhipping, corne, and treaſure. As touching his Treaſure, it is generally receyued, that he enioyeth little leſſe then eight millions of ordinary reuenue. And where ſome men thinke, that out of ſo large a dominion a greater reuenue may be raiſed, therein they deceiue themſelues, in not calling to remembraunce, that the Nation giue their minds to nothing but to warre, nor take care of any thing, but prouiſion of Armour and Weapons: courſes fitter to deſtroy and to waſt, then to preſerue and enrich prouinces. Heereupon, to giue courage to their Armies, and to continue them in the loue of warfare, they ſuffer them to ſpoyl the people, hardly leauing them where-with to holde life and ſoule together. And therefore, the poore men, not ſure of ſo much as their houſholde prouiſions, much leſſe of their Wealth, (which by time and induſtry they may gather) take no more paines about their Husbandry and Trafficke, then they needes muſt: yea, no more then their owne neceſſity, as neere as they can, ſhall enforce them to make cleere at the yeares end. For ſay they, why ſhould wee ſowe, and another reape? Or why ſhould we reape, and another deuoure the rewarde of our labours? This is the cauſe, that in the *Ottoman* Dominions you ſhall ſee admirable huge Woodes; all thinges laide waſt: few Cities well peopled; and eſpecially, the better part of the fields,

Reuennues.

Digitized by Google

fieldes lying vnmannured. In our countries by the abundance of people, ariſeth the deereneſſe of victuals, but in Turky, through the ſcarſity of Inhabitants. The greateſt number of the Husbandmen periſh with carrying prouiſion and other neceſſaries to the remote places, through which their Armies are to trauell. In their Gallies likewiſe falleth moſt commonly ſo great a mortality, that of ten thouſand rowers haled from their houſes, ſcant the fourth part returneth againe. This the rather happeneth, becauſe the Turkes in Winter time moring their Gallies, do not invre their Sea-men and Gally-ſlaues to change of ayre, and the diſcommodities of tempeſtuous Seas in that ſeaſon.

The whole trade of Merchandize for the moſt part is in the hands of Iewes or Chriſtians of Europ, *Epidaurians*, *Venetians*, *Frenchmen* and *Engliſhmen*. In ſo large a Teritory as the Turk hath in Europe, there is neuer a famous Mart-town but *Conſtantinople*, *Capha* and *Theſſalonica*. In *Aſya*, but *Aleppo*, and *Damaſco*, *Tripoli*, and *Adena*. In *Affricke*, *Cair*, *Alexandria*, and *Algier*.

Although the ordinary reuenues are no greater then aforeſaid, yet the extraordinary ariſe to a richer reckning, and that by confiſcations and preſents. For the *Baſſas* and great officers (as Harpies) ſucke the very blood of the people, & after they haue heaped vp ineſtimable riches, for the moſt part they eſcheat to the coffers of the grand Seignior. It is reported, that *Imbraim Baſſa* carried from *Cair* ſix milions, and *Mahomet Viſier* a farre greater maſſe. *Ochiali*, beſides other riches, had 3000. ſlaues. The *Sultana*, Siſter to *Selim* the 2. receiued daily 2500. *Chechini*, and for the eaſe of pilgrims and trauellers, iourneying betweene *Cair* and *Meca*, ſhee began to trench a water-courſe along the way; An enterpriize great, chargeable, and maieſticall.

Yea, to giue you an eſtimate of his reuenewes, I haue ſeen a particular of his daily expences, amounting by the yeare ſterling, to one million, 968. thouſand, 735. pounds, 19, ſhillings eight pence, aunſwered quarterly, without default; with the ſum of 492. thouſand, 164. pounds, foure ſhillings, 11. pence; and is for euery day, 5393. pound, fifteen ſhillings, ten pence,

Digitized by Google

vpon

vpon which account, runneth for his owne diet, but one thousand and one Asper a day, according to the frugall custome of his aunceſtors, amounting in ſterling money by the yeare, to 2192. pounds, three ſhillings 8. pence. Among 45. thouſand *Ianizars*, diſperſed throgh his whole dominions, euery one at ſix Aſpers a day, is expended 591. thouſand, and 300. pounds. The *Azamoglan* (tribute children) far ſurmount that number, and are allowed one with another, three Aſpers a day. The 5. *Baſſaes*, beſides their ordinary reuenue, receiue one thouſand Aſpers a day: and of ordinary reuennue, the chiefeſt receiueth for his Timar or anuity, 60000. ducates, the ſecond 50000. ducats, the third 40000. the fourth, 30000. & the fift 20000. In Europe he maintaines three *Beglerleis*, viz: in *Greece* one, another in *Hungary*, and a third in *Sclauony*, at a thouſand Aſpers a day, the fourth in *Natolia*, the fift in *Caramania* of *Aſia*, at like allowance. The Admirall receiueth 2190. pounds: the captaine of the *Ianizars*, 1950. li. beſides his anuity of 20000 ducats by the yeare. The *Imbrabur Baſſa* (Maſter of the horſe) receiueth 328. li. his anuity is 15000. ducates. The Captaine of the *Spahi* or horſemen, receiue 1961. poundes, the *Capigi Baſſa* (head Porter) 1414. pounds. The *Siſingar Baſſa* controler of the houſhold 263. pound. The *Chaus baſſa* (Captain of the Penſioners) 262. pounds, 16. ſhillings, beſides his anuity of ten thouſand ducates. The reſidue of the foreſaide account is expended vpon inferiour officers and attendants vppon the Court, Citty, and Armies, euery man receiuing according to his place and calling (viz:) the maiſters of the Armory, maſters of the Artillery, Phyſitians, Porters of the Court & Citty, Archers of his Gard, Seruitors of his Stable, Sadlers, Bitmakers, Captaines of Gallies, Maiſters, Boat-ſwaines, Purſers, Shipwrites, and ſuch like.

To raiſe his Donatiues to a high reckoning, it is a cuſtome, that no Ambaſſador appeare before him empty-handed; no man may looke for any office or honorable preferment, if money be wanting: no Generall may returne from his prouince (or iourney) without preſents: and you muſt thinke, that ſo magnificent a Prince will ſwallow no trifles.

The *Vaiuods* of *Valachia*, *Moldauia*, and *Tranſilnania*, hold their

Digitized by Google

their eſtates by vertue of this bribery, and yet are often changed. For the Eſtates are giuen to the beſt Chap-men, who againe to make good their daies of payment, oppreſſe the people, and bring the commons to extreame pouerty. Notwithſtanding, all this we haue ſeene the *Perſian* war to haue drawn dry his Coffers, and emptied his treaſures. Not long ſithence, both at *Conſtantinople*, and through the whole Empire, the value of Gold was raiſed aboue beleefe, inſomuch that a *Chechin* of Gold went for double his value, and the alay of Golde & Siluer was ſo much abaſed, that the *Ianizars* finding themſelues agreeued thereat, brought great feare, not onely vpon the Inhabitants, but alſo to the Grand-Seignior, in threatning that they would ſet fire on *Conſtantinople*. In *Aleppo* ſixty thouſand Ducats were taken vppe of the Merchants, in the name of the Grand-Seignior.

But although his reuenues are not ſo great, as the ſpacious and fertill apprehenſion of ſo mighty an Empire, may ſeem to produce, yet hath he an aſsiſtance of greater value then his ſureſt reuennewes, and that is, his Timars or ſtipendaries. For it is the cuſtome of the *Ottoman* Princes, to ſeize on all the land which they take from their enemies, and aſsigning a ſmal parcell (peraduenture none at all) to the ancient Lords, they deuide the reſidue into Timars, to euery ſpeciall ſeruitor a portion; but on condition, to finde ſo and ſo many ſeruiceable horſe for the Warre. Therein conſiſteth the cheefeſt preſeruation of the *Ottoman* Empire; for vnleſſe, vpon this conſideration, the care of manuring the Lande were committed to the Souldiers, and they againe, ſet it ouer vnto others for their vſe and lucre, al would lye waſt through the whole Empire: themſelues affirming, that whereſoeuer the Grand Seignior once treadeth with his horſe hoofe, if it were not for this courſe, there neuer after would grow graſſe againe. With theſe Timars, he alſo maintaineth a hundred and fifty thouſand horſemen, excellent well armed, and alwayes readie at their owne charges to march whether their Leaders will command them. So great caualry can no other Prince maintaine, with the yearly expence of foureteene Millions of Gold. Which maketh me to wonder, that ſome writers comparing the Turkiſh receites

Digitized by Google

with

receits with the Christians, neuer speake worde of so huge a member of the Turkish puissance. It is reported, that in the war of *Persia*, the *Turke* conquered so much land, that thereof hee erected 40000. Timars, and a new Exchequer at *Tauris*, from whence he receiueth yearly a million of gold.

The institution of these Timars, and the choosing of the *Azamogli* (for so they terme the young lads whom they meane to make *Ianizars*, is (as it were) the very nursery of their military Discipline, and the maine Arch-pillar of their Emperie. Wherein they seeme to haue imitated the *Roman* policy. For the *Romaine* Emperours did alwayes invre their Cittizens to War, and of them consisted the *Pretorian Cohorts*, which neuer departed from the Emperors person.

By these infinit troups of horse, the Grand Seignior worketh two exceeding pollitick effects through his whole Empire; by the first he so aweth his subiects, that they no sooner can stirre, but (as so many Falcons) these *Timorots* are presently on their neckes, and this is the drift of dispersing them thorough the prouinces: the second is, that one part of them are alwayes ready at the sound of the trumpet, vpon all occasions to march while the other stay at home to keepe the inhabitants in their due obedience.

Besides this kind of Caualry, hee entertaineth in continuall pay great numbers of horsemen, termed *Spachi*, *Vlufagi*, and *Caripici*: these are (as it were) the nursery from whence springs the degrees of *Bassaes*, *Beglerbeis*, and *Sangiaks*. Then hath hee his *Auxiliarios*, the *Alcuuzi*, the *Tartars*, the *Walchians*, and the *Moldauians*.

The other pillar of his estate is, his Infantry, consisting of footmen, by them tearmed *Ianizars*. In them, two properties are to be noted; their birth-place and training. As concerning their birth place, they are not chosen out of *Asya*, but out of Europe: for they euer accounted the *Asyans* effeminate and cowardly, alwayes more ready to flye, then willing to fight; but the *Europians*, hardy, couragious, and good men of war. The *Asians* they terme after their owne name, *Turkes*; but the *Europians*, *Rumi*, that is; *Romans*.

Footemen.

Their birth place.

As conterning their training, they are taught when they are yong:

Their training

Digitized by Google

young: and therfore no maruel, if, as they grow in age, so they increase in strength, actiuity and courage: for these three vertues make a perfect soldier. The tithing of springals is made euery third yeare, vnlesse occasion constraine a quicker election, (as it hapned in the *Persian* war,) wherein they were forced not onely to make more hast then ordinary, but also compelled to take vp Turkish *Azamoglani*, which was neuer seen to be put in practise before. When these young lads are brought to *Constantinople*, they are surviewed by the captain of the *Ianazars*, who registreth their names, their parents, and cuntry, in tables. From thence some are sent into *Natolia* and other prouinces, to learne their law and language; where being nouzeled in the superstitious customs of them with whom they conuers, they turn Mahumetans, before they haue discretion to discerne good from euill. Another sort is distributed into the offices of the *Seraglio*, the third sort (of the faireſt complextions, and comlieſt proportion) are appointed to seruices in the Port of the Grand Seignior. During the time that they are counted *Azamoglani*, they haue no certaine gouernor, nor trained vp in prescript orders, but some are set to keepe gardens, some to manure fields, others to manuell occupations, and to dispatch houshold busines. At riper and abler yeares, they are called into the schooles of the *Azamoglani*, (for so they are still tearmed till they are inrolled in the scroule of *Ianizars*) and then deliuered ouer to prescribed schoolmaisters, who traine them vp in exercises of labour and trauell, allowing them spare diet and thin clothing: they sleep in spacious lodgings, not vnlike the monasteries of religious persons, where likewise they haue their ouerseers, without whose licence they dare not depart from their appointed places. Here they learne to shoot in the bow and Harquebush, or to handle any weapon wherein they haue most mind, and when they haue well profited in any profession: then are they rolled in the roll of the *Ianizars* or *Spachy*. For their maintenance, the one sort are allowed no lesse then fiue aspers, nor more then eight a day; the other ten.

Their allowance. Being inrolled for *Ianizars*, immediately they enter into action, to garisons, or to waight in the Port. The latter sort haue three

Digitized by Google

three moſt ſpacious houſes like monaſteries appointed them for their abiding place, and there euery one lieth vnder the gouernment of his ſuperior of the ſame order, the younger ſeruing the elder in buying and dreſſing his prouiſion, and ſuch like ſeruices, with obedience, good will, and incredible ſilence. Thoſe of one order, eate at one table, and ſleepe togither as it were in long cloyſters. If any one vpon occaſion chaunce to bee out of his lodging but one night, the euening following he is well baſtinadoed, and that with ſo great ſeuerity and patience, that after correction, he holds it no diſgrace to kiſſe the hand of his gouernor. In their iournies and expeditions, they count it religious ſeruice to ſpoile the cottages and houſes of Chriſtians, who muſt not find fault with any outrage: whatſoeuer they bargaine for, they muſt carry it at their owne prices. They are ſubiect to no iudge, but their *Aga*; and he neither, can giue iudgement of life and death vpon any of them, but in caſes of ſedition and mutinies, and that ſeldome, and very ſecretly. They inioy many immunities and priuiledges: they are crouched to, and feared of all men. Some of them are appointed to conuerſe with Ambaſſadors, others to accompany trauellers, eſpecially thoſe of honeſt reputation, for their ſecurity throughout the Turkiſh dominions. The election of their Emperour is in their power; for vnleſſe they approue and proclaime the election, the inſtalment and inueſture is of no force. Euery Emperor, comming to the crowne giueth them ſome donatiue, and augmenteth their pay. In any dangerous war, part of them go forth with their *Aga*, or his lieutenant, but theſe are the laſt men that come to blowes. There is not amongſt the Turkiſh honors, an office more ſubiect to enuy and ielouſie then this captainſhip; for hee and the *Begler-beg* of *Greece* may not chooſe their lieutenants, but the grand Seignior onely: the generall fauour of the *Ianizars* is his aſſured deſtruction.

Their licentious liberty

The number commonly is foure and twenty thouſand, but in our times they carry not their wonted reputations, becauſe both *Turkes* and *Aſians* are inrolled for *Ianizars*, whereas in former ages none were admitted but the Europian Chriſtians.

Digitized by Google

Beſides, contrary to their cuſtome, they marry wiues without limitation. By their long reſidence about *Conſtantinople* (then which there is not a more effeminate Citty in the world) they are growne vile, baſe, and men of ſmall ſeruice; yea lazie, inſolent, and proud aboue meaſure. It is the receiued opinion, that in their proweſſe and diſcipline conſiſteth the flouriſhing eſtate of this Empire, but the degenerate cariage of theſe men at this preſent (as I haue afore related) may affoorde vs good hopes, by the fauour of the Almighty, ſhortly to ſee an ende of their licentious tiranny, as heeretofore it hath befallen to the preceding Monarchies.

Beſides theſe *Ianizars*, he hath the *Azapi*, a baſe *Beſonio*, fitter for the ſpade, then the ſword, entertained rather with nũbers to tire, then by proweſſe to defeat Armies, oppoſing them to all dangerous ſeruices; yea, to fill trenches with their carcaſſes, and to make bridges of their ſlaughtered bodies, for the *Ianizars* to paſſe ouer to the breaches. And as the *Romans* had their Legions and *Auxiliaries*; the one the flower of their Chiualry, the other as an ayde or augmentation; euen ſo, the Turke accounteth his ſtipendary horſſemen and Timarots the ſinnewes of his armes; the *Alcanzi* (ſuch as he preſſeth out of Townes and Villages) Scar-crowes, and for oſtentation; the *Ianizars* as the *Praterian* Legions, and the *Azapi* as a rabble of Peſants.

Sea-forces.

Now a worde or two of his Sea forces; There is no Prince furniſhed with better meanes for building of Shippes, then this Prince; for not onely the woods of *Epyre* and *Cilicia*, but alſo of *Nichomedia* and *Trapezond* are ſo huge, ſo thicke, and ſo full of tall Trees, fit for all ſorts of buildings, that a man would take the Trunkes falling by violence of ſtorme from the banks of theſe Woodes into the *Euxine* Sea, to be Triremes already built and framed. They can want no workemen to fit & ſquare this Timber; for vile Couetouſneſſe hath drawne whol flocks of Chriſtian Shipwrights into their Arſenals. The yeare after his defeature at *Lepanto*, hee ſhewed his Nauy whole and entire, yea, itching to cope with the Chriſtian *Armada*. Neyther can he want a competent number of Marriners: for out of the Gallies which he maintaineth in *Lesbo*, *Rodes*, *Cipres*, and *Alex-*

Digitized by Google

Alexandria, and from the hauens of *Tunis*, *Bugia*, and *Algier*, he is able to draw a sufficient proportion of Sea-men & gally slaues, as often as occasion requireth to furnish his royal army. The experience heereof wee haue seene at *Malta*, at *Lepanto*, and *Goletta*.

Of warlike furniture his store is infinite; his ordinance innumerable: out of *Hungary* hee carried fiue thousand: in *Cyprus* he won fiue hundred: at *Goletta* few lesse. The siege of *Malta*, wherein they discharged threescore thousande Bullets, may well declare their aboundance of pouder and shot: at *Famagusta* they discharged 118. thousand: at *Goletta* in 39. dayes they rased with their vncessant volies, a fortification which was 40. yeares in building: in the last Persian war *Osman Bassa* drew after him, 500. field peeces. Where euer they come, they neuer cease playing with their Ordinance, till they haue laide all leuell with the ground; if that preuaile not, they fall to mining; if that fayle, they go to work with Spade & Pick-axe, if that too, then they will neuer giue ouer till they haue filled the Ditches with the Bodies of their slaughtered Souldiers.

They haue three thinges wherewith they terrifie the whole worlde: Multitudes of men, vnconquerable: militarie Discipline, vncorrupted: of Corne and prouisions, store infinite. Multitudes in time past, haue bred confusion, and commonly we haue seene great armies ouerthrown by small numbers, but the Turkish multitudes are managed with so good order, that although it be farre more easie to range a small Army, then a great, yet euen in order haue their great armies so excelled our smallories, that I must needs conclude, that they go farre beyonde vs both in discipline and numbers; heerein giuing place, no not to the ancient Romans, much lesse to any moderne Nation, how warlicke soeuer. And this their due commendation, consisteth not onely in Armes; but in thirst, patience, and hard dyet; as for wine, by their Law they are vtterly forbidden it. In the field, euery ten Souldiers haue their corporall, to whom without grudging, they dutifully obey. You shall neuer see Women in their Armies; their silence is admirable, for with the becke of the hande, and signe of the coun-

Digitized by Google

countenance, they vnderſtand without wordes what they are to do: rather then they will make any noiſe in the night, they will ſuffer their ſlaues and priſoners to eſcape. They punniſh theft and quarrelling extremely. They dare not (for their liues) ſtep out of their rankes to ſpoile Vineyard or Orchard. They feare not death, beleeuing their deſtinies to be written in their foreheads, ineuitable. The valiant are aſſured of preferment, the cowards of puniſhment. They are neuer biletted in towns, nor ſuffered to lodge one night within them. To keepe them in breath & exerciſe, their Princes are alwayes in action with ſome neighbor, or other, being very iealous of the corruption of their Diſcipline.

Adminiſtration of Iuſtice.

For the ciuill and polliticke gouernment of his eſtates, hee cauſeth a Counſell to be holden foure daies in the week by the *Baſſaes*, whereſoeuer the Prince ſoiourneth: if it bee in the time of peace, then at *Conſtantinople*, or in ſome other town, according to occaſions within his Dominions: if in Warre, then it is kept within his Pauillion. In this Counſell called *Duyan*, where audience is open to euery ſuter, they conſult of Embaſſayes, and of anſweres to be made vnto them; of matters of State, and of Soueraignty, of the means to prouide for decayed or ruinated Prouinces, of murders and condemnations. The Suppliant, Complainant, or Suter, ſpeaketh without Aduocate or Atturney, and is forced to aunſwere preſently to the information of his Aduerſary, if he be preſent, or to prooue his accuſation by witneſſes. Vpon hearing of both parties, iudgement definitiue is giuen, and may not bee repealed.

When the Counſell hath ſitten ſeauen or eight houres, the *Baſſa viſier* maketh true relation to the Prince, of all that hath bin handled; if he lye, it is preſent death. For the Prince often liſtneth at a window, termed *Dangerous*, right againſt the *Diuan*, being made in ſuch ſort, that he may heare and ſee, & not be perceiued. Though he be ſildom there, yet are they alwaies ſuſpitious. After he hath heard the diſcourſe and aduiſe of his Counſell, he ſildome gain-ſaieth, but confirmeth or moderateth the ſame. Theſe thinges thus ordered, they are written and regiſtred by Officers appointed.

Digitized by Google

With

With his Treasure his *Bassaes* intermeddle not, but two generall Treasurers or ouer-seers are cheefe dealers therein; the one, residing in *Romania*, the other in *Natolia*. Two *Cadalisquers* haue the administration of Iustice, who assist the *Bassaes* in the *Diuan*; neyther do any sit there but the twelues *Bellarbies*, and the Princes children, being presidents in their fathers absence.

Toward the East, from *Tauris* to *Balsara* lye the *Persians*; Toward the South, and the *Persian* Gulfe, the *Portugals*. Toward the red sea, *Prester Iohn*. Vpon the West, the *Xeriffe*, & the kingdome of *Naples*; On the Nortir, border the *Polonians* and the *Germans*. Borderers.

Without al question, the *Turk* far excelleth the *Persian* in military discipline: for Mahumet the 2. tooke *Vssuncassun*. *Selim* the 1. (& after him his son *Soliman*) defeated *Ismael* & *Tamas*. *Amurath* the 3. by his Lieutenants took from them al *Media*, the greater *Armenia*, & their chiefe citty *Tauris*. Their batallions of footmen, and the vse of great ordinance which the *Persians* want (and know not how to manage) haue bin the chiefe occasions of these their good fortunes. And althogh the Persians haue sometime preuailed in horse-fights, yet hath it bin alwayes with the losse of Ground, not to themselues onely, but to their confederates also. For *Selim* the first, tooke from the *Mamelnks*, *Syria*, and *Ægypt*: and *Amurath* the third, almost extinguished the Nation of the *Georgians*, theyr surest allies.

To the *Portugals* he is farre inferiour; for in sea fights and Sea-forces there is as great inequality betweene them, as betweene the Ocean and the *Persian* Gulfe. The Portugals haue in *India* Hauens and Castles, Territories & Dominions, plentifull in Timber, prouision, and all sortes of warlike furniture for the Sea, not without many great Princes, their allies and confederats: whereas the Turk hath no one place of strength in the *Persian* Gulfe, except *Balsara*. That tract of the sea-coast of *Arabia*, which standeth him instead, hath but foure Townes, and those weake and of small esteeme: which is sufficient to induce, that in this Gulfe, as likewise in the red sea, he hath small meanes to rigge out any strong *Armada*. Besides the

Digitized by Google

the ſoile is vtterly barren of Timber fitte for building of Gallies: for which ſcarſity whenſoeuer hee had occaſion to ſet foorth an Nauye, hee was conſtrayned to ſend downe his ſtuffe from the hauens of *Bithinia* and *Cilicia*, by *Nilus* to *Cair*, and from thence to conuey it ouer-land vppon Camels backes, to his Arſenall at *Suez*. What ſucceſſe his fleets haue had in thoſe parts, may be read in the diſcourſe of *Portugall*: for the *Portugalles* take great care to preuent him of ſetting foote in thoſe Seas, yea, when they but heare that hee prouideth Sea-forces, they preſently make out, and ſpoile whatſoeuer they light vpon.

For Captaines, Souldiers, Armes and Munition, he is better prouided then *Preſter Iohn*: for this Prince hath a large Territory without munition, and infinite ſouldiers without Weapons: *Barnangaſſo* his Lieutenant loſt all the aforeſaide Sea-coaſt of the Red Sea, and brought the *Abeſſine* into ſuch extreamity, that to obtaine peace, he promiſed payment of a yearely Tribute.

In *Affricke* he hath a greater iuriſdiction then the *Xeriffe*, for he is Lord of all thoſe Prouinces which lye betweene the Red Sea and *Velez de Gomera*: but the *Xeriffe* hath the richer, the ſtronger, and the better vnited. Neyther of them for the neighborhood of the King of Spain dare moleſt one another.

The reſidue of his Neighbours are the Chriſtians, and firſt, the K. of *Poland*: what either of theſe Princes can effect the one againſt the other, hath beene manifeſted by their forepaſſed actions. In ſome ſort, it ſeemeth that the Turke feareth the *Polaques*: for vpon ſundry occaſions being prouoked (as in the raigne of *Henry* the third, in that war which *Iuonia Vaiuod* of *Walachia* made with the ſayde Turkes, wherein great numbers of *Polaquee* ſerued) and (in the raigne of *Sigiſmund* the third) notwithſtanding the incurſions of the *Koſacks*, and the inrodes of *Iohn Zamoſchus*, Generall of *Polonia*, he ſtirred not, neyther with wont-like diſdaine, once offered to reuenge ſo great an indignity. Againe, ſince the vnfortunate iourney of *Ladiſlaus*, they neuer enterprized iourny againſt the Turks, no nor at any time aided the *Walachians* their neighbors, their friends and confederates, but ſuffered whatſoeuer they helde

vpon

Digitized by Google

vppon the *Euxine* sea to be taken from them. But the smothering of this wrong I rather attribute to the base mind of their king, then to want of good will or courage either in the Gent. or Nobility. *Sigismund* the first being by *Leo* the tenth moued to war vpon the *Turke*, answered, Few wordes shall serue; first make firme peace betweene the christian princes, then will I be nothing behind the forwardest. *Sigismund* the second bore a mind so far abhorring from war, that hee not onely euer made attempt against this enemy, but being iniured by the *Moscouite*, let him likewise do that what he would, vnreuenged. King *Stephen* a great politician, thought the warre of *Turkey* full of danger, notwithstanding discoursing with his familiars, he would often say, that if he had but 30000. good footmen ioyned to his Polonian horsemen, he could willingly haue found in his hart to haue tryed his fortune with this enemy.

The princes of *Austrich* are borderers by a far larger circuit of land then any other potentate, and being constrained to spend the greatest part of their reuenues in the continuall maintenance of twenty thousand footmen and horsemen in garisons; they seeme rather to stande content to defend their owne, then any way minded to recouer their losses, or to inlarge their bounds. *Ferdinands* iourney to *Buda* and *Possouia* was rather to be counted couragious then prosperous: the reason was, not because his soldiers wanted strength and courage, but skill and discipline. For numbers he was equal to the enemy, and reasonably well furnished with necessaries, but his troups consisted of *Germans* and *Bohemians*, nations by influence heauy, slow, and nothiug fit to match the Turkes, skilfull and ready in all warlike exercises.

The Venetians likewise are borderers for many hundred miles space by sea and land: but they maintaine their estate by treaties of peace, by trafficke and presents, rather then by open hostility, prouiding very strongly for their places exposed to danger, and auoyding all charges and hazard of war, yea refusing no conditions (if not dishonorable) rather then willing to trie their fortune in battell. And the reason is not, because they want money and sufficiency of warlike

Digitized by Google

furniture, but ſoldiers and proportionable prouiſions for one ſole ſtate to prouide againſt ſo extraordinary an enemy.

For if Time hath prooued, that neyther the Emperours of *Trapizond* and *Conſtantinople*, nor the *Sultans* of Egypt, nor the puiſſant Kings of *Perſia* and *Hungary*, haue beene able to maintaine themſelues againſt this enemy, who can but commend this honourable State for their Marines and moderne carriage?

For, howſoeuer of cuſtom for affectation, or admiration we carry to Antiquity, we vſe to extenuate things preſent, & (like Old men) we faſhion our ſelues to extoll the Ages paſt, and complaine of times, yet if we will ſpeake without partialitie, we muſt needs confeſſe, that neuer ſince the worlds firſt creation in any age, was there found a body of warre ſo politickly deuiſed, ſo ſtrongly ſemented, and ſo ſeuerely diſciplined, as is this, for greatneſſe and powerfulneſſe.

Which the effects thereof, may well witneſſe, with the fortunate ſucceſſe of continuall victory. I may not ſtande heere to recount the exreame diligence and circumſpection of *Ottoman*, the firſt raiſer and founder of this Empire; nor the wily wit and cunning of his ſonne and ſucceſſor *Orchanes*, who firſt paſſed his Turkiſh forces into *Europe*, after hee had taken *Pruſia* from the *Greekes*, and ſubdued *Caramania*: nor yet the Wiſedome and dexterity of *Amurath*, in eſpying of aduantages, and proſecuting of them: Nor will I make any long diſcourſe, to entreat of *Baiazet*, who conquered *Bulgaria*, and deſtroyed *Boſſina*: neither of *Amurath* the ſecond, who in perſon fought 36. battels, and in all departed Conquerour. And yet his ſonne, *Mahomet* the ſecond, exceeded him, and all before him. Equall to him was *Selim* the firſt, who in viii. yeares, razed and extirpated the whole Empire of the *Mamelukes*, defeated two *Sultans*, and adioyned to the purchaſes of his predeceſſors, *Ægypt*, *Cerenaica*, and *Siria*; a good part of *Arabia*, and all that which lieth between the *Sirtes* of *Ægipt* and *Euphrates*. And more then this, did in a pitched field, ouerthrow the *Sophy of Perſia*. The memory of *Soliman* is yet freſh, who for Armes, was no whit inferior to any his aunceſtors,

Digitized by Google

stors, but for grauity, constancy, ciuill cariage and fidelity of his word, went beyond them all. He wanne the Iſland of the *Rhodes* from the Knights of S. *Iohn of Hieruſaleth*, tooke *Belgrade* from the *Hungarians*, with a great part of that kingdome; and from the *Perſians*, *Babylon* and *Dyerbecha*, the two maine fortreſſes of the Turkiſh Empire in thoſe quarters. All which, notwithſtanding, this honourable State, hauing both before them, and on both their skirts this ſo powerfull an enemie couering both Sea and Land with his forces, haue to this day by their prouident wiſedome, ſo gouerned their affaires, that in deſpite of him, they haue hitherto maintained themſelues, not onely in liberty, but alſo in proſperity and reputation of greatneſſe.

His laſt neighbor is the King of *Spaine*, between whom there is no great difference: the Kings reuennues (I meane thoſe of Europe only) exceed the Turkiſh: for he receiueth more then four Millions out of his Prouinces of *Italy* and *Cicill*; two and vpward out of *Portugall*, and three from the *Indies*, one yeare with another. In theſe onely, he equalizeth the Turke, yea, and in the ordinary reuennewes of *Caſtile*, *Arragon*, and *Belgia*, he farre exceeds him. But what can you finde (ſay ſome men) to compare to his *Timars*? Firſt I aunſwere, that as the Kings reuennewes are farre greater then the Turkes; ſo alſo, his ſubſidies, which he leuyeth extraordinarily (of late times for the moſt part, turned into ordinary, (as his *Croiſados*) doo amount to as much as the entire profits of ſome whole kingdom. His tenths of the ſpirituall liuings, are able to maintaine one hundred ſtrong Gallies: his eſcheats in *Spaine* & *Naples*, bring more into his Coffers then a man woulde thinke. His beneuolences and preſents ſent him from *Naples*, *Sicil*, *Sardinia*, *Millan*, and the *New world*, are infinite and magnificent. Not long ſince, *Caſtile* graunted a contribution of 8. millions of Golde to bee paide in foure yeares, which ſum amounteth to the Turkes whole reuennue of one yeare. What ſhoulde I ſpeake of his Commendams of the orders of *Montegia*, *Calatrania*, *Alcantara*, and S. *Iames*, which were enough, if hee had naught elſe to ſuffice him: he is great maiſter of the fayde orders, and thereby hath meanes to aduance and inrich his

Digitized by Google

ſeruants, whomſoeuer he pleaſeth, as freely as if he were King of *France* or *Poland*. Alſo in *Spaine* he keepeth three thouſand good horſemen, and as many in *Flaunders*; in *Millaine* foure hundred men at armes, and 1000. light horſe: in *Naples* 1500 men at Armes, and a great company of light armed *Italians*. The number of his ſouldiery in *Sicil*, is one thouſand fiue hundered. Neyther are his Feodaries lightly to bee eſteemed, who vpon neceſsity are bound by their Tenors at their owne charges, to ſerue perſonally in the field, eſpecially if you conſider their numbers, wherein are reckoned 23. Dukes, 32. Marquiſſes, 49. Vicounts, 7. Arch-Byſhoppes (for they likewiſe in this caſe are bounde to contribute, as the great Lay-Lords) 33. Byſhops. And in *Naples* 14. Princes, 25. Dukes, 37. Marquiſſes, 54. Earles, 448. Barons, to ſpeake nothing of *Portugall*, *Sicill*, *Sardinia*, and *Millan*. Laſtly, you muſt note, that theſe troups to whom the Turke graunteth theſe Timars, are not ſo renowned for their valour, as for their numbers: for the Timars and profits of their villages and poſſeſsions, together with the greedy deſire of enriching themſelues with the demaines of their Farmes, hath bred ſuch loue of eaſe & peace in their minds, that they are grown Cowardly, and baſe minded, by their good wils hating the trauels of warre and iourneyes, and marching with a greater deſire of returning home to enioy the pleaſures of their Gardens, and the plenty of their granges, then with ſtomackes to cope with their aduerſaries, or to enrich themſelues by hazarde. For if by a little pillage, fierce, and valiant ſouldiers haue become Cowardes and men of ſmall ſeruice, what will faire poſſeſsions, a pleaſant ſeate, a rich dairy, and wife and children left behinde, bring to paſſe? I may well ſay, and ſay truely, that theſe *Timarots* are fitter to bridle and keepe vnder the ſubdued Prouinces, then to fight in fielde againſt armed Nations: and to this vſe it is good policy to maintaine them. For who knoweth not that the Turkiſh ſubiects do hate his Gouernment, his Religion and Tyranny? For Religion onely, the *Moores* and *Arabians*, who differ in Opinion: and for Religion and Tyranny, the Chriſtians, who make more then two third partes of his Subiectes. For iealouſie hereof, he is forced to keepe the greater part of

Digitized by Google

theſe

these troops at home, vnlesse he shoulde lay naked his estates to infinite casualties. To speake in a worde, his Caualry is so farre and wide dispersed throughout the Prouinces, that they cannot easily be drawne to any famous iourney in great numbers, without losse of long time; Neither are they able to stay long from their houses, but they will fall into diseases and extreamities: so that if the Grand Seignior had no other aides but these *Timarots*, he might happen to make very many vnfortunate iournies.

The experience of forepassed exploites, dooth well shewe the difference of their seuerall forces. The losse of the Spanish Fleete at *Zerby*, may bee put in the ballance agaynst the Turkish flight from *Malta*. The losse of *Goletta*, against the taking of the Rocke of *Velez*. *Tunis* is alwayes to bee taken at his pleasure, who hath a liking thereto. The Spanish King neuer enterprized any sole iourney against the Turke; but he hath valiantly defended his owne at *Malta* and *Oran*. I will speake nothing of the defeature at *Lepanto*, for other Princes had their shares therein.

There was a treatie of Truce mentioned betweene both Princes, not many yeares since, and equally accepted of both parties. For the one was inuested in the Warre of *Persia*; the other, in the commotions of the Lowe-Countreyes. These Warres, by reason of their remote distances, were extreame chargeable to both Princes, but worser to the King, then to the *Turke*: for although *Persia* bee farre from *Constantinople* (from whence the principall sinnewes of the Warre were to be drawne) yet it bordereth vppon *Mesopotamia*, and other subdued Prouinces, from whence his Armies are supplied with prouisions and treasures, but *Belgia* is farre distant from any part of the Spanish Dominions. The Turke hath to doo with the Persian (a State without any mighty confederate woorth speaking of) but the King was ingaged in a Warre (of greater difficultie) fauoured by the English, the French, and the Germaines: Nations seuerally equall in all points to the *Persian*.

Digitized by Google

Romania.

AND now that wee haue (but by name for breuities ſake) run ouer the ſpacious prouinces of this mighty, rich, and dreadfull Potentate, we will in ſome ſort relate to the pleaſure of the Reader, many the particulars of thoſe good and ancient regions, which at this day this *Saracenicall* nation termeth by the Names of *Romania* and *Natalia*. *Romania* at this day is taken for that part of Chriſtendome, which was anciently called *Grecia*, & containeth the Prouinces of *Thrace*, with its *Cherſones*, vulgarly, the ſtraight of *Gallipoli*, *Macedon*, *Epire*, nowe *Albania*, *Achaia*, now *Liuadia*, *Peloponeſus*, now *Morea*, and the Ilands of the *Archipelago*.

Vntill the comming of *Cirus*, king of Perſia, theſe prouinces remained in freedome, but of all others he firſt gaue them the yoake of ſubiection. After him *Xerxes* the ſon of *Darius*, with the ſucceeding Princes of Perſia did no leſſe afflict thē. When their turne was, *Phillip* king of *Macedon* acted his parte, and vuited them vnder his own Dominion, vntill the daies of *Perſeus*, whom the Romans ſubdued and ſubiected. But the Roman Empire being diuided into the Eaſt and Weſt, the Grecians began their Empyre vnder *Conſtantine* the great, and ruled honourably many ages, vntil the diſcent, firſt of the *Goths*, ſecondly of the *Bulgares*, thirdly of the *Sarazins*, and laſtly, of the Turkes, who ſlew their Emperour, and ſeized on the Empire. Who at this day (except ſome Reliques, remaining vnder the *Venetian* Dominion) poſſeſſe the greateſt part thereof, as well vpon the continent, as in the Iſlandes. Thoſe that are vnder the *Venetian* iuriſdiction (ſaith *Bellonius*) little diffſer, eſpecially in religion, from thoſe that are tributary to the Turke: for both the ſorts being mingled, thoſe that are ſubiect to the Turks, liue like the Turks; & thoſe that liuer vnder the *Venetians*, do as do the *Venetians*. So vnſpeakable is the rudenes of either, that through al their citties, you ſhal not find a ſchoole to inſtruct their youth. Promicuouſly all ſpeake the *Greek* toong, corrupted from the ancient, but ſom better then others. The Burghers ſubiect to the *Italians*, ſpeake *Italian*

Digitized by Google

as

as well as Greeke, but the *Villagois*, altogether Greeke. And so the Græcians which are subiect to the Turk, in Cities speak Turkish and Greeke, the *Villagois* onely Greeke, and in places of Trafficke they borrow one from another, according as their businesse is with those whome they negociate. And as they differ in language, so doo they in attire. Those that serue the *Venetians*, goe apparrelled like *Venetians*, those that liue vnder the Turke, like Turkes. Both the Islanders and those that liue on the continent, aswell in Europ as in *Asia*, althogh subiect to Turky, keepe their ancient Christian fayth. Long ago they reiected the primacy of the Latine Church, and elected to themselues Patriarchs, whom they acknowledge for their chiefe pastors, and appointed them seueral Sees. Whom not onely the Græcians thus obey, but likewise all those Prouinces, which follow the Greeke Church, as *Circassia*, *Walachia*, *Bulgaria*, *Moscouia*, *Russia*, the better part of *Polonia*, *Mingrelia*, *Bosnia*, *Albania*, *Sclauonia*, some parte of *Tartary*, *Siria*, *Coratia*, and generally all the Prouinces about the *Euxin* sea. In number they are foure, viz: the Patriarkes of *Constantinople*, *Alexandria*, *Ierusalem*, and *Antioch*.

Of these, the Patriarke of *Constantinople* is the Primate, sitteth in *Constantinople*, and chiefely moderateth ouer the *Caloieri* (so are the Greeke Priests termed) which reside in mount *Athos*, and generally ouer all Christians, professing the rites of the Greeke Church thoroughout Europe; and for the Monasteries of mount *Athos*, and all other, dispersed ouer Europ, he payeth the Turke yearely 12000. ducats.

The Patriarch of *Alexandria*, moderateth in *Egypt* and *Arabia*, and his dwelling place in *Memphis* and *Cair*, are not much inferiour to his of *Constantinople*.

The Patriarch of *Ierusalem*, absolutely moderateth in *Iudea*, and ouer all professors of the *Greek* religion throughout *Siria*. And must of necessity euerie yeare, on the fifteenth day of August, say Masse in the Monastery scituated vpon mount *Libanus*.

The Patriarch of *Antioch* precedeth in these Monasteries & Greeke churches, which are in *Beritus*, *Tripolis*, *Haleb*, and other places of *Asia*. And in these places, as in all other, the

Digitized by Google

Turke

Turke permitteth the Christians to vse their consciences freely, so they performe their due and accustomed tributes.

Thrace. *Thrace* hath on the East, the *Euxine* Sea, the *Thracian Bosphorus*, *Propontis*, and *Hellespont*: on the North, the Mount *Hemus*, vpon the West, the higher *Misia*, and part of *Macedon*, on the South, the *Archipelago*. It is a most Noble Prouince, cold, plain, and admirable populous, stored with grain, pulse, and excellent Wine, towards the Sea-side: but towards the vpland (lying more subiect to cold) it is not so fertile nor wooddy.

In it stands many goodly Cities: *Philippopolis*, *Nicopolis*, *Hadrionopolis*, and amongst many other, *Constantinopolis*, by Heauen erected to be the heade of an Empire; as the onely seate which the *Romans*, *Greekes*, and now the Turkes, haue chosen and reputed to be most commodiously seated, not for the gouernment onely of the Empire, but (as they conceited) of the whole world.

Gallipolis. *Gallipolis*, is another famous portion thereof: I will not stand to describe these triuials, yet is it a place of great moment, and therein resideth a Gouernor, without whose license no shippe of what Countrey soeuer may passe the straight, but hee must cast Anchor at least for three dayes, vntill the Turkes haue made full search, whether they transport any slaues by stealth, or no.

Macedon Next followeth *Macedon*, a fertil region inclosed with hils, and neere the *Ionean* sea, plaine and wooddy. That it was once the Empresse of the East, it is well knowne, but at this day, it is Turkish, and without any famous Cities, saue in a peece of *Albania*. In it is nothing memorable but the Mount *Athos*, or holy mount. It is 75. miles in compasse, three daies iourny long, and halfe a daies iourney broad, resembling the shape of a man lying with his face vpwarde, whose highest Cone, alwaies couered with snow, is seene thirty miles off at Sea. It is exceeding fertile in Grasse, Fruite, Oyle, and Wine. Long ago it was dedicated in honour of Saint *Basill*, to the Greeke *Caloieri*, and endowed with priuiledges, which at this day it enioyeth by the *Turkes* good fauour; that is to say, that no man neyther Græcian nor Turke may inhabit in this place, except

Digitized by Google

he

he be a Priest. So that their number in these dayes are about sixe thousand, dispersed into 24. Monasteries, ancient & warlicke, so built for feare of Theeues and Pyrates, although there be no such great cause. In these Monasteries are many relicks, which cause great concourse of people, and they are stately built, and richly adorned.

This hill is in as great request with the Græcians for their Sanctimonious strictnesse of life, as is *Rome* with the *Latines*; yea, the Turkes themselues do send hither many bountifull almes. None of them liue idely, but must doo somewhat, and so doo daily for the œconomique of the house; as to dresse Vines, fell Timber; yea, build ships, and such like mechanicall labours. They are poorely cladde like Hermites, neyther weare they shirts of Linnen, but Wollen, and them they spin, and sowe themselues, neuer giuing themselues to study: and that more is, many of them can neither write nor read. And yet notwithstanding, if any man haue occasion to iourney by their houses, he shall if he please finde victuals scotfree, according to his calling.

Epyre, nowe *Albania*, was once a very famous Prouince, as witnesseth *P. Æmilius*, it had in it 70. Cities, now destroyed, and turned into ruines or Villages, meanly inhabited. For the most part it is woody and barren, but neere the sea, fertile and adorned with very beautifull hauens. *Epirus.*

Achaia is a very goodly Region, as may be gathered by the goodly Cities, which therein once flourished (viz:) *Delphos*, *Thebs*, *Athens*, *Megara*, and many mo, now destroyed. *Achaia.*

So is *Peloponesus*, tearmed by *Pliny* the bulwark of Greece. It yeeldeth all things that man can desire either for life or pleasure. And although the ancient Cities bee now defaced, yet is it for quantity the best peopled part of *Greece*. It is nowe vnder the Turke, and counted the best *Sangiak ship* in *Turkie*, as bound to bring at the commaundement of the *Beblerbeg* of *Greece*, 1000. horsemen vnder his owne pay. It is worth yearly fourteene thousand Ducats. The Islandes adioyning vnto these large continents, I will not discourse of: for as they are diuers in worth and estimation, so are they many in number, and not worthy relation. *Peloponesus*

Digitized by Google

Dalmatia. *Dalmatia*, is at this day diuided into *Sclauonia*, *Dalmatia*, and *Albania*. *Sclauonia* lyeth vpon the West, *Albania* vpon the East, and in the middle *Dalmatia*. In all fertility it is as good as *Italy*. Of a Countrey first wasted by *Cæsar Augustus*; secondly by the *Gothes*; thirdly by the *Turkes*, and at this day shared amongst three such Lordes, as are the *Venetians*, the *Turke*, and the Emperor; it may be said to be reasonable well inhabited. And so it is, hauing many fine Cities in it, as *Iadera*, *Ragusinum*, *&c.* Howbeit, that part which is subiect to the Turke, lyeth almost desart, by reason of their continuall inrodes.

Mæsia superior. *Bossina*, or *Mæsia superior*, is also a parcell of *Illiria*, and erected into a Turkish *Beglerbeg-ship*, hauing vnder it nine *Saniaks*. *Seruia* now *Rascia*, lyeth betweene *Bosnia* and *Bulgaria*, it was taken by the Turke 1438. and reduced into a *Saniak-ship* vnder the *Beglerbeg* of *Buda*. *Bulgaria*, which some take for the lower *Mæsia*, is so famous a Prouince, that the Turkish Emperour hath erected it for the chiefe Seat of the generall *Beglerbeg* of *Europe*; vnder whose commaund are twenty one Saniaks.

Walachia, containeth the two Prouinces of *Moldania* and *Transalpina*. *Walachia* is a plaine and fertile Countrey, smallie inhabited, and destitute of fire-wood; but stored with excellent Horse, Cattle, and Mines of Gold and Siluer, if the people durst dig them for feare of the Turkes. In *Moldania* dwell many *Armenians*, *Iewes*, *Hungarians*, *Saxons*, and *Ragusians*, who forstall the whole Traffick in these parts, bartering their Corn and Wine into *Russia* and *Polonia*, and their skins, wax, hony, powdred Beefe, Butter and Pulse, into *Constantinople*. The *Malmesey* likewise which is transported out of *Creet* into *Poland* and *Germany*, is carried through this Countrey, whereof the *Vaiuod* receiueth a massie impost.

Natolia. That which the Turkes at this day teatme *Natolia*, or *Turcia maior*, once *Asia minor*, comprehendeth the Prouinces of *Pontus*, *Bithinia*, *Asia* it selfe, *Licia*, *Galacia*, *Pamphilia*, *Cappadocia*, *Cilicia*, and *Armenia* the lesse; and in these Prouinces of ancient times flourished the States and Kingdoms of the *Troians*, of *Methridates*, of *Cressus*, of *Antigonus*, of the *Paphlagonians*,

Digitized by Google

nians, of the *Galathians*, of the *Cappadocians* and *Phrygians*: All which at this day are not sufficient to satisfie the onely ambition of the Turkish tyranny. The Inhabitants for the most part are Mahumetans, and naturall Turkes, of simpler natures then the Turks of Europe, and nothing so cruell as the Renegado Christians. Yet are there many Christians among them in many of these Regions, following the Rites of the Greeke Church. Among these Turkes there is no acknowledgement of superiority, Bloud or Nobility, but all are equall slaues to the Grand Seignior, ouer whom he appointeth *Beglerbegs* and Saniaks. They are eyther a kinde of idle or lofty people, for they are small industrious, and were it not for their slaues, their grounds would generally lye vnmanured.

Pontus and *Bithinia* are now vnited vnder one name, and called *Bursia*. Here once raigned the great King *Methridates*; and here stood the famous Cities of *Chalcedon*, *Nichomedia*, *Apamia*, *Prusia*, *Nice*, and *Heraclea Ponti*.

Asia propria, now *Sabrun*, is a peculiar Prouince of *Asia minor*, and containeth in it many famous Prouinces, as *Phrigia maior*, *& minor*, *Caria*, *Misia*, &c. In *Phrigia minor* stood that Noble Citty of *Troy*, famous at this day (saith *Bellonius*) an eie witnesse, for its very ruines of wals, gates, circuit, and marble sepulchers, found vpon the waies without the wals.

Pamphilia, now *Caramania*, is one of the seuen *Sangiak-ships* of *Turkey*, and yeeldeth 8000. duckets of yearely reuenue. In this Countrey as also in *Cilicia*, are wouen those fine clothes which we call Chamblets, watered and vnwatered. They are made of the haire of Goates so fine and white, as no Silke can surpasse them in those two properties.

Cappadocia now *Amasia*, is a goodly Country, and the seat of the Turkes eldest Son. In it are many goodly Citties, as *Trapezond*, once the Seat of the *Commeni*, Emperors of *Trapezond*, whose Name and Progeny, *Mahumet* the second vterly extinguished.

Cilicia now part of *Caramania*, is a good cuntry: the inhabitãts are giuẽ to pasturing of goats for lucre of their fleeces, of which they make their Chamblets; but otherwise, ne ther giuen to Fishing, Nauigation, nor Husbandry. At the foot of Mount

Digitized by Google

Taurus (saieth *Belloniꝰ*) are diuers small Villages, and excellent pastors about them, which for the fertility thereof should seeme to be one of the Turkes Races: for from thence, he culleth out euerie yeare 600. horse of seruice, which they highly esteeme and name *Caramani*.

Armenia minor, is a better soile, and more populous then *Cappadocia*, and round about incircled with tall, huge, broken, and woody mountaines.

Arabia Triplex.

The three *Arabiaes*, are likewise a parcell of this Empyre, which is a maruellous great Countrey, encluded betweene two huge bosomes of the Sea, in manner of a *Peninsula*, viz: vpon the West and East, with the *Arabian* and *Persian* gulfes, vpon the South with the Ocean, and vppon the North, with *Syria* and *Euphrates*.

The Inhabitants are indifferently called *Arabians*, *Saracens*, or *Moores*: Those are the true *Arabians* which liue out of Cities in Tents, dispersed ouer *Syria*, *Egypt*, and *Affricke*: these giue themselues to feede Catle, and droues of Camels. Those which inhabite Citties, are called *Moores*, and were once of such puissance, that they not onely subdued *Syria*, *Persia*, and *Trogloditica*, but likewise Egypt, a great part of *Affricke*, and almost all *Spaine*, with the Iland of *Sicill*, and the kingdom of *Naples*.

Two hundered yeares they kept possession of these peeces, but of some part of *Spaine*, 700. euen vntill the daies of our Fathers. And further, this accursed generation at this day, is not onely spread ouer all the Southerne coast of *Asia*, (viz:) *Persia*, *East India*, and the Islands of the *Indian* Sea, but likewise aduaunced with great prosperity vnto diuers wealthy Kingdomes, famous Citties, and woorthy Mart-townes, yea, ouer all the South-coast of *Affricke*; Vnder this people, the *Turkes* were first called into *Asia* to beare armes. Of their maners, we haue spoken elsewhere. In their Religion they are *Mahumetans*, for in this Country that false Prophet first opened his superstitious Shop.

Arabia Deserta.

This is a vast Countrey, full of Deserts, yet well inhabited with populous and warlike multitudes, especially toward *Euphrates*, and the Mountaines of *Arabia Felix*, whether Merchants

Digitized by Google

chants resort. The residue towardes the West, is sandy, by which, if a man bee to trauell, he must haue the Starres to his guide, company for his safegarde, and prouision for his dyet: for otherwise, hee shall surely loose his way, surrender his goods to the theeuish *Arabes*, or starue in the Desart for want of foode.

Towardes *Syria*, this is somewhat fertile, but finally commended for that property by the Ancients; for indeede, it is exceeding barren, and wanteth necessary sustenance, wood, & fresh Water. The memorable thinges heerein are, the Mountaines of *Sinai* and *Oreb*, vppon the former whereof, is at this day builded a Monastery of Christians, following the Greeke Church, & the onely receptable (or Inne) for wayfairing christians: other place of releefe is there none. *Arabia Petrea.*

Arabia Fœlix is a verie large Prouince, better manured, and watered then the other. It is adorned with Noble Cities, and full of villages, especially towards the sea side, where are many excellent places of trade. The residue except the sande, is made manureable, either for feeding of Cattle or Camelles, in which places liue infinite swarmes of diuers Nations, by grazing and husbandry. It bringeth forth whatsoeuer will grow in *India*, and that twice a yeare, in abundant manner, besides, Casia, Cinamon, Mirrhe, &c. and soly as much as Frankinsence, as will serue all the world. It yeeldeth also mettall, and excellent pearle all along the Coast by fishing. It sendeth abundance of horsse and sheepe into *India*, whose tailes waigh forty pounds. In it are many famous Cities, as *Medina*, *Talnabi*, *Mecca*, *Zidem*, *Zibit*, and *Adem*.

This Cittie of *Adem*, together with the whole Countrey, was in the yeare of our Lorde, 1538. fraudulently surprized by the Turke, and their King hanged. It is now strongly fortified, and erected into a Stately Turkish *Beglerbeg-ship*.

Digitized by Google

Turcomania, in times past a part of the greater Armenia.



Vrcomania comprehendeth no ſmall portion of *Armenia maior*: what remaineth is accounted in *Georgia*. Vpon the North lieth *Colchis*, (now *Mangrellia*.) Vpon the weſt *Euphrates*, & the leſſe *Armenia*, vpon the Eaſt that remainder of the greater *Armenia*, which is accounted in *Georgia*, vpon the South *Meſapotamia* (nowe *Dierbechia*) with the people *Curdi*. It is inuironed with Mountaines, and beautified with plaines, amongſt the which *Periander* (now *Chalderan*) *Antitaurus* (now *Mons niger*) are moſt renowned. It is generally exceeding firtile, and ſtored with Cattle, but maruellouſly ſubiect to deepe ſnowes.

The people by Nature are much giuen to theft and ſpoyle, as diſcending from the *Tartars*, and ſo at this day leade their liues, liuing in Tents and houels attending and paſturing their Cattle: Yet ſome of them inure themſelues to tillage, and mechanique Trades, in weauing of Chamblets and Hangings, watered and vnwatered: of the like qualities are the *Curdi*, and ſome ſuppoſe that theſe *Curds* inhabit the ancient Seates of the *Chaldeans*, whereupon it is called at this day *Curdiſtan*, by the *Turkes* and *Perſians*, but by the *Arabians Keldan*, that is to ſay; *Chaldea*.

Gurgiſtan, or Georgia, in times paſt Iberia.

Georgia, by the *Barbarians*, tearmed *Gurgiſtan*, comprehendeth the ancient *Iberia*, with part of the greater *Armenia*, and peraduenture *Atropatia*. Vpon the Weſt lieth *Mengrelia*, vpon the North, *Zuiria* (once *Albania*) vpon the Eaſt, the middle *Atropatia* (now *Siruan*) vpon the South, that part of the greater *Armenia*, which now is called *Turcomania*.

For the greater part it is couered with Mountaines, Woods, and thickets, and in that regard inconquerable, for the difficulties of the mountainous paſſages. It is notwithſtanding firtile, and adorned with many large plaines and vallies, from whence ariſe many famouſed Riuers, as *Cirus* & *Araxis*, ſpringing from the Mountaine *Taurus*, and running thorough the whole

Digitized by Google

whole Prouince, vntill at last, it disgorge it selfe into the *Caspian*.

The Inhabitants are tearmed *Georgiana*, of S. *George*, whom they aduow their Patron and Aduocate. For they are Christians, according to the Greeke Church, with some small difference. They are very populous and warlike, strong of body, and valorous in fight, euen vntill our times maintaining theyr liberty in the midst of the Mahumetans, sometimes following the fortunes of the *Turkes*, sometimes of the *Persians*. But at this day, they haue not onely lost their wonted liberty, but also many famous Fortresses and Cities, as *Teflis*, *Lori*, *Clisea*, *Gori*, and *Tomanis*, and withall, some of them haue imbraced the Turkish infidelity.

Palestine is one of the most excellent Prouinces of *Siria*, as well in regard of habitation, as of many famous actes doone therein, and celebrated in holy scripture. Vnder the generall name whereof are comprehended *Idumea*, *Iudæa*, *Samaria*, and *Galilie*. Anciently it was called *Canaan*, of *Chanaan* the Son of *Cham*, whose posterity deuided the Land amongst them, and that name it continued vntil the inuasion of the *Israelites*, who called it after their owne denomination, *Israell*.

It was also called *Philistim*, of the *Philistians* once a powerfull and mighty people: after that, the *Land of Promise*, and now lastly, *The holy Land*.

It is scituated betweene the *Arabian* and *Mediterranean* Seas, northerly vpon part of *Phenicia*; East-ward, vpon *Libanus*; Southward and South-East, vpon *Arabia*; and west-ward, vpon part of the *Mediterranean*, which is tearmed the *Syrian* and *Phinician* Sea.

From the very beginning (as witnesseth the holy Scripture) it hath beene a most famous Prouince, and afterward more renowned for the birth, myracles and passion of our Sauiour Christ. The ayre is very temperate, the bodies of men healthfull, and very patient of labour. The ancients wil haue it to be scituated in the midst of the world, where it is neither pinched with extremity of cold, nor vexed with ouer-much heat. And therefore the *Israelites* say; This to bee the land which God promised vnto *Abraham*.

For

Digitized by Google

For ſcite it is very pleaſant, for plaines and hils no leſſe delightſome, rich in diuers ſorts of Manufactures, and well watered. And although it raine but ſeldome, yet was the ſoyle batefull, and that by Teſtimony of Scripture, auerring it to be a Land excelling all others in goodneſſe and firtility.

So that their graine was moſt delicate, their encreaſe abundant, and their Roſes moſt ſweete. Rue, fennell, and ſage, and ſuch like Pot-hearbs it brought forth of it's owne accord. Oliues, Figges, Pomegranates, and Palme trees are verie frequent; with ſome ſtore of Vines. For although, the *Saracens* are forbidden the drinking of Wine, yet make they abundance, and verie good, for the vſe of ſtrangers, dwelling in the Countrey. They make three harueſts, yet haue they neyther Peares, Apples, Cherries, Nuts, nor any other fruits common with vs: theſe are brought them from *Damaſcus*. Some fruits, as Oranges, and the Apple of Paradice, they haue & preſerue vpon the Trees all the yeare long. It did once yeelde Balme, not now; but is ſtored with Honey, and Suger Canes; ſo is it with Goats, Swine, Hares, Partriges and Quailes; as alſo Lyons, Beares, and Camels. And in many places ſo peſtred with Rattes and Mice, that if it were not for certaine Birds deuouring thoſe Creatures, it were impoſſible to haue any Harueſt.

Iordan runneth through the middeſt of the Country, whoſe water is moſt delicious, and therein ſtrangers are accuſtomed to waſh themſelues. In it's courſe, it maketh two Lakes; the one in *Cana* of *Galily*, the other, at *Tyberias*, which is called *Genezereth*, and at laſt diſgorgeth it ſelfe into the *Mediterranean* Sea. Vpon the Bankes thereof grow Withies, Tamarisk, with many other ſortes of Shrubbes and weeds, of which the *Arabians* make their Darts, Weapons, Launces, and writing pennes.

The former of theſe two Lakes, is eſpecially filled, when the Snowes diſſolue and run from *Libanus*. In the ſummer it is dry, and bringeth forth aboundance of ſhrubs and flags, wherein Lyons and diuers wilde beaſts do ſhroud their carkaſſes. The Lake of *Genezareth* runneth moſt cleerly, and yeildeth diuers ſorts of Fiſh, as Carpes, Pikes, &c.

It

Digitized by Google

It is not so broad, but that a man may see from one side vnto the other, as consisting of 16. miles in length, and six in bredth. The playnes round about are barren for the aboundance of bushes, which hinder the husbandman from manuring the ground. Yet the *Iewes* by industry do much amend it, and dwell about the bankes thereof for the fishing sake.

Mare mortuum, otherwise the Lake *Asphaltites*, so called of his bituminous sauor, was a place once woody and full of salt pits, which for the pleasantnesse thereof was resembled to Paradice; and therein stood *Sodome*, *Gomorrha*, and the three other Cities, which for their sinne against Nature, were therin drowned and burnt by the doome of God. At this day it sendeth forth smokes and fogs as from an infernall furnace, wherewith the whole valley adiacent for half a daies iourney is made barren. It neither yeeldeth fish nor foule, and whatsoeuer creature is cast therein, though bound hand and foot, it swimmeth on the face of the water.

The land was once most populous, as appeareth by the muster of *Dauid*, who numbred a thousand thousand, and three hundred thousand of men, able to beare armes, besides the Tribe of *Beniamin*. As long as they continued their vpright and religious obedience to the seruice of God, the Land prospered, but assoone as they forgot God, they suffered many myseries, and those perpetuall, vntill they were cleane destroyed; and forced to fly euery way. For to speake nothing of ancient time, the 73. yeare after Christ, *Ierusalem* was taken & destroyed by *Titus*, with the slaughter and captiuity of infinite thousandes. In the yeare 136. it was restored by *Ælius Adrianus*, newe-named *Ælia*, and giuen in possession to the Iewes. In the time of *Constantine* and *Helena* his mother it fell into the hands of the christians, and so continued vntill the yeare 609. at what time it was sacked by the *Persians*, but left vnto the Christians, and so continued vntill the dayes of *Henry* the 4. at what time it was againe taken by the *Sultan* of the *Sarazens*, and the Christians cleane banished.

In the yeare 1097. in a generall Councell for the deliuery of the holy Land, the *Crossed* Knights were instituted throughout Christendome, and *Godfrey* of *Bulloygne* chosen Generall of

Digitized by Google

three hundred thousand footmen, and one hundred thousand horse. These knights did many famous actes; recouered the land, instituted a Monarchy, and somtime with good fortune, and sometime with losse, continued the defence thereof, vntil the yeare 1290. In which yeare, it was vtterly subdued by the *Soldan* of *Egypt*. In whose possession it continued, vntill the yeare of our Lorde, 1517. and then was it ouercome by the Turkish Armies, who at this day retaine it in miserable seruitude. And so it resteth, peopled with men of diuers Nations and Sects; as *Saracens*, *Arabians*, *Turkes*, *Hebrewes*, & *Christians*: whereof some followe the Latine Church, some the Greeke: as the *Grecians*, *Syrians*, *Armenians*, *Georgians*, *Nestorians*, *Iacobites*, *Nubians*, *Maronits*, *Abessines*, *Indians*, & *Egiptians*, euery one hauing their peculiar bishops, whō they obey.

Galily. *Galile* vpon the North is enuironed with the steepe hilles of *Libanus* and *Antilibanus*, vpon the West with *Phanicia*, vpon the East with *Celoliria*, and vpon the South with *Samaria* and *Arabia* the desert. The soile is most fruitfull, yeelding al sorts of trees, and deuided by *Iordan*: vpon whose banks stand very many Townes and Villages, and so well watered either with mountain-torrents, or springs, that no part thereof lyeth vnmanured.

The Countrey is the more famous, for that in it standeth (amongst the rude mountaines) the small Village of *Nazareth*, the place of our Lords conception: and at this day, there is a small Chappell arcbt and built vnder ground, whereinto a man must descend by staires: Heere (some say) the Angell appeared vnto *Mary*, and foretold her, that she should conceiue and bring forth our Lord.

The Inhabitants are *Arabians*, short and thicke men, rudely apparrelled, and weaponed with bowes, swords, and daggers. In this Region likewise, standeth the Mount *Thabor*, whose North part is inaccessible, and whereon our Lord was transfigured.

Samaria. *Samaria* lieth in a most delicate plot of *Palestine*, but in bignesse not compareable to *Iudea* or *Galile*. The soyle is partly mountainous, partly champian, pleasant, fruiteful, and verie well watered with fresh and sweete water. The Citty is now ruinated:

Digitized by Google

ruinated: but *Naples* for pleasure and delight, is inferiour to no other. It is scituated vpon the side of a hill, the eight part of a mile from whence, a man may behold the ruines of a great Temple: whereupon (as men say) Christ sate, when he asked water of the *Samaritan* woman.

Iudea, farre excelleth any part of the residue of *Palestine*, & *Iudea*, at this day enioyeth it's ancient fertility.

The Tribe of *Iuda* so named it, and in it, as in the rest of *Palestine* were very many worthy Cities, whereof *Ierusalem* was the chiefe seat of their Princes, the possession of the Patriarks, Prophets, and Apostles: the originall place of our faith, and the glory of the Christian world. By the *Barbarians* at this day it is called *Godz* or *Chutz*. It standeth on an eminent place, as whereunto a man must alwayes ascend.

Saint *Ieroms* opinion was, that it stood not onely in the hart of *Iudea*, but in the very center of the worlde, as hauing *Asya* on the East, *Europe* on the West, vppon the South *Lybia* and *Affrica*, and vpon the North, *Scythia*, *Armenia*, *Persia*, with the residue of the Pontique Nations.

What the glory heereof hath bin, may bee coniectured out of *Tacitus*, who reporteth, that in the beginning of the siege, it contained two hundred thousand soules. At this day it numbreth not aboue fiue thousand inhabitantes, although manie pilgrims daily resort thither in a good conscience, and for deuotions sake.

It was once strongly and fairely walled, but now weakely, and therein it sheweth nothing now so famous, as the Sepulchre of our Lord Christ, whose Temple encircleth the whole Mount of *Canalry*, scituated vpon a plain plot of ground, high, round, and open at the top, from whence it receiueth light: but the Sepulchre it selfe is couered with an Archt Chappell cut out of the maine Marble, and left vnto the custodie of the Latine Christians.

Whosoeuer is desirous to see this Sepulchre, must pay nine Crownes to the Turke; so that this tribute is yearely woorth vnto him, eight millions of Ducates.

One hundered and eight foote distant from this Tombe, is the Mount (called *Canalrie*) whereon our Sauiour Christ

 by Google was

was crucified by the treacherous Iewes. In this place are many other religious Reliques. And the pilgrimes which come thither, are alwayes lodged according to his owne profession; that is to say: the Latines with the *Franciscans*, without the Citty, by Mount *Syon*: the Grecians are lodged with the *Caloieran Greekes*, dwelling within the Citty by the Sepulchre: And so euery other Nation, *Abessines*, *Georgians*, *Armenians*, *Nestorians* and *Maronites*, who all, haue their proper and peculiar Chappels. Those *Franciscans*, which follow the Latine Church, and are for the most part *Italians*, were wont to create the Knights of the Sepulchre, and to giue testimoniall vnto pilgrims of their arriuall there.

Without this Citty is the valley of *Iosaphet*, and therein the tombs of the blessed Lady, and S. *Anne*. The territory adioyning is exceeding fruitfull in Vines, Apples, Almonds, Figges, and Oyle: the Mountaines are no lesse stored with all sortes of Trees, wilde Beasts, and Spiceries.

Besides *Ierusalem*, heere standeth *Bethlem*, now destroyed, and shewing nothing worth looking on, saue a great & stately Monastery of the *Franciscans*, within which, is the place where Christ was borne. *Rama* is now likewise ruinated, the Arches and Cesternes which are now remaining, by the witnesse of *Bellonius* his owne eye, are greater then those of *Alexandria*, but not so thicke.

Gaza, is now a Turkish *Sangiak-ship*: the soile about firtil, and the inhabitants, *Grecians*, *Turkes*, and *Arabians*.

Idumea. In holy writ, this Region is called *Edom*, and by other Authors, *Nabathea*. Toward the sea and *Iudea* the soile is fertile, but toward *Arabia*, desert and barren. Some say it is in expugnable for it's Desarts and want of water: yet is it stored therewith, but hidden, and knowne to none but the natiues. Of old they were a turbulent, vnquiet, and seditious people, and so at this day, they are like to their villainous and roguish Neighbors the *Arabians*.

Phenicia. Next bordereth *Phenicia*, as part of *Syria*, exposed to the sea, and bordering vpon *Galile*. Of old it had many famous cities, as *Tripolis*, *Beritus*, *Sydon*, *Tyrus*, *Ptholomais*, *Capharnaum*, *Emissa*, and others: Amongst the which, *Tire* & *Sidon*, were most fa-

Digitized by Google

famous. *Tire* was a goodly Citty, a Colony of the Romans,& rounde about encircled with the sea, vntill *Alexander* in his siege ioyned it to the continent. It is now a nest of theeues,& the receptacle of the stif-necked *Drusians*. *Sidon* was no lesse famous, but now ruinated.

Acon or *Ptholomais*, is strongly fortified, triangular-wise, two parts whereof lie vpon the sea, the third, toward the land. The soile about is very fruitful and delicious. The city adornd with a beautifull hospitall, strong and well bulwarked, once belonging to the *Teutonique* Knights. It hath also a very faire hauen, capacious of any ships comming from the south.

Berytus, is an ancient Citty, once an Epiſcopall sea, now famous for Traffick and Merchandize, as the Mart-town whereunto all the ships comming from Europe do arriue. It is scituated most safely, and almost inexpugnable.

NOw (following mine Authour) and hauing finished this tedious discourse of this great Empire, by the patience of my Reader, I will also relate the Originall, the maners, the discent, and the Religion of this warlicke and infidelious people, composed partly of Natiues, lineally discended from the *Scythians* and *Tartars*, and partly of Apostata and *Renegado* Christians.

Generally (the Natiues) they haue broade visages, correspondent in the proportion of their members, faire and tall, & somwhat enclined to grosseneſſe. Their haire they regard not, saue only that of their beards. They are of a grosse and dul capacity, wayward, slow, and lazy, hating husbandry, and yet aboue all people in the world couetous and desirous of riches, yea, selling all places of Iustice and gonernement to their best Chapmen. Amongst one another exceeding curteous; and, as seruile toward their superiors; in whose presence they keepe admirable silence,& yeeld due reuerence: but toward strangers they are al fashioned of pride, insolency,& bosting, thinking no nation in the world to equalize them; in their speech entertainement, and gesture, bewraying their inhereat insolence; faithfull to none, but where fidelity may produce aduantage. By nature, they are as idle, and giuen to excessiue ea-

Digitized by Google

ting and drinking, ſitting cloſe by it three daies together, and ſecretly not abſtaining from Wine, although by their Lawe they are forbidden the drinking thereof. No leſſe are they addicted to letchery and lothſome vnnaturall venery, exceeding credulous, ſuperſtitious, relying vpon dreames, fortunes, diuinations, and deſtiny, beleeuing euery mans fortune to be written in his forehead, impoſſible to be auoided: the fundamentall reaſon why they aduenture like brute beaſts, iato ſo many deſperate dangers.

As concerning their Religion, a man might write much, but we ſtudying breuity, do relate, that generally, as a people too too credulous, they embrace many abſurde and triuiall opinions touching the creation and end of the world, of Paradice, heauen, hell, the earth, the creation of man, and Mahumets iourney to heauen, euen ſuch and ſo groſſe, as would make our children to laugh, if they heard them fabled. They doo all acknowledge one God, they reuerence Chriſt, not as the ſonne of God, but as a Prophet born of the virgin Mary, and not crucified on the croſſe, but ſome other man ſoyſted in by the ſubtility of the Iewes. Idols and Images they wil not endure and obſerue the Friday, as we do the ſaboth. They keepe a Lent of thirty daies, which they call *Ramadan*, and faſt all day; but in the night they make amends for all, abſtaining from nothing that commeth to hand, ſaue Swines fleſh, wine, and women. Next this feaſt, followeth their Eaſter, by them tearmed *Bayran*, it continueth 3. daies, and during that time, they take no delight in any paſtime. This feaſt falleth not all times alike, but ſometimes in the Winter, ſometimes in the Spring, and ſometimes in Autumne, by reaſon, that they account not their yeare, according to the courſe of the Sun, but of the Moone: the riſing whereof at firſt quarter they adore, bearing the Figure thereof, as we the Croſſe in their Enſignes.

They are circumciſed Iew-like, but not as they, on the eight day, but at the eight yeare. They haue no bels after the maner of Chriſtendom, neither wil they ſuffer the Chriſtians to haue any, but fiue times in one day & night, their Prieſts aſcend the ſteeples, with their lowd roarings and out-cries to cal and aſſemble the people to prayers. By their good will they will not be

Digitized by Google

be called Turkes; for in the Hæbrew tongue, that denomination ſignifieth a vagabond or baniſhed man, and is accounted a word of diſgrace; and therefore forſooth they muſt be ſtiled *Muſolmani*, that is; Right-beleeuers.

They haue likewiſe amongſt them (as amongſt the Papiſtes) foure Orders of profeſſed perſons, (viz:) the *Torlaci*, the *Dorniſi*, the *Calenderi*, and the *Hughie mali*; the moſt wickedeſt ſect of all the reſidue, giuing themſelues to all impoſture and vncleanneſſe. They are not very dainty to conuerſe with chriſtians, but with ſmall intreaty will eate, drinke, and trafficke with them; yea, and ſometimes marry their daughters, permitting them to liue peaceably after their conſciences: but to the Iewes, they are moſt inſotiable, deteſting their company, and hating their tables, accounting them the baſeſt people in the world, neyther will they marry with any of that progeny, no, nor receyue them into the Mahumetan Religion, vnleſſe they bee firſt baptized. By their Lawes they may haue but foure wiues, yet by preſcription euery man taketh as many as he can well maintaine: one of theſe is accounted the wife, to her the reſidue are vnderlinges, and may at any time be diuorced. Their Women go ſeldome abroad, but if they do, they maske their faces, are gallantly attyred, and ſhine in Golde, Stone, and Iewels: Twice a weeke (as doeth men) they frequent the banes. They neuer blaſpheme the name of God, nor of Mahomet, nor of Chriſt, nor of our Ladye, nor of any other Saints, but if any be heard ſo to offend, he is greeuouſly puniſhed, let him be of what calling or religiō ſoeuer. At dice and cards they neuer play, but onely at *Alueolo*. They are very charitable, diſburſing their Almes, not onely to Turkes, but alſo to chriſtians, & men of al profeſsions, yea to brute beaſts, ſometimes buying quicke Birds, which for charities ſake, they will againe let flye at liberty. Their garments are long, & open before to the foot, except their ſhirts, which they wear without their *Broges*, ſo that as they go, they are openly ſeen. Their raiment is very faire and coſtly, viz. of cloth, ſilke, imbroderie, and ſet with pearl. They couer their head with a Turbant, except thoſe of the diſcent of Mahomet; theſe wear altogether green, but the chriſtians inhabiting among them, were no one colour,

Digitized by Google

colour, but as they pleaſe (greene except.) They are all cloathed in long garments like the Turkes, and are not diſtinguiſhed by any apparrell they weare (of what profeſſion ſoeuer they be) but onely by the attire of their heades. In ſalutations they neuer vncouer their heades, neither doth the meaner ſalute his better; the left hand with them is the place of honor, and the better ſort ride about their affaires on horſebacke.

In dyet they are very rude; they faire baſely, and groſſely, and yet they eate thrice a day, at morning, noone, & euening, alwayes without Table-cloath or Napkin; not ſitting orderly at Table, but on the ground, or ſome low ſtoole, with their legges acroſſe, Taylor-like. They feed vpon all ſorts of fleſh, except Porke, which is forbidden them by their law. Their chiefeſt foode is Rice, and the *Aſyan* Turkes care not much for Fiſh, but the *Europian* Turkes for nothing more. By Law they forbeare Wine, and therefore drinke water, whereinto the better ſort mixe either Hony or Suget, and in colde weather, inſtead of a toaſt they throw in a burning cole, to take away the offenſiue operation of this raw Element. They make great vſe of *Opium*, and there is not one of them but eateth it, beleeuing that thereby his courage encreaſeth, and thereby leſſe dreadeth the hazard of Warre. They make water cowring downe like women, and their priuate buildinges for the moſt part conſiſt of Timber, and Morter, very narrow, and ill contriued; wherein, to ſay truth, they are not intenſiue, eſteeming it an heynous ſin to beſtow more coſt vppon the frame, then is likely or conuenient to laſt longer then during the life of one man: but in building of Temples to the honor of God, in prouiding for publicke receptacles for Trauellers, in erecting Hoſpitals, publicke Baths, wateting places for men and Cattle, and fountaines to waſh away their immaginary pollutions, before they enter into their *Meſchites*, they are moſt ſumptuous, moſt prodigall. No leſſe a pride take they in building of Conduites, in erecting of bridges, and in pauing of high-wayes; all which in Turkey you ſhall ſee very carefully repayred, and as a man may ſay, ſumptuouſly and magnificently prouided for.

Exeept vpon the frontiers, in *Turkey* you ſhall ſee no forti-

fied

Digitized by Google

fied Cities, but rather the walles that haue bin fortified, ruinated, and the fields wasted, according to their prouerbe, *quò Ottomanicus aliquis transiuit, ibi nec folia, nec gramina proueniũt.* And not vntruely, for as soon as they haue conquered any prouince, they extinguish the great ones, especially those of royal blood, and as for the welthiest Burgers, they transport them into remote prouinces, already inured, and subiected to his lawes and gouernment; not forcing their consciences, but only despoyling them of their armes, restrayning them of liberty to trauell out of their limits, and forbidding them to serue any other potentate in preuention of rebellion. In inuention of engines against their neighbours, they are admirable industrious, not caring to obtaine that by craft and faithlesse cowardize, which they cannot gayne by force, or the effusion of much bloud: but those base proiects not preuailing, without respect of honour or military glory, they are not ashamed to betake themselues to their heeles. Yet to speake trueth, they are good souldiours, and to their especiall aduantage, excellently disciplin'd, being obedient to their commanders, most laborious in their fabriks, content with a final refreshment of victual, and that most grosse, contrary to the gluttonous behauior of al christian warfare.

Their armes are a lance, a bowe, and a quiuer of arrowes, an yron mace, a battle axe, and a Semitar, and those inchased with gold and siluer; besides their great ordinance, whereof at this day thee are Lords of infinite pieces.

This Empire began to take root in the yeare 1300. vnder the fortunes of one *Osman* or *Othoman*, from whome the succeeding princes of that house haue deriued and vsurped the surnames of *Othoman*, euen as the Emperors of Christendom haue continued the title of *Cæsars*, since the first Romane *Iulius*. Frõ that time vntill this yeare 1608. and from that *Othoman* vntill this *Asmath*, wonder it is to relate, how e in the space of 300. yeares, from so meane a Captaine, so base a people, and in so short a time, (considering the groath of the Romane Empire) this soueraignty is now growne to be the terror of the world, and almost to equalize that of the Romanes. How long euery particular prince raigned, and what exploites they perfourmed

Digitized by Google

med, I rew to record, and meane not to relate: onely let mee remember you of that diueliſh policy of theirs, how one brother at his firſt comming to the Crowne murdereth all the reſidue of his fathers childeren, and male-competitors, thereby preſuming to liue ſecure and fearelesse of innouation: *iudicet Deus.*

They firſt ſeated the model and maieſty of their Empire in *Pruſia* a Citty of *Bithinia*; then they tranſported it to *Hadrianople*, and laſtly to *Conſtantinople*. In which imperiall Citty is now his Court or pallace, three myles in compaſſe, wholy encloſed with a ſtrong wall, and ſcituated the pleaſanteſt of any pallace on the face of the earth, termed by them, the *Seraglio*. Within the encloſure of this wall are many pleaſaunt parkes, ſweet fountaynes, ſumptuous Arbours, and innumerable lodgings richly built, eſpecially thoſe wherein the great Turke himſelfe reſideth. Within this incloſure likewiſe, are two other incloſed receptacles or lodgings for woemen; in the one are continually kept at leaſt 1500. dames, out of which are culled 150. for the dayly ſeruice of the Emperor, and thoſe are ſequeſtred into the other of the leſſer lodgings.

For his guard he mantayneth dayly 4000. footmen, by them ſtyled *Ianizars*, viz: ſlaues, by way of tribute haled in their infancies from the boſoms of their Chriſtian parents. Hee hath alwayes in Court likewiſe attendant on his perſon 1500. horſmen (beſides thoſe that ſerue vnder the *Beglerbegs*) and thoſe are deuided into foure claſſes or orders, viz. *Spazi*, *Vlufagi*, *Stelifiari* and *Caripici*, all payd out of his *Caſna*, or Exchequer. Beſides theſe Pretorian bands, he likewiſe mantayneth out of his Exchequer, not ſo fewe as 10000. Ianizers gariſoned, through all parts of his Empire, vnder ſeueral leaders, acknowledging no other Lord, ſoueraign, or mantainer, but the grand Seignior.

Moreouer, he hath another order of ſouldiery, tearmed *Timarots*, what they are, and howe maintayned, you haue heard before. So many as at this day are rayſed in Europ, are thoght ſufficient to entertayn 80000. horſemen: thoſe in *Aſia* or *Natolia* 50000. & thoſe wreſted from the crown of *Perſia* 40000. What are rayſed in *Syria*, and the adiacent regions of *Ægipt*, and

Digitized by Google

and *Africa*, haue not been eſtimated, but all theſe ſerue vnder their *Saniaks*, and they at the commands of their *Beglerbegs*, or *Colonels*.

The Court is commonly ſtyled by the *Capy*, that is; the port, wherein are many great Officers, by vs ſpoken of before, but thoſe whoſe ſeruices are only deſtinated to vſes within the *Seraglio*, are for the moſt part Eunuches, with their rable of vnder Eunuches. Without the *Seraglio*, are alſo diuers honourable Offices for the gouernment of the Empire, the chiefe whereof is their *Muſi* or Pope, who onely hath plenary power to interprete their Lawe and *Alcoron*. In the ſecond Ranke, are their *Caldeleſchers*, viz: chiefe Iuſtices, and they haue the hearing and deciding of all temporall ſuits betweene party and party. In auncient time they were but two, one in *Rumilia* or *Europe*, the other in *Natolia*: but *Selimus* the third, added a third equall in authority to the other two, ouer the prouinces of *Ægypt*, *Syria*, *Arabia*, and part of *Armenia*. Theſe chiefe Iudges haue iuriſdiction ouer all inferior Iuſtices in particular prouinces, and by them are nominated, but confirmed by the *Grand-ſeignior* himſelfe. After the *Cadeleſchers*, followe the Viceroy *Baſſaes* (Counſelours of eſtate) whoſe number is vncertayn; in old time 3. or 4. but of late nine. The preſident of theſe, the Turks terme vizeroy *Azem*, and in truth, it is a place of great dignity and authority in managing the affayres of the State, as the man with whome the *Grand-ſeignior* doeth onely communicate his waighteſt intentions, and ſecreteſt deliberations.

In the next place appeare the *Beglerbegs* (maſters *del Campo*) the chiefe whereof, is hee that is termed of *Romania* or *Græcia*: The ſecond is the *Beglerbeg* of *Anotalia* or *Aſia*. The third, is the *Denizi Beglerbeg*, that is to ſay; the Lord high Admirall. And theſe three *Beglerbegs*, haue equall place and authority with the fourmer *Baſſaes* in the *Diuano*, or place of publique Audience.

Before the laſt war of *Perſia*, this Empire was vndergouerned by 40. *Beglerbegs*, who like wiſe had vnder them, 270. *Saniaks*, but ſince thoſe times this number, hath been much augmented, viz: in *Europe* reſided 7. In *Affricke* 4. In *Aſia* 29.

The Turkish Arsenals for shipping are foure; the first is at *Pera*, and contayneth 33. docks or mansions for so many Gallies: The second is *Gallipolis*, and contayneth 20. both vnder the charge of the high Admiral and his seruitors. The third, is at *Suez*, vpon the red sea, containing 25. mansions, & the fourth and last, at *Balsara* in the Persian gulfe, consisting of fifteene gallies, and these two last vnder the charges of the *Beglerbegs* of *Balsara* and *Cairo*.

His yearly reuenue, without accounting his Timaris, is estimated at 15. millions of duckats.

In the time of *Selimus*, were reckoned one million and 333. thousand christian soules to liue within his dominions, not accounting those that enioyed freedome of conscience by priuiledge, nor those that then were subiect to the *Ægiptian Sultan* whom the said *Selimus* vanquished.

The Iewes likewise liue dispersed ouer his whole dominions, in such infinite numbers, that scarce no towne nor village, but is very populously repleniſhed with their families, speaking diuers languages, and vsing the trade of Marchandize in royall and rich fashion. Thus to my power, haue I laide out the portraiture of this mighty, tyranicall, irreligious, and bloudy Empire, which as it began by the sworde, and propagated by the sword, so let all Christians henceforth pray, that by the sword it may fall, & lastly vanish into nothing, as of nothing (to speak of) it took Originall.

The kingdome of Persia.

PErsia, and the Persian glory hath bin often obscured, first by the *Arabian* (who to bury in obliuion the memory of their former reputation, enacted by law, that they shoulde no more be called *Persians*, but *Saracens*; then by the *Tartarians* led by *Chingis*, & lastly by *Tamerlan* and his followers. But not long before our times by the vertue of *Ismael Sophy* (of whose Originall and fortunes, for the more better vnderstanding of the State and History of *Persia*, it shal not bee amisse to deuise) the kingdome regained his ancient splẽdor. When Mahumet, after the decease of his first wife (who adopted him her heyre) by her riches and his new superstition, had gotten him a name amongst the vulgar, hee maryed for his second wife, *Aissa* the daugh-

Digitized by Google

daughter of one *Abubacer*, a great rich man, and of high authority in those quarters. By this mans continuance, and the friendship of *Oman* and *Ottomar* his kinsmen, hee gathered together a great rabble of Arabians, & partly by faire means, and partly by colour of Religion hee became maister of many the bordering Townes: and also about the same time gaue *Fatime* his Daughter (by his first Wife) to *Haly* his cozin: & to him after his death, all his earthly substaunce, making him the head of his superstition, with the Title of *Caliph*. *Abubacer* by whose countenance *Mahumet* became gracious, taking in ill part the preferment of the young man, by the ayd of *Omar* and *Ottomar* (whose desires were in hope of succession) by reason of the old mans yeares, and for kindred sake, rather to see *Abubacer* then *Haly Caliph*, beganne onely to resist *Haly*, and to spoile him, and his Wife *Fatime*, of all the substaunce which was left him by his Vncle. *Abubacer* dyed: *Omar* and *Ottomar* succeeded. *Omar* was slaine by a slaue; *Ottomar* in a priuate quarrell: after whose death *Haly* succeeded. Against him rose *Manie*, who accusing him as accessary to the death of *Ottomar* his Lord, caused him to be slaine neere *Caffa*, a City within two dayes iourney of *Babylon*, where likewise he lieth buried. The place is called to this day *Massadell*, that is; the house of *Haly*. After his decease the inhabitants of *Caffa* proclaimed *Ossan*, the son of *Fatima* Caliph; but him likewise *Many* resisted, and slew by poyson. Then was hee absolute *Caliph*, and after him his sonne *Iazit*. *Ossan* left behinde him twelue sons one whereof was called *Mahumet Mahadin*. The *Moores* say, he neuer died, but that hee shall returne againe to conuert the world; and therefore they keepe alwayes ready in the *Mosque* of *Massadella*, a horse gallantly furnished, where, in their foppery they affirme, that this worlds conuersion shal first begins. Vpon these differents of *Haly*, *Abubacer*, *Omar*, *Ottomar*, and *Manie*, haue mighty factions of armes and opinions arisen amongest the sectaries of this new superstition. The *Persians* labor to proue *Haly* true *Caliph*, by the last Will of Mahumet; the *Arabians* stande as stiffely to the three first. When from the yeare of our Lorde God 1258. to the yeare, 1363. the *Moores* had no *Caliph* (*Mustapha Muzbala* the last

Caliph, being slaine by *Alcu* King of the *Tartarians*) a certaine Nobleman in *Persia*, named *Sophi*, Lord of *Ardenell*, deriuing his pedigree from *Haly*, by *Musa Ceresin* his nephew, & one of the twelue sonnes of *Ossan* (in memory of whom, hee altered the forme of the Turbant) by his vertue and valour, woon great credit and estimation to his new faction.

To him succeeded *Adar* the son of *Guine*, to whom *Assembeg* a powerful Prince in *Siria* and *Persia*, gaue his daughter in marriage. But his son *Iacob-beg*, fearing the power and estimation of *Adar*, caused him to be slaine, and deliuered his two sons *Ismael* and *Soliman*, to his Captaine *Amanzar*, willing him to cast thē in prison in *Zaliga*, a castle in the mountains: but *Amanzar* detesting the tirrany of his Lord, conueyed the children to his owne house, and brought them vp like Gentlemen amongst his owne sonnes; and falling sicke of a deadly disease, forecasting what might happen after his disease, gaue them horses and money, willing them to flye, and to betake themselues to their mothers house and tuition. *Ismael* the eldest was no sooner returnd to his mothers place, but he vowed reuenge for his fathers death, and after some fortunate expeditions, tooke vppon him the cause and protection of the followers of *Haly*, from whom he deriued his Pedigree. He made the turbant higher, and sent Ambassadors to all the Orientall Mahumetans, to exhort them to vnity in Religion & cognisances. By these means and fortune of his armes, he became a terror to the East, and slew *Ossan* then vsurper of the *Persian* State, with his ten brethren, except *Marabeg*, who saued himselfe, and fled to *Soliman*, the first Emperour of the Turkes, imploring his ayd. This *Ismaell* at the lake *Vay*, ouerthrew with a great slaughter the Prince of the *Tartars*, *Zagatai*, and in heate of his victory had passed the Riuer *Abbian*, if his Astrologian, in whom he greatly trusted, had not foretold him, that his passage should be prosperous, but his returne vnfortunate. He left to his sonnes a most spacious Empire, bounded with the *Caspian* sea, the *Persian* Gulfe, the lake *Sioc*, the Riuers *Tygris* and *Oxus*, and the kingdom of *Cambaia*, which Prouinces containe more then twenty degrees from East to West, and eighteene from North to South. And although these king-

Digitized by Google

kingdomes lying within these bounds held not immediatly of the crown of Persia, yet all acknowledged the *Persyan* for their soueraign Prince, that is, the kings of *Matam*, *Patam*, *Guadell*, & *Ormus*. The *Georgians* did follow their fortunes; so did *Media*, nowe called *Siruan*, *Dierbechia*, once *Mesopotamia*; *Cusistan* the inhabitation of the *Susiani*; *Farsistan* the county of the *Persyans*; *Strana* once *Hircania*; *Parthia* at this day called *Arac*; *Caramania* now *Chermain*; *Sigestan*, *Carassa*, *Sablestan*, & *Istigia*, whose auncient names were *Drangia*, *Bactria*, *Parapamisus*, *Margiana*. Of these Regions, those which lye neareſt to the *Persian* sea, are most plentifull, by reason of the Riuers euery where dispersed thorough the whole Land. Amongst these riuers, the most famous is *Bindimir*, to whose waters the inhabitants are much beholding, conueying it by trenches, & other inuentions, into their groundes, to their great ease and commodity. The prouinces lying vppon the *Caspian* sea, for their riuers and temperature, do likewise participate of the said firtility, specially all those quarters which are watered with the Riuer *Puly-Malon*, falling into the lake *Burgian*: the residue of the prouince is dry; by reason whereof, towns and villages are seldom seen in those places, vnlesse it be by some springs or waters side.

The most ample and magnificent citties of *Persya*, are *Istigias* the chiefe seat of *Bactria*, thought to be one of the pleasauntest citties of the East. *Indion*, the chiefe citty of *Margiana*, scituated in so fat and fertil a teritory, that therfore *Antiocus Soter* caused it to be walled about. *Candahar*, the chiefe seate of *Parapamisus* famous for the trafficke of *India* & *Cathaio*, whither the merchants of those countries do resort. *Eri*, the chiefe citty of *Aria*, so abounding with Roses, that therof it shoulde seeme to take the name. *Barbarus* sayth, it is of thirteen myles compasse. *Ispaa* the chiefe seate of *Parthia*, so spacious for the circuite thereof, that the *Persyans* hyperbolically terme it, the *Halfe World*. *Chirmaine* is the chiefe seat of *Caramania*, renowned for the excellent Cloth of gold and siluer wrought therein. *Eor* is a noble citty, and so is *Custra* of *Susyana*. But all these for beauty and magnificence may bow and bend to *Siras*, seated vpon the riuer *Bindimire*.

It.

Digitized by Google

It was once the chiefe ſeat of *Perſia*, and as ſome thinke, called *Perſepolis*. *Alexander* the great, burnt it to the ground, at the intreaty of his Concubine; but afterward being aſhamed of ſo vile an action, cauſed it to be re-edified againe. It is not at this time ſo great as in times paſt, yet it is thought to bee one of the greateſt Cities in all the Orient, with his ſuburbs, which are in compaſſe twenty miles. It is a Prouerbe among the *Perſians*; *Quando Suars erat Siras, tunc Cairus erat eius Pagus*; yet they account it not very ancient, neyther are they of their opinions, who will have it the head of *Perſia*. *Tauris* and *Casbin* are moſt famous Cities, and beſides their magnificence, they may glory, that in them the Kings of *Perſia* keep their Courts.

Gouernment. The forme of Gouernement of this Nation, is not like the Gouernement of any other Mahumetane people; neyther is there to be ſeen the like policy in any place in the whol Eaſt, as amongſt the *Perſians*. All the reſt hate Nobility, and depending vpon the faith and ſeruice of ſlaues, doo either murder their brethren, or put out their eyes. But amongeſt this people, Nobility is honoured. The King entreateth his Bretheren kindly and magnificently, and they allow in their dominions many Noble, rich, and mighty Barons; of which ſort there is not one to be found through the whole *Ottoman* dominions. They likewiſe grace Gentility, and highly eſteeme their ſeruice on horſebacke: they delight in Muſicke and Learning, they ſtudy Poeſie, and therein become excellent. They giue their minds to Aſtrologie: all which good partes, the Turkes do vtterly reiect and deſpiſe. Merchandize and Mechanicall trades are fauoured in *Perſia*, and in all kinde of ciuility and curteſie excell the *Turkiſh*.

The ſecuritie of this ſtate conſiſteth rather in proweſſe then numbers; they maintain three ſorts of Soldiers: one ſort the King keepeth in continuall pay, and alwayes about his owne perſon. The ſecond is the *Timarots* (for this Kingdome likewiſe as dooth the Turke, in lieu of wages, allotteth certaine quantities of Land to great numbers of horſmen.) The third are *Auxiliares*, which ſerue for pay, and thoſe are onely *Georgians* and *Tartarians*. To ſpeake of the two firſt (the eſſentiall

ſinnewes

Digitized by Google

sinnewes of this King and Kingdome) they are all horsemen. For where Princes relye onely on the valour of their Gentry, there is litle regard had of the footmans seruice; the like reason may be giuen for their want of shipping. For although on the one side lyeth the *Caspian*, and on another, the *Persian* Gulfes, yet to this day were they neuer owners of any warlike shipping. If they chance to sayle vpon the *Caspian* (a sea 800 miles long, and 600. broade) they dare not venter into the maine, but houering by the shore, timerously saile from one place to another. Of the *Persian* Sea, the Portingalles are Lords.

It aboundeth in mettall of excellent fine temper, especially, in the Prouince of *Cazan*. They had not the vse of Artillerie, neither the Art of defending, besiedging, assaulting, mining or intrenching of fortresses, and all because they made no account of the vse of footmen, to whom these seruices doo properly belong, as it doth to horsemen, to fight in plaine and open fielde. But at this day, being continually beaten, by the scourge of the Turkish Armes, they haue by little and little drawne in some Christians amongst them, and amended their errors, to the great greefe and dishonour of the Turkish forces. Besides these wants, they were infected with other more greeuous mischiefes, and those were ciuill dissentions arising of the greatnesse and disloyalty of their Sultans, with the length of iourneyes, & the scarsity of Nauigable Riuers. And those Riuers which they haue, are not in vse with forraine nations; or else so little, that small ease ariseth thereby, for that they fall into the *Caspian* or *Persian* Seas. The Inland regions are sandy, and vtterly destitute of water; How can then the forces of that Land make any commodious or speedy Randiuou, when halfe the land is dry and barren, in so waste a tract, not one riuer, seruing for Nauigable transportation, as doth the *Loir* in *France*; *Po* in *Italy*; *Vistula* in *Poland*; *Schield* in *Flanders*, and such like in other Kingdomes?

There are also many Deserts, and many mountains disioyning the prouinces farre asunder. Heerin it resembleth *Spain*, where for want of Nauigable riuers (except towards the seacoast) trafficke is little vsed, and mountains and prouinces lie vnma-

Digitized by Google

vnmanured for ſcarſity of moiſture. But Nature vnwilling that humaine life ſhould want any eaſement, hath ſo prouided for mutual commerce in theſe ſandy and barren places, that thorough the labour of Camels, the want of Nauigation is richly recompenced throughout *Perſia*, and the bordering contries. Theſe Beaſts carry wonderous burdens, and wil longer continue then either horſe or Mule. They will trauell laden with a thouſand pound weight, and will ſo continue forty dayes & vpward. In ſterile and deep ſandy countries (ſuch as are *Libia*, *Arabia* and *Perſia*) they drinke but once euery fift day, and if extremity enforce, they will endure the want of water ten or twelue. When their burdens are off, a little graſſe, thorns, or leaues of trees will ſuffice them. There is no liuing thing leſſe chargeable, and more laborious, certainly, ordained of nature a fit creature for thoſe ſandy and deepe places of *Aſia* and *Affricke*, wherein euen man him-ſelfe, feeleth the want of foode and water. Of theſe, there are three ſorts, vppon the leſſer, men trauell; the middle ſort, haue bunches on their backes, fit for carrying of Merchandize; the greater & ſtronger are thoſe, which carry burdens of one thouſand pounde waight.

Forces. What numbers of Horſemen this King is able to leuie, was manifeſted in the warres betweene *Selim* the firſt, and *Iſmael*: betweene *Iſmael* and *Soliman*; and betweene *Codabanda* and *Amurath*. Not one of them brought aboue thirtie thouſande horſe into the field, but ſo throughly furniſhed that they had little cauſe to feare greater numbers. The richer and abler ſort arme themſelues after the maner of our men at armes; the reſidue, being better then the third part of their Caualry, content themſelues with a ſcull, a Iacke, and a Semitur. They vſe the Lance and the Bow indifferently.

Riches. Touching their riches, the common opinion is, that in the dayes of king *Tamas*, the yearely Reuennewes amounted to foure or fiue millions of Gold, who by a ſodaine doubling of the value of his Coin, raiſed it to eight, and accordingly made paiment to his Soldans and ſoldiers. But in theſe dayes by the conqueſt of the great Turke, they are much diminiſhed, and it is thought, that they amount to little more then two millions; but

Digitized by Google

but the feodary Lands, Townes and Villages (which are very many) supply a great part of the pay due to the companies of horsemen aboue mentioned.

Towards the East, bordereth the *Mogor*, vpon the North the *Zagatai*. Towards the West, the Turk possesseth a large frontire; vpon the south lieth *Ormus*, and therein the *Portugalles*. With the *Mogors* he is little troubled: for as *Spaine* & *France* by reason of the narrow straights, and difficult passages ouer the mountaines, cannot easily conuey necessaries (the life of an army) to infest one another. So, towardes the frontiers of *India* and *Cambaia* (Prouinces belonging to the *Mogors*) high mountaines and vast Deserts, keepe good peace betweene these two Princes: yet infest they one another on the borders of *Cabull* and *Sablestan*, of which certaine Lords of the *Mogors* haue gotten the dominion. Hee commeth not neere the borders of the great *Cham*, betweene whom certayne pettie Princes, and impassable Desarts do oppose themselues. It seemeth, that toward the *Zagatai* he standeth content with those bounds which the Riuer *Oxus* hath laide out: for hee neuer durst passe it; and when *Zaba* King of the *Zagatai* had passed it, he was ouerthrown with much slaughter by *Ismael*. So was *Cyrus* by *Tomiris*, who slew him and all his hoast. The Turke is a borderer all alongst the Westerne coast of this whol Empire, euen from the *Caspian* Sea, to the gulfe *Sanra*, a tract almost of 15. degrees. Hee hath no enemy so daungerous, nor more to be feared, nor at whose hands in all conflicts (for the most part) he hath receiued greater losse. *Mahumet* the second ouerthrew *Vssanchan*, and tooke from *Dauid* his vassall & confederate the Empire of *Trapezond*. *Selim* the first did ouerthrow *Ismael* in *Campania*, and tooke from him *Caramit*, *Orfa*, *Merdis*, and all the territory which they call *Alech*. *Solyman* put *Tamas* to flight, and tooke from him *Babylon* and all *Mesopotamia*. In our dayes *Amurath* woon whatsoeuer lieth betweene *Derbent* and *Tauris*, wherein is comprehended *Georgia* and *Sirwan*, and by building of fortresses in *Teflis*, *Samachia*, and *Erres*, assured the passages of *Chars*, *Tomanis* and *Lori*. He is Lord of all that lieth betweene *Erzirum* and *Orontes*, a riuer three dayes iourny beyond *Tauris*. In this City he cau-

Borderers.

Digitized by Google

sed a Citadell to be built, not minding to leaue it, as did *Selim* and *Soliman*, but thereby as with a curbe to bridle and keepe it. In this warre which lasted from the yeare, 1591. to 1597. the Turkes altered their forme of warefare: for whereas they were wont to lay their whole hopes vpon their numbers, the valour of their horsemen and footmen, their store of artillery, and warlike furniture, scorning to be cooped vp in Castles & fortresses, for the most part spoyling and burning whatsoeuer they ouercame, or became Lords of, and taking as little care to keepe what they had conquered (supposing it no good policy to fortifie Castles, or strengthen townes, by weakening of their companies) in these wars, to auoyd the inconueniences whereinto *Selim* and *Soliman* were plunged, they were glad to builde strong places, vpon commodious passages and Citadels in the cheefest townes, furnishing them with good Garrisons, and great store of Artillery. This warre cost them very deare: for by surprises, by famine and extreamities of weather, infinite thousands perished, yet alwayes to the losse of the *Persian*, or his confederates. In the field, the *Persian* is far inferior to the Turk, in numbers and goodnes of footmen, in Ordinance, in all sorts of warlicke furniture, and (the cheefest stay of a State) in obedience of subiects. Notwithstanding if *Selim*, *Soliman*, or *Amurath*, had not bin allured either by rebellion, or intestine discordes, they durst not haue medled with this warre. *Selim* was called into the ayde of *Mara-beg* the son of *Ossan*, a mighty Prince in *Persia*. *Soliman* came in ayde of *Elcaso*, the brother of *Tamas*, hatefull to his soueraign for his ambition and aspiring humour, and in the end abused the credit and good wil of the people towarde *Elcaso*, to the furtherance of his owne designments. *Amurath* neuer tooke weapon in hand against this people, before he vnderstood by the letters of *Mustapha Bassa* of *Van*, that all Persia was in vproare about the election of a newe Prince, thereby certifying him that some had chosen *Ismael*, some *Ainer* (both sonnes of *Tamas*) and that *Periacoconu* slaying her owne brother *Ismael*, and betraying *Ainer*, had procured the kingdom to *Mahumet Codobanda*. After this mischeefe, fell those fatall iarres, betwixt *Codobanda* and his sonne, and betwixt the *Turcoman* nation (a

Digitized by Google

nigh-

mighty family in Perſia) & the king. A faction no leſſe diſaſterous to the State of Perſia, then the war of Turky. Againſt the *Portugals* of *Ormus*, for want of ſea-forces he ſtirreth not, and againe for want of land forces the Portugals are not able to moleſt his vpland Countries. *Tamas* being counſeld to make a voyage againſt *Ormus*, asked what commodities the Iſlande brought forth, whether corn, cattle, fruit, or what other good thing? When it was anſwered that the ſoyle was vtterly barren and deſtitute of all prouiſion, but excellent wel ſeated for trafficke and nauigation: ſcoffing at the motion, he replyed: that of this kind of reuennew he had releaſed vnto his people aboue ninety thouſand *Tomana*.

The fift Booke.

Of India, commonly called Aſiatica.

INdia is a ſpacious portion of *Aſia*, the moſt noble part of the worlde, and far exceeding any portion comprehended vnder one name, *Tartary* onely excepted. The Region is moſt wholeſom to inhabit by the fauour of the Weſterne winds, but in regard of it's ſpaciouſnes, ſubiect to diuers temperatures; as in ſome places, to heate, viz: towardes the Æquator; in ſome, to temperateneſſe, or rather to colde, as towarde the North: but generally, for goodneſſe of ſcituation, for temperature, health, and fertility, it is farre better then any other Countrey. Twice in the yeare it yeeldeth fruite, and therefore neuer feeleth famine, nor ſcarſity, the benefit whereof is furthered by the ouer-flowing of the Riuers, as in Ægypt: yet hath it it's Deſarts, ſcorching Sands, places infeſted with wilde Beaſts, and vnpeopled by reaſon of impenetrate woods. And although the Region wanteth Wheate, yet aboundeth it with diuers ſortes of fruites, of Pulſes, of Barley, and Rice. Vines they haue none, but rare, and therefore brewe their beuerage of Barly and Rice. Fruite trees, and trees fit to make linnen,

Digitized by Google

linnen cloath of, they haue in abundance, and out of the Palm they produce Wine, Vineger, and fruite to eate. The particular of their Silkes, Bombasies, Elephants, Serpents, Spices, Stones, and diuers famous Riuers being well knowne, I will not stande to recite. The natures and fashions of the inhabitants breefely, I will, who being diuersly dispersed into diuers regions and principalities, do diuersly differ in language, visage, habit, manners, and religion.

The foure principall nations that inhabit this tract, are the *Indians*, viz: the Natiues, and they for the most part are *Gentiles*.

The second, are the *Iewes*, and they are dispersed heere, as elsewhere ouer the whole face of the earth.

The third, are the *Mahumetans*, whereof some are *Persians*, and some *Scythians*, now called *Mogors*, liuing in the vpland Countreyes. The fourth, are the *Moores* or *Arabians*, who within these two hundred yeares, vsurping vpon the Marit im places of the Countrey, built them places and Cities verie fit for Trafficke, and expulsed the Natiues into the more Inland Countries.

And now of late, besides those auncient Christians, which Sir *Thomas* conuerted, there reside many *Portugals* and naturals, who are daily conuerted by the industry of the said *Portugals*, to the Christian beleefe.

The great Mogor.

It hath been alwayes beleeued, that the Territorie lying betweene *Ganges*, and the Riuer *Indus*, hath euermore bin subiect to great and mighrie Monarchs. For (to be silent in matter of more ancient memory) about the yeare of our Lord, 1300. there raigned in the kingdom of *Delos* an *Arabian* Prince, of the sect of Mahumet, named *Sanasaradin* (as *Iohn Barros* reporteth) of so great power and strength, that he enterprised the conquest of *Asya*. Vpon which resolution forsaking these regions, in which *Indus* and *Ganges* take their beginnings, with a mighty army, by little and little he subdued those Princes & people which did oppose against him, vntill he pierced to the bounds of *Canara*, where it beginneth at the riuer *Bate* about *Chaul*, and stretcheth betweene *Bate*, and the Gulfe of *Bengala*

Digitized by Google

la to *Cape Comerine*. When he had woon ſo large and famous a territory, reſoluing to returne to *Delos*, hee left *Abdeſſa* his Lieutenant in *Canora*. This man encouraged by the victories of his maiſter, and preſuming vppon his owne good fortune, bereaued the *Gentiles* of the greater part of *Canora*; and hauing gathered a moſt mighty and populous army compacted of Gentiles, Mahumetans, and Chriſtians, after he had raigned 20. yeares, he died in the hight of his proſperity, leauing his ſonne *Mamudza* behind him: whom the king graced with his fathers regency, vpon condition to pay him a yearely tribute: which paiment the young man neither regarded, nor ſhewed himſelfe loyall to his ſoueraigne in many things. It happened that *Sanoſaradin* dying in the war which he made againſt *Perſia*, left behind him a ſonne of ſo abiect and baſe a ſpirit, that *Mamudza* heereupon tooke courage to intitle himſelfe King of *Canora*, calling the country *Decan*, & the people *Decainai*, that is; illegitimate. After this, he erected eighteen Captaine-ſhips, and deuided his dominion among them, aſſigning to euery one his limits, onely with this penalty, to find alwayes in a readineſſe, a certaine number of footmen and horſſemen. To preuent future rebellion he choſe theſe Captaines, not out of the orders of his Nobility, but frō the number of his ſlaues. Nay more then this (to be aſſured of their loyalty) hee commanded that euery one of them ſhould builde him a houſe in his royall Citty *Bidar*, in which their children ſhould remain: and that once euery yeare at the leaſt, they ſhould make their appearance in his Court.

But becauſe all authority, which is not aſwell vnderproped with its proper vertues, as grounded vppon the affections of the people, is of ſmal continuance; ſo hapned it to this prince, for his ſlaues and vaſſals hauing ſoueraigne authority put into their handes, made no more account of him then of a Cipher, ſtripping him poore Prince without reſpect of reuerence of al his dominions, ſauing his chiefe citty *Bidar*, with the territory adioyning. For euery one, of a Lieutenant, becam a vſurper of thoſe ſtates which were committed to his truſt, the mightier alwayes oppreſſing the weaker: ſo that al in the end became a prey to a few. Two of them are famous at this day: the one, ſtret-

Digitized by Google

ſtretching his dominion to the borders of *Cambaia*: the other to the skirts of *Narſynga*; the firſt called by the *Portugalles*, *Niſſamalucco*, the other *Idalcan*, either of them being ſo puiſſant, that in the yeare 1571. *Idalcan* belegerd *Goa* with an army of 35000. horſe, threeſcore thouſand Elephants, and twoe hundred and fifty peeces of Ordnance. *Niſſamalucco* beſieged *Chaul* with leſſe forces, but better fortune: For though he did not force it, yet he brought it to a hard pinch, with the ſlaughter of 12000. Moores. In thoſe countries in which *Sanaſoradin* beganne his Empire, not aboue 70. yeares agone, a great Prince (whome the Eaſt people call the great *Mogor*, in the ſame ſence as we call the *Great Turke*) layd the foundation of a mighty Empire: for as the king of *Biarma* in our times greatly hazarded the States of *Pegu* and *Siam*, and the bordering nations; euen ſo the *Mogor* turned topſy turuy the kingdoms lying on this ſide the riuer *Ganges*. The receiued opinion is, that they tooke their originall from *Tartaria*, and that they came from that coaſt, where the auncient *Meſſageta* (a people accounted inuincible in armes) did once inhabit, and liuing as it were lawleſſe, and vnder no manner of gouerement, by inuading of their neighbours, procured vnto themſelues the ſoueraignty of ſpacious kingdomes. By the riuer *Oxus* they border vpon the *Perſians*, and are at continual enmity with them, ſometime for religion, and ſometime for enlargement of the bounds of their Empire. The chiefe citty is *Shamarcand*, from whence came *Tamerlan*, & of whoſe bloud theſe *Mogor* princes do boaſt that they are deſcended. The predeceſſor of him (who is nowe prince of the *Mogors*) was very famous in the Eaſt; for in the yeare 1536. being ſolicited by king *Mandao* of the North (from whome *Badurius* king of *Cambaia* had taken his kingdome) to ayd him againſt the *Cambaian*, hee is reported to haue broght with him an infinit number of ſoldiers, which wee may coniecture out of that which *Maffeus* writeth of the army of the ſayde king *Badurius*: to wit, that this king had vnder his ſtandard, 100. and fifty thouſand horſe, whereof 35000. were barbed. The number of footemen was fiue hundred thouſand. Amongſt theſe were fifteene thouſand forren ſouldiours, and foureſcore Chriſtians *French*, and *Portugalles*.

Digitized by Google

At which, by what meanes, or by what way, they ſhould come thither, I doe not a little wonder. Their Galleon (which they called *Dobriga*) ſuffred ſhippe-wracke in the channell of *Cambaia*.

I know, that if theſe preparations and prouiſions for warre, be compared with our forces of Chriſtendome, they will hardly be taken for true: but we haue already declared the cauſes, why the princes of the Eaſt and South, may gather greater Armies then we can, and conſequently that thoſe thinges which are ſpoken of their incredible ſtore, and wonderfull prouiſion of furniture, may bee anſwerable to their leules and proportions. And as they are able to leuy millions of men (for arming and for feeding them, they take no great care;) ſo likewiſe do the prouinces affoord great plenty of prouiſion, and an inestimable multitude of their vſual warlike engines: for they carry nothing with them ſaue that which is neceſſary and needfull for ſeruice: Wines, cates, and ſuch like, which cannot but with great expence, labour and trouble, be carryed along with armies, are by theſe men wholy omitted and vtterly reiected. All their thoughts tend to warlike prouiſion, as to get Braſſe, Yron, Steele, and Tinne, to forge Pieces, and caſt great Ordinance; yron and lead to make bullets, yron and ſteele to temper cymitars; Oxen and Elephants to drawe their Artillery; grayne to nouriſh their bodyes; mettalles to arme them, and treaſure to conſerue them.

They are all tyrants, and to preſerue their eſtate, and induce ſubmiſſiue awednes, they hold hard handes ouer the comminalty, committing all gouernment into the hands of ſlaues and ſouldiers. And to make theſe men faithfull and loyal, they ordayne them Lords of all things, committing vnto their truſt, Townes, Caſtles, and expeditions of great waight: but the expectation of the prince is often deceiued by the rebellion of theſe vaſſals, for ſometimes they vſurpe whole prouinces, and impoſe vpon the people all kind of iniuries. But let good princes thinke it as neceſſary to builde their ſafety on the loue of theyr ſubiects, as vpon the force of their ſouldiers. Feare admitteth no ſecurity, much leſſe perpetuity: and therfore theſe tyrants expecting no ſuerty at the hands of their ſubiects, truſt

Digitized by Google

wholy vpon their men of warre, flattering them with promiſe of liberty, and beſtowing vpon them the goods of their Subiects, as rewardes of their ſeruice. So with vs, the Turke ſtrengthneth his ſtate with *Ianizars*, and as he coueteth to be beloued and fauoured of them (to that end beſtowing vppon them the riches and honours of the Empire) ſo they acknowledge no other Lord and mayſter, I may very well ſay, father and protector. And ſo many of the *Malaber* princes vſing & accounting the Commons but as beaſtes, lay all their hopes and fortunes on the *Nairs*: the kings of *Ormus*, *Cambaia*, *Decan*, and *Achan*, lay all vpon the ſhoulders of theſe ſlaues. In a word as a lawful and iuſt prince hath a great regard and ſinguler care to haue the liking and loue of his people, by which being garded and inuironed (as with a ſtrong rampire) hee is able to withſtand al attempts; ſo contrariwiſe, tyrants knowing themſelues hatefull to their ſubiects, employ their whole ſtudy how to win the fauour of their ſoldiers and ſlaues, thereby to repreſſe innouations at home, & inuaſions from abroad. Seeing therefore the ſafety and foundation of their greatneſſe is built on the entertainment of their ſouldiers, as their *Nairs*, their *Ianizars*, free or bound, ſtrangers, or ſubiects, yea, whatſoeuer they bee, it muſt needes follow, that onely actions of war may be the end and ſcope of their cogitations, as likewiſe that they be very prodigall to keepe their eſtates very well furniſhed and appointed with ſoldiers and prouiſions. And theſe reaſons I take to be a ſufficient inducement to beleeue the reports of this King of *Cambaia*, and theſe other barbarous *Indian* Princes. For (beſides that I ſpake of before) it is reported that with this army did march a thouſande peeces of Ordinance, among which were foure Baſilisks, euery one drawne with an hundred yoake of Oxen: 500. Wagons laden with Gun-powder and Bullets, 200. armed Elephants. 500. Cheſts full of Gold and ſiluer, to pay ſouldiers wages; beſides manie Princes and Petty-Lords, with their Followers, Merchantes, Victuallers, Attificers, and their Seruants, numberleſſe. Notwithſtanding this his incredible preparation, he was twice ouerthrowne by *Marhumedio*: once, in the Territory of the Citty of *Doce*, and another time at *Mandao*, from whence diſguiſing

Digitized by Google

disguising his apparrell to saue his life, hee fled to *Diu*. Being out of danger and feare, he sent Ambassadors to *Soliman*, with a present esteemed worth, 600000. Crownes, desiring his aid in these wars. But afterward, waighing in his mind, that these affaires required speedier succors, he contracted a league with those *Portugals* which were neareſt adioyning, to make them his friends and partners of the Warre: the composition was, that he should permit them to builde a Castle in the Islande of *Diu*.

Now to speak of *Marhumedius*, his fortunes were not much vnlike to those of *Tamerlan*: for as this Prince brought terror and feare vpon the inhabitants of *Persia* and *Asia*; so did that no lesse innouation & trouble vpon *India* and the *Orient*: This defeated in battell *Baiazet* Emperor of Turks, that ouerthrew *Badurius* king of *Cambaia*, and his army farre greater then his owne: Both of them had the sirname of great. When the *Mogors* vnderstood of the riches of *India*, and the firtility therof, they neuer ceased by a continual course of victory their armes & inuasions, til they had made themselues lords of all the prouinces, lying between *Caucasus* and the sea, *Ganges*, & the riuer *Indus*. In this tract are contained 47. kingdomes. For *Adabar* the succeſſor of *Marhumedius* won *Madabar*, with the better part of *Cambaia*. Of what goodly consequence this prouince is, may be imagined by the famous cities of *Madabar Campana* (so called for scituation vpon the top of a high hill rising in the midst of a spacious plain) & *Cambaia* (a citty consisting of 100. & 30000. houses) as likewise by the populous hoast of K. *Badurius*, his warlicke prouision for such an army, and plenty of graine to sustaine such multitudes. I assure you, the worlde affoordes not a soyle for all necessaries for the life of man (as Rice, Corn, Pulse, Sugar, Oxen, Sheepe, Pullen of all sorts, and silke) more richer or plentifull then this Prouince, wherein also there are reported to be sixty thousand Burroughs; which number certainly is very great and admirable. *Guicciardine* writeth, that in *Netherland*, within the Territory of the 17. Prouinces, are contained 208. walled Townes, and 150. Borroughes, enioying the rights and Priuiledges of Cities, and 6300. villages, hauing parish Churches. In *Naples* are 1800.

Digitized by Google

of these, some are townes, some but Castles. In *Bohemia* are 780. townes, and 32000. villages. In *France* (as *Iohn Bodine* writeth) are 2700. borroughes, hauing parish Churches, besides those in *Burgundy*, which in those times were not numbred amongst the Townes of *France*. I write this, to induce a true and absolute iudgement of the power of any prouince, by the number of parishes (for I know that that ought to bee made according to their greatnesse) but yet their number maketh much to the purpose, as in both which, *Cambaia* may carry the credit and esteeme of a most spacious, populous, and puissant kingdome.

Acabar also conquered the rich kingdome of *Bengala*; so that a man may truely say, that in this part of the Orient there are three Emperors; one in *Cambaia*, the other in *Narsinga*, and the third in *Bengala*: whereof *Cambaia* and *Bengala* farre exceede all the other prouinces in firtility of soyle, and concourse of Merchantes, both riotously abounding in Sugar, Cotten-wooll, Cattle, Elephants, and Horsses: In *Bengala* also groweth long Pepper and Ginger. The first, is watered and cut as it were into two halfes, by the Riuer *Indus*, the other by *Ganges*, hauing two famous Mart-townes, *Satagan* & *Catagan*.

The great *Mogor* dooth likewise possesse the kingdomes of *Citor*, *Mandao*, and *Delly*, wherein he keepeth his Court. Hee hath infinite store of horses, Elephants, and Camels; as also all sorts of artillery and warlike furniture, by meanes whereof he is growne fearefull to the whole Inhabitants of the East. It is written of him, that he is able to bring into the field, 300000 horse, and that there are within his dominions, fifty thousand Elephants.

Some man perhaps will aske, how it commeth to passe that this prince (being so mighty, and his neighbors so naked, vnarmed and poore) doth not get into his possession the dominion of the rest of *India* and the *Orient*? In this as in the former vnlikelyhoods, the wifest man is soonest answered. There are many obstacles: one is, that as the spirit & body of man cannot endure in continuall trauell and motion (for that is onely proper to God and Nature:) so a continued and open passage

is

Digitized by Google

is not euermore giuen to the ambitious aprehenſions of kings and Princes. Great Empires ſeldome feare forraine inuaſions, yet oftentimes faint they vnder their owne waight. It is not deſtinied vnto great things to ſtande alwayes at the higheſt, much leſſe to increaſe: they haue their flood, but vppon a remedileſſe condition, that there follow an ebbe. They are lifted on high, but by the irreuocable decree of Nature, that a fall ſucceed: yea, and that themſelues by themſelues decline. The greater they are, the more ſubiect to mutability: the larger, the harder to hold and mannage: they moue but ſlowly, and of what effect celerity is in warre, who knoweth not? The greateſt conqueſt carrieth the greateſt enuy with it, and greateſt care to conſerue what is got, and yet not care, but long continuance perfecteth theſe actions: & while time paſſeth, the neighboring nations prouide (if not infeſt) for their owne ſafety, yea, moſt commonly by loſſe of time proceedeth the loſſe of victories opportunity. He that hath ouercome his enemie, ſtandeth oftentimes in feare of his friend, yea, of ſuch as haue beene fellowes and partners with him in all his fortunes: ſo that to ſecure himſelfe of theſe and ſuch like caſualties, he is conſtrained euen in the courſe of victory to ſounde the retrait, and ſurceaſe his proiects. Againe, continuall victory maketh leaders inſolent, ſouldiers mutinous, refuſing to paſſe forward, at the command of their generall, as it hapned to *Alexander* and *Lucullus*. Great enterpriſes euen brought to their wiſhed end, enrich the purſes of certaine priuate men, but leaue the Princes Coffers empty, who neuertheleſſe muſt be at the charge to maintaine continuall companies, and keep them in continuall pay; without which courſe, the caſhed ſouldier is euer ready to follow any faction whenſoeuer it ſhal be offered.

Moreouer, this numberleſſe army, which *Mirhamedius* led againſt the K. of *Cambaia*, did not only waſt the regions where through it paſſed and encamped, but likewiſe by deuouring al things that the face of the earth yeilded, bereaued it ſelf of the meanes, which nature in meaſure had afforded to euery creature to maintaine life by: and ſo it often hapneth, that thoſe armies which in apprehenſion ſeem inuincible for their huge-

Digitized by Google

neſſe, are moſt commonly ouerthrowne by famine, the forerunner of peſtilence. For proofe heereof, we haue ſeene the invndations of *Attila*, *Tamerlan*, and thoſe barbarous Nations ſtand on foote but a little ſpace, whereas the *Grecians Macedonians*, *Carthagenians*, *Romans*, *Spaniards*, and *Engliſh*, haue done great matters with mean armies. For things that are moderate, laſt and indure (as ſmall riuers) which what they cannot do in one yeare, in two or more they finally accompliſh; whereas immoderate and violent, are like to Torrents, making more noiſe and fury, then hurt or hinderance: violently comming, and violently againe carrying themſelues away. Therefore againſt ſuch mighty impreſſions, the ſureſt ſafetie is, to draw the war out in length, and only to ſtand vpon the defenſiue: for let ſuch Armies reſt aſſured, that they cannot ſo long hold out, but they will wauer, either for want of prouiſion, ſcarſity of coine, infection of the aire, or infirmities of their owne bodies. The other thing is, that proſperitie blindeth the winner, making him careleſſe; aduerſity ripeneth the looſer, and maketh him wary and induſtrious: ſo fortune chaunging her coppy, the affaires of the winner decline, and the good ſucceſſe of the looſer groweth euery day better then other. Beſides, conqueſts are not perfected but by proceſſe of time, and in proceſſe of time old age creepeth vpon the perſons of Princes, and how fit a craſie body, and a vigorous ſpirit nummed with olde age, is for the conſumation of a conquered eſtate, the liues of *Iulius Cæſar*, and *Charles* the fift may ſtande for examples.

Laſtly, to anſwere thoſe, who vnleſſe they be eye-witneſſes, will neuer be anſwered, let them know, that nothing ſo much hindereth the inuaſiue ambition of this Prince, as the nature of places. For *Caucaſus* ſtretching it ſelf into a thouſand branches in thoſe parts, incompaſſeth whole kingdoms, with ſome parcels thereof: by ſome it runneth by the ſides: to others, it is more defenſiue then any artificial rampire; ſomtime it wholy ſhutteth vp paſſages, ſometime it maketh them inacceſſible. Theſe difficulties are more iniurious to the *Mogor*, then to any other Prince, becauſe the ſtrength and ſinnewes of his forces, conſiſt in horſe; which as they are of great conſequence in

Campa-

Digitized by Google

Campania, ſo amongſt hilles and rockes they are of ſmall ſeruice. Of this qualitie are the frontiers of *Perſia*, and the kingdom of *Sableſtan*, on euerie ſide hemd in with that part of *Caucaſus*, which the *Graceans* call *Paropamiſo*. *Segeſtan* is likewiſe ſo inuironed, that the Riuer *Hamento* (were it not for ſerching out infinite windings and turnings through natural vallies) could hardly find paſſage to pay his tribute to the famous *Ganges*. In *Cambaia* it ſelfe, when the *Mogors* are of ſuch fearefull puiſſance, liue the *Resbuti*, not dreading them one whit by reaſon of the ſtrength of the Mountaines. Theſe *Resbuti* are the remainder of the Gentiles, that betooke themſelues to the mountaines betweene *Cambaia* and *Diu*, when the Mahumetans firſt entered theſe Countries; and ſince that day, by ſtrong hand they haue preſerued their liberty, infeſting often the plaine Country with their incurſions. Other prouinces they are vtterly barren, not onely wanting water, but all neceſſaries elſe: of this kind is *Dolcinda*, vppon the skirtes of *Cambaia*, through which it is impoſſible to lead an army. To theſe diſcommodities you may adde the loſſe of time, which Princes (being Lords of ample and ſpacious dominions) are conſtrained to make in their voyages. For the better parte of ſummer is ſpent before they can arriue at their *Rendeuous*, with their Horſes halfe deade thorough trauaile, and the Armie halfe in halfe in number and courage, diminiſhed; yea, Winter ouer-taketh them, commodious for their enemies, & diſaduantagious for them: for they muſt lye in the fielde and open aire among myre and froſts, their enemies vnder a warm roofe, and wholeſome harbor.

Whereupon, wiſe Princes, which haue been to make long Land-iourneyes, through diuers Prouinces of diuers natures, for feare of ſuch like diſcommodities, haue thought it beſt to prouide ſhipping, and to vſe the opportunity of Riuers or Sea, as did *Caſar Germanicus* in the warre of *Germany*, after he perceiued, that in the protracting of time (which was requiſite for the marching of his army) the greater part of his men and horſes were idle, conſumed by infirmities, labor, and the length of iournies. But the *Mogor* is vtterly deſtitute of this aduantage: vpō one ſide he hath no hauen, on another the Portugals

Digitized by Google

tugals are his iealous neighbors, who with two caſtles of great ſtrength, at *Diu* and *Damain*, haue ſhut vp the whole gulfe of the *Cambaian* ſea.

Finally, the puiſſance of their neighbors hath beene as great a controuler to their furious inuaſions, as any other naturall cauſe, viz: the king of *Barma*, who is nothing inferior in power and riches: for he is Lord of ſo many kingdomes, and of ſo fierce and warlike a people, and can bring ſuch ſwarmes into the field, that he is feareleſſe of any of his *Tartarian* neighbors. And as the *Mogor* ruleth far and wide betweene *Ganges* and *Indus*, ſo doeth this king betweene *Ganges* and *Siam*. As the one deuiſeth to offend, ſo by little and little the other waxeth wiſe to defend. For by nature man is more prone to prouide for his owne ſafety, then ready by wrong to oppreſſe others, being alwayes more carefull to conſerue, then forward to deſtroy. It cannot be expreſſed how full of ſubtilty, ſhifts, deuiſes, and induſtry man is to defend him and his: for hee v-ſeth for his owne ſafe-guarde, not that onely which is properly defenſiue; but euen that alſo which humane wiſedome hath inuented, or nature created any way offenſiue. Neither euer was there any inſtrument inuented for offence, but that the ſame hath been turned to defence: of which kind are Caſtles built of later times, and the deuiſes of moderne fortification; which by this Art, few ſouldiers haue reſiſted great armies, & a ſmall (place made tenable) hath waſted the forces and treaſure of a mighty Emperour, as well witneſſed the fortunes of 800. Portugals at *Demain* vpon the coaſt of *Cambaia*, who by this Art, ſcorned and deluded the whole forces and attempts of this mighty *Mogor*.

China.

IN times paſt, the kingdome of *China* hath beene far larger then now it is. For it appeareth by their Hiſtories (containing the Annalles of 2000. yeares and vpward) and by other of their manuſcript Chronicles written in their own language (whoſe fragments are yet to bee ſeene) that their kings were Lordes almoſt of all the ſea-coaſt of *Aſia*, from the ſtraight of *Anian*, to the kingdome of *Pegu*, the prouinces of *Meletai*, *Bacam*, *Calan*, *Boraga*, and other teritories ſcituated vpon the North-

Digitized by Google

North-side of *Pegu*; where their monuments, with their Epitaphs and deuises, are to bee seene at this day. For in all the foresaide regions, the reliques of their auncient ceremonies, (whereby the knowledge of the Mathematiques, as the diuision of the yeare into Moneths, the Zodiake into twelue signes, true testimonies of their Empiry (are taught by tradition. Neither is the time long, sithence all those kingdomes accounted the king of *China* for their soueraigne, sending their Ambassadors with presents to his court euery third yeare.

These Ambassadours ought to be foure atleast; for before they could ariue at their iourneyes end, some of them either by remoteneſſe of place, difficult accesse of audience, or delay in dispatch, could not but surely dye; those whose chance it was to scape, the *Chinois* in some set banquet would poyson, and erect vnto them stately toombes, with the inscription of theyr names, the place from whence they came, and, with the style of Ambassadors: thereby (say they) to commit to eternity the remembrance of the bounds of theyr Empyre. They enlarged their dominions no lesse vppon the Ocean, then vpon the continent. For they first of all, inuaded the Iles of the *Orient*; next vnto them, the *Giani*: then the *Molluccans* and *Moores*, and lastly, the *Portugalles* and *Castilians*; who holde them at this day. But none of these Nations were equall of power and magnificence to the *Chinois*: for besides the conquest of the bordering Iles (which in regard of theyr numbers, theyr spaciousneſſe and firtility, were of great reckoning) they became Lordes of the greatest part of all the inhabitable places in that vast *Archipelago*, euen to *Zeilan*, where they left their speech and carracters, as also they did the like vppon the opposite continent. Wee reade also in the papers of certayne Iesuites, that in one quarter of the Iland of Saynt *Laurence*, they found white people, which sayde, that they descended of the *Chinois*. They first discouered the *Moluccas*, gaue names vnto the spices, and planted Colonies in many of them: which to this present keepe theyr olde name, as *batta china à Maur*, *batta china*, *Mauri*: *batta* signifieth a towne, *batta china*, a towne of the *Chinois*. It is likewise thought that the inhabitants of *Iaua* descended from them; and to speake the trueth, there is

Digitized by Google

no great difference betweene their manner of liuing, cloathing, building, induſtry, trafficke, and manuell occupations: But after the ſhipwracke of foureſcore veſſels, and the loſſe of their people in the ſea of *Zeilan*, (comparing their profite with their loſſe) they reſolued to try no more ſuch hazardes, but to containe themſelues within their owne boundes. And to cauſe this edict to bee inuiolably obſerued, they enacted, that none there-after vppon paine of the loſſe of his heade, ſhould offer to ſayle into thoſe parts: the kinges them-ſelues did euer abſtaine from future inuaſions. For ſithence they enioy a very earthly Paradice, where Nature and Art are at ſtrife to conteut the inhabitants, where no good thing is wanting, but much ſuperfluous, and to ſpare, what mad men woulde conſume their bodies and treaſures, in getting thoſe things, which are more chargeable to get, then profitable to keepe? *Polibius* writeth, that vppon the ſame reaſons the olde *Carthagenians* forſooke part of thoſe thinges, which before they had conquered. The Romaines, after they had ſuffered a greeuous loſſe of their beſt veſſels in the ſecond Punicke war, in meere deſpayre bidde Nauigation adue; but afterwardes, perceiuing that they who were Commaunders of the Sea, were likely to prooue Lordes of the Lande, they built a new nauy, and at length, ſaw the ſucceſſe to aunſwere their lateſt opinions. Therefore can we not but aſcribe this reſolution of the *Chinois*, rather to good conſcience and aduiſedneſſe, then to wiſedome, or good pollicy.

When this ſurrender was reſolued in full counſell, they ſet the people whom they had vauquiſhed, free: yet ſome, of their good willes remayned feodaries, ſhaddowing their eſtates vnder the winges of their puiſſance, as the Kinges of *Corea*, *Lequi*, *Cauchinchina* and *Siam*. But notwithſtanding their retraite within their owne bounds, yet poſſeſſe they a dominion little leſſe then all Eutope: for from the North towardes the South, it reacheth from 17, to 52. degrees, from Eaſt to the Weſt, are 22. degrees. *Pacquin*, wherein the King keepeth his court, is ſcituated in 48. degrees. The Empyre is deuided into 15. prouinces, ſixe Maritime, viz: *Cantan*, *Foquem*, *Chiquenan*, *Pantora*, & *Nanquij*; the reſt Inland, as *Quichiu*, *Inana*, *Quancij*, *Suinam*

Digitized by Google

Guiuam Foquem, Cansy, Xianxy, Nonam, Sancy. The prouinces of *Quinci, Cantan* and *Foquem*, are deuided from the vp-landish, with mountaines like the *Alpes*, but not aboue two daies iourney asunder. *Thomas Perez* the King of *Portugals* Ambassadour, made foure moneths iourney from *Cantan* to *Nanquy*, bearing alwaies Northerly.

It is not so spacious, but it is as fertile: for it yeeldeth not onely what is fitting for human life, but whatsoeuer the delicate and effeminate appetite of man may lust after. Many plants yeelde fruit twice or thrice a yeare, and that not onely by the temperature of the ayre, but by the number of riuers & plenty of waters, which do both cause trafficke through euery corner of the Region, and so water it on all sides, that it resembleth a most pleasaunt and delectable garden plot. Of this plenty there are three causes: one, the prodigall expences of the King in digging of trenches throughout the whole Land: sometime cutting thorough rocky mountaynes, sometime damming vppe deepe valies to make them leuell with high mountaines, and to draine the waters of lakes and marishes: The other, for that the whole region is scituated vnder the temperate *Zone*, and in no place, eyther by nature or mans industry, wanteth moysture; so that all creatures, taking norishment of heat and moisture, must needes heere wonderously prosper. In no place plantes may take larger scope to spred their branches, nor Cattle larger walkes to wander in, then in this Country. The last reason is, for that the ydle are neyther seuerely punished, nor altogether tollerated, but euery one is forced to do somewhat, no foote of land is left vnhusbanded, nor dram of stuffe cast away vnwrought. Among other things note worthy, this one is of great consideration, that in *Cantan* they maintain foure thousand blind people to grinde corne and Rice; euery child is set about somewhat according to his yeares and strength; those onely who are truely impotent in their limbes, & haue no friends liuing to succour them, are prouided for in Hospitals. That none may excuse themselues, in saying he can do nothing, euery one is bound to learn his fathers occupation, which is the reason that the children (borne as it were tradesmen) learne their fathers occupations before

Digitized by Google

they perceiue it, by continuall practise, becomming in tyme most artificiall mechaniques. Hee that cannot liue at Land, seeketh his mayntenance at Sea, (for that is no lesse inhabited then the Land) yea infinite housholds liue on the Riuers in boates, without comming to Land for a long season. Some whereof lyue by ferrying ouer people, some by transporting passengers and their Marchandize: others keepe shoppes, others vesselles of lodging for their Marchants and Trauellers. Whatsoeuer is needfull for cloathing, for food or norishment, delight or ease of a ciuil life, is to be foūd in the midst of great riuers. Many likewise nourish all sorts of Poultry, especially, ducks in their vessels. To hatch the Egs & to norish the yong ones, they vse not the dams as we do, but an artificiall heat, in a manner as they do in Egipt, especially at *Cair*. All night hee keepeth them in his boate, and at morning sendeth them to feede in the fields sowed with Rice, where al day long hauing fed on the Weedes, to the great good of the husband-man, they returne toward euening to their Cages, at the sounde of a little Bell or Cimball. Many liue, by carrying Fish, both salt and fresh, into the hie Countries: for in the Spring, when the riuers rise through thawes, and land-flouds, so incomparable quantities of sea-fish do abound, in the hauens and creekes that the fishermen depart rather wearied then wanting. This fish the skippers buy for a small matter of the fisher-men, and keeping them aliue in certayne vessels made for the purpose, they transport them into prouinces farre remote from the sea. There they are sold and preserued in pooles and stewes neare Cities and great Townes, to serue the Markets and Tables of the richer *Chinois* all the yeare long Because it is forbidden any inhabitant to passe out of the Land without leaue, and therewith neyther, but for a certayne time limitted, it must needs be that by the daily increase of people, the country is euen pestered with inhabitation. It hath beene obserued among themselus, that for euery fiue that haue died, seuen haue been born. The clymate is so temperate, and the ayre so wholsome, that in mans memory any vniuersall pestilence hath not beene knowne to infest the Country. Notwithstanding least any man should thinke this people to inioy all sweetes without

some

Digitized by Google

ſome mixture of ſower, you muſt note, that their earthquakes are more dreadfull vnto them then any peſtilence to vs: for whole Cities haue beene ſwallowed, and Prouinces made deſart by this puniſhment. Theſe caſualties choake vppe the courſe of ancient Channels, and make new where were neuer any before; they lay mountaines leuel with the ground, and make hauocke of the people. In the year, 1555. a deluge breaking out of the bowels of the earth, deuoured 180. miles of firme land, with the townes and villages, ſtanding thereupon: thoſe which eſcaped the floud, lightning and fire from heauen deſtroyed.

There are ſayde to bee in *China*, 150. Cities, 235. great Townes, 1154. Caſtles, and 4200. Borroughs without wals, wherein ſouldies ars quartered; of villages and hamlets (ſome of them containing a thouſand houſholds) the number is infinite; for the Countrey is ſo couered with habitation, that all *China* ſeemeth but as one Towne. They haue two *Metropolitan* Cities, *Nanquin* and *Panquin*. In *Nanquin* toward the North the King keepeth his Court: vnder the iuriſdiction of the one are ſeauen Prouinces, vnder the other eight. Both of them are ſo ſpacious, that it is a dayes iourny for a horſe-man to ride from one end to the other. Of the number of inhabitants, no certainty can be produced, but according to *Manuſcript* relations, and the report of trauellers, it is ſaid, that the kingdome containeth 70. millions of liuing ſoules. This is an admirable report, and not to bee beleeued, if it bee compared with the prouinces of Chriſtendome, but ſurely ſomething aboue conceit is to be credited to thoſe ſpacious, populous, & barbarous nations. Let vs ſet the largenes of their prouinces, the circuite of their Cities, their plenty and abundance of all things, and in all places, either proſpering by nature, or mans induſtry, with their number and inhabitation, and we ſhal find a country like enough to afford ſuch a reckoning, with places, Cities, and dwellings, able to containe them, and nouriſhment ſufficient to maintaine them. *Italy* exceedeth not 9. millions; *Germany* (excluding the *Swizzers* and *Netherlands*) not ten, and with the foreſaid Prouinces not aboue fifteen, which number peraduenture *France* may reach vnto. *Spaine* is far in-

Digitized by Google

ferior to *Italy*: *Sicily* hath but one million and three hundred thousand: *England* three millions, and *Belgia* as many, if by the continuance of the warre in those Countries that number be not much decayed.

The *Italians* conceiting marualious highly of themselues, thinking no prouince vpon the face of the earth for wealth & people comparable to *Italy*, but they forget, that as it is long, so, it is narrow, & nothing wide or spacious, neither that two third partes haue not one nauigable Riuer (a want of great consequence) neyther that the *Apenine*, a mountayne rocky and barren, doth spreade it selfe ouer a fourth part thereof. Let them not deceiue themselues, nor condemne an others plenty, by their owne wants, nor measure others excesse by their handfuls. For fertility, doth *France* in plenty of graine or cattle giue place to *Italy*? Or *England*, for catle, for wool, fish, or mettall? Or *Belgia*, for number or goodlines of Cities, excellency of artificers, wealth or Marchandize? Or *Greece*, for delectable scituation, commodious hauens of the sea, or pleasaunt prouinces? Or *Hungary* for Cattle, Wine, Corne, Fish, Mines, and all things else? But I will not stand vpon these discourses; onely let me tell you, that *Lumbardy* contayneth the third part of *Italy*, a prouince delightsome for battle-plaines, and pleasaunt Riuers, without barren mountaynes or sandy fields, and to bee as full of people as the whole halfe of *Italy* besides. Yea, what may be sayd of *Italy* for profit or pleasure, that may not bee spoken particularly of *Fraunce*, *England*, *Netherland* and both the *Pannonies*? Wherefore since the Country is not onely large and spacious, but vnited, populous, plentifull and rich, at least let it be beleeued and accounted for one of the greatest Empires that euer was.

Gouernment. The gouernment is tyranical: for throughout the kingdome there is no other Lord but the King. They know not what an Earle, a Marquesse, or a Duke meaneth. No fealty, no tribute, or tole is paid to any man but the king. He giueth al magistracies and honours. He alloweth them stipends wherewith to maintaine their estates, and they dispatch no matter of weight without his priuity. His vassals obey him, not as a King, but rather as a God. In euery Prouince standeth his portraiture in gold,

Digitized by Google

gold, which is neuer to bee ſeene but in their new Moones; then is it ſhewed and viſited of the Magiſtrates, and reuerenced as the Kings owne perſon. In like manner the gouernors and Iudges are honoured, no man may ſpeake to them but vpon their knees. Strangers are not admitted to enter into the Kingdome, leaſt their cuſtomes and conuerſation ſhould breed alteration in manners, or innouation in the ſtate. They are onely permitted to trafficke vpon the ſea-coaſts, to buy & ſell victuall, and to vent their Wares. They that do trafficke vppon the Land, aſſemble many together, and elect a gouernour amongſt them, whom they terme *Conſull*. In this good manner ſtrangers enter the Kingdome, but alwayes waited on by the Cuſtomers and Kings Officers.

The inhabitants cannot trauel but with a licence ſeald with that neyther, but for a prefixed ſeaſon: and to be ſure of their returne, they grant no leaue, but for traffickes ſake, and that in Shippes of 150. Tun and not aboue; for they are iealous, that if they ſhoulde goe to ſea in bigger veſſels, they would make longer iournies. To conclude, it is a religious Law of the Kingdome, that euery mans endeuours tend wholy to the good and quiet of the Common-wealth. By which proceedings, Iuſtice (the Mother of quietneſſe, Pollicy the Miſtreſſe of good Lawes, and induſtry the daughter of peace) do flouriſh in this Kingdome. There is no Countrey moderne or ancient, gouerned by a better forme of policy then this Empire: by virtue whereof they haue ruled their Empire 2000. yeares: And ſo hath the State of *Venice* flouriſhed 1100. yeares, the Kingdome of *Fraunce* 1200. It is 1800. yeares ſince they caſt off the yoake of the *Tartars*, after their ninety yeares gouernment.

For their Arts, learning and policy, they conceiue ſo well of themſelues, that they are accuſtomed to ſay, that they haue two eyes; the people of *Europe*, but one; and the reſidue of the Nations, none. They giue this report of the *Europians*, becauſe of their acquaintance with the *Portugals*, with whome they trafficke in *Macoa* and other places, and the renowne of the *Caſtilians*, who are their neighbours in the *Philippina*. Arts.

Printing,

Digitized by Google

Printing, Painting, and Gun-powder, with the materialles thereunto belonging, haue bin vſed in *China* many years paſt, and very common, ſo that it is with them out of memorie, when they firſt began. Their Chronicles ſay, that their firſt K. being a great Nigromancer, who raigned many thouſande yeares paſt, did firſt inuent great Ordinance: and for the Antiquity of printing, there haue beene Bookes ſeene in *China*, which were printed at leaſt fiue or ſix hundred yeares, before printing was in vſe with vs in Europe, and to ſay when it firſt began, it is beyond remembrance.

By the multitudes of people (before ſpoken of) you may imagine the State of his forces, for heerein al other prouiſions take their perfection. But to ſpeake ſomwhat in particular. The power of his Prince (remembring his contentment & nature, deteſting all inuaſions) is more readie and fit to defend, then offend, to preſerue, rather then to encreaſe. His Cities for the moſt part are builded vpon the bankes of Nauigable riuers, inuironed with deep and broad ditches, the walles built of ſtone and bricke, ſtrong aboue beliefe, and fortified with Caualiers, and artificall bulwarks. Vpon the borders toward *Tartary* (to make ſure worke againſt ſuch an enemy) they haue built a wal beginning at *Chioi* (a Citty ſcituate betweene two moſt high mountaines) and ſtretching it ſelfe toward the Eaſt 600. miles betweene mountaine and mountaine, vntill it touch the cliffes of the Ocean. Vpon the other frontiers you may behold many but ſmall holds, ſo built to ſtay the courſe of the enemy, vntill the countrey forces be able to make head, and the royal army haue time to come leiſurely forward; for in 400. great townes he keepeth in continual pay forces ſufficient vpō the leaſt warning, to march to that quarter whether occaſion calleth. Euery Citty hath a garriſon and Guard at the gates, which at nights is not only faſt locked, but ſealed, and may not be opened before the ſeal at morning be throughly viewed. To ſpeak truth, their ſouldiers, horſemen, and footemen, by land, or ſea, are more famous for their numbers, their gallant furniture, and plenty of prouiſion, then for ſtrength and corage. For the inhabitants partly by their effeminate and wanton kinde of life, partly by their forme of gouernment, whereby they are made

vile

Digitized by Google

vile and baſe, haue little valor or manhood left them. They vſe no forren ſouldiers, except thoſe whom they take in war: theſe they ſend into the inland countries, where being marked (to diſtinguiſh them from other) they ſerue more like ſlaues then ſouldiers; yet haue they pay, with rewards for their good ſeruice, and punniſhment for their Cowardice: true motiues to make men valorous. The reſt, which are not inrold, are not ſuffered to keepe weapons in their houſes.

Their Sea-forces are nothing inferior to their land-forces: for beſides their ordinary fleets, lying vpon the coaſtes for the ſafety of the ſea Townes, by reaſon of the abundance of nauigable riuers, and ſo huge a ſea tract full of hauens, creekes, and Iſlands, it is thought that with eaſe they are able to aſſemble from 500. to a 1000. ſuch great ſhippes, which they tearme *Giunchi*. Forces at ſea.

To thinke that treaſure cannot be wanting to leuy ſo great a number of ſhips, ſoldiers, and Marriners, many men affirme, that the Kings reuennewes amount to 120. millions of gold, which value, although it may ſeem impoſſible to him that ſhal make an eſtimate of the States of *Europe*, with the Kingdome of *China*; yet may it finde place of beleefe, if he do but call to minde, firſt the nature and circuite of the Empire, being little leſſe then all *Europe*; Next, the populouſneſſe of the inhabitants, accompanied with ineſtimable riches: Then, the diuerſity of Mines, of Golde, Siluer, Iron, and other ſortes of mettall, the vnſpeakeable quantity of merchandize, paſsing from hand to hand, by ſo many Nauigable Riuers: ſo manie armes and in-lets of the Sea, their vp-land Citties, and Maritime Townes, their Toles, Cuſtomes, Subſidies, and laſtlie, their rich wares brought into *Europe*. He taketh the tenth of all things which the earth yeeldeth; as Barley, Rice, Oliues, Wine, Cotton, Wooll, Flaxe, Silk, all kinds of Mettal, Fruits, Cattle, Sugar, Hony, Reubarbe, Camphire, Ginger, Wood, Muske, and all ſorts of Perfumes. The cuſtome onely of Salt in the Cittie *Canto* (which is not of the greateſt, nor of the beſt Trafficke) yeeldeth 180000. Crownes yearely: the tenth of Rice, of one ſmall Town, and the adiacent Territory, yeildeth more then 100000. Crownes. By theſe you may con- Treaſure.

Digitized by Google

lecture of the rest. He leaueth his subiects nothing saue food and cloathing. Hee hath vnder him no Earles, Lords or Nobles of any degree, no nor priuate persons indowed with great wealth.

Wherefore since this Empire is so huge, and all the profites thereof are in his handes, howe can the former assertion of so great and yearely a reuenue, to men of reason seeme any thing admirable at all? There are two things moreouer, which adde great credit to this reckoning; one is, that all his impositions are not payd in coyne, but some in Hay, some in Rice, Corne, Prouender, Silke, Cotton, Woolle, and such like necessaries; the other is, that, the king of 120. millions, which he receiueth, disburseth againe three partes thereof. And so since it goeth rounde from the King to the people, it ought to seeme no wonder, if the people be able to spare it agayne for the Princes vse at the yeares end. For as waters doe ebbe as deepe as they flowe, so impositions easily leuied, suffice for the expences of the State, and the people receiue agayne by those expences, as much as they layde out in the beginning of the yeare.

Borderers. This king feareth no neighbour, but the greate *Cham* of *Tartaria*; all the rest acknowledge vassalage. Against this enemy the auncient kinges built that admirable wall, so much renowned amongest the wonders of the *Orient*. Towards the sea, he bordereth vpon the *Iaponians* and *Castilians*. The distance betweene *Iapan* and *China* is diuers. From *Goto* one of the Ilandes of *Iapan*, to the Citty of *Liampo*, is threescore leagues: from *Cantan* 297. The Ilanders of *Iapan* do often spoyle the sea-coastes of *China* by their incursions, descending on land and harrying the country, more like Pyrats then men of war. For in regard that *Iapan* is deuided into many Ilands, and into diuers seigniories (all agreeing amongst themselues) though they excell the *Chinois* in armes and courage, yet are they not of sufficient power to performe any action of moment against them. Vpō another frontire lie the *Spaniards*, of whome the *Chinois* not without good cause are very ielous, because of the scituation of the *Philippinæ* (commodiously seated for the inuasion of *China*) and the fame of the riches well

known

Digitized by Google

known to the Spaniſh. But the king of Spaine wiſheth rather to plant Chriſtianity peaceably amongſt them, whereof there was once good hope, that God had opened a paſſage. For though the *Chinois* wil ſuffer no ſtranger to enter within their dominions, yet certayne Ieſuites (zealous in the increaſing of Chriſtian religion) in a territory, ſo ſpacious as that is, entred with great ſecrecy and danger, and obtaining the fauor of certain gouernors, obtaind a priuiledge of naturalizatiõ, ſpecially Frier *Michael Rogerius*, who in the yeare 1590. returned into Europ to aduiſe what courſe were beſt to take in this buſines. After whoſe departure, inteiligence was brought from twoe Friers which remayned behinde, that after diuers perſecutions they were then conſtrayned to forſake the Citty wherein they ſoiourned, and to make haſt to ſea-ward. The Portugals are likewiſe eye-ſores vnto them, but by the report of their iuſtice and the moderation which *Ferdinand Andrada*, ſhewed in the gouernement of the Hand of *Tamo*, and by the trafficke which they exerciſe in thoſe ſeas, they can better digeſt their neighbor-hood, then that of the Spaniſh. This was the firſt Portugal that ariued in the citty of *Cantan*, & ſet aland *Thomas Perez*, legier for *Emanuel* K. of *Portugal*. But other Captains being there afterwards diſimbarked, behaued themſelues ſo lewdly, that they occaſioned the ſayd Ambaſſadour to bee taken for a ſpy, and caſt into priſon, where he died moſt miſerably, the reſidue were entreated as enemies. At laſt it was permitted the Portugals for trafficke ſake to ſet a factory in *Macao*, where again before they had ſtrongly fortified their colony, they were conſtraind to ſubmit to the limitations of the *Chinois*; to whõ in ſhort time for their ſtrength, wiſedom, friendſhip, and allians with the *Caſtilians*, they became ſuſpicious: and therefore they do daily more & more bridle their liberty of trafficke, carrying ſo heauy a hand toward them, that they would fayn giue them occaſion to leaue *Macao* of their own willes, and retyre back into *India* from whence they came.

The kingdome of Siam.

VPõ the borders of *China* (to ſpeak nothing of *Cauchinchina* becauſe we kno v nothing worth relation of that territory) ioineth the country of *Siam* accoũted one of the greateſt

Digitized by Google

amongst these great kingdomes of *Asia*. It tooke its name of the Citty *Siam*, scituated vpon the entrance of the riuer *Menon*: it is also called *Gorneo*. It reacheth by East & West from the Citty *Campaa*, to the City of *Tauai*; in which tract, by the sea-coast are contained fiue hundered leagues, whereof the *Arabians* once vsurped two hundred, with the Cities of *Patan*, *Paam*, *Ior*, *Perca*, and *Malaco*, now in the possession of the *Portugales*. From the South toward the North, it reacheth from *Sincapura*, scituate in degrees, to the people called *Gueoni* in 29. degrees.

The lake *Chimai* is distant from the sea fixe hundred miles: the vpland circuit stretcheth from the borders of *Canchinchina* beyond the riuer *Anan*, where lyeth the kingdom of *Chencra*. Besides the Lake of *Chimai*, the riuers *Menon*, *Menam*, *Caipumo* and *Ana* (which cause greater fertility of Grain thorough the whole Region, then a man would beleeue) are all his. The better part of his kingdome is enuironed with the mountaines *Ana*, *Brema*, aud *Iangoma*; the residue is playne like Egypt, abounding with Elephants, Horsses, Pepper, Gold and Tinne. In the West part are huge woods, and therein are many Tygers, Lyons, Owuces, and Serpents. It containeth these Prouinces, *Cambaia*, *Siam*, *Muantai*, *Bremo*, *Caipumo*, and *Chencra*. The inhabitants of *Lai* which border vpon the North of the Prouinces of *Muantai* and *Caipumo* (& are deuided into three principalities) are vnder his obeysance. The first is, that of *Iangoma*, the second of *Currai*, the third *Lanea*, neere *Chachinchina*. They inhabit a plaine and wealthy countrey, into which the *Gueoni* (*Marke Paule* calleth their Countrey *Gangigu*) discending from the mountaines to hunt for men, make oftentimes cruell Butcheries amongst them. The people of *Lai* for feare of those *Anthropophagi* acknowledge the soueraignety of *Siam*, but they often rebell, and obey as they list.

Riches. The wealth of the country may be coniectured by the fertility: for being scituated in a plaine, and watred with most famous riuers (like another Egypt) it cannot but abound with plenty of all good things. It bringeth forth Rice, graine of all sorts, Horsses, Elephants, infinite store of Cattle, Golde, and Tin:.

Digitized by Google

Tin: Siluer is brought thether by the people of *Lai*. By reason of this plenty, the people are drowned in pleasure and wantonnesse. They follow Husbandry, but take no great delight in manuell occupations, which causeth the kingdome to bee poore in Marchandize. Amongst many other Citties three are famous, *Cambaia*, seated vpon the riuer *Menon*: which rising in *China*, is so hugely augmented by the falling in of many riuers, that his owne Channell not sufficing for receit thereof, it renteth the earth to disgorge it selfe into a thousand Islands, making a second *Meotis* more then sixty miles long: *Meican* signifieth the Captaine, *Menon* the mother of waters. The second is the Citty of *Siam*, whose statelinesse giueth the name to the whole Country. It is a most goodly Citty, and of admirable Traffick, which may the better be imagined, by the writing of a certaine Iesuite, who reporteth, that besides the naturall inhabitants, there are more then 30000. *Arabian* housholds. The third Citty is called *Vdia*, greater then *Siam*, consisting of foure hundred thousand families. It is saide, that two hundred thousand boats belong to this Citty, and the Riuer *Caipumo*, whereon it is seated.

This King to shew his maiesty and magnificence, keepeth a Guarde of sixe thousand souldiers, and two hundered Elephants: of these beasts he hath thirtie thousand, whereof hee traineth three thousande for the warre. This is a verie great matter, if you weigh their woorth, and their charges in keeping. **Forces.**

His gouernment is rather tyranical then king-like: for he is absolute Lord ouer all the demeanes of the kingdome, and either setteth them out to husbandmen, or giueth them to his Nobles for maintenance, during life and pleasure, but neuer passeth the right of inheritance. Hee bestoweth on them likewise Townes and Villages, with their territories, but on condition to maintaine a certaine number of horsemen, footmen, and Elephants. By this pollicy, without any peny pay or burden to the Countrey, he is able to leuy 20000. horsemen, and 250000. footmen. Vpon occasion, hee can wage a greater number, by reason of the largenesse of his kingdomes, & the populousnesse of his Townes. For *Vdia* onely (the chiefe seat **Gouerment**

Digitized by Google

of his kingdome) muſtered 50000. men. And although he be Lord of nine kingdomes, yet vſeth he no other Nation in the war, but the *Siamits* & the inhabitants of the two kingdomes of *Vdia* and *Muantai*. All honors and preferments are beſtowed vpon men of ſeruice in this kingdome.

In times of peace they haue their warlicke exerciſes, and in certaine paſtimes which the king once a yeare exhibiteth at *Vdia*, are ſhewed all military feates of armes vppon the Riuer *Menon*, where more then 3000. veſſels (which they terme *Paraos*) deuided into 2. ſquadrons, skirmiſh one againſt another. Vpon the land run the horſes and Elephants, and the footemen try it out at ſword and Buckler, with point and edge rebated: the remainder of their daies they ſpend in ryot & wantonneſſe.

Borderers. Their borders toward the Eaſt, reach to *Chanchinchina*, between whom are ſuch huge woods, Lyons, Tygers, Leopards, Serpents and Elephants, that they cannot infeſt one another by armes. Toward the lake *China* they border vpon the *Chinois*. Toward the ſea they affront the *Arabians* and *Portugals*. The one tooke from them *Patam*, *Paam*, *Ior*, and *Peam*; the other *Malaca*, and the territory adioyning; ſo between them they bereaued him of two hundred miles of lande; and contenting themſelues with the command of the ſea-coaſts and with the cuſtomes ariſing vpon the carying out and bringing in of merchandize, they abſtaine from further inuaſion of the Inland prouinces, and holde it good pollicy to keepe firme peace with this king and his countries. Towards the Weſt lieth the kingdome of *Pegu*, like a halfe Moone, betweene the mountaines of *Brama* and *Iangoma*. Towards the North, lye the *Gudoni*, inhabiting the barren and ſharpe mountaines, betweene whom and *Siam* dwell the people of *Lay*. This people is ſubiect to the crowne of *Siam*, for feare of theſe *Canibals*, of whom (if it had not bin for his protection) they had long ago bin vtterly deuoured. Not fortie yeares ſince the king made a iourney againſt them with 20000. horſe (their horſe are ſmal, but excellent good in trauell) 25000. footmen, and ten thouſand Elephants; part employed for ſeruice, & part for cariage. No kingdom hath greater ſtore of theſe beaſts, or doth more

vſe

Digitized by Google

vſe them. An inumerable number of Oxen, Buffals, and beaſts of carriage, followed this army, whom they ſlewe when they wanted, other prouiſion.

Hitherto haue we deuiſed of *Siam* and *Pegu* (as they ſtood) before the comming of the *Portugals* into *India*, but howe in proceſſe of time the State was altered, you ſhall now heare. In times paſt, diuers kingdomes of *Brama* ſcituated along the riuer towards the lake *Chiamai* obeyed the Kings of *Pegu* vnder the gouernement of Lieutenants. Sixty yeares ſince, one of theſe Captaines, ruler of the Kingdome of *Tengu*, by the ayde of his faction, and reputation of his Vertues, entered into Rebellion, and ſlaying the Nobles of the Lande, vſurped the kingdome. Afterward, he forced the Citties, and conquered the kingdome of *Prom*, *Melintai*, *Calam*, *Mirandu*, and *Ana*, all inhabited by the *Bramians*, for the ſpace of one hundred and fifty leagues toward the North. He aſſayed likewiſe the conqueſt of *Siam*; but comming before *Vdia*, the chiefe Cittie of the Kingdome, he was forced to raiſe his ſiege and depart. He vndertooke this iourney with 300000. footemen, conſuming more then three moneths, in making way for his army through ſtony mountaines, huge woods, and inacceſſible places; in proſecution whereof, hee loſt 220000. of his ſouldiers, and re-enforced his loſſes with captiue *Siamits*. At his returne home, hee inuaded the kingdome of *Pegu*, and won it. Afterward in the yeare, 1507. he renewed his iourney againg *Siam*, and ouercame the King thereof, who ſlew himſelfe with poyſon; but he took his ſonnes, and with them the better part of the kingdome. He beleagred *Vdia* with a million of men, and vpward. Our late writers cal this man and his ſucceſſours (becauſe their fames aroſe by the conqueſt of the kingdoms of *Brama*) kings of *Brama* or *Bramia*, but the *Portugals* of a more ſound iudgement grounded vppon neerer Neighbor-hood, call them Kings of *Pegu*.

And for that it may not ſeeme that what we write as concerning theſe infinit numbers, is eyther fabulous, or reported altogether vpon heare-ſay; becauſe that now, heere-before, & hereafter we ſhal haue occaſion to diſcourſe of this point, we thinke it not amiſſe to ſpend ſome time in ſhewing how & by what

Digitized by Google

what likely-hoods, both in this, and otherlike barbarous dominions, such huge and numberlesse companies are leuied and nourished. First therefore, it is a ground infallible, that al monarchies consist of people, gouernment, and reuennewes, & that howsoeuer in times of peace Princes may liue at pleasure, yet populous armies, neere home or farre off, cannot long indure without great supplies, and a continuall sea of ready money: for as the members of our body cannot mooue without sinnewes, nor motion auaile vs, if ioyntes were wanting; so without money an army can neuer be gathered, nor being gathered, kept together, if Coyne be wanting, which preuenteth infinite mischances, and draweth after it Armor, Prouision, Victuals, and whatsoeuer else is necessary for life, or arms. And fithence the wealth of Princes, euen as of priuate persons (from whose purses they supply their occasions) hath limits and measure: Let them not thinke to beginne any long war, much lesse to continue it, vnlesse they throughly prouide aforehand: for when this torrent breaketh forth, no man can make an estimate, what will bee the expence of reparation therein: which moued a certaine *Portugal* Captaine to tel K. *Sebastian*, prouiding for his iourney into *Barbary*, that wars shold be accompanied with three streames: the first, of *Men*; the second of *Victuall*, the third of *Siluer*. For whosoeuer will rightly iudge of a Princes estate, must examine whether his ordinary receits be sufficient ro aunswere his ordinary issues, leuying alwayes a portion to aunswere extraordinary accidents) which are so certaine in proofe, as all men must prouide for, though they know them not before hand, especially in the condition of a great Prince.

The great Turke in his Persian iournies, felt the smart thereof, who though he bee so potent a Prince, by default of this prouidence, was constrained to raise the value of his coin, and abase the allay, so far foorth, that the *Ianizars* finding themselues agreeued thereat, raised commotions, set fire on the city of *Constantinople*, and rifled a great part thereof. Neyther could the king of *Spain* haue sustained the burden of so many wars, and in so remote Prouinces, if he had trusted to no other supplies then those of Spaine. But fortune hath giuen him a

Country

Digitized by Google

Countrey prodigall in Mines of Golde and Siluer, assuredly paying the expence of one yeare, with the income of another. A prouidence so farre from neglect, in the late raign of Queen *Elizabeth*, that before she had any warres with *Spaine*, or had sent her forces of preuention into the *Low-Countries*, she had ready in *deposito*, two millions of Crownes. And being engaged, by her politicke gouernment, she raised such an annuall assistance from the loue of her subiects against the malicious and iniurious attempts of her enemies, that during her raigne she leuied three millions, fiue hundered and nineteene thousand, fiue hundred and sixty foure poundes. What fruite the issue thereof hath produced, no better experiment can be obiected, then the *Generall peace*, which at this day (boldly and truely be it spoken) the whole estate of Christendom now enioyeth and acknowledgeth. *Iohn Iaques Trinulce*, being demanded how many things were necessary in warre, answered three; *Money*, *Money*, *Money*.

But these grounds especially hold, when the burthen of the warre lyeth vppon the purse of the Prince and his people: for sometime it hapneth, that the souldier liueth vppon the Enemies Countrey, as did the *Hunnes*, *Vandals*, *Gothes*, *Arabians*, and in our dayes *Tamerlane*. They entered the Prouinces without controule, beeing vnprouided of forces, and made prey & spoyle of whatsoeuer came in their reaches. They ransacked the Citties, and fed vpon the villages. The like good lucke had the *Portugals* in the East *Indies*, and the *Castillians* in the West, but the one farre better than the other; for neuer any Nation conquered with lesse cost, so much as the *Spaniards* haue doone, in new *Spaine* and *Peru*. But let not any people thinke to doo so in these dayes, no not in *Asia* or *Affricke*, much lesse in *Europe*, where the vse of great Ordinance is in perfection, and the art of fortification so ingenuous, that one Castle shall bee able to sustaine, yea, well prouided, to weary the forces of the greatest Potentate. The Turkes at *Zigeth* (a small Castle in *Hungary*) approoued this, which in the year 1566. *Soliman* beleagerd with 300000. men of war, & at last forced, but with so great a slaughter of his people, that scant the third part of this huge army returnd to their houses

Digitized by Google

In like maner, the *Portugales* in the beginning of their *Indian* acquisitiõs, with a few soldiers, & in litle time, won admirable victories; but whẽ the *Barbarians* began to grow acquainted with Artillery, to allure Carpenters and Masons to build them Castles, & to arme vessels to sea, their courages becam calme, & there set an end to their *plus vltra*. The like did the *Spanish* in the new world, to their *Non sufficit orbis*. For after their first good fortunes, they found in *Nona Hispania* the *Chichimechi*, and in *Peru* the *Pilcosony*, the *Chiriguani*, and the *Luchy*, people so well prouided to stop the furious course of their former victories, that sithence, in almost one hundered yeares space, they haue not bin able to adde one foots bredth to their new Empiry.

In the vale of *Aranco*, *Tecapell*, and the kingdome of *Chile*, when the Inhabitants saw them to be wounded and slain with the shot of their arrowes, and the strokes of their swords, they neuer afterward vouchsafed them their former reuerence, nor carried the wonted conceit of their immortality: and now being beaten by experience, they feare not the cariere of the horse, nor the terror of the Harquebuse.

If the war be at, or within our owne doores, then is it easy to leuie strong and populous forces, as we read of the *Crotons*, *Sibarites*, and *Gauntois*, who made head against the power of *France*, with fourescore thousand fighting men. When the war was made in these populous Countries, and near at hand; euery man made one in the medle, gallantly armed, and well prouided with furniture and Victuall to holde out certayne dayes: but when the Warre continued longer than expectation, for want of money and foode, euery man retired; one to the Plowgh, another to his shoppe, the rest to those employments whereby they sustained themselues and their families. The Scots for want of wealth, neuer made famous iourney out of the Island, but at home they haue ledde mighty armies for a short time, either for reuenge of wrongs, or to defend their frontiers: euen as did the Romaines for certaine Ages, warring with their Neighbours at their priuate charges. They tooke the field, euery man prouided with victual for two or three dayes, and in one battaile and fewe houres, finished those

Digitized by Google

thoſe warres. But in the iourney againſt the *Veij*, the war continuing beyond opinion, the State was enforced to procure pay for the Army.

That Armies may farre eaſier be gathered in the Eaſt & *Affricke*, then in *Europe*, the reaſons are many. Thoſe regions for the moſt part are more plentifull of all neceſſaries for humane life: the people of the South are better contented with little, then we: their dyet is bare and ſimple, only to maintaine life, and not exceſſe: but the *Europians* muſt eate and drink, not to ſuſtain nature, but to comfort the ſtomack, and to expel colds. Wine, which with vs is dearer then bread, is not to be found amongſt them: their waters are better then our drinkes. Cookery is not in ſuch requeſt with them, as with vs, nor their tables accuſtomed to ſuch Cates: their bankets are only furniſhed with Rice and Mutton. Neither do the people of the Eaſt ſpend a quarter of that clothing which we do: they go to the war halfe naked, hiding nothing but their priuities: they ſtand not in need of that number of workmen which we do, among whom, the greateſt part of our life is ſpent, in weauing and deuiſing ſtuffes and fashions to cloath the carkas, and adorn the body, with cloth, ſilke, colours, and embroderies. All their expences are onely vppon cloathing of Cotton-wooll, and that but from the Nauell to the knee.

Theſe are the reaſons which I meant to lay, why they may gather forty thouſand men with more eaſe, then we ten; and to theſe may be added this as the laſt; that, vppon Ordinance and their furnitures; vpon prouiſions and their cariages; vpon horſes, pioners, and a thouſande like neceſſaries, infinite ſums are ſpent; of which the people of the Eaſt are vtterly ignoraunt, eſpecially, thoſe which haue not to deale with the *Portugals* or *Arabians*.

They go to Warre without Armor, without Curaces, Helmets, Launces or Targets, which with vs, cannot be conueyed from place to place without great expence. *Virgill*, calleth this Luggage, *Iniuſtum faſcem*, becauſe it ſemeth to bee needeleſſe, therein degenerating much from the auncient *Roman* Diſcipline; wherein for tenne dayes iourney and more, euery Souldier carried his proper weapons both offenſiue

Digitized by Google

siue and defensiue, yea & sometimes his victuals. What should we speake of the armies of the *Assyrians* and *Ethiopians*, of *Belus*, *Ninus*, *Simiramis*, *Cambises*, *Cyrus*, *Darius*, *Sesostris*, and *Sesacus*, were they not as huge and populous, by the report of all histories, as these whereof we entreat? Or in times lesse ancient, haue not we, and our ancestors, seene the *Arabians*, *Tartarians* & *Turks*, inuading Prouinces with Armies of 300000 people and vpward. By moderne examples, and memorie of later accidents, to giue credite to the ancient, I will set downe what hapned in *Angola*, a noble and rich prouince of the west *Ethyope*, adioyning to *Congo*) reported by the letters of certain Iesuites and *Portugall* Captains. In the yeare 1584. *Paulus Diasius* by the fauour of God, and valour of his people, vpon the second day of February, put to flight the king of *Angola*, and defeated his army, consisting of one Million and two hundred thousand Moores: which may wel proue, that these populous armies are of little seruice, and small continuance, rather like violent storms, then dripping showers; and though with ease they are gathered, yet without greater prouision, then any Prouince is able to affoord them, they are not easily holde together. When their prouision is spent, they begin to break, and bid adue to the action; and that most commonly, not in the midst of their course, but euen in their first remoues: for Merchants, victuallers, taylors, Shoomakers, and such like, follow not their warres: and if they should, then this inconuenience would follow; that for one million of souldiers, 'it were verie necessary to prouide a million of wagons, pack-horses, Carters, Carpenters, Victuallers, Merchants, &c. and then, neither riuers would serue them for drinke, nor the fields with bread, nor the earth for lodgings: so must they needs sink vnder their owne waight; which the Easterne Princes (leading these vnaccustomed numbers vppon long iourneyes) in some fashion fore-casting, did alwayes prouide incredible masses of mony, victuall, and such like warlicke prouisions, long before they entered into action; as was well seen in *Xerxes*, who to maintaine the great army, as well at sea as at land, which he ledde for the conquest of *Greece*, spent seauen yeares in preparation for the iourney.

To

Digitized by Google

To returne to the king of *Barma*: of late yeares he took the hauens of *Martela* and *Pernasor*; and turning his armes sometime towards the North, sometime toward the West, he vexed the Princes of *Caor* and *Tipura*, tooke the kingdomes of *Aracan* and *Macin*, leading vpon this iourney 300000. men, and 40000. Elephants.

Aracan is a kingdom inuironed rounde with mountains & woods, as with a wal or trench: the chiefe City which giueth the name to the country, is scituated on a riuer fifteen leagues from the sea, and 35. from *Catagan*.

Macin is a kingdom abounding in *Aloes*: this wood, which the Arabians call *Calambuco*, and others *Lignum vitæ*, for the sweet sauour is valued by the people of the East at the waight in siluer. In *India* and *Cambaia* they vse it at the burial of great Lords, in baths, and in other wantonnes. It groweth most frequent in the rough mountains of *Campa*, *Cambaia* and *Macin*. That which is brought to vs is in no esteeme with them; The right is found (say they) in *Congo* & *Angola*, and the bordering country, and vsed by them in al their greeuous and dangerous maladies; which if it be true, I maruel that the Portugals will let slip so precious a commodity.

Narsinga.

IN the row of these potent princes inhabiting between *Indus* and *Ganges* dwelleth the king of *Narsinga*. What soeuer lieth between the mountain *Guate* & the gulfe of *Bengala*, between the promontories *Guadauerne* and *Comorin*, by the space of 200. leagues, abounding as prodigally (as any other prouince in the *Indies*) with all good things, is vnder his dominion. The waters sometime falling from the mountains, sometime from the riuers, and receiued into trenches, meeres, and Lakes, do wonderfully coole, moysten, and enrich this land, causing the Graine and Cattle to prosper aboue imagination. It is no lesse plentifull of birdes, beasts, wilde and tame, Buffals, Elephants and Mines of precious stones and mettals. It breedeth no race of horse for the war, but they buy them of the *Arabian* & *Persian* merchants in great numbers: the like do all the princes of *Decan*. Within the bounds of *Narsinga* dwel fiue nations different in language; hee hath many strong places on the Indian

Digitized by Google

Ocean. *Canara* is at his cõmand, wherein are the hauen towns of *Mangolar*, *Melind*, *Berticala*, & *Onor*: but the Portugals receiue the custome of *Berticala*, and also in times past of *Onor*. In *Narsinga* are two imperiall citties: *Narsinga* and *Bisnagar*, by reason whereof hee is termed sometime king of *Narsinga*, sometime king of *Bisnagar*.

It is vndoubtedly beleeued, that this king receiueth yearly twelue millions of duckats, of which he layeth vp but 2. or 3. the residue he expendeth vpon the troupes of his soldiers, that is to say, forty thousand *Nairs*, and twenty thousand horsmen kept in continual pay. Vpon necessity hee is able to leuy a far greater number: for besides these allowances, hee setteth out certayn lands to 200. Captaines, on condition to keep in readinesse a proportion of horsemen, footemen, and Elephantes. The wages of these Captaines (to some of whome he giueth a million of ducats yearely) may be an argument of his great reuenues; for to these proiects, this prince and al the potentates of the East, keep in their possession all the profits of the lands, woodes, mines, yea and the waters of pooles & riuers throgh their whole dominions. No man may wash himselfe in *Ganges*, (which runneth by *Bengala*) nor in *Ganga* (which watreth the Land of *Orissa*) before he hath payd toll to the king. The king himselfe is now inforced to buy this water, causing it to be brought vnto him by long iourneyes, vppon a superstitious custome, eyther to bath or purge himselfe therein. Hee is absolute Lord of the bodyes and goodes of his subiects, which hee shareth to himselfe and his Captaynes, leauing the people nothing but their handes and labour: of Lands the king hath three parts, and his Captaynes the residue. Whereuppon fichence, all these barbarous princes maintayne not peace and iustice, as arches whereuppon to lay the ground work of these Estates; but armes, conquest, and the Nursery of a continuall soldiery, it must needs follow that they are able to leuy greater troupes of horsse and foote, then otherwise wee were bound to beleeue. But to induce some measure of credite, let vs compare the abilities of some Christian princes, with theirs. If the king of *Fraunce* were absolute Lord of all the lands and profits of his whole dominion (as these men are) it is thought that his

Digitized by Google

his yearely reuenues woulde amount to fifteen millions, and yet therein are neyther mines of gold nor siluer. The Cleargy receiueth sixe millions, the kings demesnes amount to one & an halfe, the residue is theirs who haue the inheritaunce, and yet peazants liue well here, in comparison of the *Villagois* of *India*, *Polonia*, and *Lithuania*. Besides this, the king hath eight millions of ordinary reuenue, arising of customes and escheats. Howe mighty a prince would hee bee, if hee were Landlord of the demesnes and rents of the whole kingdome, and should employ them vpon the maintenance of Souldiours, as doeth the king of *Narsinga*? Surely whereas nowe the kinges reuenues doe hardly suffice for the maintenance of foure thousand men at armes, and sixe thousand crosse-bowes; if this allowance were added to the former, hee might as easily maintaine 150. thousand.

To returne to *Narsinga*; the king to see that his Captaines perfourme theyr duties, once a yeare proclaymeth a muster, whereat they dare not but be present: at the muster day those who haue presented their companies defectiue, either in number, or furniture, are sure to be cashierd: but those who bring their companies complete and well armed, he honoureth and aduaunceth. What forces may be gathered out of so ample a dominion (armed after their manner, as aforesayd) you shall gather by that which *Iohn Barros* writeth, of the army which king *Chrismarao* ledde against *Idalcan* in the iourney of *Raciel*. These are his words *Verbatim*. Vnder sundry Captaines the army was deuided into many battalians: In the Vantgard marched *Camraque* with one thousand horse, 17. Elephants, and thirty thousand footemen. *Tirábicar*, with twoe thousand horse, twenty Elephants, and fifty thousand footemen. *Timapanique*, with three thousande horse-men, and fifty sixe thousand footemen. After them followed *Hadanaique*, with fiue thousand horsemen, fifty Elephants, and one hundred thousand footmen. *Condomara*, with sixe thousand horse, sixty Elephants, one hundred and twenty thousand footemen. *Comora*, with two hundred and fifty horse, forty Elephants, & 80. thousand footmen. *Gendua* with 1000. horse, ten Elephants, & 30000. footmen. In the rereward were two Eunuchs with one thou-

Digitized by Google

thousand Horse, fifteene Elephants, and forty thousand footmen. *Betell* one of the Kinges Pages led 200. Horse, twenty Elephants, and 8000. foote. After all these followed the King with his Guard of sixe thousand horse-men, three hundred Elephantes, and forty thousand footmen. Vpon the flankes of this battell went the gouernor of the Citty of *Bengapor* with diuers Captaines, vnder whose colours were 4200. Horse, 25. Elephantes, and sixty thousand mercenary foote-men. Vpon the head of the battell ranged 200000. horsemen in small troups, like our vantcurrers, in such sort and order scowring the Countrey, before, behinde, and on all sides, that no Nouelty could sosuddenly happen, but notice thereof was giuen at the imperial Tent in a moment. Twelue thousand carriers of water, and twenty thousand light huswiues followed this Army. The number of Lackies, Marchants, Artificers, Scullions (they call them *Maniati*) Oxen, Buffals, and carriage beasts, was infinite. When the army was to passe any riuer knee deepe, before the formost were passed, there was scant sufficient for the latter whereof to drink. Before this iourney the king sacrificed in nine dayes 20376. head of liuing creatures, as well of Birds as Beasts, the flesh whereof in honor of his Idols, was giuen to the poore. The soldiers were cloathed in garments of Cotten-wooll so close and hard quilted, that they would beare out the thrust of a Lance or Sword. Euery Elephant was trimmed in a couering of Cotton wooll, with a frame on his backe bearing foure men.

To their tuskes were fastned long and broad swords, to cut in sunder whatsoeuer stood in their way. The footmen were armed with bowes, Iauelins, swords and bucklers. These last, the better to couer their whole bodyes, and to manage their heauy bucklers, caried no offensiue weapons. In the fight whē the king perceiued *Idalcan* by the fury of his great ordinance to make hauocke of his men, and dismay the residue, leaping into the head of the battell, is reported to vse this prince-beseeming incoragement: Beleeue me my companions *Idalcan* shall rather boast that he hath slayne, then ouercome a King of *Narsinga*. With which wordes and ensample, his souldiers all inflamed, and ashamed of their cowardize, with a furious charge,

Digitized by Google

charge, broke the enemies aray, and put *Idalcan* to flight. Amongst other spoyles, they took foure thousand Arabian horses, 100. Elephants, foure hundered great pieces besides small. The number of Oxen, Buffals, tents, and prisoners, was inestimable. With *Idalcan* were forty *Portugals*, with the the king of *Narsinga* twenty. In his raigne two of his Captains rebeld; *Virapanai* vsurped *Negapatan*, and *Veneapatir* the territory adioyning to *Matipura*.

Calecute.

THe most Noble part of *India*, is that which lyeth between the mountayne *Gate* and the *Indian* Ocean. It stretcheth frō *Cape Comerin* to the riuer *Cangiericor*, three hundred miles long. In this prouince raigneth the k. of *Calecute*, who though he may not be compared with the prince aboue spoken of, for number and power, yet for pleasant and plentifull scituation, he may be said far to surpasse them. For the region is so cut (as it were) into many parcels, sometimes by creekes of the sea, sōetime by riuers, & somtime by lakes, that nature (as it should seeme) would haue it deuided into seuerall prouinces, as *Trauancar*, *Colan*, *Cochin*, *Crangonar*, *Calecute*, *Tano*, and *Canonor*. Seauen yeares ago, *Pereimal* king of all *Malabar* ruled these prouinces, who after he became a Mahumetane, and resolued to trauell to *Meca*, there to spend the remnant of hys dayes, deuided the land into many principalities, but with this prouiso, that all soueraigne authority shoulde rest in the king of *Calecute*, with the title of *Samori*, which signifieth Emperor, or as some write, God on earth. Although the reputation of this king be much ecclipsed by the *Portugals*, partly by diuersion of trafficke from his countries, and partly by assisting hys rebels and vassals (the kings of *Tanor* and *Cochin*) and though his title of *Samori* bee little regarded, yet remayneth hee his woonted maiesty in very good sort amongst the *Barbarians*. *Calecute* is 25. leagues long: *Malabar* in the broadest place exceedeth not ten.

The Citty of *Calecute* (from whence the prouince taketh his name) is three miles long, scituated vpon the sea side. It containeth but few houses, and those of little woorth, not aboue ten, fifteen, or twenty Nobles rent by the yeare, which is the com-

Digitized by Google

mon rent of all the housing of the East Indies, if the *Arabians* or *Portugals* be not dealers therein. The Inhabitants liue vpon Rice, Palmito, cattle and fish. Their riches consist in Ginger, and Pepper, which draweth yearely a great masse of Treasure into the hauens of this kingdome. The *Arabians* were Lordes of this trafficke for many Ages, till the Portugals setting light by the incredible dangers of a long Nauigation, arriued there not aboue a hundred yeares since, and bartered their wares for Pepper, and other commodities. And as the Portugales enriched the Townes of *Cochin*, so did the *Arabians Calecute*, & that kingdom. For this commodity is of such consequence, that it not onely enricheth the Prince with presents and Customs, but in such sort augmenteth the state of the merchants, that some of them are comparable to many Dukes in Europe, and Kings in *Affricke*.

In their warres in *Malabar*, they vse not the seruice of horse, not onely for that the climate breedeth none, (for those that they haue, are brought out of *Persia* and *Arabia*) but for that the nature of the Countrey is not fit for horsemanship. For as in *Sweuia* the footmen vse no Pikes, and the Horse-men no Lances, for the thicknesse of the woodes, which maketh them vnseruiceable, so in *Malabar* because of the straights, riuers of the Sea, and Marishes, they seldome vse horses, so that all their forces consist in shipping and footemen. It is strange to see how ready the souldiour of this Countrey is at his Weapons; they are all Gentlemen, and tearmed *Naires*. At seauen yeares of age they are put to Schoole to learne the vse of their weapons, where to make them nimble and actiue, their sinnewes and ioynts are stretched by skilful fellowes, & annointed with the Oyle *Sesamus*; by this annointing they become so light and nimble, that they will winde and turne their bodies, as if they had no bones, casting them forward, backward, high, and lowe, euen to the astonishment of the beholders. Their continual delight is in their weapon, perswading themselues that no Nation goeth beyond them in skill and dexterity. Euery one inureth himselfe to that weapon, whereto hee findeth his body most agreeable. Their ancient weapons were the Iauelin, the Bow, and the sword; but after the comming

of

Digitized by Google

of the Portugals, they Learned ſo exactly the mixture of mettals, the caſting of great Ordinance, and the practiſe thereof, that (ſome ſay) their artillery & powder ſurpaſſeth ours. They go to war all naked ſaue their priuities, neither vſe they heade peeces, which is the reaſon that in fights and skirmiſhes they ſhew exceeding agility, charging and retyring more like Falcons then ſouldiers. When a man would take them to be farre off, he ſhall ſee them houering round about him in a trice, ſo that it is as dangerous to follow them flying, as to deale with them fighting. They are ſwift as Leopards, and their flight as much to be feard, as their charge. If they come to handſtrokes (which they will not do but vpon neceſſity or aduantage) they vſe altogether to ſtrike with the point. They binde Copper or Siluer ſhangels to the hiltes of their ſwordes, the ſounde whereof inſtead of Drummes and Trumpets, encourageth them to the encounter. They will lye ſo cloſe vnder their bucklers, that you ſhall not ſee any part of their bodies, lie open to the daunger. There are one kinde of *Nairs* (called *Amochi*) which curſe themſelues, their kindred and poſterity with moſt bitter execrations, if they leaue iniuries done to their ſociety vnreuenged. If their King happen to bee ſlaine, ſo much the more furious runne they through fire, water, and aſſured deſtruction to reuenge his death. And therefore the Kinges of *India* ſuppoſe their eſtates weake or ſtrong, as they perceiue the numbers of thoſe *Amochi* to bee few or many. By the law of the countrey they may not marry, but they are all allowed women in common. They maintaine thoſe women according to their birth and degrees. They muſt be al Gentlewomen, for the Nairs may not take any contriwoman, yea ſo great is their diſdaine and pride, that without ill vſage they will not endure any of the common people to come neere them. In their iournies they ſend their ſeruants before to the Innes & villages, to declare their maiſters approch; then muſt all trauellers depart and giue room. If it be thought in Turky, that by licentious libertie in time of peace the Ianizars become more hardye and coragious in war: what may we deem of theſe *Nairs*, who wil not endure a man of meane calling to looke them in the face? They inhabite no Townes, but dwell in houſes made of earth

Digitized by Google

inuironed with hedges and woods, & their waies as intricate as into a laborinth. Of what force this kingdome is, may bee gathered by the army of 6000. souldiers, and two hundered vessels of warre, which he leuied 1503. against *Edward Pacheco* the king of *Portugals* Captaine, taking part that time with the king of *Cochin*: this warre lasted almost fiue moneths. In the yeare 1529. with an army of 100000. hee beleagred the fortresse which the *Portugals* built in *Calecute*, vnder the keeping of *Iohn Lima*. In this siedge hee spent a whole Winter, wherein although the Portugals behaued themselues valiantly; yet weighing the Kings forces, and their owne possibilities, they thought it best to destroy it with their own hands. In the year 1661. he besiedged *Ciale* with 90000. men, & tooke it by composition. Hee hath more then once giuen an instance of his power at sea. He is Lord of many hauens, whereunto great numbers of shipping do resort, and in that regard, cannot choose but be well furnished with a great nauy. But in goodnesse of shipping, and martiall discipline, we must needs confesse the sea-forces of all the *Indian* Princes, to be far inferiour to those of the Portugals, whose dominion (both at sea and land) nothing hath so much augmented, as their defensiue warfare. To speake truth, it seldome falleth out, but the naked man feareth the sword, and the armed man more encouraged thereby, bearing himselfe bolder vppon his skill, then his strength, & preuailing more by temporizing, then in ioyning foote to foote by rash fighting, whereas the *Barbarians* putting more confidence in their numbers then goodnesse, haue alwayes wanted that vertue, which should make armies dredfull and fortunate, and that is good order, and warlicke Discipline.

The Kingdome of Iapan.

Iapan may well bee called a politicke body, compacted of many and sundry Ilands of diuers different formes and circuites, which as they are deuided from the rest of the continent, so are they inhabited by a people much differing in maners and customes from the residue of the *Orient*. They stand round & close togithet like the *Maldinæ* in the Indian sea, and the *Hebrides* & *Orchades* in the north Ocean. They are in number

Digitized by Google

ber 66. deuided into three partialities. The first contayneth 9. the second four, the third fifty three. Amongst these, fiue are renowned, but especially one for the famous City of *Macao*. And it is most commonly seene, that they who haue the soueraignty of those fiue, are Lords of all the rest. It is distant from new Spaine 150. leagues; from *China* 60. The soyle is to bee accounted rather barren then fertil. The inhabitants are of a very ready wit, and maruellous patient in aduersity. Their new borne children they immediatly wash in the riuers, & as soon as they are weaned, they take them from their mothers, and bring them vp in labors of hunting, and such like exercises. They go bare-headed men and women, as well in soule weather, as in fair. They are very ambitious & desirous of honor. Pouerty is no disgrace to the Gentry of their blood. They wil not suffer the least wrong to passe vnreuenged: they salute one another with many curtesies: they are very stayed, and of a setled resolution. They are very iealous to shew them-selues fearefull or base-minded in word or deed: they will make no man priuy of their losses or misfortunes; they haue the like beastes both tame and wilde) as we haue, but they will scarsely eate any thing saue hearbes, Fish, Barley, or Rice; and if they do, it is the flesh of wilde beasts taken by hunting. Of these graines they make their Wines, and water mixt with a certain precious powder, which they vse, they account a dainty beuerage: they call it *Chia*. Their buildinges for the most part are of Timber, partly because the vpland places are destitute of quarries, but abounding with Cedars of admirable heighth and thicknesse fit for building, and partly because the countrey is subiect to Earth-quakes. In times past all *Iapan* obeyed one Prince, shewing him great obedience and subiection, and this gouernment endured with no lesse state and maiesty, at the least sixteene hundered yeares, vntill about fiftie years since, by the rebellion of two of his chiefest lieutenants, the whole kingdome was distracted, each of them holding by armes whatsoeuer he atchieued by vsurpation. By their example others becomming as ambitious, seized on the rest of the kingdom, some on one part, some on another, leauing nothing but the bare name of *Dairi*, which signifyeth the Lorde of all

Digitized by Google

Iapan, with the title of *Incata*, (viz.) king, to their rightful soueraigne. Yea those princes which were Lords of the territories about *Meaco*, would hardly allow him wherof to find him victual and apparrell, so that now hee resembleth the shadow, rather then the king of the ancient & magnificent Monarchy of *Iapan*. Since those times whosoeuer layeth fast hold on the dominion of the *Coquivai* (those are the fiue kingdomes bordering *Meaco*) insteed of *Dairi*, calleth himselfe Emperor and king of *Iapan*, and Lord of *Tenza*. *Nabunanga* was one of the in our daies, and after him *Fassiba* in power and maiesty excelling all his predecessors. *Nabunanga* was lord of fixe and thirty prouinces, *Fassiba* at the least of fifty.

The forme of gouernement is nothing like the policy of Europe. The strength of the prince consisteth not in ordinary reuenues and loue of the people, but in rigor and the Princes pleasure. As soone as the Prince hath conquered one or more kingdomes, he shareth them wholy amongst his friends and followers, who binde themselues by oath faithfully to serue him with a limited company of men as well in peace as warre. They agayne to make their followers *trusty and ready* for all seruices, reseruing some small matter for the sustentation of themselues, and families, deuide to euery man a portion of the former deuision; so that al the wealth of *Iapan* priuate and publike is in the hand of a fewe men, and those fewe depending on the pleasure of one, that is, the Lord of *Tenza*. He as him listeth, giueth, taketh, disgraceth, honoureth, and impouerisheth. When he casheteth any gouernor of his prouince, all the leaders and souldiours of the sayde prouince are changed, and none left there but artificers and husbandmen. This gouernment draweth with it continuall dislike and innouations. For *Dairi* (though he hath neither power nor gouernment) yet beeing in fauour and estimation of the people, ceaseth not to insinuate into theyr heades, that this Lorde of *Tenza* and the other Tyrantes, are vsurpers of other mens right, destroyers of the Monarchy, and enemyes to the state and liberties of *Iapan*. Which perswasions take so deepe root in the heartes of the people, and so extenuate the reputation of these Vsurpers, that vnder colour of suppression of other, they

Digitized by Google

they often take Armes vppon hope to rayſe their owne great neſſe: ſo that by this dayly change of Gouernours, the people not knowing who are their right and naturall Lordes, knowe not whome to loue and obey: And againe, their Lords being as vncertaine of their continuance, care not for the people, nor for the welfare of their own vaſſals, no more then if they were meere ſtrangers: but alway aſpiring by the ſame facility wherby they gayned one, to conquer a better, after the manner of Gamſters, continually hazzard one, vppon hope of winning another: in this ſort ſometime one alone, ſometime many together, vexing the Hands with perpetuall warfare. *Faſſiba* to aſſure his eſtate, and diſable the greateſt ones from enterpriſing againſt him, dooeth often tranſporr them from one prouince to another, cauſing them to forgo their anciēt inheritances, and to lead their liues amongſt vnknown neighbors: neither in thoſe places wil he ſuffer them to enioy liuings vnited, but far deuided in pieces and parcels. For all this, they are neuer at peace among themſelues, by reaſon that the frontiers of their petty iuriſdictions, neighbor ſo neare one vppon another. In theſe alterations *Faſſiba* conſtrayned as well the looſers as the winners to do him homage and obeiſance, and once a yeare to pay him a rich tribute, drawing to his owne Coffers the greateſt part of the wealth of *Iapan* by theſe Tyranies. He keepeth his owne people buſied in building of admirable pallaces, ſumptuous Temples, Towns & Fortreſſes, the like wherof are no where to be ſeene. In theſe works he hath more then 100000. workmen, labouring in their ſeuerall occupations at their owne charges. Amongſt the reſt he is now in building a Temple, for whoſe yron woorkes, all the ſtuffe in *Iapan* will hardly ſuffice, and therefore he hath giuen commandement to all his people and Merchaunts to bring all their yron and Armor into one place.

Beſides the oath of fealty whereby the reſidue of the kings and princes are bound to ayd and aſſiſt him in peace & war, he receiueth yearly two millions ariſing of the profits of Rice, reſerued vpon his own poſſeſſions. He was determined after the finiſhing of the fabrikes, to attempt a iourney into *China*, and for that enterpriſe cauſed timber ſufficient for the building of

two

Digitized by Google

two thousand vessels for transportation to be felled. By these magnificent fabricks, this haughty resolution, this large dominion and conquest of forren kingdomes, hee hopeth to attaine the reputation of immortality among his subiects, as diuers of his predecessors haue doone before him. For *Anida*, *Xaca*, *Canis*, and *Fotoque*, were no other then Lords of *Iapan*, which either for their glory in Warre, or inuention of some good Arts in peace, were accounted as Gods amongest the *Iaponians*, as in the olde world *Hercules* and *Bacchus* were amongst the *Grecians*, and *Saturn* and *Ianus* amongst the *Italians*. Of these Demi-gods they report as many strange & fabulous inuentions, as the *Grecians* and *Italians* did of theyrs. But *Fessiha* vnderstanding by the preaching of the Iesuits, that there can bee no God but one, who created the heauen and earth of nothing, and all other deities to be fooliſh and detestable, determined to baniſh them all, and to weede vp that good Vine, which began to take deepe roote in those prouinces. Surely this may stande for a memorable example of the pride and blindnesse of mans heart.

The Romaine Emperours opposed their forces against the Christian Religion, only to maintaine and vphold the worship of their Idols, condemned for vaine and diuelliſh, by the Law of Christianity: but this man raiseth persecution against true Religion, to arrogate to himselfe the name of God, an imagination (as I saide before) full of extreame ambition and madnesse. But in the middest of these proud and vnreasonable cogitations, God raised vp against him a newe enemy from the Easterne parts of *Iapan*, who as we vnderstand by Aduisoes of the last yeare, is likely to giue him his hand and heade full of businesse.

Other Kingdomes and Ilandes, as *Iaua Maior* and *Minor*, the *Meluccas*, *Borneo*, *Bandan*, and the *Philippinæ*, famous only for their scituation, wealth, and spices, I hold fitter to bee pointed at in cards, then in discourse, being nothing almost in the one, but it is common to the other.

The

Digitized by Google

The sixth Booke.

Of America, commonly called West-India.

THis spacious part of the Worlde, vtterly vnknowne to the Ancients, and extended vppon the vast and raging *Atlantique* Ocean, lay vndiscouered vntill the yeare of our Lorde God, 1492. In which yeare it was found out by *Christopher Columbus*, a man of an excellent iudgement, & haughty spirit, vnder the protection and good fortunes of *Ferdinand* King of *Spaine*. Him seconded *Americus Vesputius*, and other famous Gentlemen, who to their euerlasting memories, with infinite labour and danger, surueyed that huge tract, with the Islands adioyning, euen vnto the furthest parts of the west and South, which is that portion they called the *New-world*, aswel for the incredible spaciousnesse thereof, being as large as the two old diuisions (*Affricke* and *Europe*) as for the infinit number of Islandes, diuersitie of manners, fashions of inhabitants, variety of languages, Nations, and customes, with the disproportions of liuing Creatutes, Trees, and Plantes, not to bee found or seene in these parts, which there they found.

It is bounded vppon the East with the *Atlantique* or North sea: vpon the South, with the *Magellan* Streights: vpon the West with *Mare pacifium*, or *Mare del Zur*: on the North, with *Terra incognita*. And as some writers affirme, the whole *Circum* Nauigation, amounteth to 36000. miles.

This continent, according to his diuers scituation is diuersly prouided: in some places it is admirable fruitfull, in other places very barren and needy. Some part thereof lieth vpon huge plaines, some places are very hilly and mountainous. It is watered with many famous Riuers, whose sandes in many places yeild Gold, with many famous Lakes and Springs. It bringeth forth graine and pulse sufficient, especially *Maiz*, the chiefest bread and prouision through the whol *Indies*. Wine they haue none, and where they want this *Maiz*, they make their bread

Digitized by Google

of a kinde of roote, good and wholesome, if the iuyce be thoroughly squeezed out. It yeeldeth Sugar, Cotton-wooll, and Flaxe, as with vs, with a thousand sorts of Trees, Birds, beasts and Fishes, some whereof we know, and other some not.

Horses they haue none, neither conceiue their vse, and at the first sight of horsemen the inhabitants stoode amazed. In it are found the Spices, Gems, and precious Stones, with those huge masses of Golde, Siluer, and other Mineralles, which wee see daily transported into Europ. The inhabitants are of a swarty complexion, fayrer or fowler, according to their different situations. Not very well fauoured, but of sauage & brutish behauiours, excellent footmen and swimmers, cleanly in their bodies, naked, libidinous, and men-eaters. Some worship the Diuell, some Idols, some the Sun, and some the Starres. Their armes are the Bow & Arrow, which instead of iron, they head with the teeth of Fishes, and the bones of beasts. Golde, Siluer, and Stone they little regarde, their cheefest delight is in Feathers and Plumes. The cheefest regions lying Northerlie vpon this continent are *Quivira*, *Noua Hispania*, *Niaragua*, *Iucatan*, *Florida*, *Apalchen*, *Norumbega*, *Noua Francia*, *Terra Laboratoris*, and *Estotiland*.

As I related before, so say I heer, that by reason of pouerty, stirility, or for want of perfect discouery, much hath not bin writ of these places. For although the Spaniards be Lords of these spacious countries, yet regard they nothing but their priuate profit. And therfore, if any of them contain nothing worthy relation saue their fertility or pouerty, to what end should I spend paper in discoursing of those cõmodities or discõmodities, wherwith euery one knoweth the life of man to be preserued or infested. Amongst the number of which is *Quivira*, a temperate, batefull, & fruitful country, stored with diuers sorts of beasts, but especialy with goats & oxen, differing from ours the flesh whereof the inhabitants eate, and cloth their bodies with their skins. Of the residue, as *Florida*, *Norembega*, &c. No more famous, but participating of like qualities, either good or euil, I will speak no further. New *Spain* is a very large prouince, better manured, pleasanter, & more populous then any part of this new world. It was possessed by the *Spaniard*, in the yeare, 1518.

Digitized by Google

1518. vnder the leading of *Ferdinãdo Cortez*, to the great slaughter of the inhabitants & his own people. In reward of whose seruice, *Charls* 5. bestowd on him the country of *Tecoantepec*. Although it ly vnder the *Torridzone*, yet it is temperat, mountainous and full of woods. It aboundeth with al good things, necessary for life, and profitable either for thirst or pleasure, as fish, flesh, gold, and stones. Of al parts of the *Indies* none is like vnto it for habitation. For therein the *Spaniards* haue erected many Colonies, as *Compostella*, *Colina*, *Purificatio*, *Gnadalara*, *Mechoochan*, *Cacatula*, *Mexico*, &c.

Nona Galitia, *Mechuachan*, *Mexico*, and *Guastican*, are but Prouinces appendant vnto this territory.

Whereof the best and faireſt is *Mexico* throgh the whole *Indies*. It should seeme the shire tooke it's name from the city. In ancient time it was built in the midst of the lake, like *Venice*, but *Cortez* remoued it to the banke thereof. It is at this day a City exeellent wel built, containing six miles in compasse, one part whereof the Spaniards inhabite, the residue is left to the natiues. In this Citty the viceroy and Archbishop keepe their seats, hauing the priuiledges of supreme Iustice, printing, and coyning. The lake whereon the citty is built, is salt, & ebbeth and floweth as the Ocean. At ebbe it sendeth it's waters into another lake adioyning, but fresh; it yeeldeth no fish, but wormes, which in summer putrifie and corrupt the aire. And yet of the waters thereof they boile great store of salte. The circuit of both these lakes is about 50. leagues, and about the banks, and in the Islands, do lie aboue 50. townes, euerie one consisting of 10000. households. Vpon these waters do ferrie 50000. boats, which they terme *Caneas*, to serue the vse of the City. This *peninsula* of the new world, which is most extended toward the south, resembleth *Affrica*, or some huge *Pyramis*, whose bases lieth towardes the Northerly straight, caused by that neck of land, which the *Spaniards* terme *Terra firma*. The head thereof growing lesse and lesse towardes the *Antartique* pole, endeth at the *Magellan* straights. The East part is enuironed with the vast Northern sea, the west with *Mare del zur*.

It aboundeth with gold and siluer, & wanteth no good thing that God hath created for the vse of man, either for pleasure or

Digitized by Google

necessity: onely in this it is discommendable, that it bringeth forth inhabitants of sauage and inhuman behauior, delighting in eating of mans flesh, and other vncleane and vndressed viands. In it are contained inumerable regions and prouinces, some whereof are sufficiently knowne, the residue remayne without name, either in regarde of their baseneſſe, or for the warlicke Natures of the inhabitants, who will suffer no strangers to liue amongst them. The chiefe thereof, are *Castella aurea*, *Peruana*, *Chile*, and *Brasilia*, al inhabited either by the *Spaniards* or *Portugals*. The Easterne part from the riuer *Maragnon*, to *Ria de la plata*, belongeth to the crowne of Portugall, the residue to the king of *Spaine*.

Castella Aurea.

OR Golden *Castille*, is that part of the firme land (so called by the *Spaniards*) which stretcheth from the city *Theonima* & *Panama*, euen to the bay of *Vraua* and S. *Michael*, & occupieth al that streight wherewith these two spacious parts of the New world, are linked as it were with a defensible chaine. It is badly inhabited, and lesse manured for the contagiousnes of the ayre and standing waters. Yet are there therein two famous cities. *Theonima* or *Nõbre de dies*, scituated on the north sea, and *Panamais* on the *Peruvian* or *Pacifique* sea. And what soeuer Merchandize is brought by the *Peruvian* sea towardes *Spaine*, is vnloden in the city of *Panama*, and thence transported by land to *Nombre de dies*, where it is finally again shipped for *Spain*. The like course is obserued from *Spain* to those places. *Peruuia* is one of the famous prouinces of this new world. It was first discouered in the yeare 1525 by *Francis Pizzaro*, & by *Charles* the fift, bestowed vpon him for his good seruice. At this day it is diuided into three parts, viz: the plaines, the *Sieras* or mountaines, and the *Andes* or *Vltramontanas*.

The plaines lye vpon the sea-coast, and are out-stretched in length by the space of one thousand & fiue hundred miles. In breadth they are not aboue 60. and where they are narrowest 30. These plains are grauelly, full of desarts, and for the most part barren, especially where freshets and lakes are wanting, being neuer releeued with raine nor showers. Those grounds that lie nie the bankes of riuers, are very fruitfull, by reason of the

Digitized by Google

the diſcent of water all the winter, diſtilling from the mountaynes and rockes which are not paſt ſeauen or ten myles aſſunder: the reſidue further off, the husbanndmen doe enforce with great induſtry by letting in Sluces and digging of channeiles to their plentifull harueſt of Cotton-wooll, and Corne. The inhabitants of this tract are a baſe people, cowardly and poore, ſleeping and liuing vnder trees and reeds, and feeding vpon fiſh, and raw fleſh. The mountayne Countrey is extended from North to South about one thouſand leagues, beeing diſtant not aboue twenty leagues from the Sea, and in ſome places leſſe. They are very colde, and ſubiect to continuall ſnow, wanting wood, and incumbred with Lyons, Wolues, blacke Beares, Goates, and a certaine beaſt like a Camnell, of whoſe wooll, they worke them garments of Cotton-wooll and other vtenſils. Theſe mountaynes are full of inhabitants, fertile and bateſull, eſpecially where the ayre is indurable, and the inhabitants more witty, couragious and ciuiller, then the reſidue.

The *Andes* are likewiſe mountaines, but liuing in one continuall ridge without vallies, extending from North to South, betweene which and the former, lyeth *Collao*, a prouince full of mountaines, ſubiect to cold, yet very populous. Thus much of the nature of the ſoyle, and people: Of their forces, little can bee ſpoken by reaſon of their ſubiection to the Spaniard, and ignorance in matter of armes and pollicy. And as for their priuate commodities, as Gold, Syluer, and Stones, who knoweth not but that they are the chiefeſt traffick of all theſe prouinces.

Chile.

VPon the ſouth of *Peru* toward the *Pacifique* ſea lieth *Chile*, whoſe name hath beene deriued from incredible cold raging therein. Yet ſeeldom it rayne, lightnings, and the alteration of ſeaſons, as we do in Europe. It partly lyeth vppon the ſeacoaſt, and is partly mountainous, but ſomewhat warme toward the ſea-ſide. It beareth all ſorts of fruite brought out of *Spaine*, and tranſporteth many Cattle, and ſtore of Oſtriges. The riuers run their courſe in the day time, but in the night by reaſon of their congealation, if they moue, it is very ſlowly

Digitized by Google

and weake.

The inhabitants are tall, well set, and warlike: and their armes are the bowe and arrowe: their garments, the skins of wilde beasts, and sea-wolues.

Brasile.

Brasil lieth betweene the two mighty Riuers of *Maragnon* vpon the North, and *Rio de la plata* vpon the South. It was discouered by *Americus Vespucius* in the daies of King *Emanuell*. The Countrey in a manner is all pleasant, faire weathered, and exceeding healthfull, by reason that the gentle winds from Sea, doe beate and euaporate all the morning dewes and clouds, making the ayre fresh and cleare. It is well watered, & deuided into plaines, and easie Mountaines, fertile, alwayes flourishing, full of Sugar-canes, and all other blessings of nature. For hither the Portugals haue brought all sorts of *Europe* Plants with good successe, and haue erected mady Ingenios, to try their Sugars.

Of the Ilands, as *Hispaniola*, *Iamica*, *Cuba*, and the *Caribes*, I can say nothing more, then hath already beene discoursed in other Tractats: And for the most part such as is the Relation of the one, such is the nature and quality of the other, in no memorable thing greatly materiall.

Terra Australis.

THis Land was lately found out, and by our lateſt Cosmographers, for the great and spacious circuit thereof, as comprehending many large Regions (viz:) *Pstacorum regio*, *Terra del fengo*, *Beac*, *Lucach*, and *Maletur*, described for the sixt part of the world. But what people inhabite them, what fashions they vse, or what profitable commodity fit for the life of man, they affoord, it hath not yet beene discouered.

Borealis Orbis pars.

THis diuision is scituated neare vnto the North Pole, the least of the residue, almost all vnknowne, consisting of Ilands,

Digitized by Google

lands, and those scituated about the very pole. For Authours affirme, that vnder the very pole, lyeth a black and high rocke about 33. leagues in compasse, and there, these Ilands. Among which the Ocean disgorging it selfe, by 19. Channels, maketh foure whirlepooles or currants, by which the waters are finally carried towardes the North, and there swallowed into the bowels of the earth. That *Euripus* or whirlepoole, which the *Scithique* ocean maketh, hath 5. inlets, & by reason of his strait passage and violent course, is neuer frozen. The other *Euripus* on the backside of *Groueland*, hath three inlets, and remaynes frozen three moneths yearely: Its length is 37. Leagues. Between these two raging *Euripi* lyeth an Iland (about *Lappia* & *Biarmia*) the habitation of the *Pigmies*. A certaine Scholler of Oxforde reporteth, that these foure *Euripi* are ingulphed with such furious violēce into some inward receptacle, that no ship is able, with neuer so strōg or opposite a gale, to stem the currant. And that at no time, there bloweth so much wind, as will moue a wind-mil. This is likewise the report of *Giraldus Cambrensis*, in his meruailes of *Ireland*. But *Blundeuile* our Country-man is of a contrary opinion, neither beleeuing that either *Pliny*, or any other *Roman*, came euer thither, to describe this promontory: or that the Fryer of *Oxford*, without the assistance of some cold Deuill out of the middle Region of the Ayre, could approach so neare, as to measure those cold parts with his *Astrolabe*.

FINIS.



Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Iapan, with the title of *Iucata*, (viz.) king, to their rightful soueraigne. Yea those princes which were Lords of the territories about *Meaco*, would hardly allow him wherof to find him victual and apparrell, so that now hee resembleth the shadow, rather then the king of the ancient & magnificent Monarchy of *Iapan*. Since those times whosoeuer layeth fast hold on the dominion of the *Coquivai* (those are the fiue kingdomes bordering *Meaco*) insteed of *Dairi*, calleth himselfe Emperor and king of *Iapan*, and Lord of *Tenza*. *Nabunanga* was one of thē in our daies, and after him *Fassiba* in power and maiesty excelling all his predecessors. *Nabunanga* was lord of sixe and thirty prouinces, *Fassiba* at the least of fifty.

The forme of gouernement is nothing like the policy of Europe. The strength of the prince consisteth not in ordinary reuenues and loue of the people, but in rigor and the Princes pleasure. As soone as the Prince hath conquered one or more kingdomes, he shareth them wholy amongst his friends and followers, who binde themselues by oath faithfully to serue him with a limited company of men as well in peace as warre. They agayne to make their followers trusty and ready for all seruices, reseruing some small matter for the sustenation of themselues, and families, deuide to euery man a portion of the former deuision; so that al the wealth of *Iapan* priuate and publike is in the hand of a fewe men, and those fewe depending on the pleasure of one, that is, the Lord of *Tenza*. He as him listeth, giueth, taketh, disgraceth, honcureth, and impouerisheth. When he casheteth any gouernor of his prouince, all the leaders and souldiours of the sayde prouince are changed, and none left there but artificers and husbandmen. This gouernment draweth with it continuall dislike and innouations. For *Dairi* (though he hath neither power nor gouernment) yet beeing in fauour and estimation of the people, ceaseth not to insinuate into theyr heades, that this Lorde of *Tenza* and the other Tyrantes, are vsurpers of other mens right, destroyers of the Monarchy, and enemyes to the state and liberties of *Iapan*. Which perswasions take so deepe root in the heartes of the people, and so extenuate the reputation of these Vsurpers, that vnder colour of suppression of other, they

Digitized by Google

they often take Armes vppon hope to rayſe their owne great neſſe: ſo that by this dayly change of Gouernours, the people not knowing who are their right and naturall Lordes, knowe not whome to loue and obey: And againe, their Lords being as vncertaine of their continuance, care not for the people, nor for the welfare of their own vaſſals, no more then if they were meere ſtrangers: but alway aſpiring by the ſame facility wherby they gayned one, to conquer a better, after the manner of Gamſters, continually hazzard one, vppon hope of winning another: in this ſort ſometime one alone, ſometime many together, vexing the Lands with perpetuall warfare. *Faſſiba* to aſſure his eſtate, and diſable the greateſt ones from enterpriſing againſt him, dooeth often tranſporr them from one prouince to another, cauſing them to forgo their anciēt inheritances, and to lead their liues amongſt vnknown neighbors: neither in thoſe places wil he ſuffer them to enioy liuings vnited, but far deuided in pieces and parcels. For all this, they are neuer at peace among themſelues, by reaſon that the frontiers of their petty iuriſdictions, neighbor ſo neare one vppon another. In theſe alterations *Faſſiba* conſtrayned as well the looſers as the winners to do him homage and obeiſance, and once a yeare to pay him a rich tribute, drawing to his owne Coffers the greateſt part of the wealth of *Iapan* by theſe Tyranies. He keepeth his owne people buſied in building of admirable palaces, ſumptuous Temples, Towns & Fortreſſes, the like wherof are no where to be ſeene. In theſe works he hath more then 100000. workmen, labouring in their ſeuerall occupations at their owne charges. Amongſt the reſt he is now in building a Temple, for whoſe yron woorkes, all the ſtuffe in *Iapan* will hardly ſuffice, and therefore he hath giuen commandement to all his people and Merchaunts to bring all their yron and Armor into one place.

Beſides the oath of fealty whereby the reſidue of the kings and princes are bound to ayd and aſſiſt him in peace & war, he receiueth yearly two millions ariſing of the profits of Rice, reſerued vpon his own poſſeſſions. He was determined after the finiſhing of the fabrikes, to attempt a iourney into *China*, and for that enterpriſe cauſed timber ſufficient for the building of

two

Digitized by Google

two thousand vessels for transportation to be felled. By these magnificent fabricks, this haughty resolution, this large dominion and conquest of forren kingdomes, hee hopeth to attaine the reputation of immortality among his subiects, as diuers of his predecessors haue doone before him. For *Anida*, *Xaca*, *Canis*, and *Fotoque*, were no other then Lords of *Iapan*, which either for their glory in Warre, or inuention of some good Arts in peace, were accounted as Gods amongest the *Iaponians*, as in the olde world *Hercules* and *Bacchus* were amongst the *Grecians*, and *Saturn* and *Ianus* amongst the *Italians*. Of these Demi-gods they report as many strange & fabulous inuentions, as the *Grecians* and *Italians* did of theyrs. But *Fassiba* vnderstanding by the preaching of the Iesuits, that there can bee no God but one, who created the heauen and earth of nothing, and all other deities to be fooliſh and detestable, determined to banish them all, and to weede vp that good Vine, which began to take deepe roote in those prouinces. Surely this may stande for a memorable example of the pride and blindnesse of mans heart.

The Romaine Emperours opposed their forces against the Christian Religion, only to maintaine and vphold the worship of their Idols, condemned for vaine and diuelliſh, by the Law of Christianity: but this man raiseth persecution against true Religion, to arrogate to himselfe the name of God, an imagination (as I saide before) full of extreame ambition and madnesse. But in the middest of these proud and vnreasonable cogitations, God raised vp against him a newe enemy from the Easterne parts of *Iapan*, who as we vnderstand by Aduisoes of the last yeare, is likely to giue him his hand and heade full of businesse.

Other Kingdomes and Ilandes, as *Iaua Maior* and *Minor*, the *Meluccas*, *Borneo*, *Bandan*, and the *Philippinæ*, famous only for their scituation, wealth, and spices, I hold fitter to bee pointed at in cards, then in discourse, being nothing almost in the one, but it is common to the other.

The

Digitized by Google

The sixth Booke.

Of America, commonly called West-India.

THis spacious part of the Worlde, vtterly vnknowne to the Ancients, and extended vppon the vast and raging *Atlantique* Ocean, lay vndiscouered vntill the yeare of our Lorde God, 1492. In which yeare it was found out by *Christopher Columbus*, a man of an excellent iudgement, & haughty spirit, vnder the protection and good fortunes of *Ferdinand* King of *Spaine*. Him seconded *Americus Vesputius*, and other famous Gentlemen, who to their euerlasting memories, with infinite labour and danger, surueyed that huge tract, with the Islands adioyning, euen vnto the furthest parts of the west and South, which is that portion they called the *New-world*, aswel for the incredible spaciousnesse thereof, being as large as the two old diuisions (*Affricke* and *Europe*) as for the infinit number of Islandes, diuersitie of manners, fashions of inhabitants, variety of languages, Nations, and customes, with the disproportions of liuing Creatures, Trees, and Plantes, not to bee found or seene in these parts, which there they found.

It is bounded vppon the East with the *Atlantique* or North sea: vpon the South, with the *Magellan* Streights: vpon the West with *Mare pacifium*, or *Mare de Zur*: on the North, with *Terra incognita*. And as some writers affirme, the whole *Circum* Nauigation, amounteth to 30000. miles.

This continent, according to his diuers scituation is diuersly prouided: in some places it is admirable fruitfull, in other places very barren and needy. Some part thereof lieth vpon huge plaines, some places are very hilly and mountainous. It is watered with many famous Riuers, whose sandes in many places yeild Gold, with many famous Lakes and Springs. It bringeth forth graine and pulse sufficient, especially *Maiz*, the chiefest bread and prouision through the whol *Indies*. Wine they haue none, and where they want this *Maiz*, they make their bread

Digitized by Google

of a kinde of roote, good and wholesome, if the iuyce be thoroughly squeezed out. It yeeldeth Sugar, Cotton-wooll, and Flaxe, as with vs, with a thousand sorts of Trees, Birds, beasts and Fishes, some whereof we know, and other some not.

Horses they haue none, neither conceiue their vse, and at the first sight of horsemen the inhabitants stoode amazed. In it are found the Spices, Gems, and precious Stones, with those huge masses of Golde, Siluer, and other Mineralles, which wee see daily transported into Europ. The inhabitants are of a swarty complexion, fayrer or fowler, according to their different situations. Not very well fauoured, but of sauage & brutish behauiours, excellent footmen and swimmers, cleanly in their bodies, naked, libidinous, and men-eaters. Some worship the Diuell, some Idols, some the Sun, and some the Starres. Their armes are the Bow & Arrow, which instead of iron, they head with the teeth of Fishes, and the bones of beasts. Golde, Siluer, and Stone they little regarde, their cheefest delight is in Feathers and Plumes. The cheefest regions lying Northerlie vpon this continent are *Quivira*, *Noua Hispania*, *Niaragua*, *Iucatan*, *Florida*, *Apalchen*, *Norumbega*, *Noua Francia*, *Terra Laboratoris*, and *Estotiland*.

As I related before, so say I heer, that by reason of pouerty, sterility, or for want of perfect discouery, much hath not bin writ of these places. For although the Spaniards be Lords of these spacious countries, yet regard they nothing but their priuate profit. And therfore, if any of them contain nothing worthy relation saue their fertility or pouerty, to what end should I spend paper in discoursing of those cõmodities or discõmodities, wherwith euery one knoweth the life of man to be preserued or infested. Amongst the number of which is *Quivira*, a temperate, batefull, & fruitful country, stored with diuers sorts of beasts, but especialy with goats & oxen, differing from ours the flesh whereof the inhabitants eate, and cloth their bodies with their skins. Of the residue, as *Florida*, *Norembega*, &c. No more famous, but participating of like qualities, either good or euil, I will speak no further. New *Spain* is a very large prouince, better manured, pleasanter, & more populous then any part of this new world. It was possessed by the *Spaniard*, in the yeare, 1518.

Digitized by Google

1518. vnder the leading of *Ferdinãdo Cortez*, to the great slaughter of the inhabitants & his own people. In reward of whose seruice, *Charls* 5. bestowd on him the country of *Tecoantepec*. Although it ly vnder the *Torridzone*, yet it is temperat, mountainous and full of woods. It aboundeth with al good things, necessary for life, and profitable either for thirst or pleasure, as fish, flesh, gold, and stones. Of al parts of the *Indies* none is like vnto it for habitation. For therein the *Spaniards* haue erected many Colonies, as *Composella*, *Colina*, *Purificatio*, *Guadailara*, *Mechoochan*, *Cacatula*, *Mexico*, *&c.*

Noua Galitia, *Mechuachan*, *Mexico*, and *Guastican*, are but Prouinces appendant vnto this territory.

Whereof the best and faireſt is *Mexico* throgh the whole *Indies*. It should seeme the shire tooke it's name from the city. In ancient time it was built in the midst of the lake, like *Venice*, but *Cortez* remoued it to the banke thereof. It is at this day a City exeellent wel built, containing six miles in compasse, one part whereof the Spaniards inhabite, the residue is left to the natiues. In this Citty the viceroy and Archbishop keepe their seats, hauing the priuiledges of supreme Iustice, printing, and coyning. The lake whereon the citty is built, is salt, & ebbeth and floweth as the Ocean. At ebbe it sendeth it's waters into another lake adioyning, but fresh; it yeeldeth no fish, but wormes, which in summer putrifie and corrupt the aire. And yet of the waters thereof they boile great store of salte. The circuit of both these lakes is about 50. leagues, and about the banks, and in the Islands, do lie aboue 50. townes, euerie one consisting of 10000. households. Vpon these waters do ferrie 50000. boats, which they terme *Caneas*, to serue the vse of the City. This *peninsula* of the new world, which is most extended toward the south, resembleth *Affrica*, or some huge *Pyramis*, whose bases lieth towardes the Northerly straight, caused by that neck of land, which the *Spaniards* terme *Terra firma*. The head thereof growing lesse and lesse towardes the *Antartique* pole, endeth at the *Magellan* straights. The East part is enuironed with the vast Northern sea, the west with *Mare del zur*.

It aboundeth with gold and siluer, & wanteth no good thing that God hath created for the vse of man, either for pleasure or

Digitized by Google

necessity: onely in this it is discommendable, that it bringeth forth inhabitants of sauage and inhuman behauior, delighting in eating of mans flesh, and other vncleane and vndressed viands. In it are contained innumerable regions and prouinces, some whereof are sufficiently knowne, the residue remayne without name, either in regarde of their baseneſſe, or for the warlicke Natures of the inhabitants, who will suffer no strangers to liue amongst them. The chiefe thereof, are *Castella aurea*, *Peruana*, *Chile*, and *Brasilia*, al inhabited either by the *Spaniards* or *Portugals*. The Easterne part from the riuer *Maragnon*, to *Ria de la plata*, belongeth to the crowne of Portugall, the residue to the king of *Spaine*.

Castella Aurea.

OR Golden *Castille*, is that part of the firme land (so called by the *Spaniards*) which stretcheth from the city *Theonima* & *Panama*, euen to the bay of *Vraua* and S. *Michael*, & occupieth al that streight wherewith these two spacious parts of the New world, are linked as it were with a defensible chaine. It is badly inhabited, and lesse manured for the contagiousnes of the ayre and standing waters. Yet are there therein two famous cities. *Theonima* or *Nõbre de dies*, scituated on the north sea, and *Panamais* on the *Peruvian* or *Pacifique* sea. And what soeuer Merchandize is brought by the *Peruvian* sea towardes *Spaine*, is vnloden in the city of *Panama*, and thence transported by land to *Nombre de dies*, where it is finally again shipped for *Spain*. The like course is obserued from *Spain* to those places. *Peruuia* is one of the famous prouinces of this new world. It was first discouered in the yeare 1525. by *Francis Pizzaro*, & by *Charles* the fift, bestowed vpon him for his good seruice. At this day it is diuided into three parts, viz: the plaines, the *Sieras* or mountaines, and the *Andes* or *Vltramontanas*.

The plaines lye vpon the sea-coast, and are out-stretched in length by the space of one thousand & fiue hundred miles. In breadth they are not aboue 60. and where they are narrowest 30. These plains are grauelly, full of desarts, and for the most part barren, especially where freshets and lakes are wanting, being neuer releeued with raine nor showers. Those grounds that lie nie the bankes of riuers, are very fruitfull, by reason of the

Digitized by Google

the diſcent of water all the winter, diſtilling from the mountaynes and rockes which are not paſt ſeauen or ten myles aſſunder: the reſidue further off, the husbanndmen doe enforce with great induſtry by letting in Sluces and digging of channelles to their plentifull harueſt of Cotton-wooll, and Corne. The inhabitants of this tract are a baſe people, cowardly and poore, ſleeping and liuing vnder trees and reeds, and feeding vpon fiſh, and raw fleſh. The mountayne Countrey is extended from North to South about one thouſand leagues, beeing diſtant not aboue twenty leagues from the Sea, and in ſome places leſſe. They are very colde, and ſubiect to continuall ſnow, wanting wood, and incumbred with Lyons, Wolues, blacke Beares, Goates, and a certaine beaſt like a Camnell, of whoſe wooll, they worke them garments of Cotton-wooll and other vtenſils. Theſe mountaynes are full of inhabitants, fertile and barefull, eſpecially where the ayre is indurable, and the inhabitants more witty, couragious and ciuiller, then the reſidue.

The *Andes* are likewiſe mountaines, but lying in one continuall ridge without vallies, extending from North to South, betweene which and the former, lyeth *Collao*, a prouince full of mountaines, ſubiect to cold, yet very populous. Thus much of the nature of the ſoyle, and people: Of their forces, little can bee ſpoken by reaſon of their ſubiection to the Spaniard, and ignorance in matter of armes and pollicy. And as for their priuate commodities, as Gold, Syluer, and Stones, who knoweth not but that they are the chiefeſt traffick of all theſe prouinces.

Chile.

VPon the ſouth of *Peru* toward the *Pacifique* ſea, lieth *Chile*, whoſe name hath beene deriued from incredible cold raging therein. Yet ſeeldom it rayne, lightnings, and the alteration of ſeaſons, as we do in Europe. It partly lyeth vppon the ſeacoaſt, and is partly mountainous, but ſomewhat warme toward the ſea-ſide. It beareth all ſorts of fruite brought out of *Spaine*, and tranſporteth many Cattle, and ſtore of Oſtriges. The riuers run their courſe in the day time, but in the night by reaſon of their congealation, if they moue, it is very ſlowly

Digitized by Google

and weake.

The inhabitants are tall, well set, and warlike: and their armes are the bowe and arrowe: their garments, the skins of wilde beasts, and sea-wolues.

Brasile.

Brasil lieth betweene the two mighty Riuers of *Maragnon* vpon the North, and *Rio de la plata* vpon the South. It was discouered by *Americus Vespucius* in the daies of King *Emanuell*. The Countrey in a manner is all pleasant, faire weathered, and exceeding healthfull, by reason that the gentle winds from Sea, doe beate and euaporate all the morning dewes and clouds, making the ayre fresh and cleare. It is well watered, & deuided into plaines, and easie Mountaines, fertile, alwayes flourishing, full of Sugar-canes, and all other blessings of nature. For hither the Portugals haue brought all sorts of *Europe* Plants with good successe, and haue erected mady Ingenios, to try their Sugars.

Of the Ilands, as *Hispaniola*, *Iamica*, *Cuba*, and the *Cardbes*, I can say nothing more, then hath already beene discourſed in other Tractats: And for the most part such as is the Relation of the one, such is the nature and quality of the other, in no memorable thing greatly materiall.

Terra Australis.

THis Land was lately found out, and by our latest Cosmographers, for the great and spacious circuit thereof, as comprehending many large Regions (viz:) *Psitacorum regio*, *Terra del fenge*, *Beac*, *Lucach*, and *Maletur*, described for the sixt part of the world. But what people inhabite them, what fashions they vse, or what profitable commodity fit for the life of man, they affoord, it hath not yet beene discouered.

Borealis Orbis pars.

THis diuision is scituated neare vnto the North Pole, the least of the residue, almost all vnknowne, consisting of Ilands,

Digitized by Google

lands, and those scituated about the very pole. For Authours assiume, that vnder the very pole, lyeth a black and high rocke about 33. leagues in compasse, and there, these Ilands. Among which the Ocean disgorging it selfe, by 19. Cnannels, maketh foure whirlepooles or currants, by which the waters are finally carried towardes the North, and there swallowed into the bowels of the earth. That *Euripus* or whirlepoole, which the *Scithique* ocean maketh, hath 5. inlets, & by reason of his strait passage and violent course, is neuer frozen. The other *Euripus* on the backside of *Groueland*, hath three inlets, and remaynes frozen three moneths yearely: Its length is 37. Leagues. Between these two raging *Euripi* lyeth an Hand (about *Lappia* & *Biarmia*) the habitation of the *Pigmies*. A certaine Scholler of Oxforde reporteth, that these foure *Euripi* are ingulphed with such furious violēce into some inward receptacle, that no ship is able, with neuer so strōg or opposite a gale, to stem the currant. And that at no time, there bloweth so much wind, as will moue a wind-mil. This is likewise the report of *Giraldus Cambrensis*, in his meruailes of *Ireland*. But *Blundeuile* our Country-man is of a contrary opinion, neither beleeuing that either *Pliny*, or any other *Roman*, came euer thither, to describe this promontory: or that the Fryer of *Oxford*, without the assistance of some cold Deuill out of the middle Region of the Ayre, could approach so neare, as to measure those cold parts with his *Astrolabe*.

FINIS.



Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Sp. Coll.
RARE
G
170
.B7H
1611

1876 Centennial

Digitized by Google

G. Botero - ex Bibl
Duke of Robert Johnson

No. 2

STC. 3402
(2 copies in
Lucas

Rabin 36283

Digitized by Google


Digitized by Google